Main Menu

Introduction

Congratulations! Your selection of a 2011 Acura TL was a wise investment. It will give you years of driving pleasure.

One of the best ways to enhance the enjoyment of your new vehicle is to read this manual. In it, you will learn how to operate its driving controls and convenience items. Afterwards, keep this owner's manual in your vehicle so you can refer to it at any time.

Several warranties protect your new vehicle. Read the warranty booklet thoroughly so you understand the coverages and are aware of your rights and responsibilities.

Maintaining your vehicle according to the Maintenance Minder™ shown in the instrument panel helps to keep your driving trouble-free while it preserves your investment. When your vehicle needs maintenance, keep in mind that your dealer's staff is specially trained in servicing the many systems unique to your vehicle. Your dealer is dedicated to your satisfaction and will be pleased to answer any questions and concerns.

As you read this manual, you will find information that is preceded by a NOTICE symbol. This information is intended to help you avoid damage to your vehicle, other property, or the environment.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Main Menu

Introduction

California Proposition 65 Warning

WARNING: This product contains or emits chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.

Event Data Recorders

This vehicle is equipped with one or more devices commonly referred to as event data recorders. These devices record front seat belt use, front passenger seat occupancy, airbag deployment data, and the failure of any airbag system component. This data belongs to the vehicle owner and may not be accessed by anyone else except as legally required or with the permission of the vehicle owner.

Service Diagnostic Recorders

This vehicle is equipped with service-related devices that record information about powertrain performance. The data can be used to verify emissions law requirements and/or help technicians diagnose and solve service problems. It may also be combined with data from other sources for research purposes, but it remains confidential.

California Perchlorate Contamination Prevention Act

The airbags, seat belt tensioners, and CR type batteries in this vehicle may contain perchlorate materials — special handling may apply. See *www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate/*

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

A Few Words About Safety

Your safety, and the safety of others, is very important. And operating this vehicle safely is an important responsibility.

To help you make informed decisions about safety, we have provided operating procedures and other information on labels and in this manual. This information alerts you to potential hazards that could hurt you or others.

Of course, it is not practical or possible to warn you about all the hazards associated with operating or maintaining your vehicle. You must use your own good judgement.

You will find this important safety information in a variety of forms, including:

- **Safety Labels** – on the vehicle.
- **Safety Messages** – preceded by a safety alert symbol ⚠ and one of three signal words: **DANGER**, **WARNING**, or **CAUTION**. These signal words mean:

⚠ DANGER	You WILL be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.
⚠ WARNING	You CAN be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.
⚠ CAUTION	You CAN be HURT if you don't follow instructions.

- **Safety Headings** – such as Important Safety Reminders or Important Safety Precautions.
- **Safety Section** – such as Driver and Passenger Safety.
- **Instructions** – how to use this vehicle correctly and safely.

This entire book is filled with important safety information – please read it carefully.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

2011 TL Online Reference Owner's Manual

Contents

Owner's Identification Form

Your Vehicle at a Glance (main controls) 3

Driver and Passenger Safety (seat belts, SRS, and child protection) 5

Instruments and Controls (indicators, gauges, multi-information display, dashboard, and steering column) 61

Features (climate control, audio, steering wheel, security, cruise control, HomeLink®, and other convenience items) 215

Before Driving (fuel, vehicle break-in, and cargo loading) 443

Driving (engine and transmission operation) 459

Maintenance (minder, fluid checking, minor services, and vehicle storage) 495

Taking Care of the Unexpected (flat tire, jump starting, overheating, and fuses) 547

Technical Information (vehicle specifications, tires, and emissions controls) 577

Warranty and Client Relations (U.S. and Canada only) (warranty and contact information) 595

Authorized Manuals (U.S. only) (how to order) 599

Index I

Service Information Summary (fluid capacities and tire pressures)

00X31-TK4-6200
© 2010 American Honda Motor Co., Inc. - All Rights Reserved

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Main Menu

Overview of Contents

Contents
A convenient reference to the sections in this manual.

Your Vehicle at a Glance
A quick reference to the main controls in your vehicle.

Driver and Passenger Safety
Important information about the proper use and care of your vehicle's seat belts, an overview of the supplemental restraint system, and valuable information on how to protect children with child restraints.

Instruments and Controls
Explains the purpose of each instrument panel indicator and gauge, the multi-information display, and how to use the controls on the dashboard and steering column.

Features
How to operate the climate control system, the audio system, and other convenience features.

Before Driving
What gasoline to use, how to break-in your new vehicle, and how to load luggage and other cargo.

Driving
The proper way to start the engine, shift the transmission, and park.

Maintenance
The Maintenance Minder™ shows you when you need to take your vehicle to the dealer for maintenance service. There is also a list of things to check and instructions on how to check them.

Taking Care of the Unexpected
This section covers several problems motorists sometimes experience, and details how to handle them.

Technical Information
ID numbers, dimensions, capacities, and technical information.

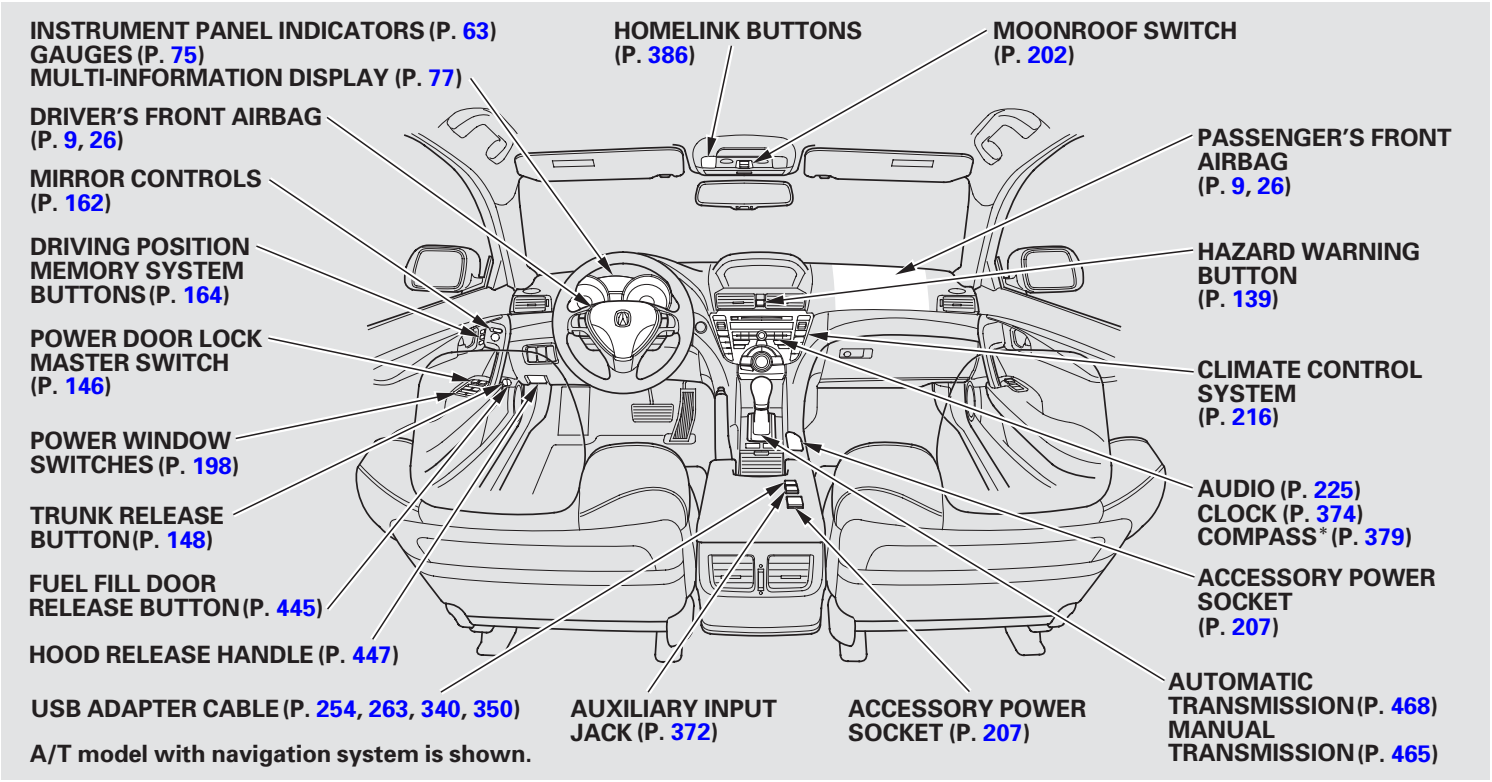
Warranty and Client Relations
(U.S. and Canada only)
A summary of the warranties covering your new vehicle, and how to contact us for any reason. Refer to your warranty manual for detailed information.

Authorized Manuals
(U.S. only)
How to order manuals and other technical literature.

Index

Service Information Summary
A summary of the information you need when you pull up to the fuel pump.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

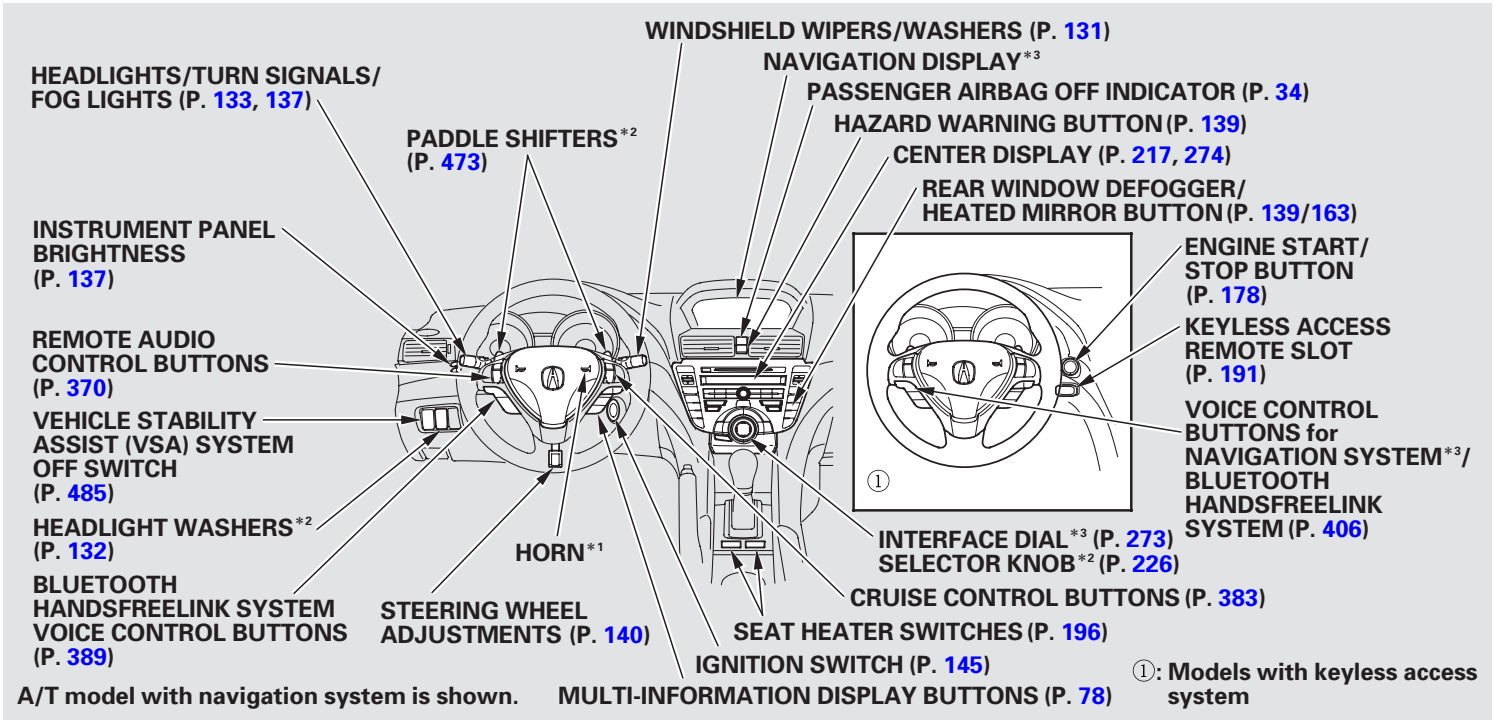

INSTRUMENT PANEL INDICATORS (P. 63)
GAUGES (P. 75)
MULTI-INFORMATION DISPLAY (P. 77)
HOMELINK BUTTONS (P. 386)
MOONROOF SWITCH (P. 202)
DRIVER'S FRONT AIRBAG (P. 9, 26)
PASSENGER'S FRONT AIRBAG (P. 9, 26)
MIRROR CONTROLS (P. 162)
DRIVING POSITION MEMORY SYSTEM BUTTONS (P. 164)
HAZARD WARNING BUTTON (P. 139)
POWER DOOR LOCK MASTER SWITCH (P. 146)
CLIMATE CONTROL SYSTEM (P. 216)
POWER WINDOW SWITCHES (P. 198)
AUDIO (P. 225)
CLOCK (P. 374)
COMPASS* (P. 379)
TRUNK RELEASE BUTTON (P. 148)
ACCESSORY POWER SOCKET (P. 207)
FUEL FILL DOOR RELEASE BUTTON (P. 445)
HOOD RELEASE HANDLE (P. 447)
AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION (P. 468)
MANUAL TRANSMISSION (P. 465)
USB ADAPTER CABLE (P. 254, 263, 340, 350)
AUXILIARY INPUT JACK (P. 372)
ACCESSORY POWER SOCKET (P. 207)
A/T model with navigation system is shown.

∗ : If equipped

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Main Menu

Your Vehicle at a Glance


WINDSHIELD WIPERS/WASHERS (P. 131)
NAVIGATION DISPLAY*3
HEADLIGHTS/TURN SIGNALS/ FOG LIGHTS (P. 133, 137)
PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF INDICATOR (P. 34)
HAZARD WARNING BUTTON (P. 139)
PADDLE SHIFTERS*2 (P. 473)
CENTER DISPLAY (P. 217, 274)
REAR WINDOW DEFOGGER/ HEATED MIRROR BUTTON (P. 139/163)
INSTRUMENT PANEL BRIGHTNESS (P. 137)
ENGINE START/ STOP BUTTON (P. 178)
KEYLESS ACCESS REMOTE SLOT (P. 191)
REMOTE AUDIO CONTROL BUTTONS (P. 370)
VOICE CONTROL BUTTONS for NAVIGATION SYSTEM*3/ BLUETOOTH HANDSFREELINK SYSTEM (P. 406)
VEHICLE STABILITY ASSIST (VSA) SYSTEM OFF SWITCH (P. 485)
INTERFACE DIAL*3 (P. 273)
SELECTOR KNOB*2 (P. 226)
HEADLIGHT WASHERS*2 (P. 132)
HORN*1
BLUETOOTH HANDSFREELINK SYSTEM VOICE CONTROL BUTTONS (P. 389)
CRUISE CONTROL BUTTONS (P. 383)
STEERING WHEEL ADJUSTMENTS (P. 140)
SEAT HEATER SWITCHES (P. 196)
IGNITION SWITCH (P. 145)
MULTI-INFORMATION DISPLAY BUTTONS (P. 78)
A/T model with navigation system is shown.
①: Models with keyless access system

* 1 : To use the horn, press the center pad of the steering wheel.
* 2 : If equipped
* 3 : Refer to the navigation system owner's manual.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Driver and Passenger Safety

This section gives you important information about how to protect yourself and your passengers. It shows you how to use seat belts. It explains how your airbags work. And it tells you how to properly restrain infants and children in your vehicle.

Important Safety Precautions 6
Your Vehicle's Safety Features..... 7
Seat Belts 8
Airbags 9
Protecting Adults and Teens..... 11
1. Close and Lock the Doors 11
2. Adjust the Front Seats 13
3. Adjust the Seat-Backs 14
4. Adjust the Head Restraints 15
5. Fasten and Position the Seat Belts 16
6. Maintain a Proper Sitting Position 18
Advice for Pregnant Women..... 18
Additional Safety Precautions.... 19
Additional Information About Your Seat Belts 20
Seat Belt System Components... 20
Lap/Shoulder Belt 21
Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners 22
Seat Belt Maintenance 23
Additional Information About Your Airbags 24
Airbag System Components..... 24
How Your Front Airbags Work..... 26
How Your Side Airbags Work.... 30
How Your Side Curtain Airbags Work..... 32
How the SRS Indicator Works... 32
How the Side Airbag Off Indicator Works..... 33
How the Passenger Airbag Off Indicator Works..... 34
Airbag Service..... 35
Additional Safety Precautions.... 36
Protecting Children — General Guidelines..... 37
All Children Must Be Restrained 37
All Children Should Sit in a Back Seat 38
The Passenger's Front Airbag Can Pose Serious Risks 38
If You Must Drive with Several Children 40
If a Child Requires Close Attention 40
Additional Safety Precautions.... 40
Protecting Infants and Small Children 42
Protecting Infants..... 42
Protecting Small Children 43
Selecting a Child Seat..... 45
Installing a Child Seat 46
With LATCH..... 47
With a Lap/Shoulder Belt 49
With a Tether..... 51
Protecting Larger Children 53
Checking Seat Belt Fit 53
Using a Booster Seat..... 54
When Can a Larger Child Sit in Front..... 55
Additional Safety Precautions.... 56
Carbon Monoxide Hazard 57
Safety Labels..... 58

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Important Safety Precautions

You'll find many safety recommendations throughout this section, and throughout this manual. The recommendations on this page are the ones we consider to be the most important.

Always Wear Your Seat Belt
A seat belt is your best protection in all types of collisions. Airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. So even though your vehicle is equipped with airbags, make sure you and your passengers always wear your seat belts, and wear them properly (see page 16).

Restrain All Children
Children age 12 and under should ride properly restrained in a back seat, not the front seat. Infants and small children should be restrained in a child seat. Larger children should use a booster seat and a lap/shoulder belt until they can use the belt properly without a booster seat (see pages 37 – 56).

Be Aware of Airbag Hazards
While airbags can save lives, they can cause serious or fatal injuries to occupants who sit too close to them, or are not properly restrained. Infants, young children, and short adults are at the greatest risk. Be sure to follow all instructions and warnings in this manual.

Don't Drink and Drive
Alcohol and driving don't mix. Even one drink can reduce your ability to respond to changing conditions, and your reaction time gets worse with every additional drink. So don't drink and drive, and don't let your friends drink and drive, either.

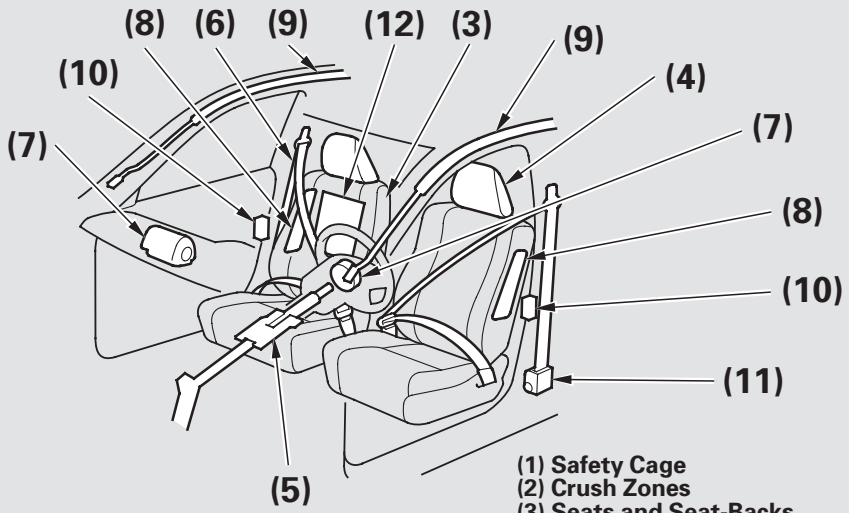
Pay Appropriate Attention to the Task of Driving Safely
Engaging in mobile phone conversation or other activities that keep you from paying close attention to the road, other vehicles and pedestrians could lead to a crash. Remember, situations can change quickly, and only you can decide when it is safe to divert attention away from driving.

Control Your Speed
Excessive speed is a major factor in crash injuries and deaths. Generally, the higher the speed, the greater the risk, but serious injuries can also occur at lower speeds. Never drive faster than is safe for current conditions, regardless of the maximum speed posted.

Keep Your Vehicle in Safe Condition
Having a tire blowout or a mechanical failure can be extremely hazardous. To reduce the possibility of such problems, check your tire pressures and condition frequently, and perform all regularly scheduled maintenance (see page 497).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Your Vehicle's Safety Features



(1) Safety Cage
(2) Crush Zones
(3) Seats and Seat-Backs
(4) Head Restraints
(5) Collapsible Steering Column
(6) Seat Belts
(7) Front Airbags
(8) Side Airbags
(9) Side Curtain Airbags
(10) Door Locks
(11) Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners
(12) Occupant Position Detection System (OPDS) Sensors

Your vehicle is equipped with many features that work together to protect you and your passengers during a crash.

Some features do not require any action on your part. These include a strong steel framework that forms a safety cage around the passenger compartment, front and rear crush zones, a collapsible steering column, and tensioners that tighten the front seat belts in a crash.

However, you and your passengers can't take full advantage of these features unless you remain sitting in the correct position and ***always wear your seat belts***. In fact, some safety features can contribute to injuries if they are not used properly.

The following pages explain how you can take an active role in protecting yourself and your passengers.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Your Vehicle's Safety Features

Seat Belts

Your vehicle is equipped with seat belts in all seating positions.

Your seat belt system also includes an indicator on the instrument panel and a beeper to remind you and your passengers to fasten your seat belts.

Why Wear Seat Belts

Seat belts are the single most effective safety device for adults and larger children. (Infants and smaller children must be properly restrained in child seats.)

Not wearing a seat belt properly increases the chance of serious injury or death in a crash, even though your vehicle has airbags.

In addition, most states and all Canadian provinces and territories require you to wear seat belts.

⚠ WARNING

Not wearing a seat belt properly increases the chance of serious injury or death in a crash, even though your vehicle has airbags.

Be sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts and wear them properly.

When properly worn, seat belts:

- Keep you connected to the vehicle so you can take advantage of the vehicle's built-in safety features.
- Help protect you in almost every type of crash, including:
  - frontal impacts
  - side impacts
  - rear impacts
  - rollovers
- Help keep you from being thrown against the inside of the vehicle and against other occupants.
- Keep you from being thrown out of the vehicle.
- Help keep you in a good position should the airbags ever deploy. A good position reduces the risk of injury from an inflating airbag and allows you to get the best advantage from the airbag.

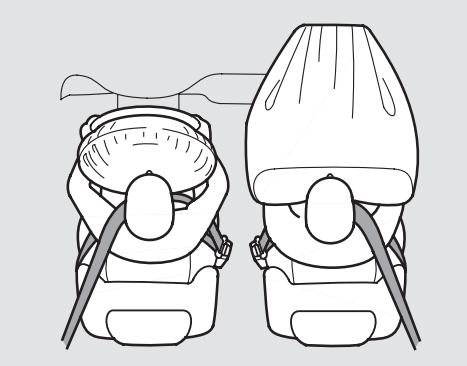
Of course, seat belts cannot completely protect you in every crash. But in most cases, seat belts can reduce your risk of serious injury.

What You Should Do:

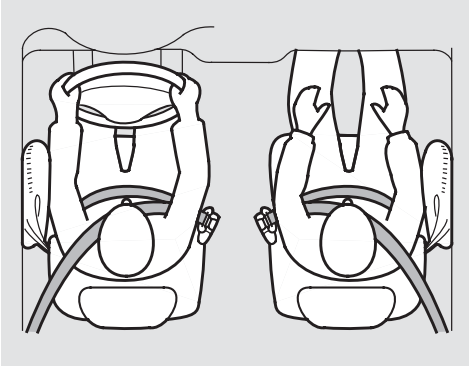
Always wear your seat belt, and make sure you wear it properly.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

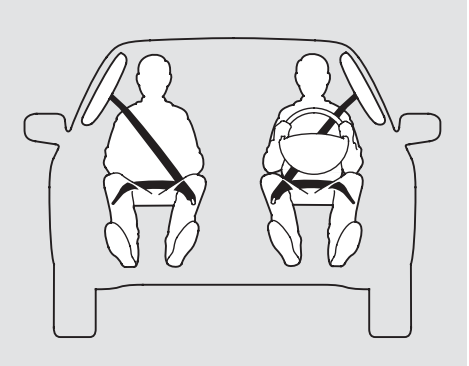
Airbags



Your vehicle has a supplemental restraint system (SRS) with front airbags to help protect the heads and chests of the driver and a front seat passenger during a moderate to severe frontal collision (see page 26 for more information on how your front airbags work).



Your vehicle also has side airbags to help protect the upper torso of the driver or a front seat passenger during a moderate to severe side impact (see page 30 for more information on how your side airbags work).



In addition, your vehicle has side curtain airbags to help protect the heads of the driver, front passenger, and passengers in the outer rear seating positions during a moderate to severe side impact (see page 32 for more information on how your side curtain airbags work).

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Your Vehicle's Safety Features

The most important things you need to know about your airbags are:

- ***Airbags do not replace seat belts.*** They are designed to supplement the seat belts.
- ***Airbags offer no protection in rear collisions, or minor frontal or side collisions.***
- ***Airbags can pose serious hazards.*** To do their job, airbags must inflate with tremendous force. So while airbags help save lives, they can cause minor injuries or more serious or even fatal injuries if occupants are not properly restrained or sitting properly.

What you should do: Always wear your seat belt properly, and sit upright and as far back from the steering wheel as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle. A front passenger should move their seat as far back from the dashboard as possible.

The rest of this section gives more detailed information about how you can maximize your safety.

Remember however, that no safety system can prevent all injures or deaths that can occur in a severe crash, even when seat belts are properly worn and the airbags deploy.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Introduction

The following pages provide instructions on how to properly protect the driver, adult passengers and teenage children who are large enough and mature enough to drive or ride in the front seat.

See pages 37 – 56 for important guidelines on how to properly protect infants, small children, and larger children who ride in your vehicle.

1. Close and Lock the Doors

After everyone has entered the vehicle, be sure the doors are closed and locked.

Your vehicle has a door/trunk open indicator (red) on the instrument panel to indicate when any door or the trunk lid is not tightly closed.

See page 146 for how to lock the doors, and page 71 for how the door/trunk open indicator works.

Your vehicle also has a door and trunk open indicator on the multi-information display to indicate when a specific door or the trunk is not tightly closed. You will see the appropriate indicator(s) for each condition.

You will also hear a beep when you turn the ignition switch* to the ON (II) position, and each time you open any door or the trunk with the key in the ON (II) position.

* : Models equipped with the keyless access system have an engine start/stop button instead of an ignition switch. ON Mode is the equivalent of ON (II). For more information, see pages 178 and 181 .

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Protecting Adults and Teens

If any door or the trunk is not closed tightly, the multi-information display reminds you to close the open door(s) or the trunk before you start driving.

The above illustration shows that all doors and the trunk are open.

When the trunk is not tightly closed, the “TRUNK OPEN” indicator will come on.

When one or more doors or the trunk lid are not tightly closed, the corresponding indicator for each condition will come on.

The above example shows the front right and rear left doors, and the trunk open.

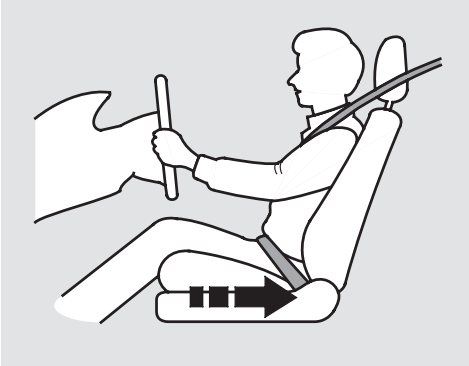
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Locking the doors reduces the chance of someone being thrown out of the vehicle during a crash, and it helps prevent passengers from accidentally opening a door and falling out.

Locking the doors also helps prevent an outsider from unexpectedly opening a door when you come to a stop.

Your vehicle has the auto door locking/unlocking feature. For more information, see page 121 .

2.Adjust the Front Seats



Adjust the driver's seat as far to the rear as possible while allowing you to maintain full control of the vehicle. Have a front passenger adjust their seat as far to the rear as possible.

If you sit too close to the steering wheel or dashboard, you can be seriously injured by an inflating front airbag, or by striking the steering wheel or dashboard.

The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration and Transport Canada recommend that drivers allow at least 10 inches (25 cm) between the center of the steering wheel and the chest. In addition to adjusting the seat, you can adjust the steering wheel up and down, and in and out (see page 140).

If you cannot get far enough away from the steering wheel and still reach the controls, we recommend that you investigate whether some type of adaptive equipment may help.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Protecting Adults and Teens

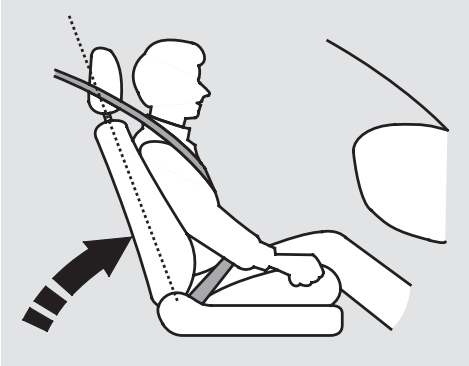
⚠ WARNING

Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious injury or death if the front airbags inflate.

Always sit as far back from the front airbags as possible.

See page 155 for how to adjust the front seats.

3. Adjust the Seat-Backs



Adjust the driver's seat-back to a comfortable, upright position, leaving ample space between your chest and the airbag cover in the center of the steering wheel.

Passengers with adjustable seat-backs should also adjust their seat-back to a comfortable, upright position.

⚠ WARNING

Reclining the seat-back too far can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

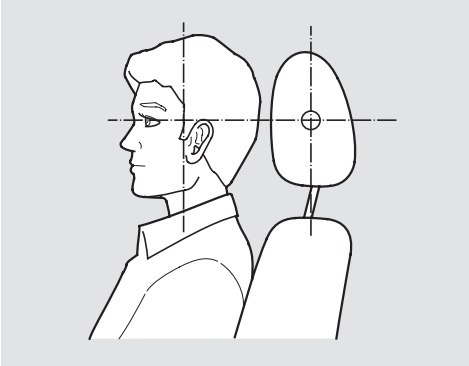
Adjust the seat-back to an upright position, and sit well back in the seat.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Reclining a seat-back so that the shoulder part of the belt no longer rests against the occupant's chest reduces the protective capability of the belt. It also increases the chance of sliding under the belt in a crash and being seriously injured. The farther a seat-back is reclined, the greater the risk of injury.

See page 155 for how to adjust the seat-backs.

4.Adjust the Head Restraints



Adjust the driver's head restraint so the center of the back of your head rests against the center of the restraint.

Have passengers adjust their head restraints properly as well. Taller persons should adjust their restraint as high as possible.

⚠ WARNING

Improperly positioning head restraints reduces their effectiveness and you can be seriously injured in a crash.

Make sure head restraints are in place and positioned properly before driving.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Protecting Adults and Teens

Properly adjusted head restraints will help protect occupants from whiplash and other crash injuries.

See page 157 for how to adjust the head restraints and how the driver's and front passenger's active head restraints work.

5. Fasten and Position the Seat Belts

Insert the latch plate into the buckle, then tug on the belt to make sure the belt is securely latched. Check that the belt is not twisted, because a twisted belt can cause serious injuries in a crash.

Position the lap part of the belt as low as possible across your hips, then pull up on the shoulder part of the belt so the lap part fits snugly. This lets your strong pelvic bones take the force of a crash and reduces the chance of internal injuries.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

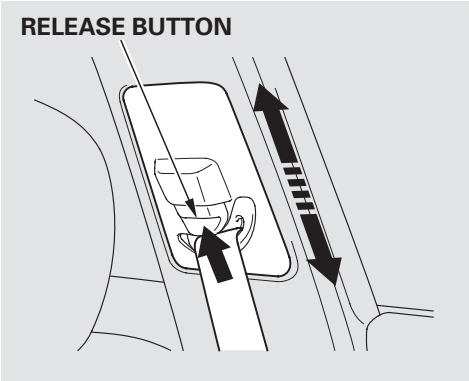
If necessary, pull up on the belt again to remove any slack, then check that the belt rests across the center of your chest and over your shoulder. This spreads the forces of a crash over the strongest bones in your upper body.

⚠ WARNING

Improperly positioning the seat belts can cause serious injury or death in a crash.

Make sure all seat belts are properly positioned before driving.

If the seat belt touches or crosses your neck, or if it crosses your arm instead of your shoulder, you need to adjust the seat belt anchor height.



The front seats have adjustable seat belt anchors. To adjust the height of an anchor, press and hold the release button and slide the anchor up or down as needed (it has four positions).

Never place the shoulder portion of a lap/shoulder belt under your arm or behind your back. This could cause very serious injuries in a crash.

If a seat belt does not seem to work properly, it may not protect the occupant in a crash.

No one should sit in a seat with an inoperative seat belt. Using a seat belt that is not working properly can result in serious injury or death. Have your dealer check the belt as soon as possible.

See page 20 for additional information about your seat belts and how to take care of them.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Protecting Adults and Teens

6. Maintain a Proper Sitting Position

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and head restraints, and put on their seat belts, it is very important that they continue to sit upright, well back in their seats, with their feet on the floor, until the vehicle is safely parked and the engine is off.

Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury during a crash. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash is greatly increased.

In addition, an occupant who is out of position in the front seat can be seriously or fatally injured in a crash by striking interior parts of the vehicle or being struck by an inflating front airbag.

⚠ WARNING

Sitting improperly or out of position can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

Always sit upright, well back in the seat, with your feet on the floor.

Advice for Pregnant Women

If you are pregnant, the best way to protect yourself and your unborn child when driving or riding in a vehicle is to always wear a seat belt, and keep the lap part of the belt as low as possible across the hips.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

When driving, remember to sit upright and adjust the seat as far back as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle. When riding as a front passenger, adjust the seat as far back as possible.

This will reduce the risk of injuries to both you and your unborn child that can be caused by a crash or an inflating front airbag.

Each time you have a checkup, ask your doctor if it's okay for you to drive.

Additional Safety Precautions

- ***Two people should never use the same seat belt.*** If they do, they could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- ***Do not put any accessories on seat belts.*** Devices intended to improve occupant comfort or reposition the shoulder part of a seat belt can reduce the protective capability of the belt and increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.
- ***Do not place hard or sharp objects between yourself and a front airbag.*** Carrying hard or sharp objects on your lap, or driving with a pipe or other sharp object in your mouth, can result in injuries if your airbags inflate.
- ***Do not attach or place objects on the front airbag covers.*** Objects on the covers marked "SRS AIRBAG" could interfere with the proper operation of the airbags or be propelled inside the vehicle and hurt someone if the airbags inflate.
- ***Keep your hands and arms away from the airbag covers.*** If your hands or arms are close to an airbag cover, they could be injured if the airbags inflate.
- ***Do not attach hard objects on or near a door.*** If a side airbag or a side curtain airbag inflates, a cup holder or other hard object attached on or near the door could be propelled inside the vehicle and hurt someone.
- ***Do not cover or replace front seat-back covers without consulting your dealer.*** Improperly replacing or covering front seat-back covers can prevent your side airbags from inflating during a side impact.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Additional Information About Your Seat Belts

Seat Belt System Components
Your seat belt system includes lap/shoulder belts in all seating positions. The front seat belts are also equipped with automatic seat belt tensioners.

The seat belt system includes an indicator on the instrument panel and a beeper to remind you and your passengers to fasten your seat belts.

This system monitors the front seat belts. If you turn the ignition switch* to the ON (II) position before your seat belt is fastened, the beeper will sound and the indicator will flash. If your seat belt is not fastened before the beeper stops, the indicator will stop flashing but remain on.

You will also see a "FASTEN SEAT BELT" message on the multi-information display.

If a front passenger does not fasten their seat belt, the indicator will come on about 6 seconds after the ignition switch* is turned to the ON (II) position.

If either the driver or a front passenger does not fasten their seat belt while driving, the beeper will sound and the indicator will flash again at regular intervals.

You will also see a "FASTEN SEAT BELT" or "FASTEN PASSENGER SEAT BELT" message on the multi-information display.

When no one is sitting in the front passenger's seat, or a child or small adult is riding there, the indicator should not come on and the beeper should not sound.

* : Models equipped with the keyless access system have an engine start/stop button instead of an ignition switch. ON Mode is the equivalent of ON (II). For more information, see pages 178 and 181 .

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If the indicator comes on or the beeper sounds when the driver's seat belt is latched and there is no front seat passenger and no items on the front seat, something may be interfering with the monitoring system. Look for and remove:

- Any items under the front passenger's seat.
- Any object(s) hanging on the seat or in the seat-back pocket.
- Any object(s) touching the rear of the seat-back.

If no obstructions are found, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Lap/Shoulder Belt

The lap/shoulder belt goes over your shoulder, across your chest, and across your hips.

To fasten the belt, insert the latch plate into the buckle, then tug on the belt to make sure the buckle is latched (see page 16 for how to properly position the belt).

To unlock the belt, press the red PRESS button on the buckle. Guide the belt across your body so that it retracts completely. After exiting the vehicle, be sure the belt is out of the way and will not get closed in the door.

All seat belts have an emergency locking retractor. In normal driving, the retractor lets you move freely in your seat while it keeps some tension on the belt. During a collision or sudden stop, the retractor automatically locks the belt to help restrain your body.

The seat belts in all positions except the driver's have a lockable retractor that must be activated to secure a child seat (see page 49).

If the shoulder part of the belt is pulled all the way out, the lockable retractor will activate. The belt will retract, but it will not allow the passenger to move freely.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Additional Information About Your Seat Belts

To deactivate the lockable retractor, unlatch the buckle and let the seat belt fully retract. To refasten the seat belt, pull it out only as far as needed.

Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners

For added protection, the front seat belts are equipped with automatic seat belt tensioners. When activated, the tensioners immediately tighten the belts to help hold the driver and a front passenger in position.

The tensioners can be activated during a collision in which the front airbags *do not deploy*. In this case, the airbags would not be needed, but the additional restraint could be helpful.

If the tensioner is activated, the SRS indicator comes on and the tensioner must be replaced.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Additional Information About Your Seat Belts

Seat Belt Maintenance
For safety, you should check the condition of your seat belts regularly.

Pull each belt out fully, and look for frays, cuts, burns, and wear. Check that the latches work smoothly and the belts retract easily. If a belt does not retract easily, cleaning the belt may correct the problem (see page 530). Any belt that is not in good condition or working properly will not provide good protection and should be replaced as soon as possible.

Acura provides a limited warranty on seat belts. See your *Acura Warranty Information* booklet for details.

If a seat belt is worn during a crash, it must be replaced by your dealer. A belt that has been worn during a crash may not provide the same level of protection in a subsequent crash.

The dealer should also inspect the anchors for damage and replace them if needed. If the automatic seat belt tensioners activate during a crash, they must be replaced.

⚠ WARNING

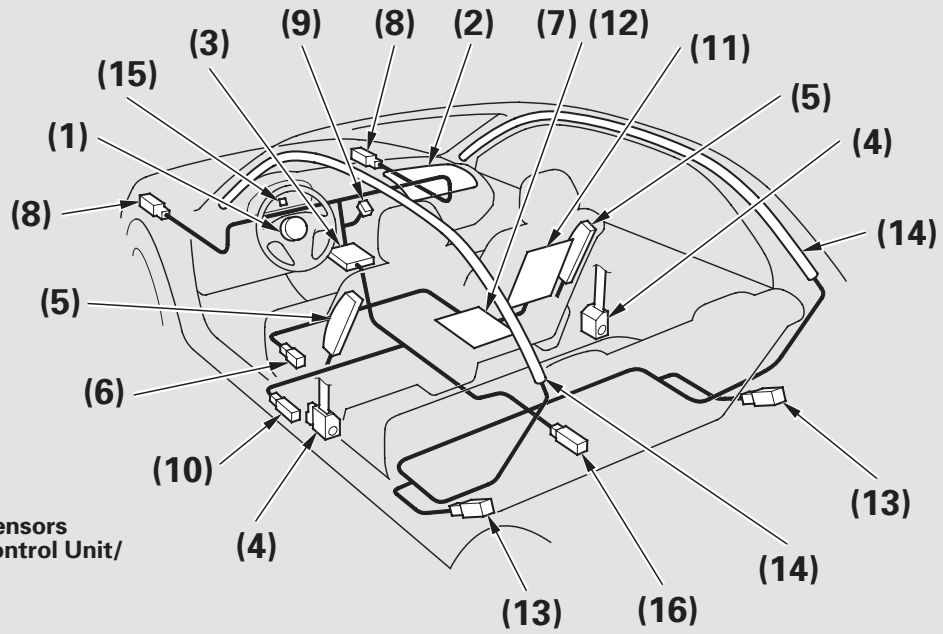
Not checking or maintaining seat belts can result in serious injury or death if the seat belts do not work properly when needed.

Check your seat belts regularly and have any problem corrected as soon as possible.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Additional Information About Your Airbags

Airbag System Components



(1) Driver's Front Airbag
(2) Passenger's Front Airbag
(3) Control Unit
(4) Front Seat Belt Tensioners
(5) Side Airbags
(6) Driver's Seat Position Sensor
(7) Front Passenger's Weight Sensors
(8) Front Impact Sensors
(9) Passenger Airbag Off Indicator
(10) Side Impact Sensors (First)
(11) Occupant Detection System (ODS) Sensors
(12) Front Passenger's Weight Sensors Control Unit/ ODS Sensors Control Unit
(13) Side Impact Sensors (Second)
(14) Side Curtain Airbags
(15) Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) Indicator
(16) Safing Sensor

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Additional Information About Your Airbags

Your airbag system includes:

- Two SRS (supplemental restraint system) front airbags. The driver's airbag is stored in the center of the steering wheel; the front passenger's airbag is stored in the dashboard. Both are marked "SRS AIRBAG" (see page 26).
- Two side airbags, one for the driver and one for a front passenger. The airbags are stored in the outer edges of the seat-backs. Both are marked "SIDE AIRBAG" (see page 30).
- Two side curtain airbags, one for each side of the vehicle. The airbags are stored in the ceiling, above the side windows. The front and rear pillars are marked "SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG" (see page 32).
- Automatic front seat belt tensioners (see page 22).
- Sensors that can detect a moderate to severe front impact or side impact.
- Sensors that can detect whether a child is in the passenger's side airbag path and signal the control unit to turn the airbag off (see page 31).
- Sensors that can detect whether the driver's seat belt and the front passenger's seat belt are latched or unlatched (see page 20).
- A driver's seat position sensor that monitors the distance of the seat from the front airbag. If the seat is too far forward, the airbag will inflate with less force (see page 29).
- Weight sensors that monitor the weight on the front passenger's seat. If the weight is about 65 lbs (29 kg) or less (the weight of an infant or small child), the passenger's front airbag will be turned off (see page 29).

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

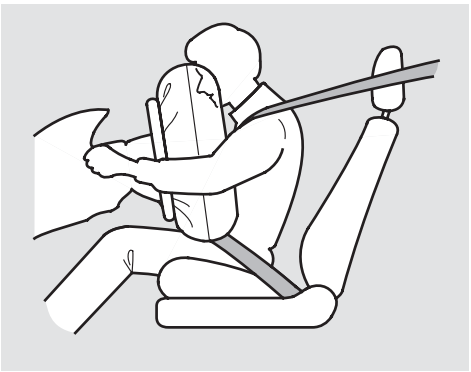
Additional Information About Your Airbags

- A sophisticated electronic system that continually monitors and records information about the sensors, the control unit, the airbag activators, the seat belt tensioners, and driver and front passenger seat belt use when the ignition switch* is in the ON (II) position.

* : Models equipped with the keyless access system have an engine start/stop button instead of an ignition switch. ON Mode is the equivalent of ON (II). For more information, see pages 178 and 181 .

- An indicator on the instrument panel that alerts you to a possible problem with your airbag system components (see page 32).
- An indicator on the instrument panel that alerts you that the passenger's side airbag has been turned off (see page 33).
- An indicator on the dashboard that alerts you that the passenger's front airbag has been turned off (see page 34).
- Emergency backup power in case your vehicle's electrical system is disconnected in a crash.

How Your Front Airbags Work



If you ever have a moderate to severe frontal collision, sensors will detect the vehicle's rapid deceleration.

If the rate of deceleration is high enough, the control unit will inflate the driver's and front passenger's airbags, at the time and with the force needed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

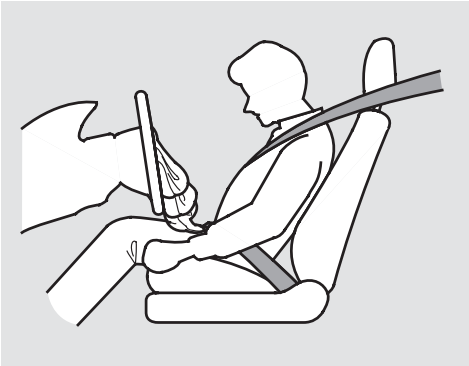
Additional Information About Your Airbags

During a frontal crash, your seat belt restrains your lower body and torso, and the front airbag helps protect your head and chest.

Although both airbags normally inflate within a split second of each other, it is possible for only one airbag to deploy.

This can happen if the severity of a collision is at the margin, or threshold, that determines whether or not the airbags will deploy. In such cases, the seat belt will provide sufficient protection, and the supplemental protection offered by the airbag would be minimal.

Only the driver's airbag can deploy if there is no passenger in the front seat, or if the advanced airbag system has turned the passenger's airbag off (see page 34).



After inflating, the front airbags immediately deflate, so they won't interfere with the driver's visibility, or the ability to steer or operate other controls.

The total time for inflation and deflation is one-tenth of a second, so fast that most occupants are not aware that the airbags deployed until they see them lying in their laps.

After a crash, you may see what looks like smoke. This is actually powder from the airbag's surface. Although the powder is not harmful, people with respiratory problems may experience some temporary discomfort. If this occurs, get out of the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Additional Information About Your Airbags

Dual-Stage, Multiple-Threshold Front Airbags (SRS)
Your vehicle is equipped with dual-stage, multiple-threshold front airbags (SRS). During a frontal crash severe enough to cause one or both front airbags to deploy, the airbags can inflate at different rates, depending on the severity of the crash, whether or not the seat belts are latched, and/or other factors. Front airbags are designed to supplement the seat belts to help reduce the likelihood of head and chest injuries in frontal crashes.

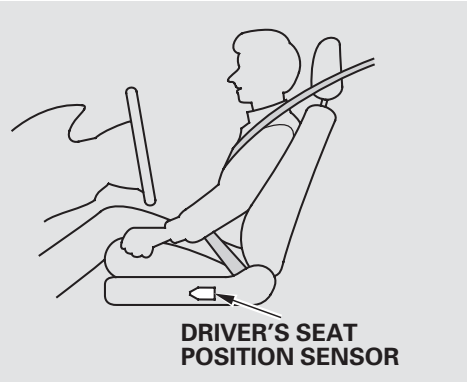
Advanced Airbags
Your front airbags are also advanced airbags. The main purpose of this feature is to help prevent airbag-caused injuries to short drivers and children or small-statured adults who ride in front.

For both advanced airbags to work properly:

- Occupants must sit upright and wear their seat belts properly.
- Do not spill any liquids on or under the seats, cover the sensors, or put any cargo or metal objects under the front seats.
- Objects placed or pushed under the front passenger's seat may cause the sensor to malfunction, increasing the risk of injury in a crash.

Failure to follow these instructions could damage the sensors or prevent them from working properly.

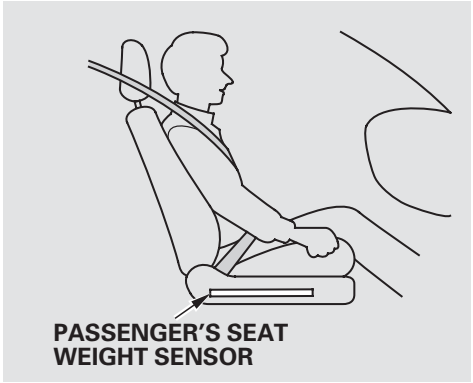
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



DRIVER'S SEAT POSITION SENSOR

The driver's advanced front airbag system includes a seat position sensor under the seat. If the seat is too far forward, the airbag will inflate with less force, regardless of the severity of the impact.

If there is a problem with the sensor, the SRS indicator will come on, and the airbag will inflate in the normal manner regardless of the driver's seating position.



PASSENGER'S SEAT WEIGHT SENSOR

The passenger's advanced front airbag system has weight sensors under the seat. Although Acura does not encourage carrying an infant or small child in front, if the sensors detect the weight of an infant or small child (up to about 65 lbs or 29 kg), the system will automatically turn the passenger's front airbag off.

Be aware that objects placed on the passenger's seat can also cause the airbag to be turned off.

When the passenger airbag gets turned off by the weight sensors, a "passenger airbag off" indicator in the center of the dashboard comes on (see page 34).

If the weight sensors detect there is no passenger in the front seat, the airbag is automatically turned off. However, the passenger airbag off indicator in this situation will not come on.

CONTINUED

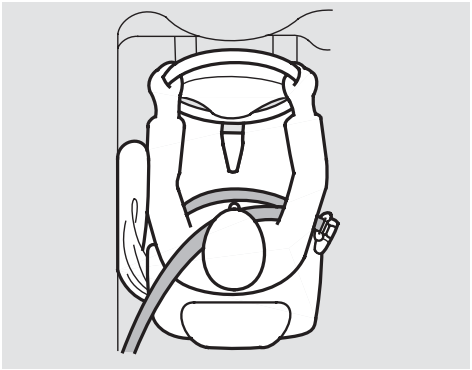
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Additional Information About Your Airbags

To ensure that the passenger's advanced front airbag system will work properly, ***do not do anything that would increase or decrease the weight on the front passenger's seat.*** This includes:

- A rear passenger pushing or pulling on the back of the front passenger's seat.
- Moving the front seat or seat-back forcibly back against cargo on the seat or floor behind it.
- Hanging heavy items on the front passenger seat, or placing heavy items in the seat-back pocket.
- Back seat passengers should not wedge objects or intentionally force their feet under the front passenger seat.
- Also, make sure the floor mat behind the front passenger's seat is hooked to the floor mat anchor (see page 529). If it is not, the mat may interfere with the proper operation of the sensors and operation of the seat.

How Your Side Airbags Work



If you ever have a moderate to severe side impact, sensors will detect rapid acceleration and signal the control unit to instantly inflate either the driver's or the passenger's side airbag.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Only one airbag will deploy during a side impact. If the impact is on the passenger's side, the passenger's side airbag will deploy even if there is no passenger.

To get the best protection from the side airbags, front seat occupants should wear their seat belts and sit upright and well back in their seats.

Side Airbag Cutoff System

Your vehicle has a side airbag cutoff system designed primarily to protect a child riding in the front passenger's seat.

Although Acura does not encourage children to ride in front, if the position sensors detect a child has leaned into the side airbag's deployment path, the airbag will shut off.

The side airbag may also shut off if a short adult leans sideways, or a larger adult slouches and leans sideways into the airbag's deployment path.

Objects placed on the front passenger seat can also cause the side airbag to be shut off.

If the side airbag off indicator comes on (see page 33), have the passenger sit upright. Once the passenger is out of the airbag's deployment path, the system will turn the airbag back on, and the indicator will go out.

There will be some delay between the moment the passenger moves into or out of the airbag deployment path and when the indicator comes on or goes off.

A front seat passenger should not use a cushion or another object as a backrest. It may prevent the cutoff system from working properly.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Additional Information About Your Airbags

How Your Side Curtain Airbags Work

In a moderate to severe side impact, sensors will detect rapid acceleration and signal the control unit to instantly inflate the side curtain airbag.

If the impact is on the passenger's side, the passenger's side curtain airbag will inflate even if there are no occupants on that side of the vehicle.

One or both side curtain airbags may inflate in a moderate to severe frontal collision which causes the front airbags to deploy.

To get the best protection from the side curtain airbags, occupants should wear their seat belts and sit upright and well back in their seats.

How the SRS Indicator Works

The SRS indicator alerts you to a potential problem with your airbag system components.

When you turn the ignition switch* to the ON (II) position, this indicator comes on briefly then goes off. This tells you the system is working properly.

* : Models equipped with the keyless access system have an engine start/stop button instead of an ignition switch. ON Mode is the equivalent of ON (II). For more information, see pages 178 and 181.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If the indicator comes on at any other time, or does not come on at all, you should have the system checked by your dealer. For example:

- If the SRS indicator does not come on after you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position or on models with keyless access system, press the engine start/ stop button to set ON mode (see page 181).
- If the indicator stays on after the engine starts.
- If the indicator comes on or flashes on and off while you drive.

You will also see a “CHECK AIRBAG SYSTEM” message on the multi-information display.

If you see any of these indications, the airbag system components may not work properly when you need them.

⚠WARNING

Ignoring the SRS indicator can result in serious injury or death if the airbag systems or tensioners do not work properly.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible if the SRS indicator alerts you to a possible problem.

U. S. Canada

How the Side Airbag Off Indicator Works

This indicator alerts you that the passenger’s side airbag has been automatically shut off. It does ***not*** mean there is a problem with your side airbags.

When you turn the ignition switch* to the ON (II) position, the indicator should come on briefly and then go out (see page 67). If it doesn’t come on, stays on, or comes on while driving without a passenger in the front seat, have the system checked.

You will also see a “PASSENGER SIDE AIRBAG OFF” message on the multi-information display.

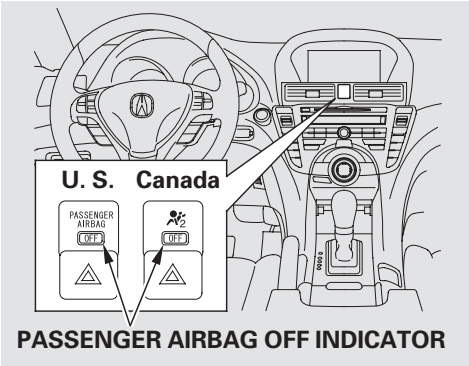
* : Models equipped with the keyless access system have an engine start/stop button instead of an ignition switch. ON Mode is the equivalent of ON (II). For more information, see pages 178 and 181 .

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Additional Information About Your Airbags

How the Passenger Airbag Off Indicator Works



PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF INDICATOR

This indicator alerts you that the passenger's front airbag has been shut off because weight sensors detect about 65 lbs (29 kg) or less (the weight of an infant or small child) on the front passenger's seat. It does ***not mean*** there is a problem with the airbag.

Be aware that objects placed on the front seat can cause the indicator to come on.

If no weight is detected on the front seat, the airbag will be automatically shut off. However, the indicator will not come on.

The passenger airbag off indicator may come on and off repeatedly if the total weight on the seat is near the airbag cutoff threshold.

If an adult or teenage passenger is riding in front, move the seat as far to the rear as possible, and have the passenger sit upright and wear the seat belt properly.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If the indicator comes on with no front seat passenger and no objects on the seat, or with an adult riding there, something may be interfering with the weight sensors. Look for and remove:

- Any items under the front passenger's seat.
- Any object hanging on the seat or in the seat-back pocket.
- Any object(s) touching the rear of the seat-back.

If no obstructions are found, have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

Airbag Service

Your airbag systems are virtually maintenance free, and there are no parts you can safely service. However, you must have your vehicle serviced if:

- ***An airbag ever inflates.*** Any airbag that has deployed must be replaced along with the control unit and other related parts. Any seat belt tensioner that activates must also be replaced.

  Do not try to remove or replace any airbag by yourself. This must be done by an authorized dealer or a knowledgeable body shop.
- ***The SRS indicator alerts you to a problem.*** Take your vehicle to an authorized dealer as soon as possible. If you ignore this indication, your airbags may not operate properly.
- ***If your vehicle has a moderate to severe impact.*** Even if your airbags do not inflate, your dealer should inspect the driver's seat position sensor, the front passenger's weight sensors, the front seat belt tensioners, and all seat belts and their anchors worn during a crash to make sure they are operating properly.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Additional Information About Your Airbags

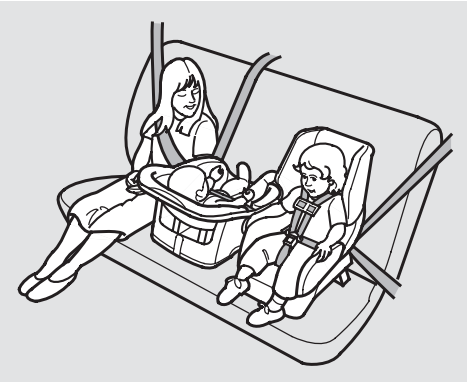
Additional Safety Precautions

- ***Do not attempt to deactivate your airbags.*** Together, airbags and seat belts provide the best protection.
- ***Do not tamper with airbag components or wiring for any reason.*** Tampering could cause the airbags to deploy, possibly causing very serious injury.
- ***Do not expose the front passenger's seat-back to liquid.*** If water or another liquid soaks into a seat-back, it can prevent the side airbag cutoff system from working properly.
- ***Do not remove or modify a front seat without consulting your dealer.*** This could make the driver's seat position sensor or the front passenger's weight sensors ineffective. If it is necessary to remove or modify a front seat to accommodate a person with disabilities, first contact Acura Client Services.

  In the US, call 800-382-2238, and in Canada , call 888-9-ACURA-9.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Protecting Children — General Guidelines



Children depend on adults to protect them. However, despite their best intentions, many adults do not know how to *properly* protect child passengers.

If you have children, or ever need to drive with a child in your vehicle, be sure to read this section. It begins with important general guidelines, then presents special information for infants, small children, and larger children.

All Children Must Be Restrained

Each year, many children are injured or killed in vehicle crashes because they are either unrestrained or not properly restrained. In fact, traffic collisions are the number one cause of death of children age 12 and under.

To reduce the number of child deaths and injuries, every state, Canadian province and territory requires that infants and children be properly restrained when they ride in a vehicle.

Infants and small children must be restrained in an approved child seat that is properly secured to the vehicle (see pages 42 — 52).

⚠ WARNING

Children who are unrestrained or improperly restrained can be seriously injured or killed in a crash.

Any child too small for a seat belt should be properly restrained in a child seat. A larger child should be properly restrained with a seat belt and use a booster seat if necessary.

Larger children must be restrained with a lap/shoulder belt and ride on a booster seat until the seat belt fits them properly (see pages 53 — 56).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Protecting Children – General Guidelines

All Children Should Sit in a Back Seat

According to crash statistics, children of all ages and sizes are safer when they are restrained in a back seat.

The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration and Transport Canada recommend that all children age 12 and under be properly restrained in a back seat. Some states have laws restricting where children may ride.

Children who ride in the back are less likely to be injured by striking interior vehicle parts during a collision or hard braking. Also, children cannot be injured by an inflating front airbag when they ride in the back.

The Passenger's Front Airbag Can Pose Serious Risks

Front airbags have been designed to help protect adults in a moderate to severe frontal collision. To do this, the passenger's front airbag is quite large, and it can inflate with enough force to cause very serious injuries.

Even though your vehicle has an advanced front airbag system that automatically turns the passenger's front airbag off under certain circumstances (see page 34), please follow these guidelines:

Infants

Never put a rear-facing child seat in the front seat of a vehicle equipped with a passenger's front airbag. If the airbag inflates, it can hit the back of the child seat with enough force to kill or very seriously injure an infant.

Small Children

Placing a forward-facing child seat in the front seat of a vehicle equipped with a passenger's front airbag can be hazardous. If the vehicle seat is too far forward, or the child's head is thrown forward during a collision, an inflating front airbag can strike the child with enough force to kill or very seriously injure a small child.

Larger Children

Children who have outgrown child seats are also at risk of being injured or killed by an inflating passenger's front airbag. Whenever possible, larger children should sit in the back seat, on a booster seat if needed, and be properly restrained with a seat belt (see page 53 for important information about protecting larger children).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To remind you of the passenger's front airbag hazards, and that children must be properly restrained in a back seat, your vehicle has warning labels on the dashboard (U.S. models) and on the front visors. Please read and follow the instructions on these labels.

U.S. Models

SUN VISOR

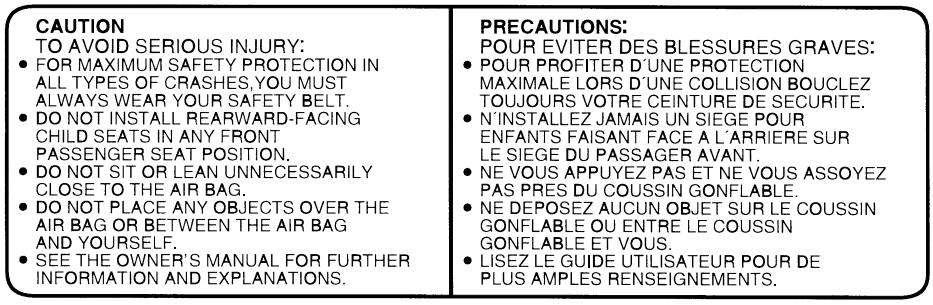
AIR BAG WARNING
FLIP VISOR OVER
WARNING
EVEN WITH ADVANCED AIR BAGS
Children can be killed or seriously injured by the air bag
The back seat is the safest place for children
Never put a rear facing child seat in the front
Always use seat belts and child restraints
See owner's manual for more information about air bags

DASHBOARD

This Vehicle is Equipped with Advanced Air Bags
Even with Advanced Air Bags
Children can be killed or seriously injured by the air bag.
The back seat is the safest place for children.
Never put a rear-facing child seat in the front.
Always use seat belts and child restraints.
See owner's manual for more information about air bags.
To be removed by owner only.

Canadian Models

SUN VISOR


CAUTION
TO AVOID SERIOUS INJURY:
• FOR MAXIMUM SAFETY PROTECTION IN ALL TYPES OF CRASHES,YOU MUST ALWAYS WEAR YOUR SAFETY BELT.
• DO NOT INSTALL REARWARD-FACING CHILD SEATS IN ANY FRONT PASSENGER SEAT POSITION.
• DO NOT SIT OR LEAN UNNECESSARILY CLOSE TO THE AIR BAG.
• DO NOT PLACE ANY OBJECTS OVER THE AIR BAG OR BETWEEN THE AIR BAG AND YOURSELF.
• SEE THE OWNER'S MANUAL FOR FURTHER INFORMATION AND EXPLANATIONS.
PRECAUTIONS:
POUR EVITER DES BLESSURES GRAVES:
• POUR PROFITER D´UNE PROTECTION MAXIMALE LORS D´UNE COLLISION BOUCLEZ TOUJOURS VOTRE CEINTURE DE SECURITE.
• N´INSTALLEZ JAMAIS UN SIEGE POUR ENFANTS FAISANT FACE A L´ARRIERE SUR LE SIEGE DU PASSAGER AVANT.
• NE VOUS APPUYEZ PAS ET NE VOUS ASSOYEZ PAS PRES DU COUSSIN GONFLABLE.
• NE DEPOSEZ AUCUN OBJET SUR LE COUSSIN GONFLABLE OU ENTRE LE COUSSIN GONFLABLE ET VOUS.
• LISEZ LE GUIDE UTILISATEUR POUR DE PLUS AMPLES RENSEIGNEMENTS.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Protecting Children — General Guidelines

If You Must Drive with Several Children

Your vehicle has a back seat where children can be properly restrained. If you ever have to carry a group of children, and a child must ride in front:

- Place the largest child in the front seat, provided the child is large enough to wear the lap/shoulder belt properly (see page 53).
- Move the vehicle seat as far to the rear as possible (see page 155).
- Have the child sit upright and well back in the seat (see page 18).
- Make sure the seat belt is properly positioned and secured (see page 16).

If a Child Requires Close Attention

Many parents say they prefer to put an infant or a small child in the front passenger seat so they can watch the child, or because the child requires attention.

Placing a child in the front seat exposes the child to hazards in a frontal collision, and paying close attention to a child distracts the driver from the important tasks of driving, placing both of you at risk.

If a child requires close physical attention or frequent visual contact, we strongly recommend that another adult ride with the child in the back seat. The back seat is far safer for a child than the front.

Additional Safety Precautions

- ***Never hold an infant or child on your lap.*** If you are not wearing a seat belt in a crash, you could be thrown forward and crush the child against the dashboard or a seat-back. If you are wearing a seat belt, the child can be torn from your arms and be seriously hurt or killed.
- ***Never put a seat belt over yourself and a child.*** During a crash, the belt could press deep into the child and cause serious or fatal injuries.
- ***Never let two children use the same seat belt.*** If they do, they could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- ***Use the childproof door locks to prevent children from opening the rear doors.*** This can prevent children from accidentally falling out (see page 147).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- ***Make sure any unused seat belt that a child can reach is buckled, the lockable retractor is activated, and the belt is fully retracted and locked.*** If a child wraps a loose seat belt around their neck, they can be seriously or fatally injured. (See pages 50 and 51 for how to activate and deactivate the lockable retractor.)

- ***Do not leave children alone in a vehicle.*** Leaving children without adult supervision is illegal in most states, Canadian provinces and territories, and can be very hazardous.

  For example, infants and small children left in a vehicle on a hot day can die from heatstroke. A child left alone with the key in the ignition switch or with the keyless access remote in the vehicle can accidentally set the vehicle in motion, possibly injuring themselves or others.

- ***Lock all doors and the trunk when your vehicle is not in use.*** Children who play in vehicles can accidentally get trapped inside. Teach your children not to play in or around vehicles. Know how to operate the emergency trunk opener and decide if your children should be shown how to use this feature (see page 150).

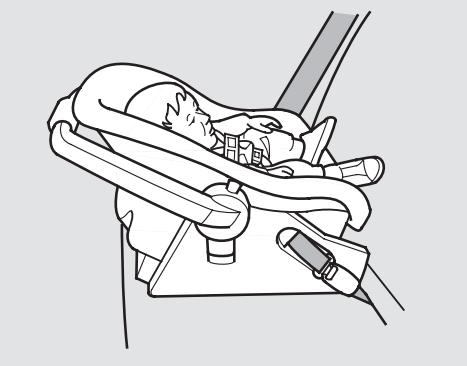
- ***Keep vehicle keys/remote transmitters or keyless access remotes out of the reach of children.*** Even very young children learn how to unlock vehicle doors, turn on the ignition switch*, and open the trunk, which can lead to accidental injury or death.

*: *On models with keyless access system*
Your vehicle has the engine start/stop button instead of an ignition switch. For more information on how to select the power mode, see page 178 .

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Protecting Infants and Small Children

Protecting Infants



Child Seat Type
An infant must be properly restrained in a rear-facing, reclining child seat until the child reaches the seat maker's weight or height limit for the seat, and the child is at least one year old.

Only a rear-facing child seat provides proper support for a baby's head, neck, and back.

Two types of seats may be used: a seat designed exclusively for infants, or a convertible seat used in the rear-facing, reclining mode.

Do not put a rear-facing child seat in a forward-facing position. If placed facing forward, an infant could be very seriously injured during a frontal collision.

Rear-facing Child Seat Placement
A rear-facing child seat can be placed in any seating position in the back seat, but not in the front. ***Never put a rear-facing child seat in the front seat.***

If the passenger's front airbag inflates, it can hit the back of the child seat with enough force to kill or seriously injure an infant.

When properly installed, a rear-facing child seat may prevent the driver or a front passenger from moving their seat as far back as recommended, or from locking their seat-back in the desired position.

It can also interfere with proper operation of the passenger's advanced front airbag system.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

In any of these situations, we strongly recommend that you install the child seat directly behind the front passenger's seat, move the seat as far forward as needed, and leave it unoccupied. Or, you may wish to get a smaller rear-facing child seat.

⚠ WARNING

Placing a rear-facing child seat in the front seat can result in serious injury or death during a crash.

Always place a rear-facing child seat in the back seat, not the front.

Protecting Small Children

Child Seat Type

Many states, Canadian provinces and territories allow a child one year of age or older who also meets the minimum size and weight requirements to transition from a rear-facing child seat to a forward facing seat. Know the requirements where you are driving and follow the child seat instructions. Many experts recommend use of a rear-facing seat up to age two, if the child's height and weight are appropriate for a rear-facing seat.

Of the different seats available, we recommend those that have a five-point harness system as shown.

We also recommend that a small child use the child seat until the child reaches the weight or height limit for the seat.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Protecting Infants and Small Children

Child Seat Placement
We strongly recommend placing a forward-facing child seat in a back seat, not the front.

Placing a forward-facing child seat in the front seat of a vehicle equipped with a passenger's airbag can be hazardous. If the vehicle seat is too far forward, or the child's head is thrown forward during a collision, an inflating airbag can strike the child with enough force to cause very serious or fatal injuries.

Even with advanced front airbags that automatically turn the passenger's front airbag off (see page 34), a back seat is the safest place for a small child.

If it is necessary to put a forward-facing child seat in the front, move the vehicle seat as far to the rear as possible, and be sure the child seat is firmly secured to the vehicle and the child is properly strapped in the seat.

⚠ WARNING

Placing a forward-facing child seat in the front seat can result in serious injury or death if the front airbag inflates.

If you must place a forward-facing child seat in front, move the vehicle seat as far back as possible, and properly restrain the child.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Selecting a Child Seat

When buying a child seat, you need to choose either a conventional child seat, or one designed for use with the Lower Anchors and Tethers for CHildren (LATCH) system.

Conventional child seats must be secured to a vehicle with a seat belt, whereas LATCH-compatible seats are secured by attaching the seat to hardware built into the two outer seating positions in the back seat.

Since LATCH-compatible child seats are easier to install and reduce the possibility of improper installation, we recommend selecting this style.

In seating positions and vehicles not equipped with LATCH, a LATCH-compatible child seat can be installed using a seat belt.

Whatever type of seat you choose, to provide proper protection, a child seat should meet three requirements:

1. ***The child seat should meet Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 213 or Canadian Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 213.*** Look for FMVSS 213 or CMVSS 213 on the box.

2. ***The child seat should be of the proper type and size to fit the child.*** Rear-facing for infants, forward-facing for small children.

3. ***The child seat should fit the vehicle seating position (or positions) where it will be used.***

Before purchasing a conventional child seat, or using a previously purchased one, we recommend that you test the seat in the specific vehicle seating position or positions where the seat will be used.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Installing a Child Seat

After selecting a proper child seat and a good place to install the seat, there are three main steps in installing the seat:

1. ***Properly secure the child seat to the vehicle.*** All child seats must be secured to the vehicle with the lap part of a lap/shoulder belt or with the LATCH (Lower Anchors and Tethers for CHildren) system. A child whose seat is not properly secured to the vehicle can be endangered in a crash.

2. ***Make sure the child seat is firmly secured.*** After installing a child seat, push and pull the seat forward and from side-to-side to verify that it is secure.

A child seat secured with a seat belt should be installed as firmly as possible. However, it does not need to be "rock solid." Some side-to-side movement can be expected and should not reduce the child seat's effectiveness.

If the child seat is not secure, try installing it in a different seating position, or use a different style of child seat that can be firmly secured.

3. ***Secure the child in the child seat.*** Make sure the child is properly strapped in the child seat according to the child seat maker's instructions. A child who is not properly secured in a child seat can be seriously injured in a crash.

The following pages provide guidelines on how to properly install a child seat. A forward-facing child seat is used in all examples, but the instructions are the same for rear-facing child seats.

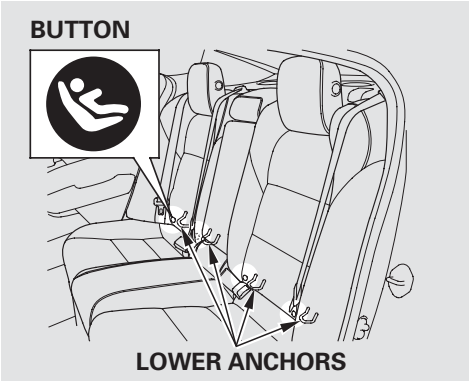
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Installing a Child Seat with LATCH

Your vehicle is equipped with LATCH (Lower Anchors and Tethers for CHildren) at the outer rear seats.

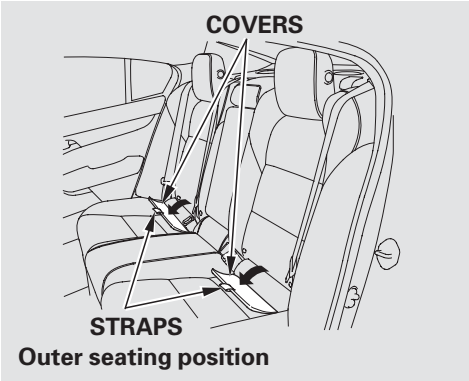
The lower anchors are located between the seat-back and seat bottom, and are to be used only with a child seat designed for use with LATCH.

The location of each lower anchor is indicated by a small button above the anchor point.



To install a LATCH-compatible child seat:

1. Move the seat belt buckle or tongue away from the lower anchors.



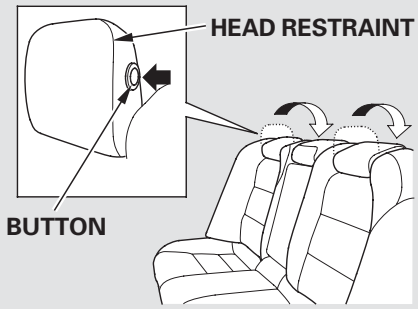
2. Use the pull strap to lower the anchor cover on the lower seat cushion that covers the LATCH anchor holes in the seat.

3. Make sure there are no objects near the anchors that could prevent a secure connection between the child seat and the anchors.

CONTINUED

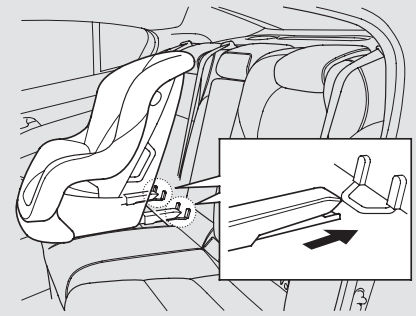
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Installing a Child Seat



Outer seating position

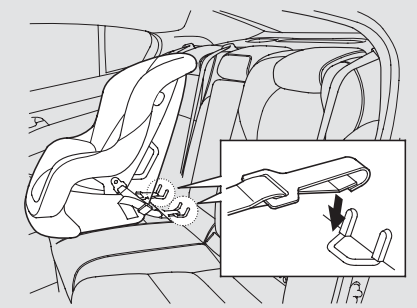
4. Push the button located next to each rear head restraint to pivot the head restraint down.



Rigid type

5. Place the child seat on the vehicle seat, then attach the seat to the lower anchors according to the child seat maker's instructions.

   Some LATCH-compatible seats have a rigid-type connector as shown above.

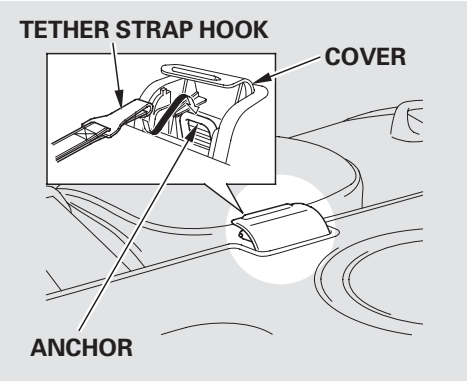


Flexible type

   Other LATCH-compatible seats have a flexible-type connector as shown above.

6. Whatever type you have, follow the child seat maker's instructions for adjusting or tightening the fit.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



7. Route the tether strap over the head restraint, then attach the tether strap hook to the anchor, making sure the strap is not twisted.

8. Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child seat maker.

9. Push and pull the child seat forward and from side-to-side to verify that it is secure.

Installing a Child Seat with a Lap/Shoulder Belt

When not using the LATCH system, all child seats must be secured to the vehicle with the lap part of a lap/shoulder belt.

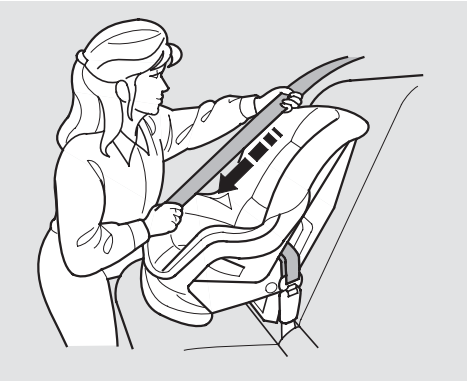
In addition, the lap/shoulder belts in all seating positions except the driver's have a lockable retractor that must be activated to secure a child seat.

1. With the child seat in the desired seating position, route the belt through the child seat according to the seat maker's instructions, then insert the latch plate into the buckle and remove any slack from the lap portion of the belt.

CONTINUED

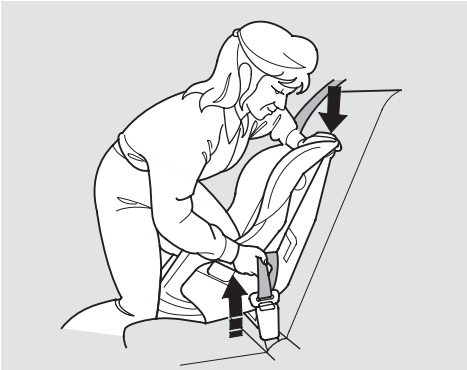
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Installing a Child Seat



2. To activate the lockable retractor, slowly pull the shoulder part of the belt all the way out until it stops, then let the belt feed back into the retractor.

3. After the belt has retracted, tug on it. If the belt is locked, you will not be able to pull it out. If you can pull the belt out, it is not locked, and you will need to repeat these steps.



4. After confirming that the belt is locked, grab the shoulder part of the belt near the buckle, and pull up to remove any slack from the lap part of the belt. Remember, if the lap part of the belt is not tight, the child seat will not be secure.

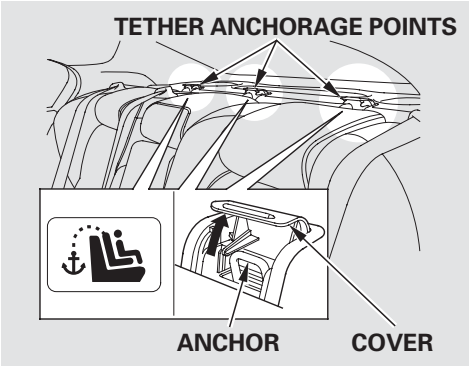
   To remove slack, it may help to put weight on the child seat, or push on the back of the seat while pulling up on the belt.

5. Push and pull the child seat forward and from side-to-side to verify that it is secure enough to stay upright during normal driving maneuvers. If the child seat is not secure, unlatch the belt, allow it to retract fully, then repeat these steps.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To deactivate the lockable retractor and remove a child seat, unlatch the buckle, unroute the seat belt, and let the belt fully retract.

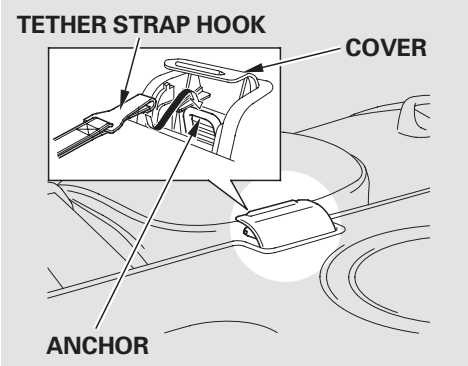
Installing a Child Seat with a Tether



A child seat with a tether can be installed in any seating position in the back seat, using one of the anchorage points shown above.

Since a tether can provide additional security to the lap/shoulder belt installation, we recommend using a tether whenever one is required or available.

Using an Outer Anchor



1. After properly securing the child seat with the lap/shoulder belt (see page 49), pivot the head restraint down (see page 157) and route the tether strap over the head restraint.

CONTINUED

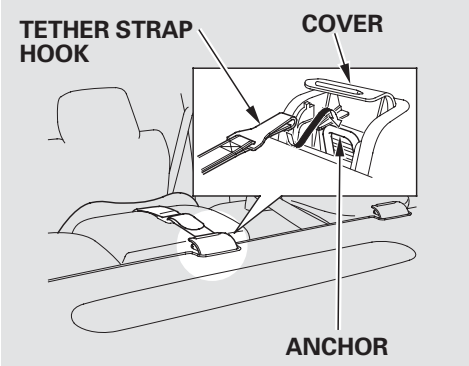
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Installing a Child Seat

2. Lift the anchor cover, then attach the tether strap hook to the anchor, making sure the strap is not twisted.

3. Tighten the strap according to the seat maker's instructions.

Using the Center Anchor



1. After properly securing the child seat (see page 49), adjust the head restraint to its lowest position, then route the tether strap over the head restraint.

2. Follow steps 2 and 3 in the previous column.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Protecting Larger Children

When a child reaches the recommended weight or height limit for a forward-facing child seat, the child should sit in a back seat on a booster seat and wear the lap/shoulder belt.

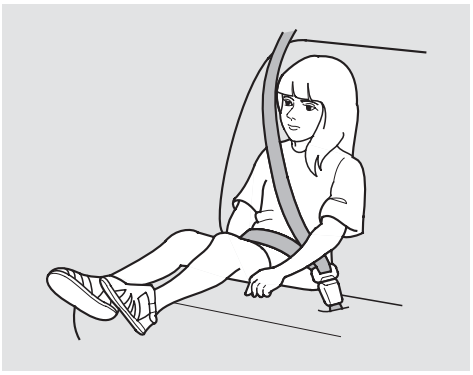
The following pages give instructions on how to check proper seat belt fit, what kind of booster seat to use if one is needed, and important precautions for a child who must sit in front.

⚠WARNING

Allowing a child age 12 or under to sit in front can result in injury or death if the passenger's front airbag inflates.

If a child must ride in front, move the vehicle seat as far back as possible, use a booster seat if needed, have the child sit up properly and wear the seat belt properly.

Checking Seat Belt Fit



To determine if a lap/shoulder belt properly fits a child, have the child put on the seat belt, then ask yourself:

1. Does the child sit all the way back against the seat?

2. Do the child's knees bend comfortably over the edge of the seat?

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Protecting Larger Children

3. Does the shoulder belt cross between the child's neck and arm?

4. Is the lap part of the belt as low as possible, touching the child's thighs?

5. Will the child be able to stay seated like this for the whole trip?

If you answer yes to all these questions, the child is ready to wear the lap/shoulder belt correctly. If you answer no to any question, the child needs to ride on a booster seat.

Using a Booster Seat

A child who has outgrown a forward-facing child seat should ride in a back seat and use a booster seat until the lap/shoulder belt fits them properly without the booster.

Some states, Canadian provinces and territories also require children to use a booster seat until they reach a given age or weight (e.g., 6 years or 60 lbs). Be sure to check current laws in the states, provinces or territories where you intend to drive.

Booster seats can be high-back or low-back. Whichever style you select, make sure the booster seat meets federal safety standards (see page 45) and that you follow the booster seat maker's instructions.

If a child who uses a booster seat must ride in front, move the vehicle seat as far back as possible and be sure the child is wearing the seat belt properly.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

A child may continue using a booster seat until the tops of their ears are even with the top of the vehicle's or booster's seat-back. A child of this height should be tall enough to use the lap/shoulder belt without a booster seat.

When Can a Larger Child Sit in Front

The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration and Transport Canada recommend that all children age 12 and under be properly restrained in the back seat.

If the passenger's front airbag inflates in a moderate to severe frontal collision, the airbag can cause serious injuries to a child who is unrestrained, improperly restrained, sitting too close to the airbag, or out of position.

A side airbag also poses risks. If any part of a larger child's body is in the path of a deploying side airbag, the child could receive possibly serious injuries.

Of course, children vary widely. And while age may be one indicator of when a child can safely ride in front, there are other important factors you should consider.

Physical Size

Physically, a child must be large enough for the lap/shoulder belt to properly fit (see pages 16 and 53). If the seat belt does not fit properly, with or without the child sitting on a booster seat, the child should not sit in front.

Maturity

To safely ride in front, a child must be able to follow the rules, including sitting properly, and wearing the seat belt properly throughout the ride.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Protecting Larger Children

If you decide that a child can safely ride up front, be sure to:

- Carefully read the owner's manual, and make sure you understand all seat belt instructions and all safety information.
- Move the vehicle seat to the rear-most position.
- Have the child sit up straight, back against the seat, and feet on or near the floor.
- Check that the child's seat belt is properly and securely positioned.
- Supervise the child. Even mature children sometimes need to be reminded to fasten the seat belts or sit properly.

Additional Safety Precautions

- ***Do not let a child wear a seat belt across the neck.*** This could result in serious neck injuries during a crash.
- ***Do not let a child put the shoulder part of a seat belt behind the back or under the arm.*** This could cause very serious injuries during a crash. It also increases the chance that the child will slide under the belt in a crash and be injured.
- ***Two children should never use the same seat belt.*** If they do, they could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- ***Do not put any accessories on a seat belt.*** Devices intended to improve a child's comfort or reposition the shoulder part of a seat belt can make the belt less effective and increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Carbon Monoxide Hazard

Your vehicle's exhaust contains carbon monoxide gas. Carbon monoxide should not enter the vehicle in normal driving if you maintain your vehicle properly and follow the information on this page.

Have the exhaust system inspected for leaks whenever:

- The vehicle is raised for an oil change.
- You notice a change in the sound of the exhaust.
- The vehicle was in a collision that may have damaged the underside.

⚠WARNING

Carbon monoxide gas is toxic. Breathing it can cause unconsciousness and even kill you.

Avoid any enclosed areas or activities that expose you to carbon monoxide.

High levels of carbon monoxide can collect rapidly in enclosed areas, such as a garage. Do not run the engine with the garage door closed. Even with the door open, run the engine only long enough to move the vehicle out of the garage.

With the trunk lid open, airflow can pull exhaust gas into your vehicle's interior and create a hazardous condition. If you must drive with the trunk open, open all the windows, and set the climate control system as shown below.

If you must sit in your parked vehicle with the engine running, even in an unconfined area, adjust the climate control system as follows:

1. Select the fresh air mode.
2. Select the mode.
3. Set the fan speed to high.
4. Set the temperature control to a comfortable setting.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Safety Labels

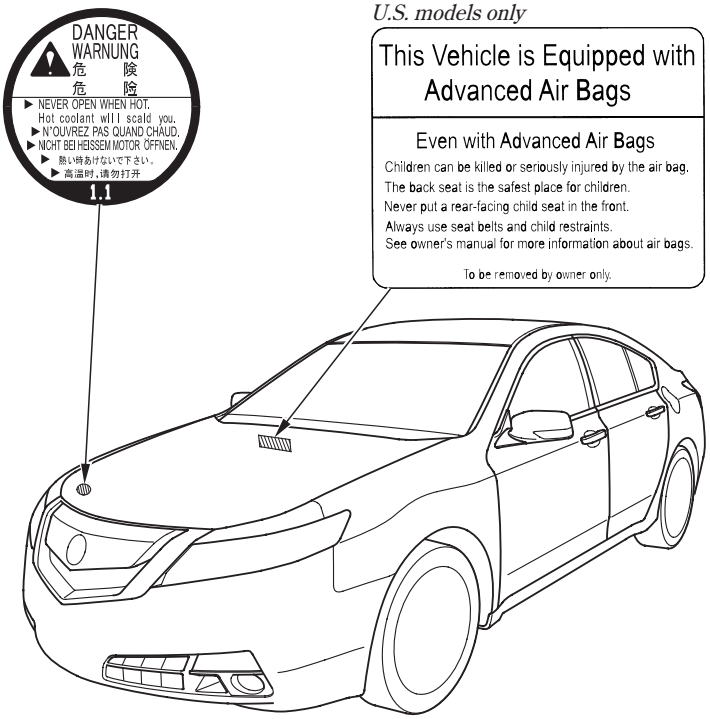
These labels are in the locations shown. They warn you of potential hazards that could cause serious injury or death. Read these labels carefully.

If a label comes off or becomes hard to read (except for the U.S. dashboard label which may be removed by the owner), contact your dealer for a replacement.

RADIATOR CAP

DASHBOARD

U.S. models only


This Vehicle is Equipped with Advanced Air Bags
Even with Advanced Air Bags
Children can be killed or seriously injured by the air bag.
The back seat is the safest place for children.
Never put a rear-facing child seat in the front.
Always use seat belts and child restraints.
See owner's manual for more information about air bags.
To be removed by owner only.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SUN VISOR

U.S. models

AIR BAG WARNING

FLIP VISOR OVER

⚠ WARNING

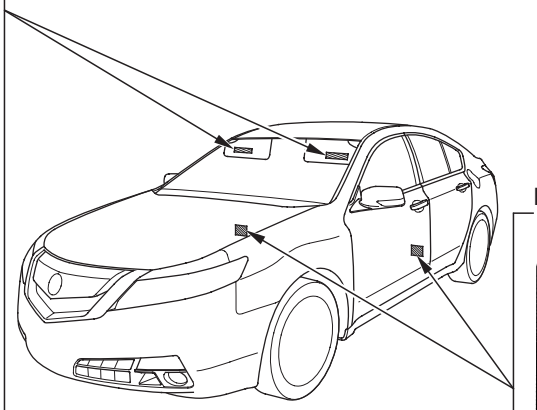
EVEN WITH ADVANCED AIR BAGS

- Children can be killed or seriously injured by the air bag
- The back seat is the safest place for children
- Never put a rear-facing child seat in the front
- Always use seat belts and child restraints
- See owner's manual for more information about air bags

Canadian models

CAUTION
TO AVOID SERIOUS INJURY:
- FOR MAXIMUM SAFETY PROTECTION IN ALL TYPES OF CRASHES, YOU MUST ALWAYS WEAR YOUR SAFETY BELT.
- DO NOT INSTALL REARWARD-FACING CHILD SEATS IN ANY FRONT PASSENGER SEAT POSITION.
- DO NOT SIT OR LEAN UNNECESSARILY CLOSE TO THE AIR BAG.
- DO NOT PLACE ANY OBJECTS OVER THE AIR BAG OR BETWEEN THE AIR BAG AND YOURSELF.
- SEE THE OWNER'S MANUAL FOR FURTHER INFORMATION AND EXPLANATIONS.

PRECAUTIONS:
POUR EVITER DES BLESSURES GRAVES:
- POUR PROFITER D UNE PROTECTION MAXIMALE LORS D UNE COLLISION BOUCLEZ TOUJOURS VOTRE CEINTURE DE SECURITE.
- N INSTALLEZ JAMAIS UN SIEGE POUR ENFANTS FAISANT FACE A L ARRIERE SUR LE SIEGE DU PASSAGER AVANT.
- NE VOUS APPUYEZ PAS ET NE VOUS ASSOYEZ PAS PRES DU COUSSIN GONFLABLE.
- NE DEPOSEZ AUCUN OBJET SUR LE COUSSIN GONFLABLE OU ENTRE LE COUSSIN GONFLABLE ET VOUS.
- LISEZ LE GUIDE UTILISATEUR POUR DE PLUS AMPLES RENSEIGNEMENTS.



DOORJAMB

U.S. models

SIDE AIRBAG

- This car is equipped with side airbags in the front seats and side curtain airbags.
- Do not lean against the door.
- See owner's manual for more information.

Canadian models

SIDE AIRBAG

- This car is equipped with side airbags in the front seats and side curtain airbags.
- Do not lean against the door.
- See owner's manual for more information.

COUSSIN GONFLABLE LATERAL

- Cette automobile est équipée de coussins gonflables latéraux dans les sièges avant ainsi que de coussins gonflables latéraux de type rideau.
- Ne vous appuyez pas sur la porte.
- Consultez le Manuel du propriétaire pour en savoir plus.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Main Menu

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

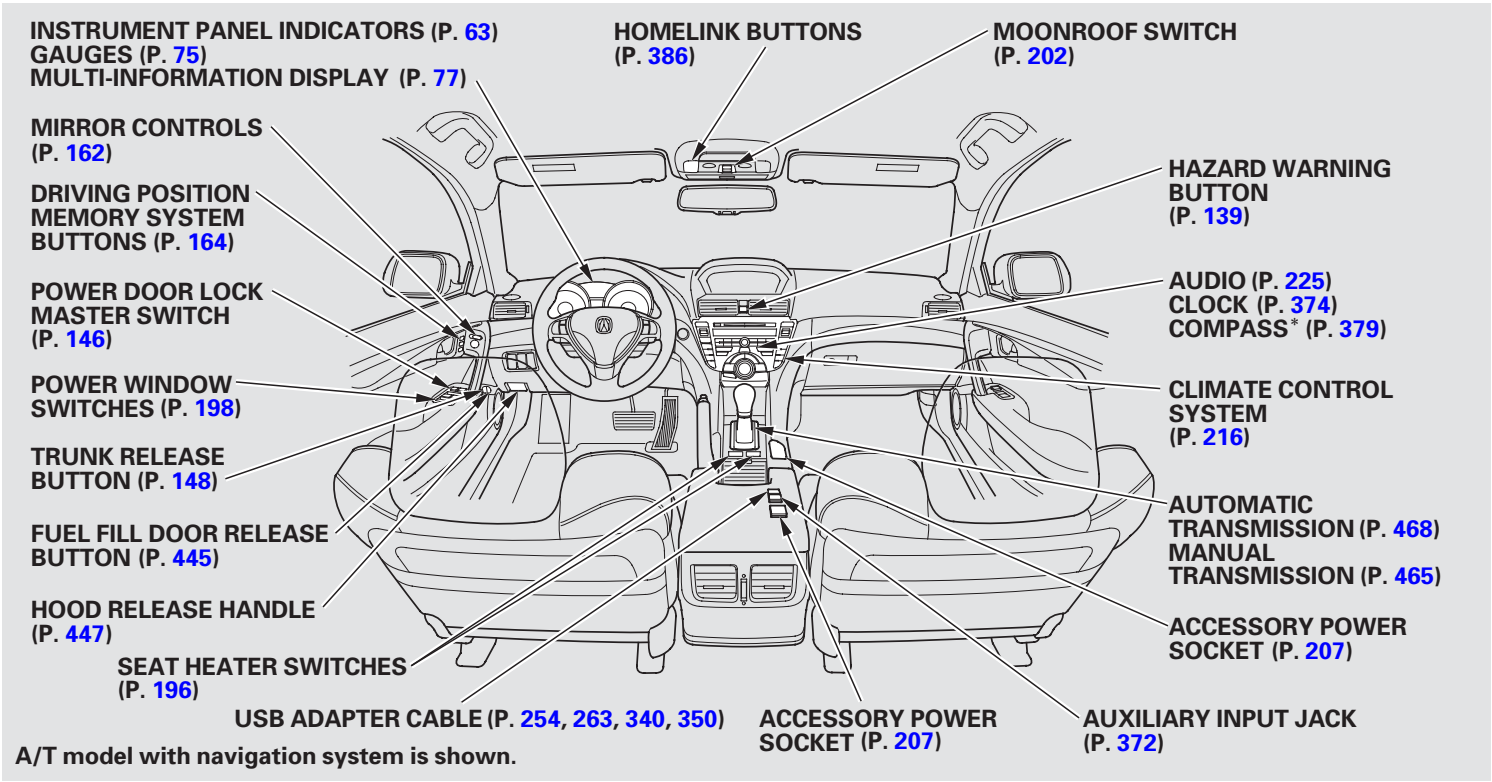
Instruments and Controls

This section gives information about the controls and displays that contribute to the daily operation of your vehicle. All the essential controls are within easy reach.

Control Locations 62
Instrument Panel 63
Instrument Panel Indicators..... 64
Gauges 75
  Fuel Gauge 75
  Temperature Gauge 76
Multi-Information Display 77
Controls Near the Steering Wheel 130
Windshield Wipers and Washers 131
Turn Signals and Headlights..... 133
  Automatic Lighting Off Feature..... 135
  Daytime Running Lights 136
Fog Lights 137
Instrument Panel Brightness 137
Hazard Warning Button..... 139
Rear Window Defogger 139
Steering Wheel Adjustments 140
Keys and Locks..... 141
Immobilizer System..... 143
Ignition Switch 145
Door Locks 146
  Childproof Door Locks 147
Trunk..... 148
  Emergency Trunk Opener 150
Remote Transmitter..... 151
Seats 155
  Trunk Pass-through Cover..... 160
Mirrors..... 161
Driving Position Memory System..... 164
Keyless Access System..... 167
  Keyless Access Remote..... 173
  Engine Start/Stop Button..... 177
Seat Heaters 196
Power Windows 198
Moonroof 202
Parking Brake 204
Interior Convenience Items..... 205
  Beverage Holders..... 206
  Accessory Power Sockets..... 207
  Glove Box 208
  Console Compartment 208
  Vanity Mirror 209
  Sun Visor 209
  Center Pocket 210
  Sunglasses Holder 210
  Coat Hook..... 211
Interior Lights..... 211

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

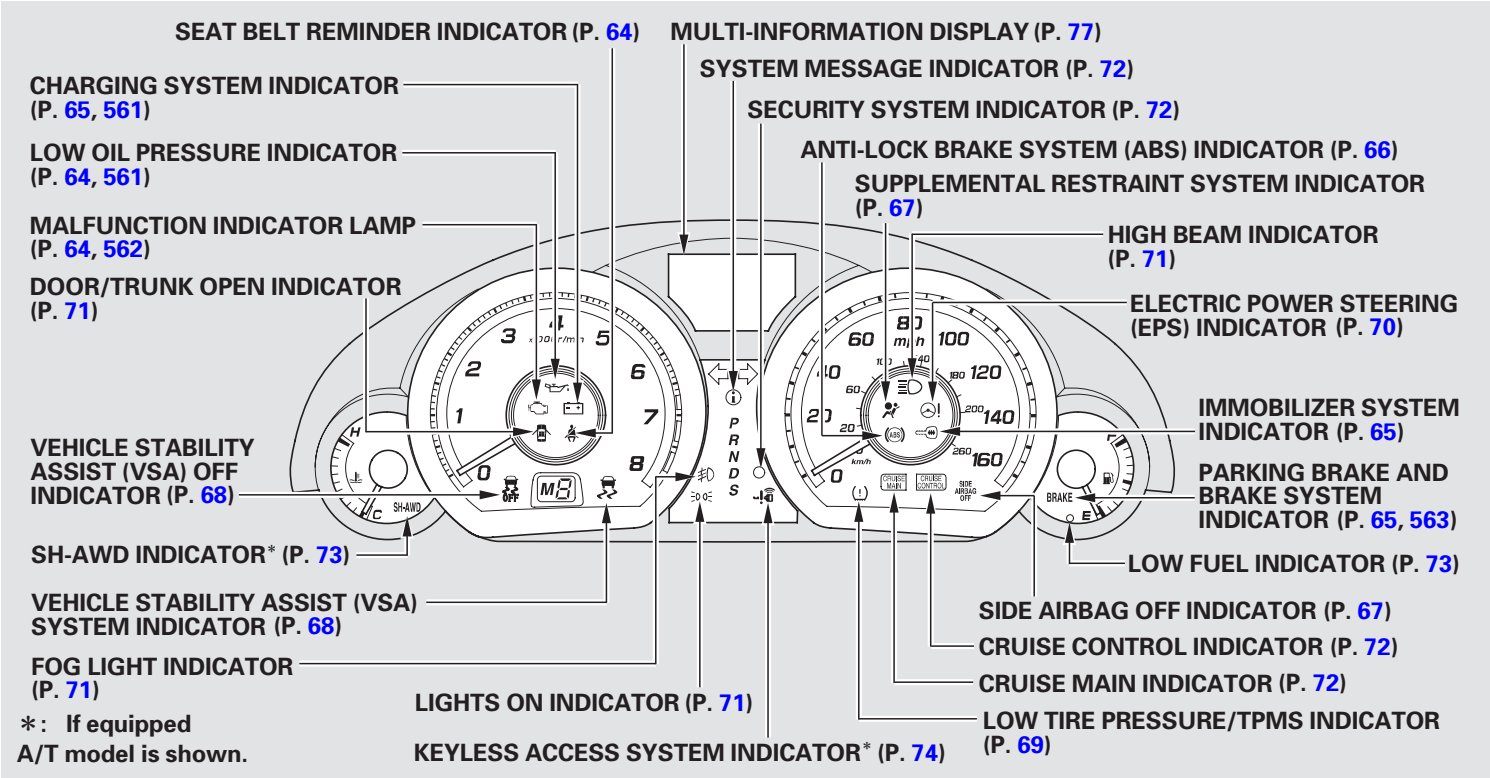
Control Locations


INSTRUMENT PANEL INDICATORS (P. 63)
GAUGES (P. 75)
MULTI-INFORMATION DISPLAY (P. 77)
HOMELINK BUTTONS (P. 386)
MOONROOF SWITCH (P. 202)
MIRROR CONTROLS (P. 162)
DRIVING POSITION MEMORY SYSTEM BUTTONS (P. 164)
POWER DOOR LOCK MASTER SWITCH (P. 146)
POWER WINDOW SWITCHES (P. 198)
TRUNK RELEASE BUTTON (P. 148)
FUEL FILL DOOR RELEASE BUTTON (P. 445)
HOOD RELEASE HANDLE (P. 447)
SEAT HEATER SWITCHES (P. 196)
USB ADAPTER CABLE (P. 254, 263, 340, 350)
ACCESSORY POWER SOCKET (P. 207)
AUXILIARY INPUT JACK (P. 372)
HAZARD WARNING BUTTON (P. 139)
AUDIO (P. 225)
CLOCK (P. 374)
COMPASS* (P. 379)
CLIMATE CONTROL SYSTEM (P. 216)
AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION (P. 468)
MANUAL TRANSMISSION (P. 465)
ACCESSORY POWER SOCKET (P. 207)

A/T model with navigation system is shown.

* : If equipped

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine


SEAT BELT REMINDER INDICATOR (P. 64)
MULTI-INFORMATION DISPLAY (P. 77)
SYSTEM MESSAGE INDICATOR (P. 72)
CHARGING SYSTEM INDICATOR (P. 65, 561)
SECURITY SYSTEM INDICATOR (P. 72)
LOW OIL PRESSURE INDICATOR (P. 64, 561)
ANTI-LOCK BRAKE SYSTEM (ABS) INDICATOR (P. 66)
SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM INDICATOR (P. 67)
MALFUNCTION INDICATOR LAMP (P. 64, 562)
HIGH BEAM INDICATOR (P. 71)
DOOR/TRUNK OPEN INDICATOR (P. 71)
ELECTRIC POWER STEERING (EPS) INDICATOR (P. 70)
IMMOBILIZER SYSTEM INDICATOR (P. 65)
VEHICLE STABILITY ASSIST (VSA) OFF INDICATOR (P. 68)
PARKING BRAKE AND BRAKE SYSTEM INDICATOR (P. 65, 563)
SH-AWD INDICATOR* (P. 73)
LOW FUEL INDICATOR (P. 73)
VEHICLE STABILITY ASSIST (VSA) SYSTEM INDICATOR (P. 68)
SIDE AIRBAG OFF INDICATOR (P. 67)
CRUISE CONTROL INDICATOR (P. 72)
FOG LIGHT INDICATOR (P. 71)
CRUISE MAIN INDICATOR (P. 72)
LIGHTS ON INDICATOR (P. 71)
LOW TIRE PRESSURE/TPMS INDICATOR (P. 69)
*: If equipped
A/T model is shown.
KEYLESS ACCESS SYSTEM INDICATOR* (P. 74)

The U.S. instrument panel is shown. Differences for the Canadian models are noted in the text.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Instrument Panel Indicators

The instrument panel has many indicators to give you important information about your vehicle.

Seat Belt Reminder Indicator

This indicator comes on when you turn the ignition switch* to the ON (II) position. It reminds you and your passengers to fasten your seat belts. A beeper also sounds if you have not fastened your seat belt.

You will also see a “FASTEN SEAT BELT” message on the multi-information display.

If you turn the ignition switch* to the ON (II) position before fastening your seat belt, the beeper sounds and the indicator flashes. If you do not fasten your seat belt before the beeper stops, the indicator stops flashing but remains on.

If your front passenger does not fasten their seat belt, the indicator comes on about 6 seconds after the ignition switch* is turned to the ON (II) position.

If either of you do not fasten your seat belt while driving, the beeper will sound and the indicator will flash again at regular intervals, and you will see a “FASTEN SEAT BELT” or “FASTEN PASSENGER SEAT BELT” message on the multi-information display. For more information, see page 20 .

* : Models equipped with the keyless access system have an engine start/stop button instead of an ignition switch. ON Mode is the equivalent of ON (II). For more information, see pages 178 and 181 .

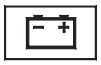
Malfunction Indicator Lamp

You will also see a “CHECK EMISSION SYSTEM” message on the multi-information display. For more information, see page 562 .

Low Oil Pressure Indicator

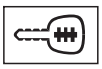
The engine can be severely damaged if this indicator flashes or stays on when the engine is running, and you will see a “CHECK ENGINE OIL LEVEL” message on the multi-information display. For more information, see page 561 .

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Charging System Indicator

If this indicator comes on when the engine is running, the battery is not being charged, and you will also see a "CHECK CHARGING SYSTEM" message on the multi-information display. For more information, see page 561 .

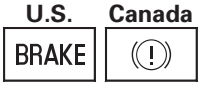


Immobilizer System Indicator

This indicator comes on briefly when you turn the ignition switch* to the ON (II) position. It will then go off if you have inserted a properly coded ignition key, on models with keyless access system, if an appropriate keyless access remote is used. If it is not a properly coded key or keyless access remote, the indicator will blink, and the engine's fuel system will be disabled (see page 143).

* : Models equipped with the keyless access system have an engine start/stop button instead of an ignition switch. ON Mode is the equivalent of ON (II). For more information, see pages 178 and 181 .

U.S. Canada



Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator

This indicator has two functions:

1. It comes on when you turn the ignition switch* to the ON (II) position. It is a reminder to check the parking brake. Driving with the parking brake not fully released can damage the brakes and tires.

   If you drive without releasing the parking brake, a beeper will sound, and you will also see a "RELEASE PARKING BRAKE" message on the multi-information display (see page 204).

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Instrument Panel Indicators

2. If it stays on after you have fully released the parking brake while the engine is running, or if it comes on while driving, it can indicate a problem in the brake system. You will also see a “LOW BRAKE FLUID” or “CHECK BRAKE SYSTEM” message on the multi-information display. For more information, see page 563.

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) Indicator

This indicator normally comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch* to the ON (II) position. It may also come on briefly when the ignition switch is turned to the START (III) position.

If this indicator comes on at any other time, there is a problem in the ABS. If this happens, take the vehicle to your dealer to have it checked. With this indicator on, your vehicle still has normal braking ability but no anti-lock function. You will also see a “CHECK ABS SYSTEM” message on the multi-information display. For more information, see page 482.

* : Models equipped with the keyless access system have an engine start/stop button instead of an ignition switch. ON Mode is the equivalent of ON (II), and START Mode is the equivalent of START (III). For more information, see pages 178 and 181.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Supplemental Restraint System Indicator

This indicator comes on briefly when you turn the ignition switch* to the ON (II) position. If it comes on at any other time, it indicates a potential problem with your front airbags. This indicator will also alert you to a potential problem with your airbag system components. You will also see a "CHECK AIRBAG SYSTEM" message on the multi-information display. For more information, see page 32 .

U.S. Canada

Side Airbag Off Indicator

This indicator comes on briefly when you turn the ignition switch* to the ON (II) position. If it comes on at any other time, it indicates that the passenger's side airbag has automatically shut off. For more information, see page 33 .

You will also see a "PASSENGER SIDE AIRBAG OFF" message on the multi-information display.

* : Models equipped with the keyless access system have an engine start/stop button instead of an ignition switch. ON Mode is the equivalent of ON (II). For more information, see pages 178 and 181 .

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Instrument Panel Indicators

Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System Indicator

This indicator normally comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch* to the ON (II) position. It may also come on briefly when the ignition switch is turned to the START (III) position.

This indicator has two functions:

1. It flashes when VSA is active (see page 484).
2. If it comes on and stays on at any other time, or it does not come on when you turn the ignition switch* to the ON (II) position, there is a problem with the VSA or Hill Start Assist (on SH-AWD models only) system. You will also see a "CHECK VSA SYSTEM" or "CHECK HILL START ASSIST SYSTEM" message on the multi-information display. Take your vehicle to a dealer to have it checked. Without VSA, your vehicle still has normal driving ability, but will not have VSA traction and stability enhancement. For more information, see page 484 .

   If the VSA indicator illuminates, hill start assist will not be working. Without hill start assist, the vehicle will roll downhill immediately when you release the brake on an incline.

* : Models equipped with the keyless access system have an engine start/stop button instead of an ignition switch. ON Mode is the equivalent of ON (II), and START Mode is the equivalent of START (III). For more information, see pages 178 and 181.

VSA OFF Indicator

This indicator comes on as a reminder that you have turned off the vehicle stability assist (VSA) system.

This indicator normally comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch* to the ON (II) position. It may also come on briefly when the ignition switch is turned to the START (III) position. For more information, see page 484 .

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Low Tire Pressure/ TPMS Indicator

This indicator normally comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch* to the ON (II) position.

* : Models equipped with the keyless access system have an engine start/stop button instead of an ignition switch. ON Mode is the equivalent of ON (II). For more information, see pages 178 and 181.

This indicator has two functions:

1. If it comes on while driving, it indicates that one or more of your vehicle's tires are significantly low on pressure.

You will also see a "CHECK TIRE PRESSURE" message on the multi-information display (see page 490).

Check the tire pressure monitor on the multi-information display and determine the cause (see page 489).

If this happens, pull to the side of the road when it is safe, check which tire has lost pressure on the multi-information display, and determine the cause. If it is because of a flat tire, have the flat tire repaired as soon as possible. If two or more tires are underinflated, call a professional towing service. For more information, see page 572 .

2. If this indicator begins to flash, there is a problem with the tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS). You will also see a "CHECK TPMS SYSTEM" message on the multi-information display. The indicator continues to flash for a while (approximately 1 minute), then stays on. If this happens, have your dealer check the system as soon as possible. For more information, see page 488 .

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Instrument Panel Indicators

Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators

The left or right turn signal indicator blinks when you signal a lane change or turn. If an indicator does not blink or blinks rapidly, it usually means one of the turn signal bulbs is burned out (see pages 524 and 528). Replace the bulb as soon as possible, since other drivers cannot see that you are signaling.

When you press the hazard warning button, both turn signal indicators and all turn signals on the outside of the vehicle flash.

Electric Power Steering (EPS) Indicator

This indicator normally comes on when you turn the ignition switch* to the ON (II) position and goes off after the engine starts. If it comes on at any other time, there is a problem in the electric power steering system.

* : Models equipped with the keyless access system have an engine start/stop button instead of an ignition switch. ON Mode is the equivalent of ON (II). For more information, see pages 178 and 181.

If this happens, stop the vehicle in a safe place and turn off the engine. Reset the system by restarting the engine. The indicator will stay on, but should go off after driving a short distance. If it does not go off, or comes back on again while driving, take the vehicle to your dealer to have it checked. With the indicator on, the EPS may be turned off, making the vehicle harder to steer.

If you turn the steering wheel to the full left or right position repeatedly while stopping or driving at very low speed, you may feel slightly harder steering in order to prevent damage to the steering system caused by overheating. This may also happen if you hold the steering wheel on the full left or right position for a while.

You will also see a “CHECK POWER STEERING SYSTEM” message on the multi-information display.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Lights On Indicator

This indicator reminds you that the exterior lights are on. It comes on when the light switch is in either the or position. This indicator will also come on when the light switch is in AUTO and the lights turn on automatically. If you turn the ignition switch* to the ACCESSORY (I) or the LOCK (0) position, without turning off the light switch, this indicator will remain on. Reminder beeps will also sound when you open the driver's door.

* : Models equipped with the keyless access system have an engine start/stop button instead of an ignition switch. VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) Mode is the equivalent of LOCK (0) and ACCESSORY Mode is the equivalent of ACCESSORY (I). For more information, see pages 178 and 181.

High Beam Indicator

This indicator comes on with the high beam headlights. For more information, see page 134.

This indicator also comes on with reduced brightness when the daytime running lights (DRL) are on (see page 136).

Fog Light Indicator

This indicator comes on when you turn on the fog lights. For more information, see page 137.

Door/Trunk Open Indicator

This indicator comes on red if any door or the trunk lid is not closed tightly.

You will also see a corresponding indicator(s) on the multi-information display to indicate which door and/or the trunk is not closed tightly (see page 12).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Instrument Panel Indicators

Cruise Main Indicator

This indicator comes on when you turn on the cruise control system by pressing the CRUISE button on the steering wheel (see page 383).

Cruise Control Indicator

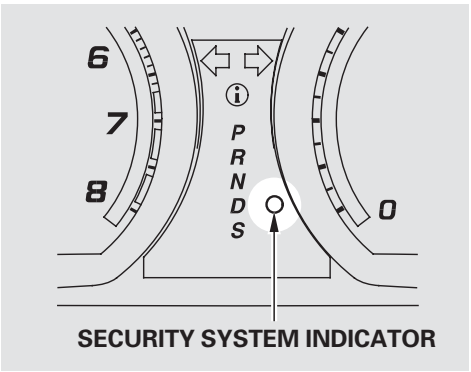
This indicator comes on when you set the cruise control. See page 383 for information on operating the cruise control.

System Message Indicator

This indicator comes on when there is a system message on the multi-information display. Press the INFO button on the steering wheel (see page 78) to see the message (see page 88).

Most of the time, this indicator comes on along with other indicators in the instrument panel such as the seat belt reminder indicator, SRS indicator, VSA system indicator, etc.

Security System Indicator

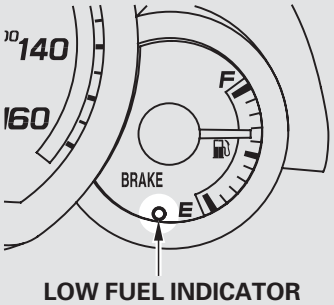


SECURITY SYSTEM INDICATOR

This indicator comes on when the security system is set. For more information, see page 377 .

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Low Fuel Indicator



LOW FUEL INDICATOR

U.S. model is shown.

This indicator is in the fuel gauge. It comes on as a reminder that you must refuel soon. You will also see a "LOW FUEL" message on the multi-information display.

When the indicator comes on, there are about 2.5 U.S. gal (9.6 ℓ) on SH-AWD models, and 2.8 U.S. gal (10.5 ℓ) on 2WD models of fuel remaining in the tank.

When the needle reaches E, there is a very small amount of fuel in the tank.

SH-AWD Super Handling-All Wheel Drive (SH-AWD) Indicator

On SH-AWD models

This indicator normally comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch* to the ON (II) position. If this indicator comes on at any other time, there is a problem in the SH-AWD system. You will also see a "CHECK SH-AWD SYSTEM" message on the multi-information display (see page 479). Take your vehicle to a dealer to have it checked. For more information, see page 478.

* : Models equipped with the keyless access system have an engine start/stop button instead of an ignition switch. ON Mode is the equivalent of ON (II). For more information, see pages 178 and 181.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Instrument Panel Indicators

If the indicator blinks while driving, the differential temperature is too high.

You will also see an “SH-AWD DIFF TEMP. HIGH” message on the multi-information display (see page 479).

Pull to the side of the road when it is safe, shift to Park, and let the engine idle until the indicator goes out.

NOTICE

Continuing to drive with the SH-AWD indicator blinking may cause serious damage to the system.

Keyless Access System Indicator

On models with keyless access system

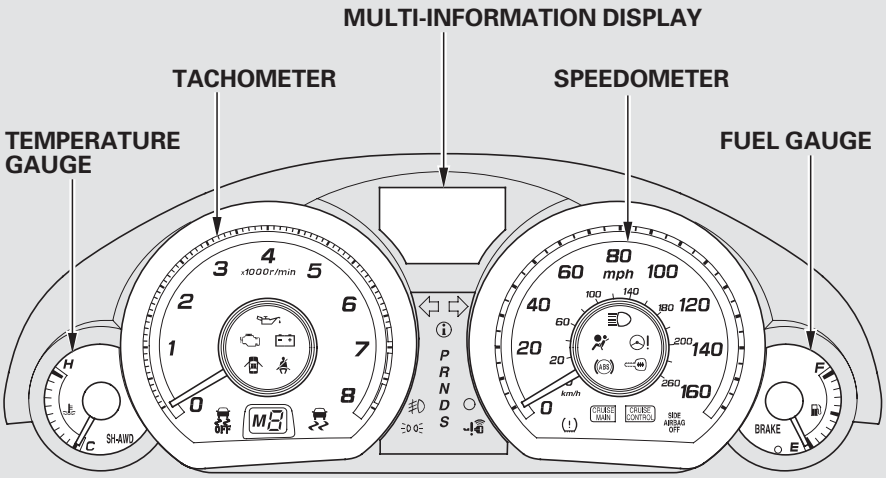
This indicator normally comes on for a few seconds when you select the ON mode with the engine start/stop button (see page 189). If it comes on at any other time, it indicates that there is a problem with the system.

This indicator has two functions:

1. If this indicator comes on along with a “CHECK KEYLESS ACCESS SYSTEM” message on the multi-information display, there is a problem with the keyless access system. Have the vehicle checked by your dealer as soon as possible. For more information, see page 190 .
2. If this indicator comes on along with a “CHECK KEYLESS STARTING SYSTEM” message on the multi-information display, there is a problem with the keyless starting system. In this case, your vehicle may not restart. If you can continue to drive safely, take the vehicle to your dealer and have it checked as soon as possible. For more information, see page 190 .

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Gauges



U.S. model with automatic transmission is shown.

Fuel Gauge

This shows how much fuel you have. It may show slightly more or less than the actual amount. The needle returns to the bottom after you turn off the ignition/power mode.

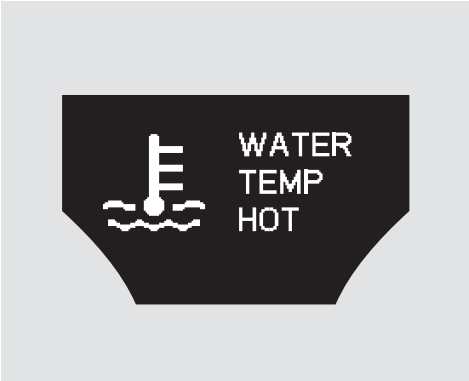
NOTICE

Avoid driving with an extremely low fuel level. Running out of fuel could cause the engine to misfire, damaging the catalytic converter.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Gauges

Temperature Gauge
This shows the temperature of the engine's coolant. During normal operation, the pointer should rise from the bottom mark to about the middle of the gauge. In severe driving conditions, such as very hot weather or a long period of uphill driving, the pointer may rise to the upper zone. If it reaches the red (hot) mark, pull safely to the side of the road. Turn to page 559 for instructions and precautions on checking the engine cooling system.



If the pointer of the temperature gauge reaches to or above the red mark, you will also see the "WATER TEMP HOT" message on the multi-information display. This will alert you that the engine should be cooled down.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Multi-Information Display

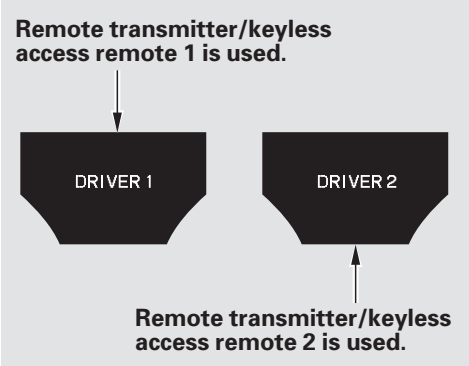
The multi-information display in the instrument panel displays various information and messages when the ignition switch* is in the ON (II) position. Some of the messages help you operate your vehicle more comfortably. Others help to keep you aware of the periodic maintenance your vehicle needs for continued trouble-free driving.

* : Models equipped with the keyless access system have an engine start/stop button instead of an ignition switch. ON Mode is the equivalent of ON (II). For more information, see pages 178 and 181 .

There are three types of messages: normal display messages, engine oil life and maintenance messages, and system messages.

You can select the displayed language and also customize some vehicle control settings to your liking with the multi-information display and the three buttons on the steering wheel (see page 78).

Normal Display Messages


Remote transmitter/keyless access remote 1 is used.
DRIVER 1
DRIVER 2
Remote transmitter/keyless access remote 2 is used.

When you unlock and open the driver's door, the display shows "DRIVER 1" or "DRIVER 2" depending on which remote transmitter/keyless access remote you use, and the driver's seat and the outside mirrors move to the position stored in that remote transmitter/keyless access remote (see page 164).

On models with keyless access system
The driver's ID (1 or 2) is displayed when the power mode is set to ON.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

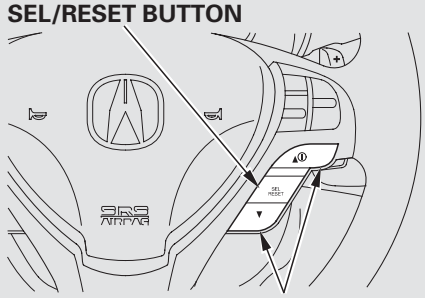
Multi-Information Display

If you do not fasten your seat belt, you will also see a “FASTEN SEAT BELT” message on the multi-information display when you turn the ignition switch* to the ON (II) position.

These messages go off several seconds after the key is inserted into the ignition switch.

On models with keyless access system
These messages go off after several seconds.

* : Models equipped with the keyless access system have an engine start/stop button instead of an ignition switch. ON Mode is the equivalent of ON (II). For more information, see pages 178 and 181 .



A/T model is shown.

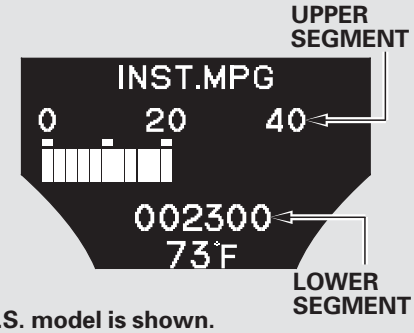
With the ignition switch* in the ON (II) position, the multi-information display changes as shown on page 80 each time you press the INFO (▲/▼) button or the SEL/RESET button.

When you turn the ignition switch* to the ON (II) position, your last selection is displayed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

* : Models equipped with the keyless access system have an engine start/stop button instead of an ignition switch. ON Mode is the equivalent of ON (II). For more information, see pages 178 and 181 .

In the multi-information display, the system message is also displayed (see page 87) and you can customize your vehicle control settings (see page 92) .



U.S. model is shown.

The multi-information display consists of an upper segment and a lower segment.

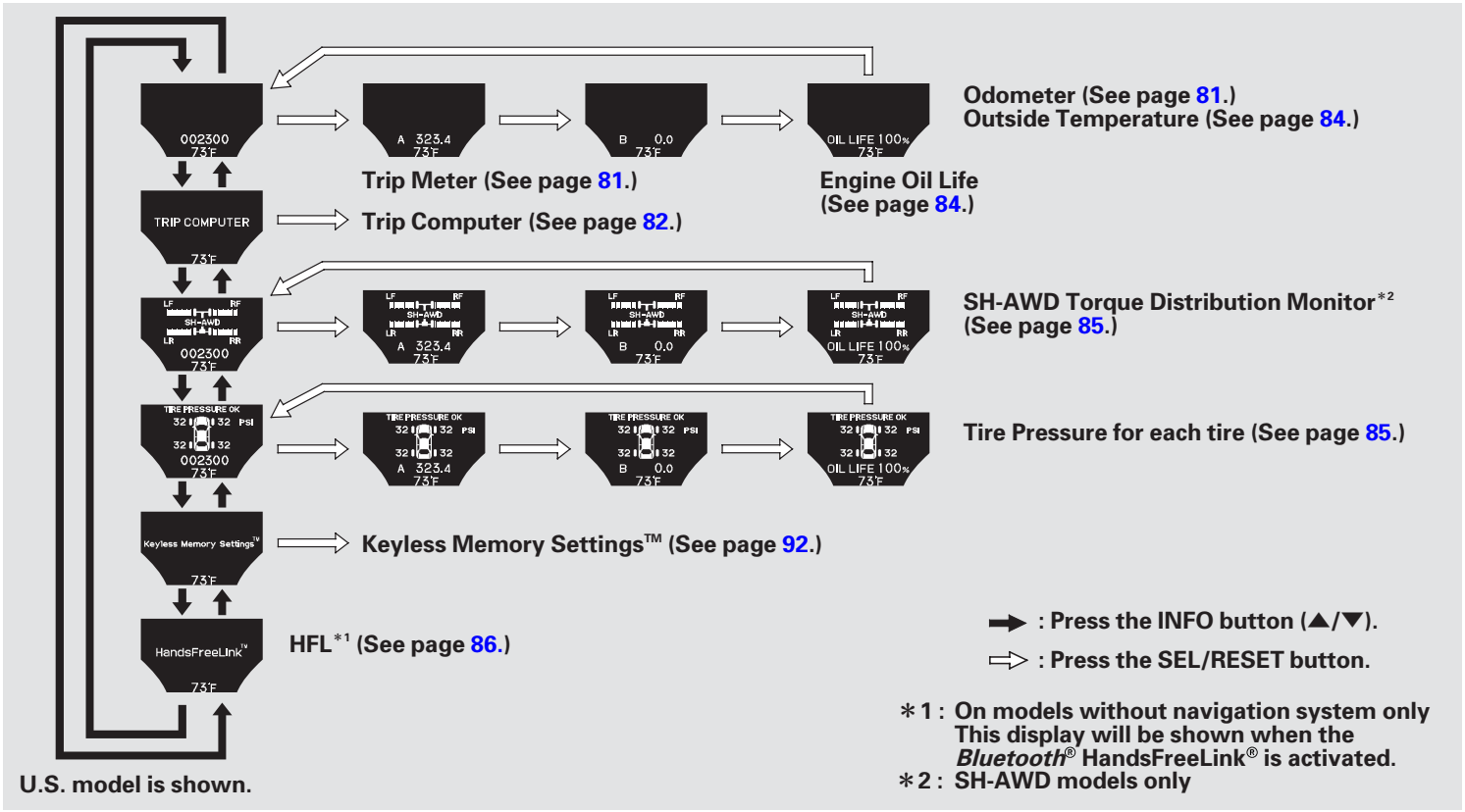
In the normal display mode, the upper segment displays trip computer information, such as fuel economy or average speed. The lower segment displays the odometer/trip meter (A/B), outside temperature, and engine oil life and maintenance item code(s).

On models with keyless access system
You will see some keyless access system messages until you select the ON mode by operating the engine start/stop button. These messages can be customized (see page 106).

CONTINUED

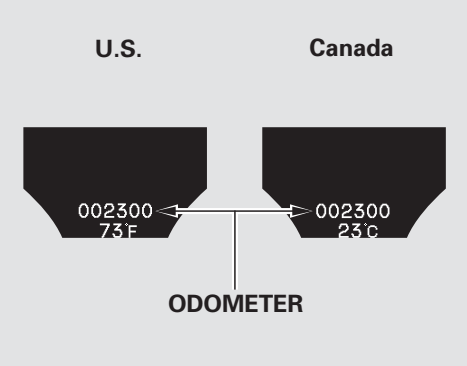
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Multi-Information Display


002300
73°F
A 323.4
B 0.0
OIL LIFE 100%
TRIP COMPUTER
TIRE PRESSURE OK
Keyless Memory Settings™
HandsFreeLink™
Odometer (See page 81.)
Outside Temperature (See page 84.)
Trip Meter (See page 81.)
Engine Oil Life (See page 84.)
Trip Computer (See page 82.)
SH-AWD Torque Distribution Monitor*2 (See page 85.)
Tire Pressure for each tire (See page 85.)
Keyless Memory Settings™ (See page 92.)
HFL*1 (See page 86.)
: Press the INFO button (▲/▼).
: Press the SEL/RESET button.
*1 : On models without navigation system only
This display will be shown when the Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® is activated.
*2 : SH-AWD models only
U.S. model is shown.

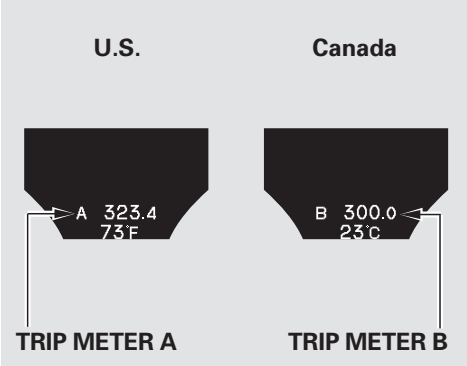
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Odometer



The odometer shows the total distance your vehicle has been driven. It measures miles in U.S. models and kilometers in Canadian models. It is illegal under U.S. federal law and Canadian provincial/territorial regulations to disconnect, reset, or alter the odometer with the intent to change the number of miles or kilometers indicated.

Trip Meter



This meter shows the number of miles (U.S.) or kilometers (Canada) driven since you last reset it. There are two trip meters: Trip A and Trip B. Each trip meter works independently, so you can keep track of two different distances.

To reset a trip meter, display it, and then press and hold the SEL/RESET button until the number resets to "0.0."

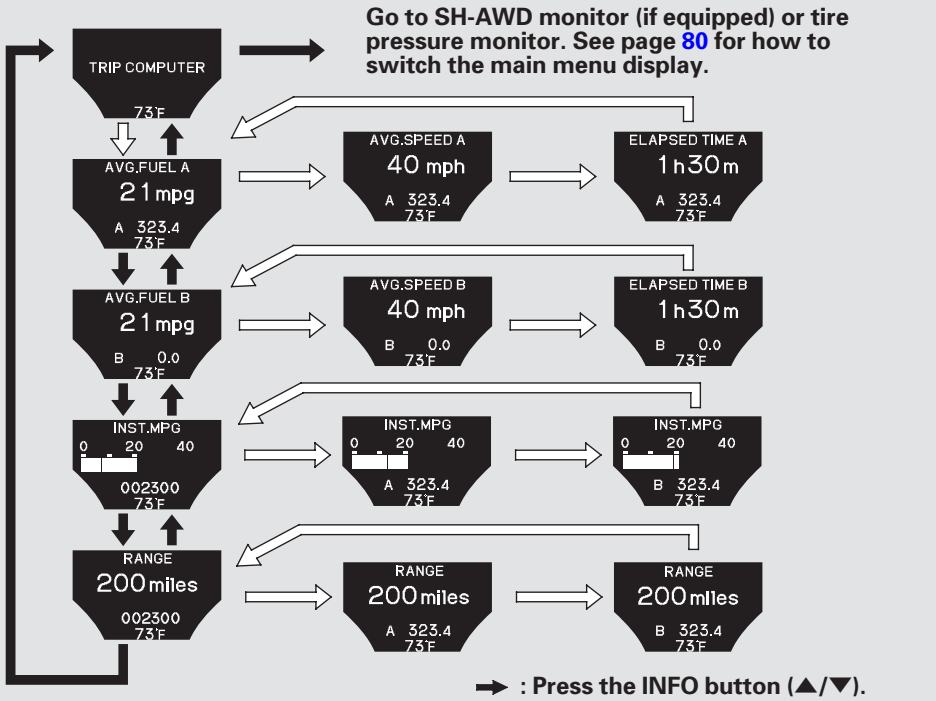
When you reset Trip A, average fuel economy A, average vehicle speed A, and elapsed time A are reset at the same time. When you reset Trip B, average fuel economy B, average vehicle speed B, and elapsed time B are reset.

In the customizing mode, you can set Trip A and average fuel economy A to reset when you refuel your vehicle (see page 102).

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Multi-Information Display



U.S. model is shown.

Trip Computer

Along with the trip meter, the trip computer calculates these values:

- Average Fuel Economy
- Average Vehicle Speed
- Elapsed Time
- Instant Fuel Economy
- Range

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

AVG. FUEL A/B
This shows your vehicle's average fuel economy in mpg (U.S. models) or liter/100 km (Canadian models) since you last reset Trip A or Trip B.

You can customize the Trip A and AVG. FUEL A reset condition on the multi-information display (see page 102).

AVG. SPEED A/B
This shows the average speed you are traveling in miles per hour (mph) for U.S. models or kilometers per hour (km/h) for Canadian models.

ELAPSED TIME A/B
This shows the accumulated traveling time since you last reset it. When you turn the ignition switch* to the ON (II) position, ELAPSED TIME A or B is reset.

* : Models equipped with the keyless access system have an engine start/stop button instead of an ignition switch. ON Mode is the equivalent of ON (II). For more information, see pages 178 and 181 .

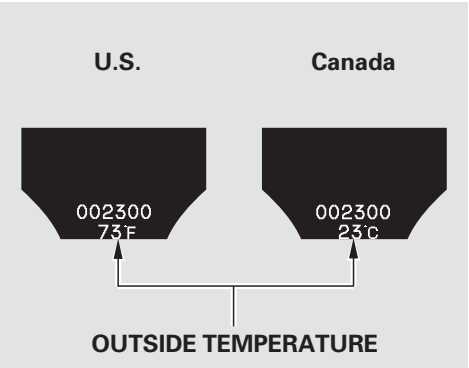
INST. MPG (U.S. models)/INST. L/100 km (Canadian models)
This shows your instant fuel economy.

RANGE
This shows the estimated distance you can travel on the fuel remaining in the fuel tank. This distance is estimated from the fuel economy you received over the last several miles (U.S.) or kilometers (Canada), so it will vary with changes in speed, traffic, etc.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Multi-Information Display

Outside Temperature



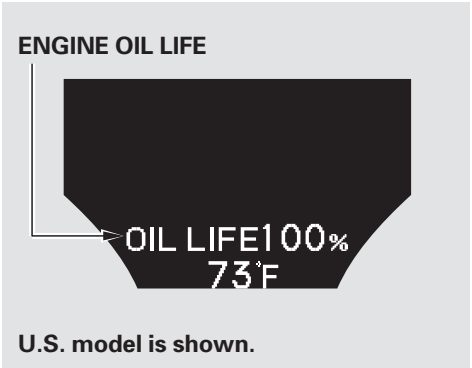
This shows the outside Fahrenheit temperature in U.S. models, and Celsius temperature in Canadian models.

The temperature sensor is in the front bumper. The temperature reading can be affected by heat reflection from the road surface, engine heat, and the exhaust from surrounding traffic. This can cause an incorrect temperature reading when your vehicle speed is under 19 mph (30 km/h). When you start your trip, the sensor is not fully acclimatized, therefore it may take several minutes until the proper temperature is displayed.

In certain weather conditions, temperature readings near freezing (32°F, 0°C) could mean that ice is forming on the road surface.

You can adjust the outside temperature display (see page 101).

Engine Oil Life



U.S. model is shown.

This shows the remaining engine oil life. It shows 100% after the engine oil is replaced and the display is reset. The engine oil life is calculated based on engine operating conditions. For more information, see page 497 .

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tire Pressure Monitor

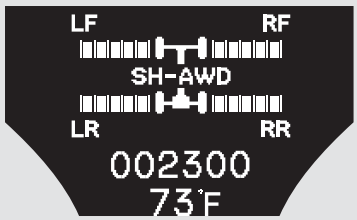
U.S.

You can see the pressure of each tire in this monitor. If one or more tires are low, inflate them to the correct pressure. For more information, see page 488.

Canada

SH-AWD Torque Distribution Monitor

SH-AWD models only



U.S. model is shown.

This monitor shows how much torque is being delivered to each wheel. For more information, see page 478.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Multi-Information Display

Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink®

U.S. model is shown.

On models without navigation system
You can receive or make phone calls from your cell phone through your vehicle's *Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink® (HFL) system without touching your cell phone.

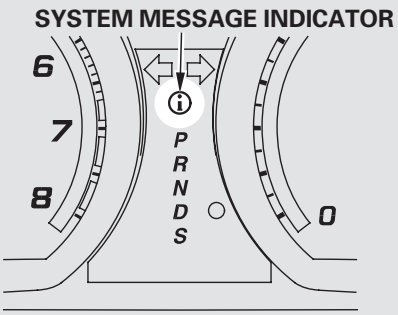
To use the system, your cell phone and the HFL system must be linked. Not all cell phones are compatible with this system. Refer to page 394 for instructions on how to link your cell phone to HFL and how to receive or make phone calls, or visit the acura.com/handsfreelink website.

In Canada, visit *www.handsfreelink.ca*, or call (888) 528-7876.

On models with navigation system
You can see HFL information on the navigation screen (see page 408).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

System Messages



A/T model is shown.

If there is a problem with your vehicle, for example the engine oil level is low or a door is not fully closed, the multi-information display will show you the problem. It does this by interrupting the current display with one or more messages.

The system message(s) triggers the appropriate indicator(s) on the instrument panel, including the system message indicator, to come on. The system message indicator does not go off until the problem(s) is corrected.

You will also hear a beep when the system message comes on for the first time.

Most of the messages are displayed for about 5 seconds, and then the normal display returns. If there are several system messages to be shown, the display switches these messages every 5 seconds.

To switch the message(s) before 5 seconds have elapsed, press the INFO (▲/▼) button on the steering wheel.

Even if you press the INFO (▲/▼) button, some messages stay on or come on again at regular intervals until the problem is corrected.

If the system message indicator remains lit on the instrument panel, you can see the corresponding message(s) again by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button repeatedly.

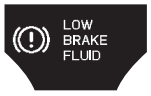
On the next page is a list of all messages:

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

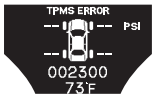
Multi-Information Display

	See page 12
	See page 20
	See page 20
	See page 33
U.S. Canada 	See page 33

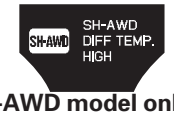
U.S. Canada 	See page 204
U.S. Canada 	See page 519
U.S. Canada 	See page 563

	See page 561
	See page 562
	See page 561
	See page 482
	See page 484
 SH-AWD model only	See page 485

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

U.S. Canada 	See page 489
	See page 490
 U.S. model shown	See page 490
	See page 491
 U.S. model shown	See page 491

	See page 76
	See page 136
	On models without keyless access system See page 462 *On models with keyless access system* See page 464
	A/T model See page 468
	See page 70

	See page 73
 SH-AWD model only	See page 479
 SH-AWD model only	See page 479
	See page 498
	See page 499
	See page 500

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Multi-Information Display

	See page 447
Canadian models only	See page 514
On models without keyless access system	See page 145

On models with keyless access system

	See page 190
	See page 190
	See page 187
	See page 188
	See page 192

	See page 194
A/T model only	See page 193
A/T model only	See page 182
A/T model only	See page 184
	See page 185
M/T model only	See page 182

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

	See page 183
	See page 182
	See page 185

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Multi-Information Display

Keyless Memory Settings™
You can customize some vehicle control settings. To change the settings, the ignition switch* must be in the ON (II) position, and the vehicle must be stopped with the transmission in Park (automatic) or with the parking brake set (manual).

If you turn the ignition switch* to the ACCESSORY (I) or the LOCK (0) position, move the shift lever out of Park (automatic) or release the parking brake (manual), the display will change to the normal screen.

* : Models equipped with the keyless access system have an engine start/stop button instead of an ignition switch. VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) Mode is the equivalent of LOCK (0), ACCESSORY Mode is the equivalent of ACCESSORY (I), and ON Mode is the equivalent of ON (II). For more information, see pages 178 and 181.

If you try to enter the customizing mode while the vehicle is moving, you will see a “MUST STOP AND SHIFT TO PARK TO CHANGE SETTINGS” (automatic) or “MUST STOP AND SET PARK BRAKE TO CHANGE SETTINGS” (manual) message and you cannot change the settings.

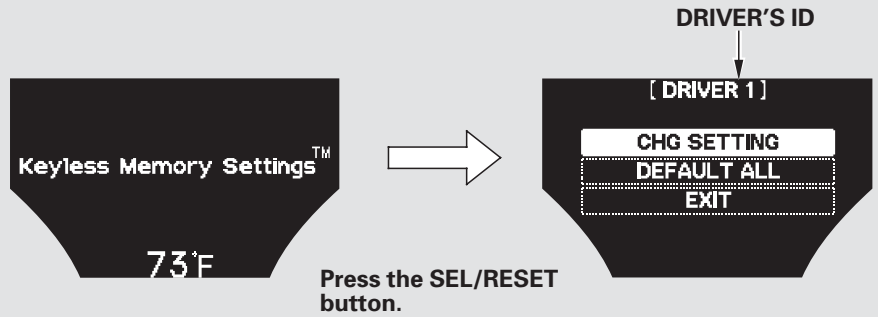
You can customize some vehicle control settings for “DRIVER 1” and “DRIVER 2” separately.

To have the driver’s ID detected, make sure the driver’s door is unlocked with a corresponding remote transmitter/keyless access remote.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

On models without keyless access system

If you use the key to unlock the driver's door, the system cannot recognize either "DRIVER 1" or "DRIVER 2."



Press the SEL/RESET button.

U.S. model is shown.

If you want to change any vehicle control settings, select Keyless Memory Settings™ by pressing either INFO button (▲/▼), then press the SEL/RESET button. Select CHG SETTING, then press the SEL/RESET button.

Refer to the table on the following pages about the settings you want to customize.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Multi-Information Display

Group Setup	Menu Item	Description	Setting Option		Page
METER SETUP (P.99)	LANGUAGE SELECTION	Changes the language used in the display.	ENGLISH*1		100
			FRENCH		
			SPANISH		
	ADJUST OUTSIDE TEMP. DISPLAY	Changes the outside temperature reading above or below its current reading.	−5°F ～ ±0°F*1 ～ 5°F (U.S.)		101
			−3°C ～ ±0°C*1 ～ 3°C (Canada)		
	TRIP COMPUTER TRIP A INFO RESET	Causes trip meter A and the average fuel economy to reset when you refuel.	WITH REFUEL*1		102
			MANUAL ONLY		
			IGN OFF		
	ADJUST ALARM VOLUME	Changes the indicator alarm volumes into three levels.	HIGH		104
			MID*1		
			LOW		
	AUTO INTERIOR ILLUMINATION	Changes the interior light sensitivity to your liking.	MAX	LOW	105
			HIGH	MIN	
			MID*1	OFF	
	KEYLESS START GUIDANCE SCREENS*2	Changes the display of the keyless start guidance screens.	ON*1		106
			OFF		
POSITION SETUP (P.108)	MEMORY POSITION LINK	Changes the driver's seat and the outside mirror positions to a stored setting.	ON*1		109
			OFF		

*1: Default setting
*2: Only on models with keyless access system

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Multi-Information Display

Group Setup	Menu Item	Description	Setting Option		Page
KEYLESS ACCESS SETUP*2 (P.111)	DOOR UNLOCK MODE	Changes which doors unlock when you use the remote or grab the driver's door handle.	DRIVER DOOR*1		112
			ALL DOORS		
	KEYLESS ACCESS LIGHT FLASH	Causes some exterior lights to blink when you unlock/lock the doors by grabbing or touching the sensor/pushing the button on the driver's door handle.	ON*1		113
			OFF		
	KEYLESS ACCESS BEEP	Causes the beeper to sound when you unlock/lock the doors by grabbing or touching the sensor/ pushing the button on the driver's door handle.	ON*1		114
			OFF		
LIGHTING SETUP (P.116)	INTERIOR LIGHT DIMMING TIME	Changes how long (in seconds) the interior lights stay on after you close the doors.	60 sec	15 sec	117
			30 sec*1		
	HEADLIGHT AUTO OFF TIMER	Changes how long (in seconds) the exterior lights stay on after you close the driver's door.	60 sec	0 sec	118
			30 sec		
			15 sec*1		
	AUTO LIGHT SENSITIVITY	Changes the timing of when the headlights come on. The headlight switch needs to be in the AUTO position.	MAX	LOW	119
			HIGH	MIN	
			MID*1		

*1: Default setting
*2: Only on models with keyless access system

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Multi-Information Display

Group Setup	Menu Item	Description	Setting Option	Page
DOOR/WINDOW SETUP (P.121)	AUTO DOOR LOCK	Changes when the doors automatically lock.	SHIFT FROM P (A/T only) WITH VEHICLE SPEED*1 OFF	122
	AUTO DOOR UNLOCK	Changes when the doors automatically unlock.	SHIFT TO P/DRIVER DOOR*2 (A/T only) SHIFT TO P/ALL DOORS (A/T only) IGN OFF/DRIVER DOOR*3 IGN OFF/ALL DOORS OFF	123
	KEY AND REMOTE UNLOCK MODE	Changes which doors unlock with the remote transmitter/keyless access remote on the first push.	DRIVER DOOR*1 ALL DOORS	125
	KEYLESS LOCK ACKNOWLEDGMENT	The exterior lights flash each time you press the LOCK or UNLOCK button. A beeper will also sound when you press the LOCK button twice.	ON*1 OFF	126
	SECURITY RELOCK TIMER	Changes how long it takes (in seconds) for the doors to relock and the security system to set after you unlock but do not open the door.	90 sec 60 sec 30 sec*1	127
DEFAULT ALL (P.129)		Set/Cancel all the customized settings as default.	CANCEL SET	129

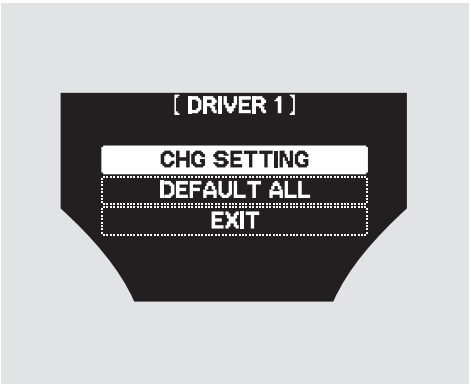
*1: Default setting
*2: Default setting for automatic transmission
*3: Default setting for manual transmission

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Customize Settings
You can customize some of the vehicle control settings to your preference. Here are the settings you can customize:

- METER SETUP
- POSITION SETUP
- KEYLESS ACCESS SETUP*
- LIGHTING SETUP
- DOOR/WINDOW SETUP

*: Only on models with keyless access system



When you want to change the vehicle control settings, press the INFO (▲/▼) button to select CHG SETTING, then press the SEL/RESET button.

Each time you press the INFO (▲/▼) button, the screen changes as shown on the next page. Press the INFO (▲/▼) button until you see the setup you want to customize, then press the SEL/RESET button to enter your selection.

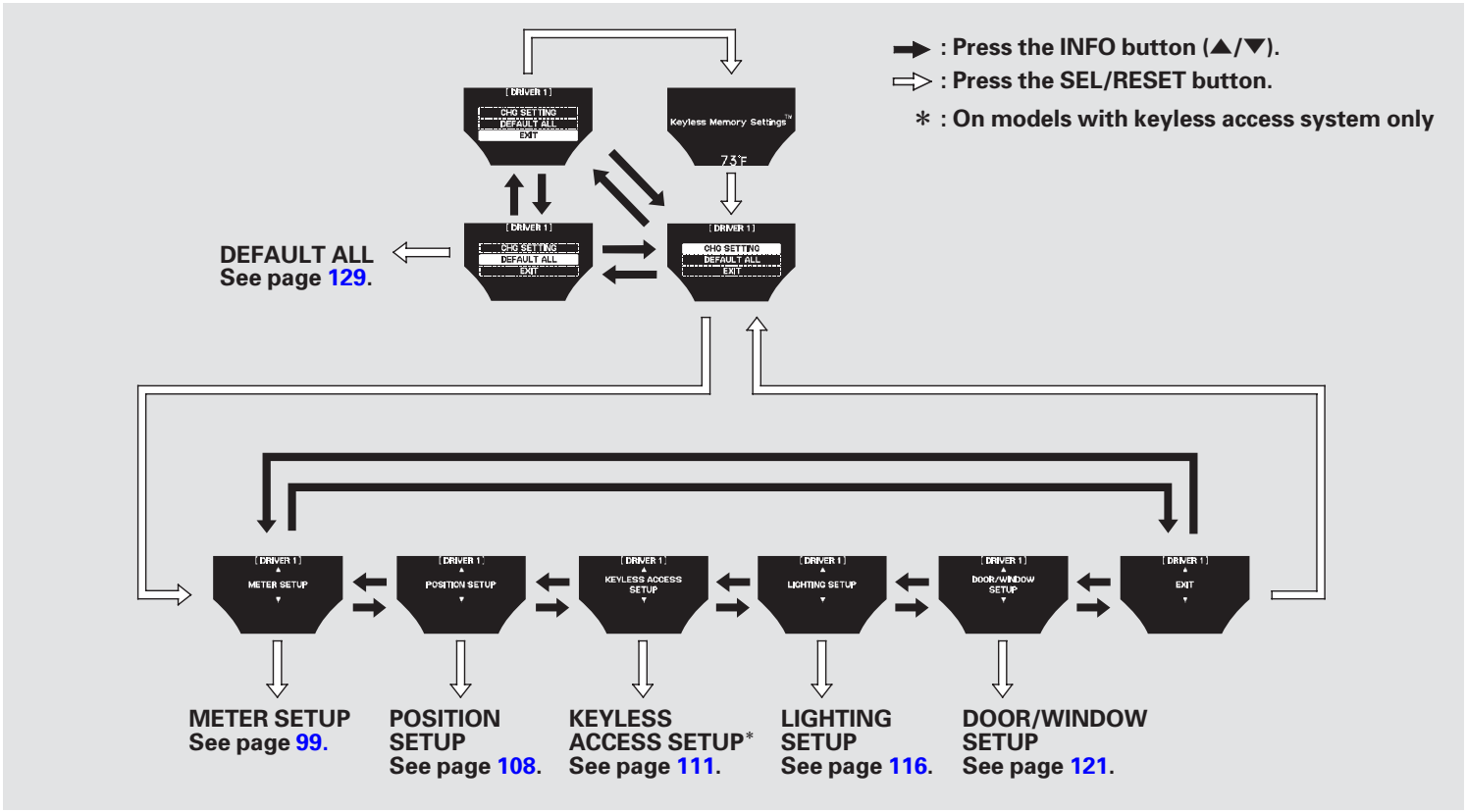
If you do not make any changes, select "EXIT." The display returns to the normal display.

If you want the settings as they were when the vehicle left the factory, select DEFAULT ALL, as described on page 129 .

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Multi-Information Display



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

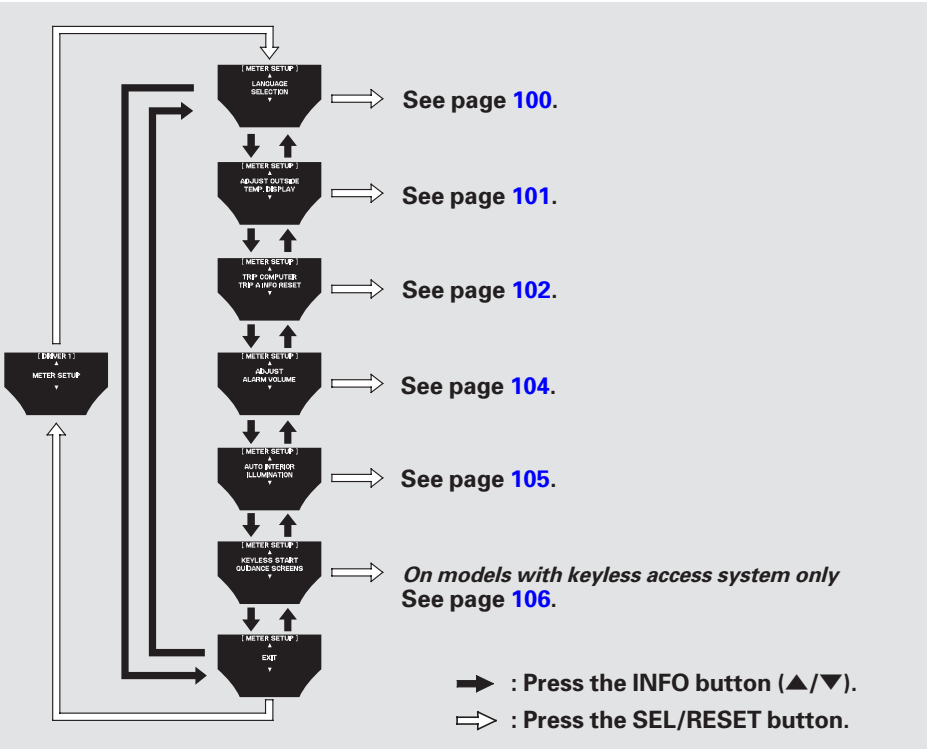
Meter Setup

Here are the five or six custom settings for the meter setup:

- LANGUAGE SELECTION
- ADJUST OUTSIDE TEMP. DISPLAY
- TRIP COMPUTER TRIP A INFO RESET
- ADJUST ALARM VOLUME
- AUTO INTERIOR ILLUMINATION

On models with keyless access system

- KEYLESS START GUIDANCE SCREENS



CONTINUED

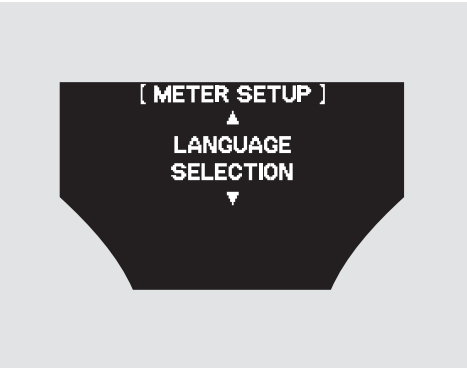
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Multi-Information Display

While “METER SETUP” is shown, press the SEL/RESET button to enter the customize mode.

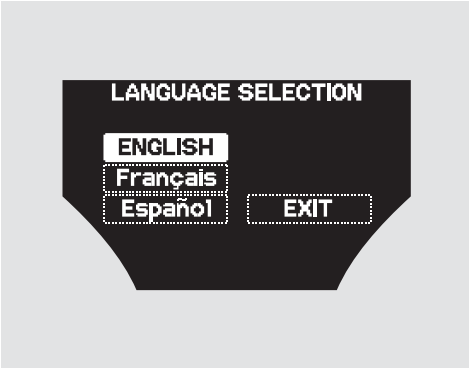
Each time you press the INFO (▲/▼) button, the screen changes as shown in the illustration. Press the INFO (▲/▼) button until you see the setting you want to customize, then press the SEL/RESET button to enter your selection.

Language Selection



There are three language selections you can make: English, French, and Spanish. To choose the language you want, follow these instructions:

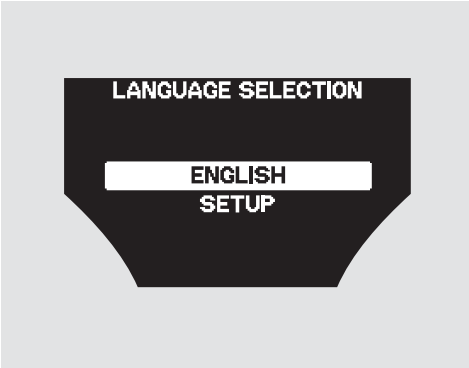
You can choose this item to customize from “METER SETUP” by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button repeatedly.



Press the SEL/RESET button to see the selections.

Select the desired language by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, then enter your selection by pressing the SEL/RESET button.

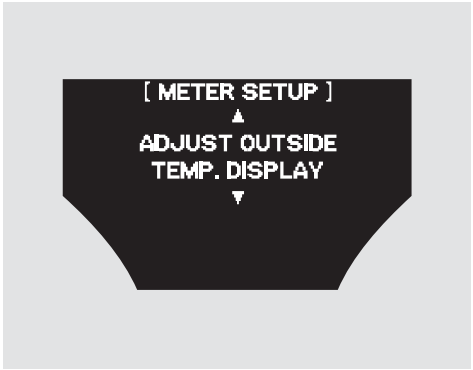
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



When your selection is successfully completed, the display changes as shown above, and then goes back to the customize item screen.

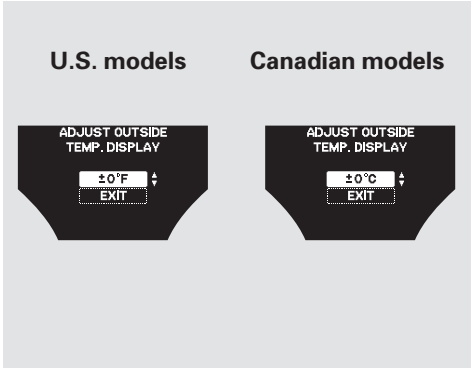
If the “SETTING INCOMPLETE” message appears, go back to “LANGUAGE SELECTION” and repeat the procedure again.

Adjust Outside Temp. Display



If you sometimes find that the temperature reading is a few degrees above or below the actual temperature, you can adjust it by following these instructions:

You can choose this item to customize from “METER SETUP” by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button repeatedly.
Press the SEL/RESET button to enter the setting.



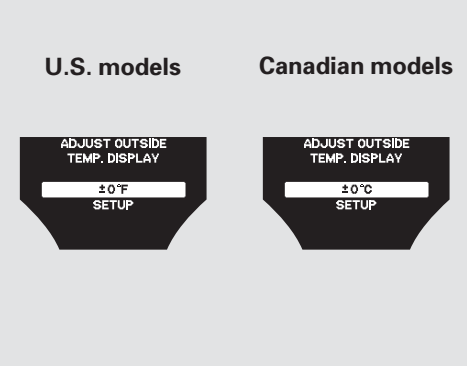
The displayed number is the current adjustment above or below the outside temperature.

Adjust the outside temperature value by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button repeatedly. Press the SEL/RESET button to set the desired value.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Multi-Information Display



When your selection is successfully completed, the display changes as shown above, and then goes back to the customize item screen.

If the “SETTING INCOMPLETE” message appears, go back to “ADJUST OUTSIDE TEMP. DISPLAY” and repeat the procedure again.

Trip Computer Trip A Info Reset
You can select the reset timing of the Trip A information: Trip A, Average Fuel Economy A, Average Vehicle Speed A, and Elapsed Time A.

There are three reset choices you can make:

MANUAL ONLY — You can reset the Trip A information when Trip A is displayed (see page 81).

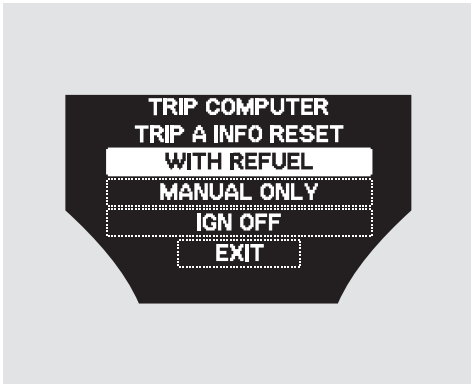
IGN OFF — The Trip A information is reset when you turn the ignition switch* to the LOCK (0) position.

* : Models equipped with the keyless access system have an engine start/stop button instead of an ignition switch. VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) Mode is the equivalent of LOCK (0). For more information, see pages 178 and 181 .

WITH REFUEL — The Trip A information is reset every time you refuel your vehicle.

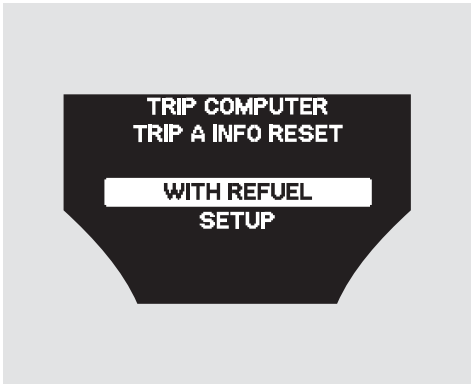
You can choose this item to customize from “METER SETUP” by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button repeatedly.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Press the SEL/RESET button to see the selections.

Select the desired setting by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, then enter your selection by pressing the SEL/RESET button.



When your selection is successfully completed, the display changes as shown above, and then goes back to the customize item screen.

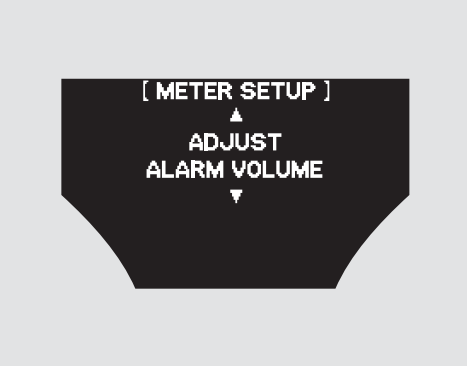
If the “SETTING INCOMPLETE” message appears, go back to “TRIP COMPUTER TRIP A INFO RESET” and repeat the procedure again.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

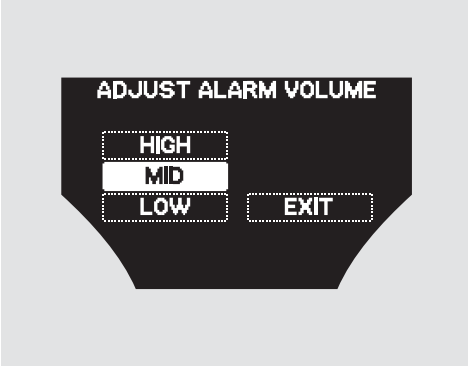
Multi-Information Display

Adjust Alarm Volume



Select the warning alarm volume from three levels.

You can choose this item to customize from “METER SETUP” by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button repeatedly.



Press the SEL/RESET button to see the selections.

Select the desired level by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, then enter your selection by pressing the SEL/RESET button.

When your selection is successfully completed, the display changes as shown above, and then goes back to the customize item screen.

If the “SETTING INCOMPLETE” message appears, go back to “ADJUST ALARM VOLUME” and repeat the procedure again.

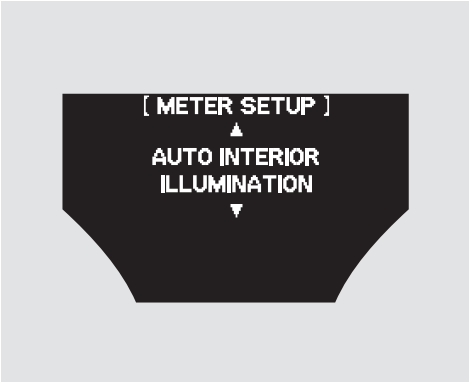
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Auto Interior Illumination
While the headlight switch is turned on, the interior lights gradually dim, as the outside light level gets low. You can customize at which outside light level the lights start to dim.

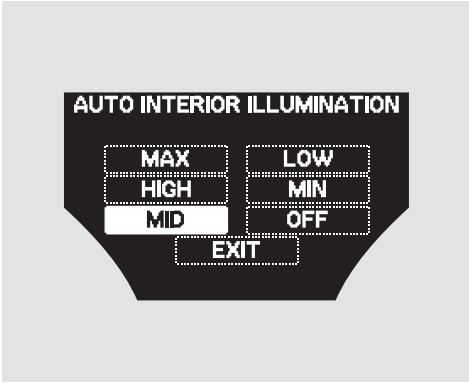
There are MAX, HIGH, MID, LOW and MIN levels and OFF for the auto interior illumination settings.

If you want the illuminations to start dimming as early as possible, select MAX. For illuminations to start dimming as late as possible, select MIN. Choose HIGH, MID, or LOW for levels in between.

To disable the auto interior illumination function, select OFF.



You can choose this item to customize from "METER SETUP" by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button repeatedly.



Press the SEL/RESET button to see the selections.

Select the desired setting by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, then enter your selection by pressing the SEL/RESET button.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Multi-Information Display

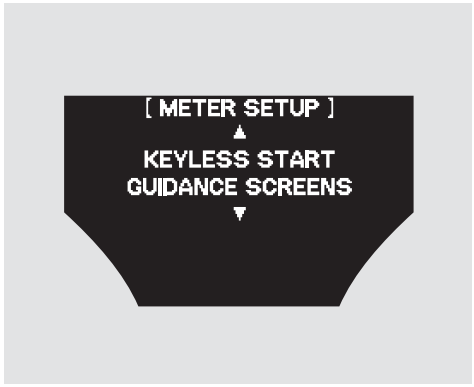
When your selection is successfully completed, the display changes as shown above, and then goes back to the customize item screen.

If the “SETTING INCOMPLETE” message appears, go back to “AUTO INTERIOR ILLUMINATION” and repeat the procedure again.

Keyless Start Guidance Screens

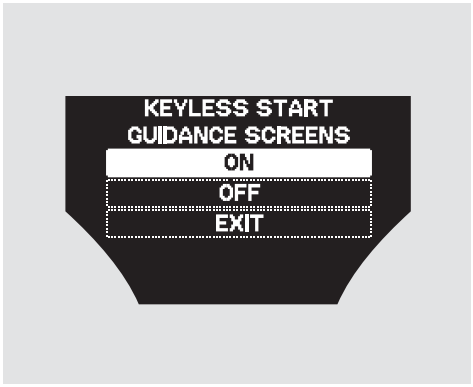
On models with keyless access system

When this item is set to ON, you will see some guidance messages on the multi-information display. You can change this setting between on and off. For more information on start guidance messages, see page 182 .



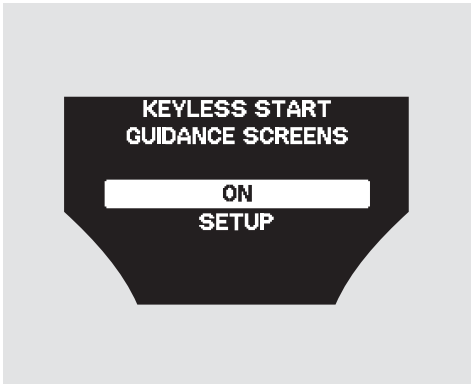
You can choose this item to customize from “METER SETUP” by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button repeatedly.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Press the SEL/RESET button to see the selections.

Select ON or OFF by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, then enter your selection by pressing the SEL/RESET button.



When your selection is successfully completed, the display changes as shown above, and then goes back to the customize item screen.

If the “SETTING INCOMPLETE” message appears, go back to “KEYLESS START GUIDANCE SCREENS” and repeat the procedure again.

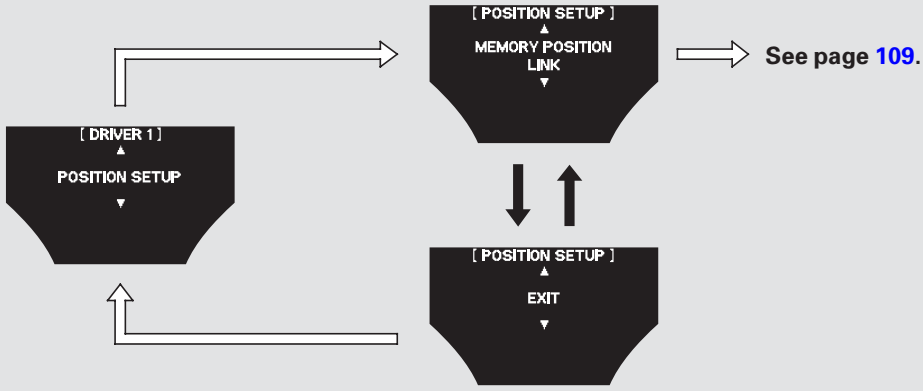
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Multi-Information Display

Position Setup
You can customize the MEMORY POSITION LINK setting in position setup.

While “POSITION SETUP” is shown, press the SEL/RESET button to enter the customize mode.

Each time you press the INFO (▲/▼) button, the screen changes as shown in the illustration. Press the INFO (▲/▼) button until you see the custom setting then press the SEL/RESET button to enter your selection.

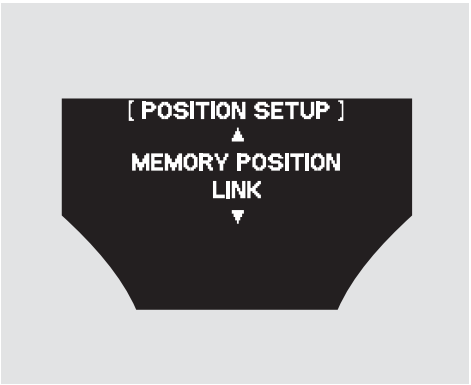


Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

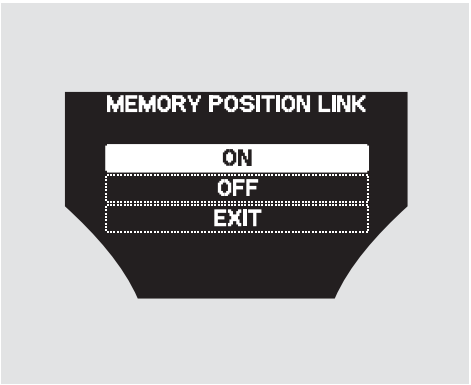
Memory Position Link
When Memory Position Link is set to ON, the driver's seat and the outside mirrors move to the positions stored in memory. To cause the memory to activate, open the driver's door with the remote transmitter. On models with keyless access system, open the driver's door with the remote, or grab the door handle while carrying the remote.

To set the memory positions, see page 164 .

On models with keyless access system
For information on using the remote, see page 167 .



You can choose this item to customize from "POSITION SETUP" by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button repeatedly.



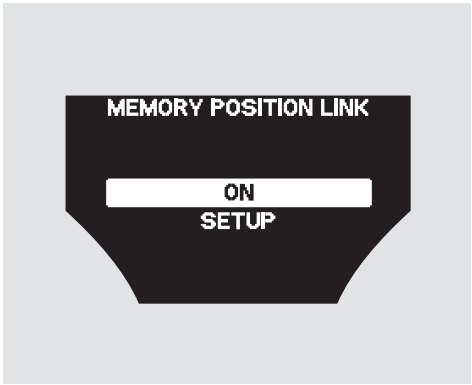
Press the SEL/RESET button to see the selections.

Select ON or OFF by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, then enter your selection by pressing the SEL/RESET button.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Multi-Information Display



When your selection is successfully completed, the display changes as shown above, and then goes back to the customize item screen.

If the “SETTING INCOMPLETE” message appears, go back to “MEMORY POSITION LINK” and repeat the procedure again.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Keyless Access Setup

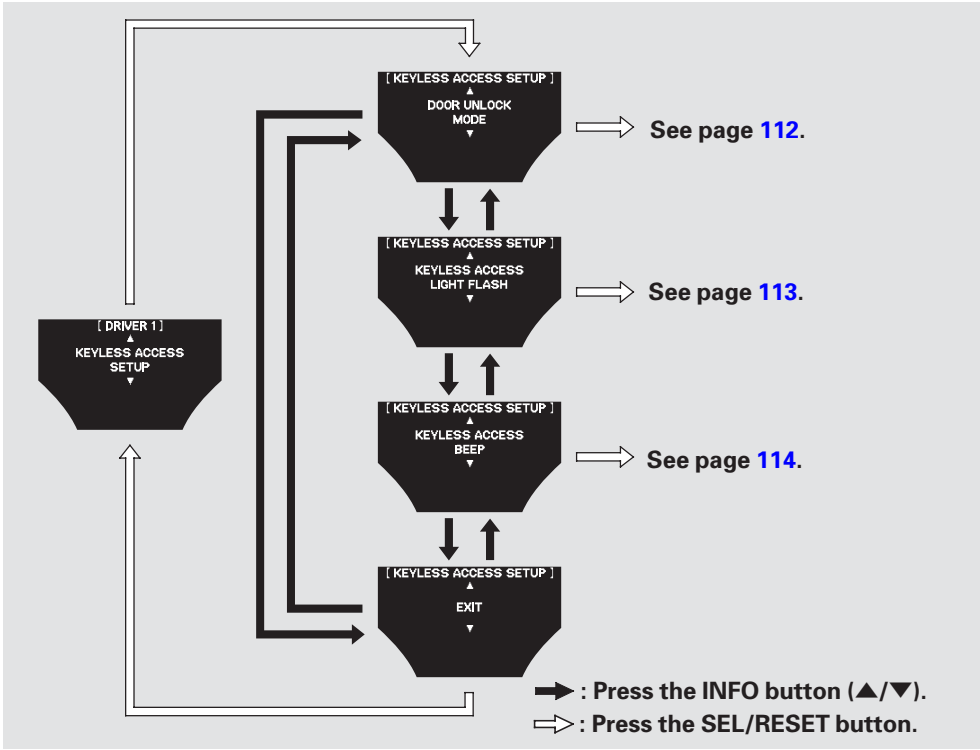
On models with keyless access system

There are three custom settings for the keyless access setup:

- DOOR UNLOCK MODE
- KEYLESS ACCESS LIGHT FLASH
- KEYLESS ACCESS BEEP

While "KEYLESS ACCESS SETUP" is shown, press the SEL/RESET button to enter the customize mode.

Each time you press the INFO (▲/▼) button, the screen changes as shown in the illustration. Press the INFO (▲/▼) button until you see the setting you want to customize, then press the SEL/RESET button to enter your selection.



CONTINUED

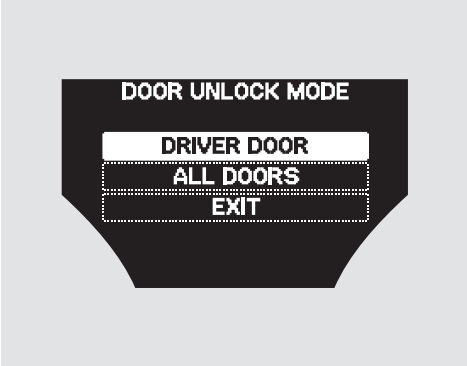
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Multi-Information Display

Door Unlock Mode

To select whether the driver's door or all doors unlock when you open the driver's door with the remote or by grabbing the door handle (while carrying the remote), follow these instructions:

You can choose this item to customize from "KEYLESS ACCESS SETUP" by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button repeatedly.



Press the SEL/RESET button to see the selections.

Select DRIVER DOOR or ALL DOORS by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, then enter your selection by pressing the SEL/RESET button.

When your selection is successfully completed, the display changes as shown above, and then goes back to the customize item screen.

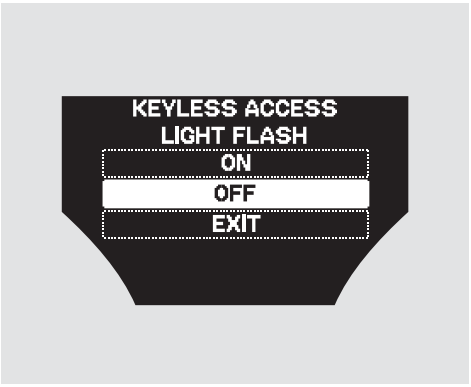
If the "SETTING INCOMPLETE" message appears, go back to "DOOR UNLOCK MODE" and repeat the procedure again.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Keyless Access Light Flash
When KEYLESS ACCESS LIGHT FLASH is set to ON, some exterior lights blink twice when you unlock the doors by grabbing the driver's door handle while carrying the remote.

The same exterior lights blink once when you lock the doors by pushing the door lock button while carrying the remote.

You can choose this item to customize from "KEYLESS ACCESS SETUP" by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button repeatedly.



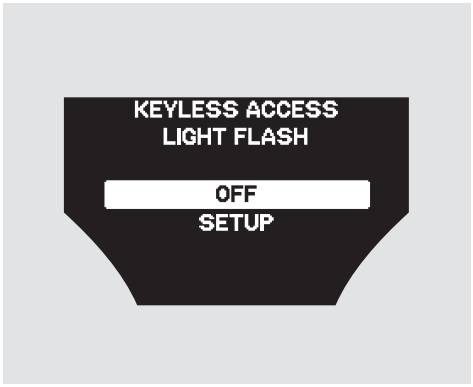
Press the SEL/RESET button to see the selections.

Select ON or OFF by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, then enter your selection by pressing the SEL/RESET button.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Multi-Information Display



When your selection is successfully completed, the display changes as shown above, and then goes back to the customize item screen.

If the “SETTING INCOMPLETE” message appears, go back to “KEYLESS ACCESS LIGHT FLASH” and repeat the procedure again.

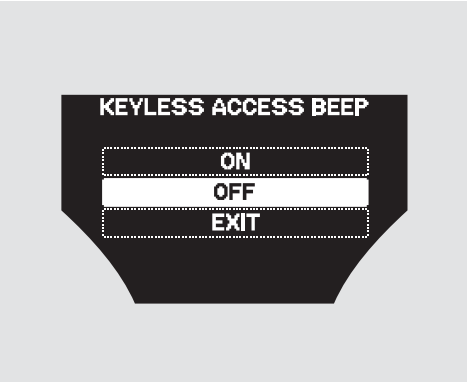
Keyless Access Beep

When KEYLESS ACCESS BEEP is set to ON, the beeper sounds twice when you unlock the doors by grabbing the drivers door handle while carrying the remote.

When you lock the doors by pushing the door lock button while carrying the remote, the beeper sounds once.

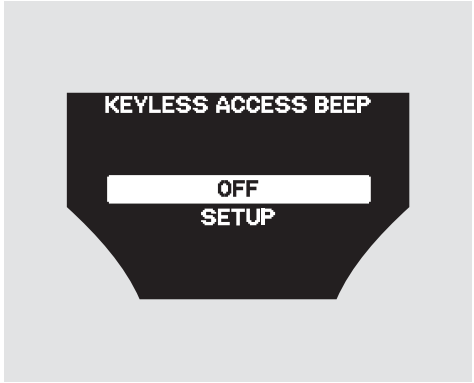
You can choose this item to customize from “KEYLESS ACCESS SETUP” by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button repeatedly.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Press the SEL/RESET button to see the selections.

Select ON or OFF by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, then enter your selection by pressing the SEL/RESET button.



When your selection is successfully completed, the display changes as shown above, and then goes back to the customize item screen.

If the “SETTING INCOMPLETE” message appears, go back to “KEYLESS ACCESS BEEP” and repeat the procedure again.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Multi-Information Display

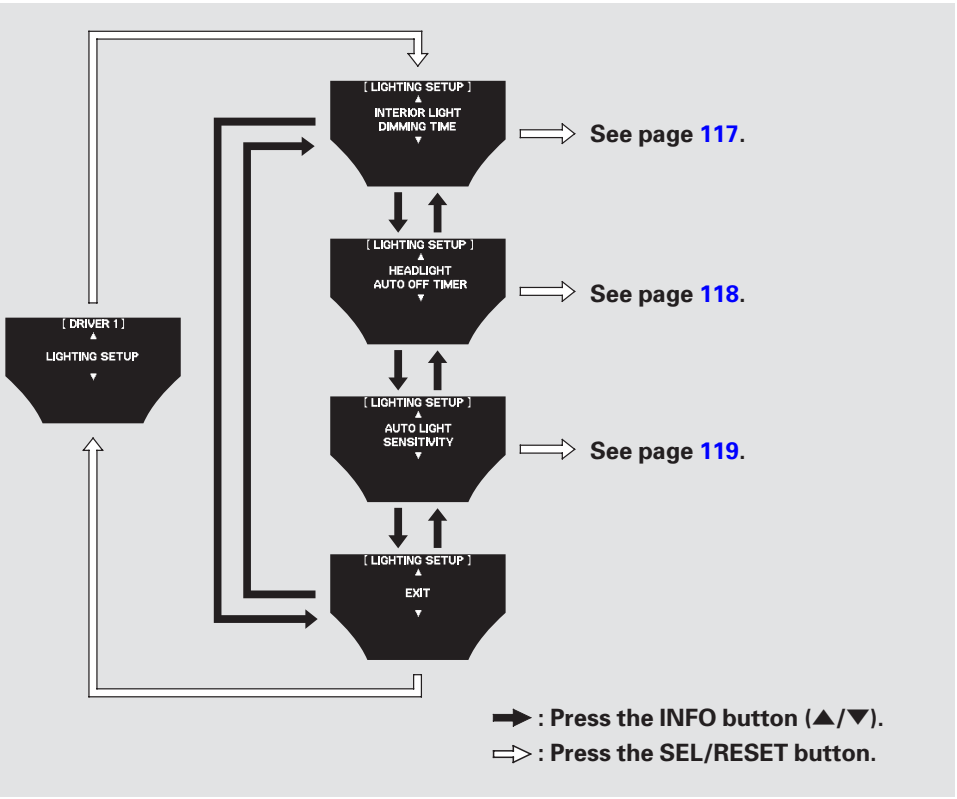
Lighting Setup

Here are the three custom settings for the lighting setup:

- INTERIOR LIGHT DIMMING TIME
- HEADLIGHT AUTO OFF TIMER
- AUTO LIGHT SENSITIVITY

While "LIGHTING SETUP" is shown, press the SEL/RESET button to enter the customize mode.

Each time you press the INFO (▲/▼) button, the screen changes as shown in the illustration. Press the INFO (▲/▼) button until you see the setting you want to customize, then press the SEL/RESET button to enter your selection.

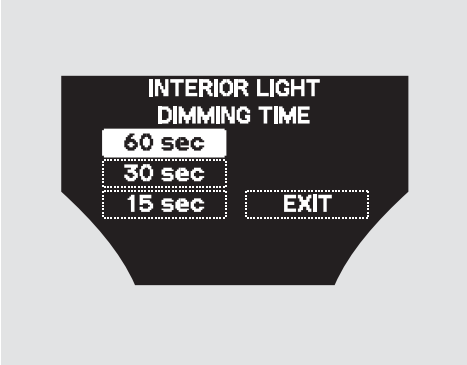


Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Interior Light Dimming Time

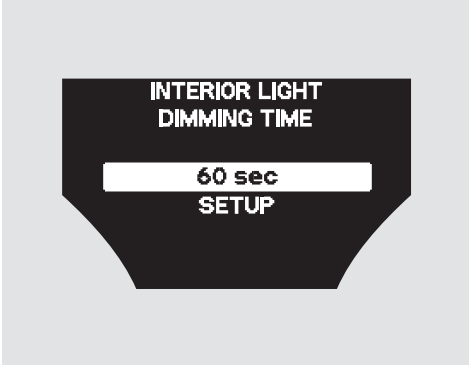
The interior lights fade out when you close all doors. To change how long the lights stay on before they fade out, follow these instructions:

You can choose this item to customize from "LIGHTING SETUP" by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button repeatedly.



Press the SEL/RESET button to see the selections.

Select the desired setting (15 sec, 30 sec, or 60 sec) by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, then enter your selection by pressing the SEL/RESET button.



When your selection is successfully completed, the display changes as shown above, and then goes back to the customize item screen.

If the "SETTING INCOMPLETE" message appears, go back to "INTERIOR LIGHT DIMMING TIME" and repeat the procedure again.

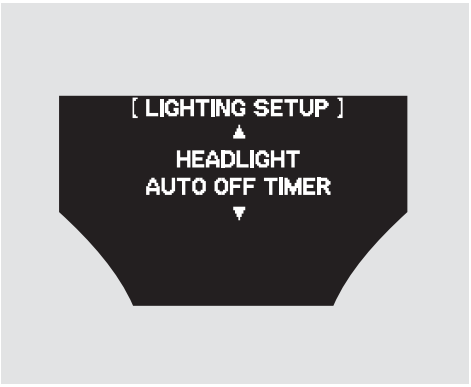
CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

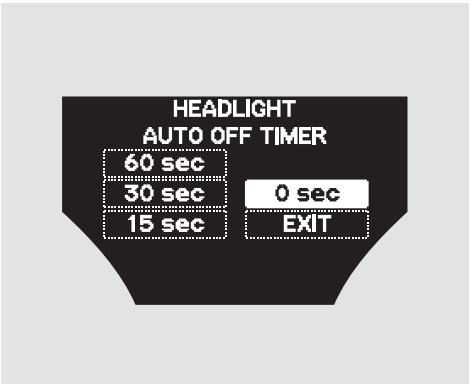
Multi-Information Display

Headlight Auto Off Timer

The headlights, parking lights, side marker lights, taillights, and license plate lights go off after the selected time when you remove the key from the ignition switch and close the driver's door. On models with keyless access system, the lights go off after the selected time when you close the driver's door and take the remote with you. To change how long the lights stay on before they go off, follow these instructions:



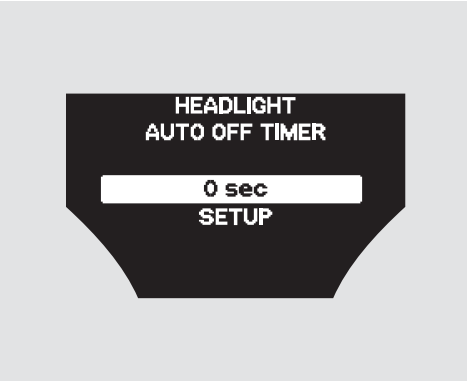
You can choose this item to customize from "LIGHTING SETUP" by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button repeatedly.



Press the SEL/RESET button to see the selections.

Select the desired setting (60 sec, 30 sec, 15 sec or 0 sec) by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, then enter enter your selection by pressing the SEL/RESET button.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



When your selection is successfully completed, the display changes as shown above, and then goes back to the customize item screen.

If the “SETTING INCOMPLETE” message appears, go back to “HEADLIGHT AUTO OFF TIMER” and repeat the procedure again.

Auto Light Sensitivity

The headlights automatically come on when the headlight switch is in the AUTO position and the ambient light reaches a changeable level. You can select the auto light sensitivity from the following five levels:

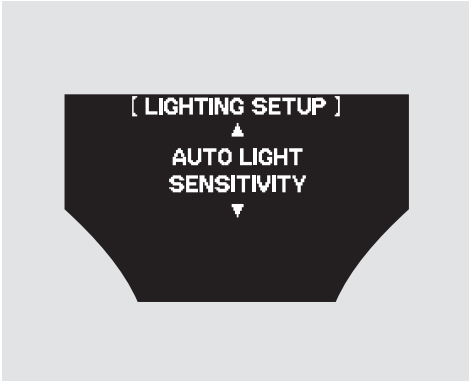
MAX —
The headlights come on when it is bright.

HIGH —
The headlights come on when it is somewhat bright.

MID —
The headlights come on when it is as bright as sunset or sunrise.

LOW —
The headlights come on when it is somewhat dark.

MIN —
The headlights come on when it is dark.

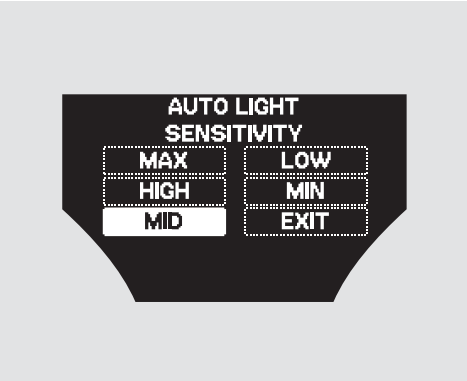


You can choose this item to customize from “LIGHTING SETUP” by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button repeatedly

CONTINUED

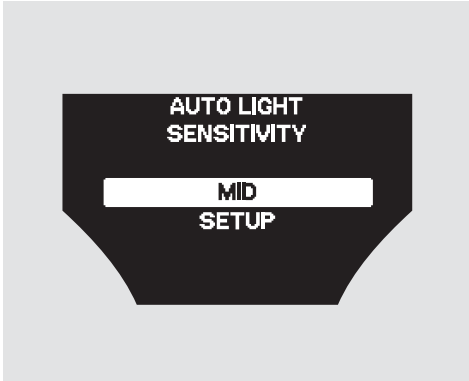
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Multi-Information Display



Press the SEL/RESET button to see the selections.

Select the desired setting (MAX, HIGH, MID, LOW or MIN) by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, then enter your selection by pressing the SEL/RESET button.



When your selection is successfully completed, the display changes as shown above, and then goes back to the customize item screen.

If the “SETTING INCOMPLETE” message appears, go back to “AUTO LIGHT SENSITIVITY” and repeat the procedure again.

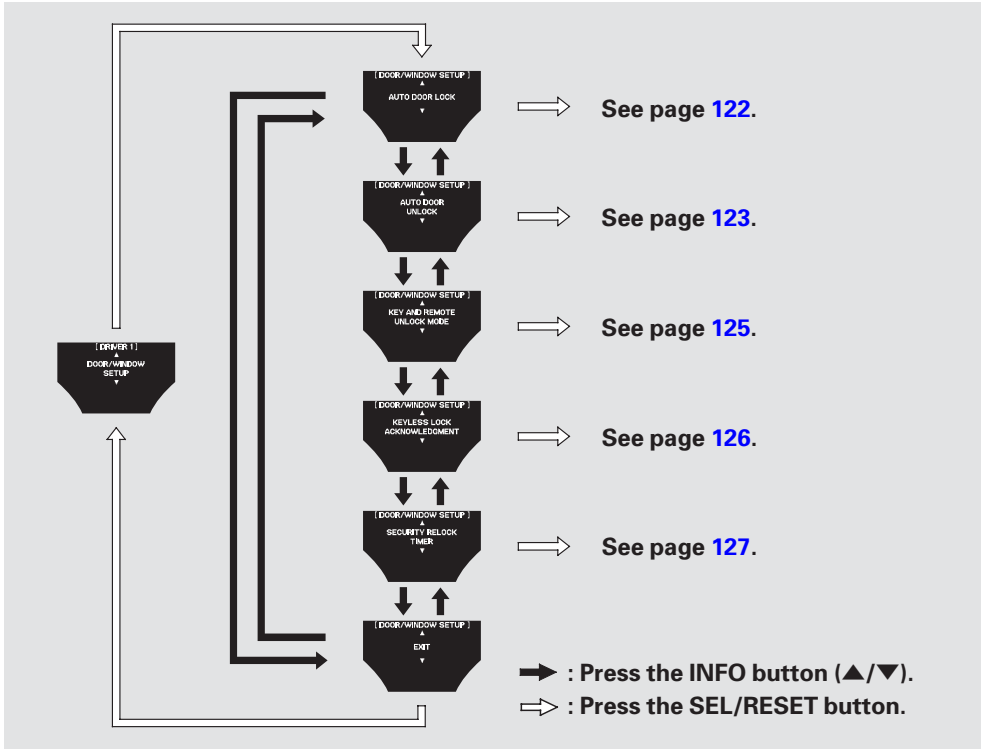
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Door/Window Setup
Here are the five custom settings for the door setup:

- AUTO DOOR LOCK
- AUTO DOOR UNLOCK
- KEY AND REMOTE UNLOCK MODE
- KEYLESS LOCK ACKNOWLEDGMENT
- SECURITY RELOCK TIMER

While "DOOR/WINDOW SETUP" is shown, press the SEL/RESET button to enter the customize mode.

Each time you press the INFO (▲/▼) button, the screen changes as shown in the illustration. Press the INFO (▲/▼) button until you see the setting you want to customize, then press the SEL/RESET button to enter your selection.



CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Multi-Information Display

Auto Door Lock
There are three settings you can choose from:

SHIFT FROM P —
The doors lock whenever you move the shift lever out of Park.
(Automatic transmission model only)

WITH VEHICLE SPEED —
The doors lock when the vehicle speed reaches about 10 mph (about 16 km/h).

OFF —
The auto door lock is deactivated all the time.

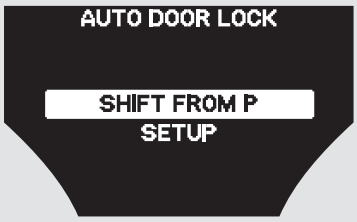
You can choose this item to customize from “DOOR/WINDOW SETUP” by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button repeatedly.

A/T model is shown.

Press the SEL/RESET button to enter the selecting mode.

Select the desired setting by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, then enter your selection by pressing the SEL/RESET button.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



A/T model is shown.

When your selection is successfully completed, the display changes as shown above, and then goes back to the customize item screen.

If the "SETTING INCOMPLETE" message appears, go back to "AUTO DOOR LOCK" and repeat the procedure again.

Auto Door Unlock

There are five possible settings for automatic transmission models and three possible settings for manual transmission models.

Automatic transmission model only

DRIVER DOOR WITH SHIFT TOP — The driver's door unlocks when you move the shift lever to Park with the brake pedal depressed.

Automatic transmission model only

ALL DOORS WITH SHIFT TO P — All the doors unlock when you move the shift lever to Park with the brake pedal depressed.

DRIVER DOOR WITH IGN OFF — The driver's door unlocks when you turn the ignition switch* to the LOCK (0) position.

ALL DOORS WITH IGN OFF — All the doors unlock when you turn the ignition switch* to the LOCK (0) position.

OFF — The auto door unlock is deactivated all the time.

*: Models equipped with the keyless access system have an engine start/stop button instead of an ignition switch. VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) Mode is the equivalent of LOCK (0). For more information, see pages 178 and 181.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Multi-Information Display

You can choose this item to customize from “DOOR/WINDOW SETUP” by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button repeatedly

A/T model is shown.

Press the SEL/RESET button to see the selections.

Select the desired setting by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, then enter your selection by pressing the SEL/RESET button.

If you choose “IGN OFF,” you will see the above display.

Press the INFO (▲/▼) button to switch the door lock mode setting between the driver’s door and all doors. Then, press the SEL/RESET button to enter your selection.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

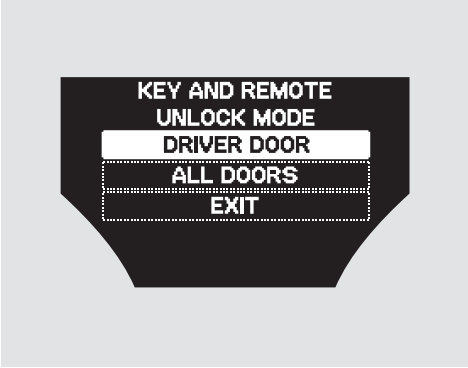
When your selection is successfully completed, the display changes as shown above, and then goes back to the customize item screen.

If the "SETTING INCOMPLETE" message appears, go back to "AUTO DOOR UNLOCK" and repeat the procedure again.

Key and Remote Unlock Mode

You can select whether the driver's door or all the doors unlock the first time you press the unlock button on the remote transmitter/keyless access remote.

You can choose this item to customize from "DOOR/WINDOW SETUP" by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button repeatedly.



Press the SEL/RESET button to enter the selecting mode.

Select the desired setting by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, then enter your selection by pressing the SEL/RESET button.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Multi-Information Display

When your selection is successfully completed, the display changes as shown above, and then goes back to the customize item screen.

If the “SETTING INCOMPLETE” message appears, go back to “KEY AND REMOTE UNLOCK MODE” and repeat the procedure again.

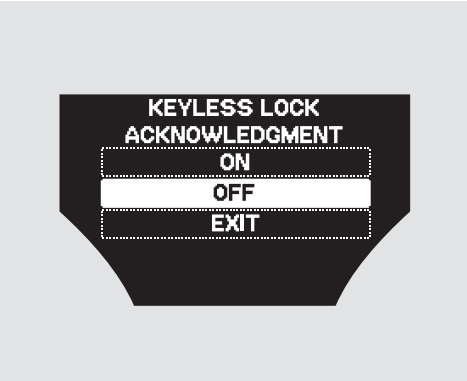
Keyless Lock Acknowledgment
When you press the LOCK button on the remote transmitter or the keyless access remote, some exterior lights flash, and a beeper sounds when you push the LOCK button again within 5 seconds to verify that the doors and the trunk are locked and the security system has set (see page 377). You can customize the exterior lights not to flash and the beeper not to sound.

When you press the UNLOCK button on the remote transmitter or the keyless access remote to unlock the driver’s door/all the doors (depending on the customize setting), the exterior lights blink twice to verify that the door(s) is unlocked and the security system is turned off.

To turn this feature on or off, follow these instructions.

You can choose this item to customize from “DOOR/WINDOW SETUP” by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button repeatedly

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Press the SEL/RESET button to enter the selecting mode.

Select ON or OFF by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, then enter your selection by pressing the SEL/RESET button.

When your selection is successfully completed, the display changes as shown above, and then goes back to the customize item screen.

If the "SETTING INCOMPLETE" message appears, go back to "KEYLESS LOCK ACKNOWLEDGMENT" and repeat the procedure again.

Security Relock Timer

If you unlock the doors with the remote transmitter or the keyless access remote, but do not open any of the doors within 30 seconds, the doors automatically relock, and the security system sets.

You can change this relock time from 30 seconds to 60 or 90 seconds.

On models with keyless access system

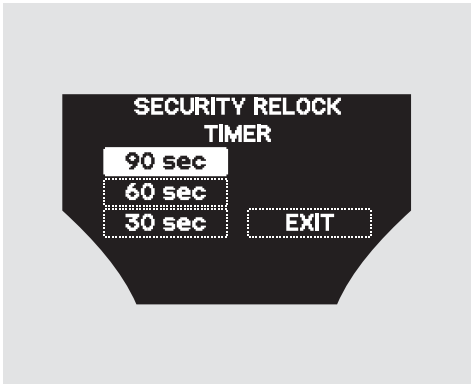
When you unlock the doors by touching either front door handle while carrying the keyless access remote, the relock time is fixed in 30 seconds.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Multi-Information Display

You can choose this item to customize from “DOOR/WINDOW SETUP” by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button repeatedly.



Press the SEL/RESET button to enter the selecting mode.

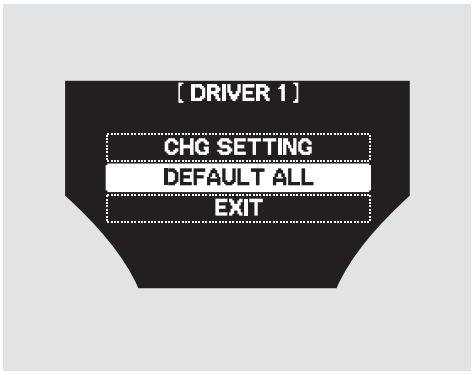
Select the desired setting by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, then enter your selection by pressing the SEL/RESET button.

When your selection is successfully completed, the display changes as shown above, and then goes back to the customize item screen.

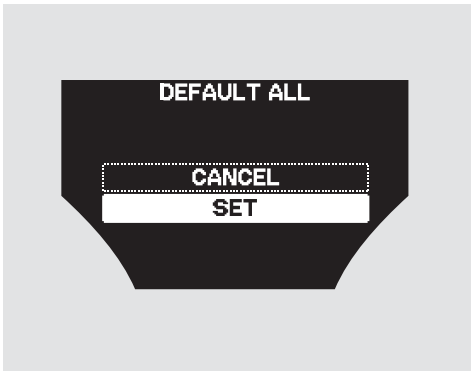
If the “SETTING INCOMPLETE” message appears, go back to “SECURITY RELOCK TIMER” and repeat the procedure again.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

DEFAULT ALL

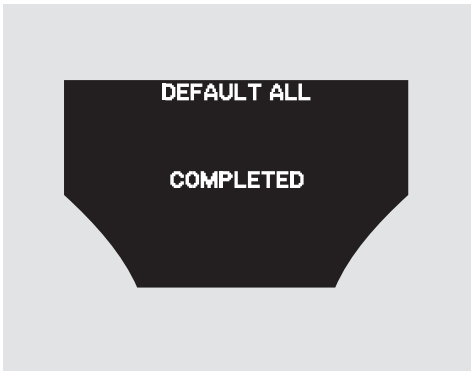


If you want to set the default settings, press the INFO (▲/▼) button to select DEFAULT ALL, then press the SEL/RESET button.



To set the default settings, press the INFO (▲/▼) button to select SET then press the SEL/RESET button.

If you want to cancel DEFAULT ALL, select CANCEL, then press the SEL/RESET button. The screen goes back to the previous display.

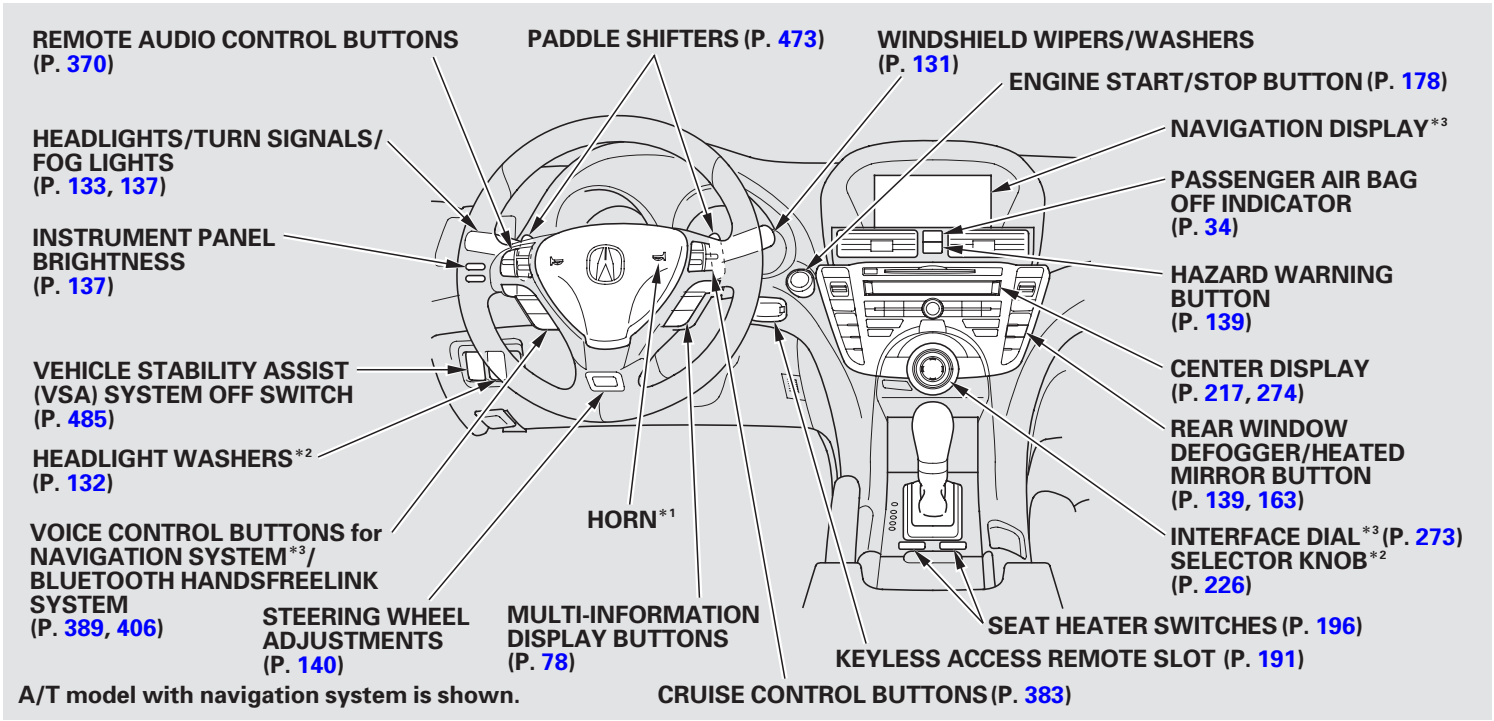


When DEFAULT ALL is set, you will see the above display for several seconds, then the screen returns to the default all setting display.

If the setting is not successfully completed, “FAILED” is shown for several seconds, and then the screen goes back to the normal message mode. Repeat the same procedure to select DEFAULT ALL.

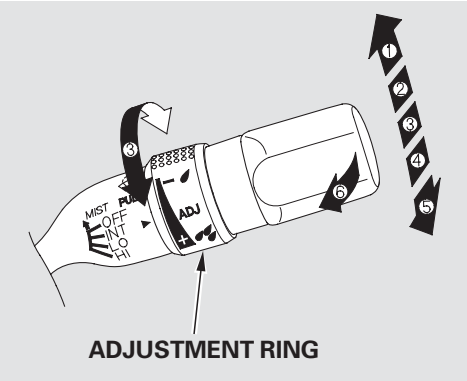
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Controls Near the Steering Wheel


REMOTE AUDIO CONTROL BUTTONS (P. 370)
PADDLE SHIFTERS (P. 473)
WINDSHIELD WIPERS/WASHERS (P. 131)
ENGINE START/STOP BUTTON (P. 178)
HEADLIGHTS/TURN SIGNALS/ FOG LIGHTS (P. 133, 137)
NAVIGATION DISPLAY*3
PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF INDICATOR (P. 34)
INSTRUMENT PANEL BRIGHTNESS (P. 137)
HAZARD WARNING BUTTON (P. 139)
VEHICLE STABILITY ASSIST (VSA) SYSTEM OFF SWITCH (P. 485)
CENTER DISPLAY (P. 217, 274)
REAR WINDOW DEFOGGER/HEATED MIRROR BUTTON (P. 139, 163)
HEADLIGHT WASHERS*2 (P. 132)
HORN*1
INTERFACE DIAL*3 (P. 273)
SELECTOR KNOB*2 (P. 226)
VOICE CONTROL BUTTONS for NAVIGATION SYSTEM*3/ BLUETOOTH HANDSFREELINK SYSTEM (P. 389, 406)
STEERING WHEEL ADJUSTMENTS (P. 140)
MULTI-INFORMATION DISPLAY BUTTONS (P. 78)
SEAT HEATER SWITCHES (P. 196)
KEYLESS ACCESS REMOTE SLOT (P. 191)
A/T model with navigation system is shown.
CRUISE CONTROL BUTTONS (P. 383)

*1 : To use the horn, press the center pad of the steering wheel.
*2 : If equipped
*3 : Refer to the navigation system owner's manual.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



ADJUSTMENT RING

1. MIST
2. OFF
3. INT — Intermittent
4. LO — Low speed
5. HI — High speed
6. Windshield washers

Push the right lever up or down to select a position.

MIST — The wipers run at high speed until you release the lever.

OFF — The wipers are not activated.

INT — The length of the wipe interval is varied automatically according to vehicle's speed.

Vary the delay by turning the adjustment ring. If you turn it to the shortest delay (position), the wipers change to low speed operation when the vehicle speed exceeds 12 mph (20 km/h).

LO — The wipers run at low speed.

HI — The wipers run at high speed.

Windshield Washer — Pull the wiper control lever toward you, and hold it. The washers spray until you release the lever. The wipers run at low speed, then complete a few more sweeps after you release the lever.

CONTINUED

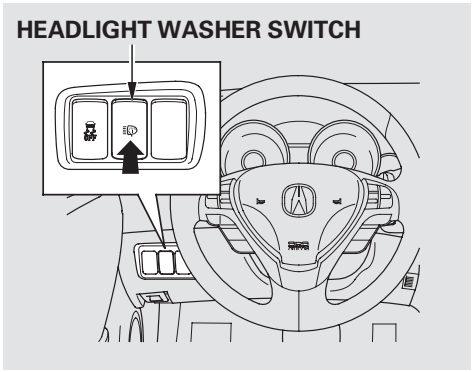
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Windshield Wipers and Washers

Canadian SH-AWD models only
When you activate the windshield washer with the headlights turned on, the headlight washer will be activated under certain conditions. For more information, see ***Headlight Washers*** section in the next column.

Headlight Washers
Canadian SH-AWD models only

HEADLIGHT WASHER SWITCH



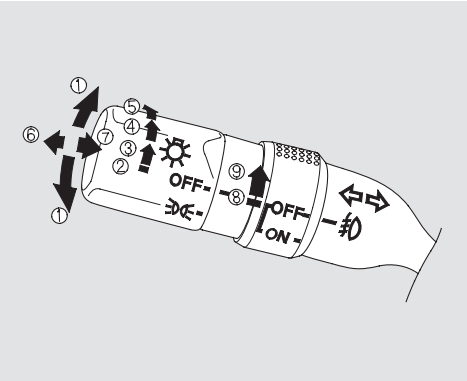
The headlight washers can be operated at any time by pressing the headlight washer button located next to the steering wheel column. The headlights must be turned on to use this button. In addition, the headlight washer will automatically turn on the first time you turn on the windshield washers while the ignition switch* is in the ON (II) position.

The headlight washers use the same fluid reservoir as the windshield washers.

* : Models equipped with the keyless access system have an engine start/stop button instead of an ignition switch. ON Mode is the equivalent of ON (II). For more information, see pages 178 and 181 .

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Turn Signals and Headlights



1. Turn Signal
2. Off
3. Parking and instrument panel
4. AUTO
5. Headlights on
6. High beams
7. Flash high beams
8. Fog lights off
9. Fog lights on

Turn Signal — Push down on the left lever to signal a left turn and up to signal a right turn. To signal a lane change, push lightly on the lever and hold it. The lever will return to the center when you release it or complete a turn.

Headlights — Turning the switch to the " " position turns on the parking lights, taillights, instrument panel lights, side-marker lights, and rear license plate lights.

Turning the switch to the " " position turns on the headlights.

When the light switch is in either of these positions, the lights on indicator comes on as a reminder.

This indicator stays on if you leave the light switch on and turn the ignition switch* to the ACCESSORY (I) or LOCK (0) position.

*: Models equipped with the keyless access system have an engine start/stop button instead of an ignition switch. VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) Mode is the equivalent of LOCK (0) and ACCESSORY Mode is the equivalent of ACCESSORY (I). For more information, see pages 178 and 181.

If you leave the lights on with the key removed from the ignition switch, or with the power mode* in VEHICLE OFF (LOCK), you will hear reminder beeps when you open the driver's door.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Headlights

High Beams — Push the left lever forward until you hear a click. The blue high beam indicator will come on (see page 71). Pull the lever back to return to the low beams.

To flash the high beams, pull the lever back lightly, then release it. The high beams will stay on as long as you hold the lever back.

AUTO — The automatic lighting feature turns on the headlights and all other exterior lights when it senses low ambient light.

To turn on automatic lighting, turn the light switch to AUTO. The lights will come on automatically when the outside light level becomes low (at dusk, for example). The lights on indicator comes on as a reminder. The lights and indicator will turn off automatically when the system senses high ambient light.

On models without keyless access system

The lights will remain on when you turn off the ignition switch. They will turn off automatically when you remove the key and open the driver's door. To turn them on again, either turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position or turn the light switch to the position.

On models with keyless access system

The lights will remain on when you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK). They will turn off automatically when you open the driver's door and take the remote with you. To turn them on again, either set the power mode to ON or turn the light switch to the position.

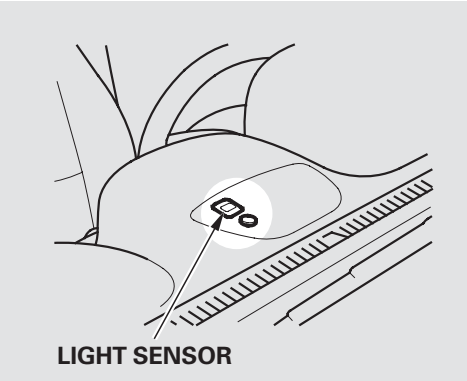
On all models

Even with the automatic lighting feature turned on, we recommend that you turn on the lights manually when driving at night or in a dense fog, or when you enter dark areas such as long tunnels or parking facilities.

To change the "AUTO LIGHT SENSITIVITY" setting, see page 119 .

Do not leave the light switch in AUTO if you will not be driving the vehicle for an extended period (a week or more). You should also turn off the lights if you plan to leave the engine idling or off for a long time.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



LIGHT SENSOR

The automatic lighting feature is controlled by a sensor located on top of the dashboard. Do not cover this sensor or spill liquids on it.

Automatic Lighting Off Feature

The automatic lighting off feature turns off the headlights, all other exterior lights, and the instrument panel lights within 15 seconds after you remove the key and close the driver's door, or on models with keyless access system, set the power mode* to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK), take the remote with you, and close the driver's door.

To change the "HEADLIGHT AUTO OFF TIMER" setting, see page 118.

* : *On models without keyless access system*

Your vehicle has the engine start/stop button instead of an ignition switch. For more information on how to select the power mode, see page 178.

If you remove the key (or the vehicle is in VEHICLE OFF mode on models with keyless access system), and the driver's door is opened and closed, the automatic lighting off feature activates with the headlight switch in the " " or " " position, or the lights turned on by setting the switch in the "AUTO" position.

If you turn the ignition switch* to the LOCK (0) position with the headlight switch on, but do not open the door and get out, the lights turn off after 10 minutes (3 minutes, if the switch is in the "AUTO" position).

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Headlights

The lights will turn on again when you unlock or open the driver's door. If you unlock the door, but do not open it within 15 seconds, the lights will go off. With the driver's door open, you will hear a lights on reminder beeper.

* : Models equipped with the keyless access system have an engine start/stop button instead of an ignition switch. VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) Mode is the equivalent of LOCK (0). For more information, see pages 178 and 181 .

Daytime Running Lights

With the headlight switch off or in the position, the high beam headlights and the high beam indicator come on with reduced brightness when you turn the ignition switch* to the ON (II) position and release the parking brake. They remain on until you turn the ignition switch off, even if you set the parking brake.

The headlights revert to normal operation when you turn them on with the switch.

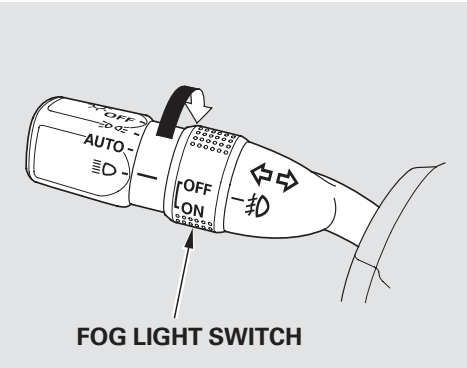
* : Models equipped with the keyless access system have an engine start/stop button instead of an ignition switch. ON Mode is the equivalent of ON (II). For more information, see pages 178 and 181 .

If you see a "CHECK DRL SYSTEM" message on the multi-information display, there is a problem with the daytime running light system. Take your vehicle to a dealer to have it checked.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Fog Lights, Instrument Panel Brightness

Fog Lights



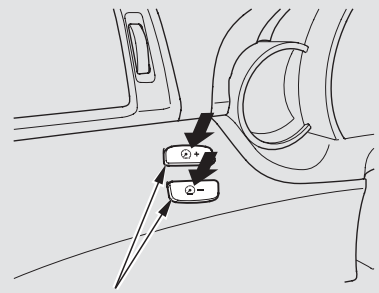
FOG LIGHT SWITCH

Turn the fog lights on and off by turning the switch next to the headlight switch.

You can use the fog lights only when the headlights are on low beam.

With the light switch in the AUTO position, you can also use the fog lights when the headlights turn on automatically. They will go off when the headlights turn off.

Instrument Panel Brightness



ADJUSTMENT BUTTONS

Adjust the brightness of the instrument panel by pressing the + or − button with the ignition switch* in the ON (II) position. Press the + button to increase the brightness and the − button to decrease it.

* : Models equipped with the keyless access system have an engine start/stop button instead of an ignition switch. ON Mode is the equivalent of ON (II). For more information, see pages 178 and 181 .

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Instrument Panel Brightness

U.S. model is shown.

The level of brightness is shown on the multi-information display while you adjust it. It goes out 5 seconds after you finish adjusting.

To reduce glare at night, the instrument panel illumination dims when you turn the light switch to or . To cancel the glare reduction function, set the brightness to the highest level, then press the + button. You will hear a beep when it is canceled.

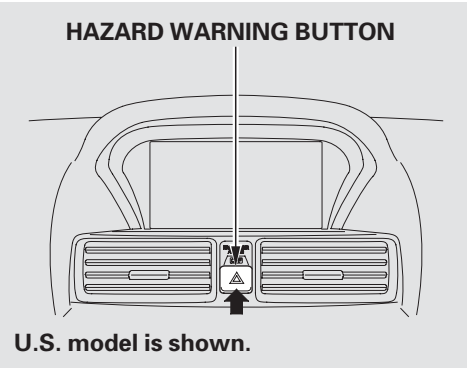
When the brightness reaches the maximum level, “BRIGHTNESS MAXIMUM LEVEL” appears on the display.

If your vehicle is equipped with the navigation system, the navigation system screen will also go to full brightness. This can be helpful when using the headlights during daylight hours.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Hazard Warning Button, Rear Window Defogger

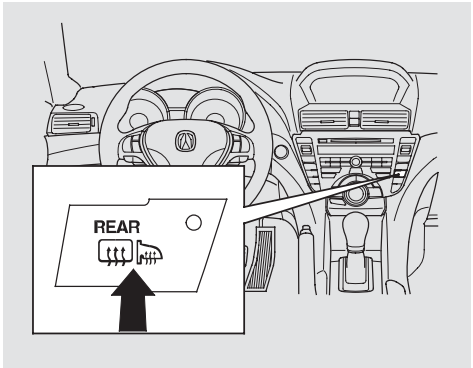
Hazard Warning Button



U.S. model is shown.

Push the button between the center vents to turn on the hazard warning lights (four-way flashers). This causes all four outside turn signals and both indicators in the instrument panel to flash. Use the hazard warning lights if you need to park in a dangerous area near heavy traffic, or if your vehicle is disabled.

Rear Window Defogger



The rear window defogger clears fog, frost, and thin ice from the window. Push the defogger button to turn it on and off. The indicator in the button comes on to show the defogger is on. If you do not turn it off, the defogger will shut itself off within about 10 to 30 minutes according to the outside temperature. It also shuts off when you turn off the ignition switch, or set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) on models with keyless access system. You have to turn it on again when you restart the vehicle.

Make sure the rear window is clear and you have good visibility before starting to drive.

The defogger and antenna wires on the inside of the rear window can be accidentally damaged. When cleaning the glass, always wipe side to side.

Pushing this button also turns the mirror heaters on or off. For more information, see page 163 .

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

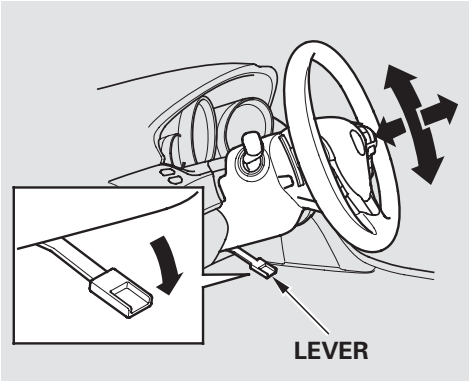
Steering Wheel Adjustments

Make any steering wheel adjustments before you start driving.

⚠ WARNING

Adjusting the steering wheel position while driving may cause you to lose control of the vehicle and be seriously injured in a crash.

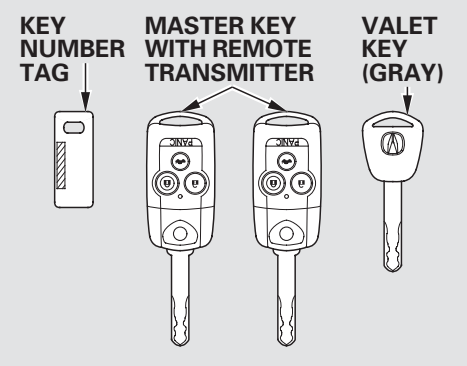
Adjust the steering wheel only when the vehicle is stopped.



1. Push the lever under the steering column all the way down.
2. Move the steering wheel up or down, and in or out, so it points toward your chest, not toward your face. Make sure you can see the instrument panel gauges and indicators.
3. Push the lever up to lock the steering wheel in that position.
4. Make sure you have securely locked the steering wheel in place by trying to move it up, down, in, and out.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

On models without keyless access system



The master key fits all the locks on your vehicle.

The valet key works only in the ignition and the driver's door lock. You can keep the trunk pass-through cover and the glove box locked when you leave your vehicle and the valet key at a parking facility.

You should have received a key number tag with your key. You will need this key number if you ever have to get a lost key replaced. Use only an Acura-approved key blank.

These keys contain electronic circuits that are activated by the immobilizer system. They will not work to start the engine if the circuits are damaged.

- Protect the key from direct sunlight, high temperature, and high humidity.
- Do not drop the keys or set heavy objects on them.
- Keep the keys away from liquids. If they get wet, dry them immediately with a soft cloth.

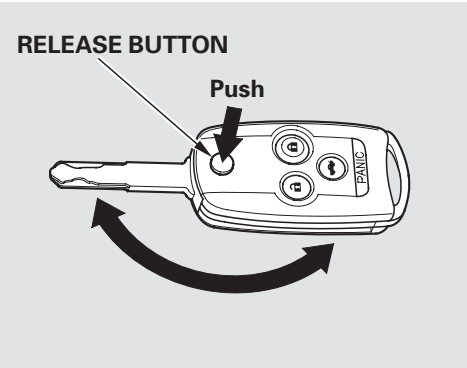
The valet key does not contain a battery. Do not try to take it apart.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Keys and Locks

Retractable Master Key

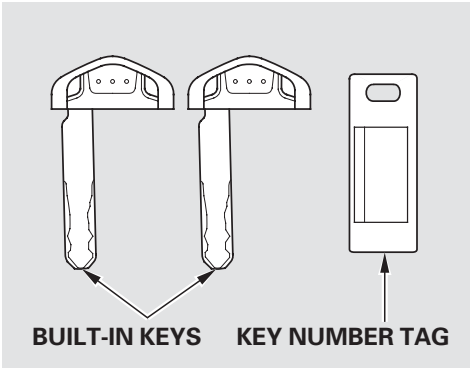


The master key can be retracted into the remote transmitter. To use the key, push the release button to release the key from the transmitter. The key should be fully extended. To retract the key, push the release button and at the same time push the key into the remote transmitter until it is securely latched.

Always make sure the key is fully extended when you insert it to the ignition switch. If the key is not fully extended, the immobilizer system may not operate properly and prevent the engine from starting.

The key may come in contact with your finger while being retracted or extended. Make sure your fingers do not touch the pivot of the key when retracting or extending it.

On models with keyless access system



Each keyless access remote has a built-in key. This key is used to lock/unlock the doors when the remote battery becomes weak and the power door lock/unlock operation is disabled. You cannot start the engine with this key.

The built-in key (see page 195) fits all the locks on your vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

You should have received a key number tag with your keys. You will need this key number if you ever have to get a lost key replaced. Use only Acura-approved key blanks.

Immobilizer System

The immobilizer system protects your vehicle from theft. If an improperly coded key or keyless access remote* (or other device) is used, the engine's fuel system is disabled.

When you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, or select the ON mode* with the engine start/stop button, the immobilizer system indicator should come on briefly, then go off. If the indicator starts to blink, it means the system does not recognize the coding of the key or keyless access remote.

On models without keyless access system, turn the ignition switch to the LOCK (0) position, remove the key, reinsert it, and turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position again.

On models with keyless access system, set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK), then select the ON mode again.

The system may not recognize your key's or remote's coding if another immobilizer key or other metal object (i.e. key chain) is near the ignition switch or the keyless access remote when you insert the key or set the power mode* to ON.

*: *On models without keyless access system*

Your vehicle has the engine start/stop button instead of an ignition switch. See page 181 for a comparison between conventional power switches and your engine start/stop button. For more information on selecting the power mode, see page 178.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Immobilizer System

If the system repeatedly does not recognize the coding of your key or keyless access remote, contact your dealer.

Do not attempt to alter this system or add other devices to it. Electrical problems could result that may make your vehicle inoperable.

If you have lost your key or keyless access remote and you cannot start the engine, contact your dealer.

NOTICE

Always take the ignition key or the keyless access remote with the built-in key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone.

As required by the FCC:
This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

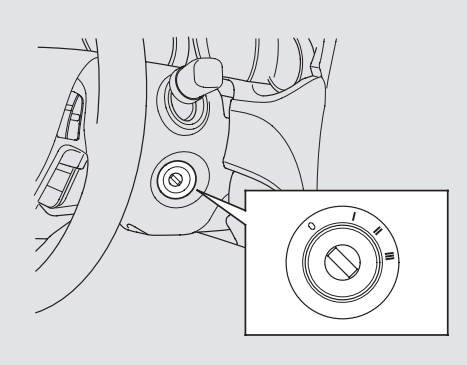
Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

This device complies with Industry Canada Standard RSS-210.
Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Ignition Switch

On models without keyless access system



The ignition switch has four positions: LOCK (0), ACCESSORY (I), ON (II), and START (III).

LOCK (0) — You can insert or remove the key only in this position. To turn the key, you must push the key in slightly. The shift lever must also be in Park.

If the front wheels are turned, the anti-theft lock may make it difficult to turn the key. Firmly turn the steering wheel to the left or right as you turn the key.

ACCESSORY (I) — You can operate the audio system and the accessory power sockets in this position.

ON (II) — This is the normal key position when driving. Several of the indicators on the instrument panel come on as a test when you turn the ignition switch from the ACCESSORY (I) to the ON (II) position.

START (III) — Use this position only to start the engine. The switch returns to the ON (II) position when you let go of the key.

You will hear a reminder beeper if you leave the key in the ignition switch in the LOCK (0) or the ACCESSORY (I) position and open the driver's door. Remove the key to turn off the beeper.

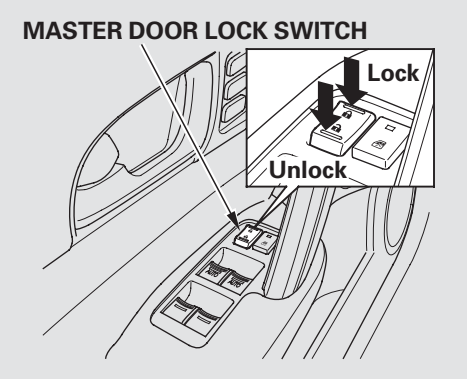
You will also see a "REMOVE KEY" message on the multi-information display.

The shift lever must be in Park before you can remove the key from the ignition switch.

On models with keyless access system
Go to page 179 for information on the engine start/stop button.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

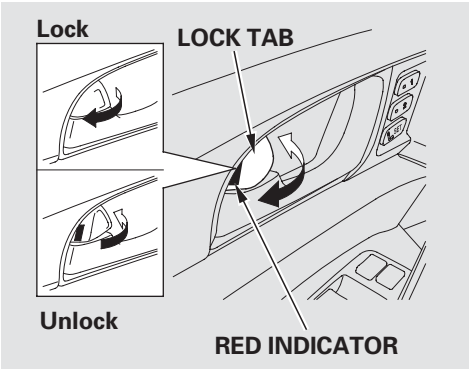
Door Locks



To lock all doors, push the front of the master door lock switch on either front door, pull the lock tab rearward on the driver's door, or turn the key* counterclockwise in the outside lock on the driver's door.

** On models with keyless access system*
The built-in key can be used to lock/unlock the doors when the remote battery becomes weak and the power door lock/unlock operation is disabled. For more information, see page 195.

Pushing the rear of either master door lock switch will unlock all doors. Pushing forward the lock tab on the driver's door unlocks only that door.



The lock tab on any passenger's door locks and unlocks that door.

When the door is unlocked, you can see the red indicator on the lock tab above the inner door handle.

All doors can be locked from the outside by using the key in the driver's door. To unlock only the driver's door, insert the key, turn it clockwise, and release it. The remaining doors unlock when you turn the key a second time within a few seconds.

You can customize the door lock/unlock settings (see page 121).

You can open or close the windows and the moonroof by using the key in the driver's door (see page 200).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To lock any passenger's door when getting out of the vehicle, pull the lock tab rearward and close the door.

On models without keyless access system

To lock the driver's door, remove the key from the ignition switch, pull the lock tab rearward or push the front of the master switch, then close the door.

Default setting

When the vehicle speed reaches about 10 mph (15 km/h) or more, all the doors lock automatically.

Automatic transmission:

When you shift to P after driving, the driver's door unlocks.

Manual transmission:

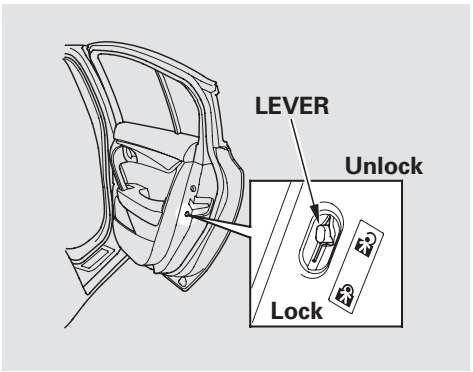
When you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) after driving, the driver's door unlocks.

Lockout Prevention

On models without keyless access system

If you forget and leave the key in the ignition switch, lockout prevention will not allow you to lock the driver's door. With any door open and the key in the ignition switch, locking with the master door lock switch is disabled. If the driver's door is closed, the lock tab on the driver's door is not disabled. Pulling the driver's lock tab rearward will lock all doors. If you try to lock an open driver's door by pulling the lock tab tab rearward, the driver's door lock tab pops out and unlocks the driver's door.

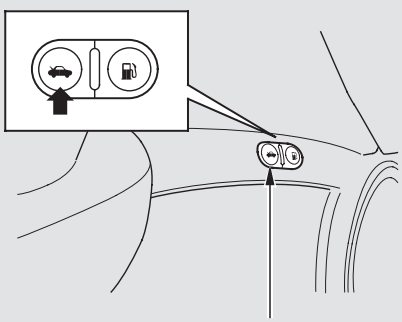
Childproof Door Locks



The childproof door locks are designed to prevent children seated in the rear from accidentally opening the rear doors. Each rear door has a lock lever near the edge. With the lever in the LOCK position (lever is down), the door cannot be opened from the inside regardless of the position of the lock tab. To open the door, push the lock tab forward and use the outside door handle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Trunk



TRUNK RELEASE BUTTON

You can open the trunk in any of the following ways:

- Press the trunk release button on the driver's door.
- Press and hold the trunk release button on the remote transmitter or the keyless access remote.

On models with keyless access system

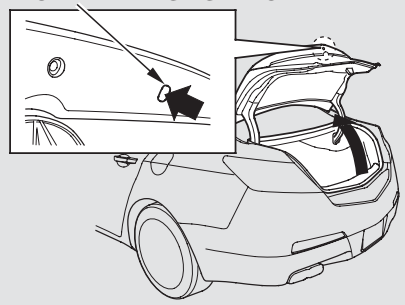
- If the doors are unlocked, press the trunk release switch on the trunk lid.
- If the doors are locked, press the trunk release switch on the trunk lid with the remote in keyless access operating range.

On models with keyless access system

The trunk will lock when you lock the driver's door with the key*, the keyless access remote, either master door lock switch, or the lock tab on the driver's door.

To unlock the trunk, turn the key* twice to unlock the doors, push the rear of either master door lock switch, or push UNLOCK twice on the keyless access remote.

TRUNK RELEASE SWITCH

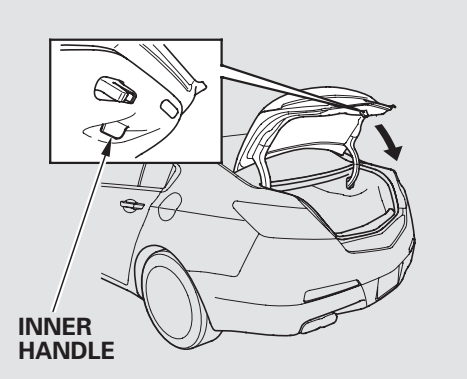


On models with keyless access system

To open the trunk from the outside, push the release switch, then lift up.

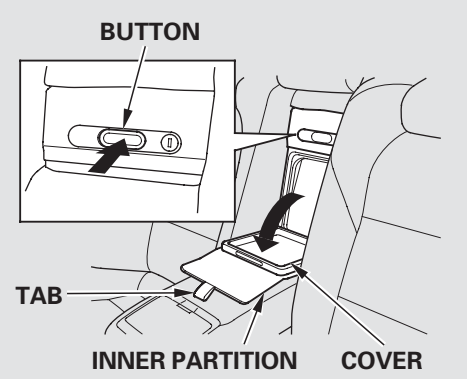
* : The built-in key can be used to lock/unlock the doors and trunk when the remote battery becomes weak and the power door lock/unlock operation is disabled. For more information, see page 195 .

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



On all models

To close the trunk, use the inner handle to lower the lid, then press down on the back edge.



If your vehicle's battery goes dead or is disconnected, you can open the trunk from the rear seat by pulling the trunk release tab through the trunk pass-through.

Pull down the rear seat armrest. Pull on the tab at the top of the inner partition, and press on the button to fully release the cover. Reach in and locate the rubber tab, and pull it out.

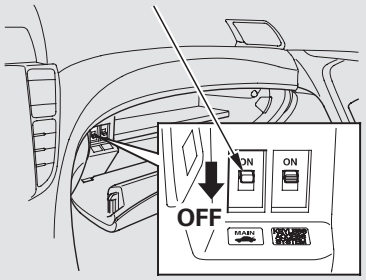
Keep the trunk lid closed at all times while driving to avoid damaging it, and to prevent exhaust gas from getting into the interior. See **Carbon Monoxide Hazard**, page 57 .

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Trunk

TRUNK MAIN SWITCH



Vehicle with keyless access system is shown.

To protect items in the trunk, you can disable the trunk release button on the driver's door by turning off the trunk main switch in the glove box, locking the glove box, and locking the trunk pass-through cover with the master key or the built-in key.

On models without keyless access system
If you need to give the key to someone else, give them the valet key.

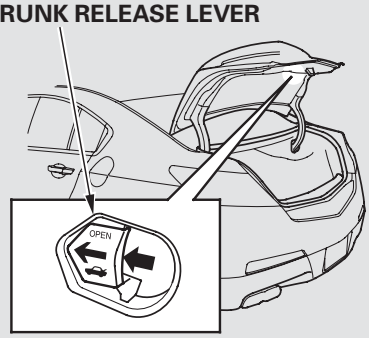
On models with keyless access system
To use the valet function, remove the built-in key from the remote by pressing the button, then give that remote to someone else as a valet key (see page 195).

Emergency Fuel Lid Release

Your vehicle is equipped with the emergency fuel lid release in the trunk. Refer to page 564 for how to access it.

Emergency Trunk Opener

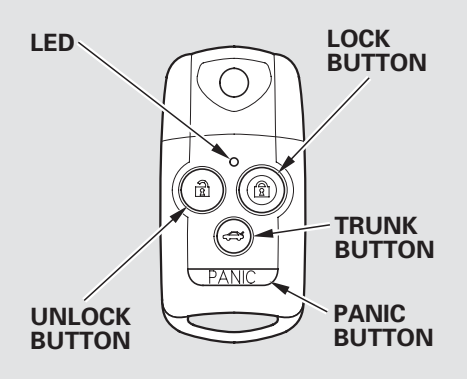
TRUNK RELEASE LEVER



As a safety feature, your vehicle has a release lever on the trunk latch so the trunk can be opened from the inside.
To open the trunk, push the release lever in the direction indicated by the arrow.

Parents should decide if their children should be shown how to use this feature. For more information about child safety, see page 40 .

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



On models without keyless access system

LOCK – Press this button once to lock all doors. Some exterior lights will flash. When you push LOCK twice within 5 seconds, you will hear a beep to verify that the doors are locked and the security system has set. You cannot lock the doors if any door is not fully closed or if the key is in the ignition switch.

UNLOCK – Press this button once to unlock the driver's door or all the doors (depending on the keyless memory setting). Press it twice to unlock the other doors. Some exterior lights will flash twice each time you press the button.

If you do not open any door within 30 seconds, the doors automatically relock and the security system sets.

The door activated map lights come on when you press the UNLOCK button if the door activated position is selected. If you do not open any door within 30 seconds (or whatever setting of the interior light dimming time is set to), the light(s) will fade out. If you relock the doors with the remote transmitter before 30 seconds have elapsed, the light(s) will go off immediately.

The keyless lock acknowledgment beep and flashing of the lights can be deactivated (see page 126).

To change the lock/unlock setting and the relock timer setting, refer to the customized settings on page 121 .

You can also open all power windows and the moonroof from outside the vehicle with the remote transmitter (see page 200).

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Remote Transmitter

TRUNK – Press and hold this button for about 1 second to open the trunk. You cannot open the trunk if the key is in the ignition switch.

PANIC – Press this button for about 2 seconds to attract attention: the horn will sound, and the exterior lights will flash for about 30 seconds. To cancel panic mode, press any other button on the remote transmitter, or turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position.

Remote Transmitter Care

- Avoid dropping or throwing the transmitter.
- Protect the transmitter from extreme temperature.
- Do not immerse the transmitter in any liquid.
- If you lose a transmitter, the replacement needs to be reprogrammed by your dealer.

Replacing the Transmitter Battery

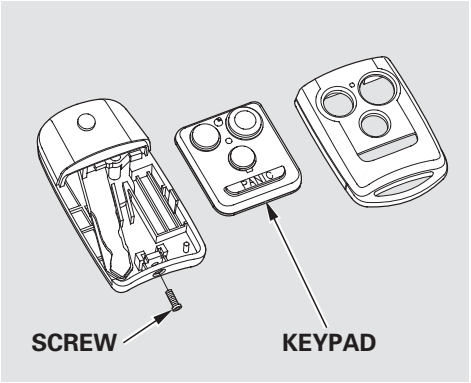
If it takes several pushes on the button to lock or unlock the doors, replace the battery as soon as possible.

Battery type: CR1616

On models with keyless access system, see page 175 for how to replace the battery on the keyless access remote.

To replace the battery:

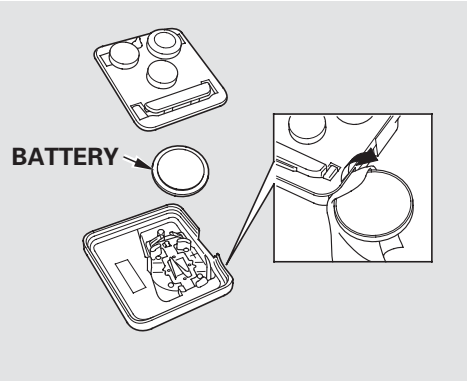
1. Remove the screw at the base of the transmitter with a small Phillips-head screwdriver.



NOTE: Be careful when removing this screw as the head of the screw can strip out.

2. Separate the keypad from the transmitter by pushing any button from outside.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



3. Place a cloth on the edge of the keypad to prevent scratches, and remove the upper half by carefully prying on the edge with a small flat-tip screwdriver or coin.

4. Remove the old battery and note the polarity. Make sure the polarity of the new battery is the same (− side facing up), then insert it in the keypad.

   An improperly disposed of battery can hurt the environment. Always confirm local regulations for battery disposal.

5. Snap the two halves of the keypad, then install the parts in reverse order.

As required by the FCC:
This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

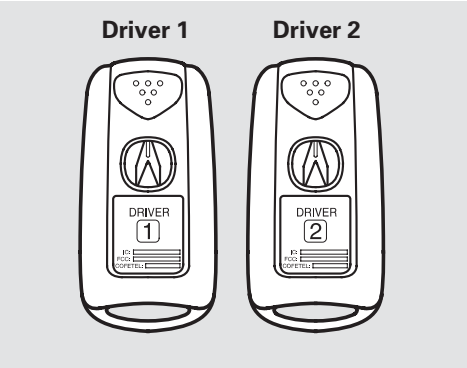
Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

This device complies with Industry Canada Standard RSS-210.
Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Remote Transmitter

Recalling a Memorized Driving Position



When you unlock the driver's door with your remote transmitter, each remote transmitter activates the customized settings related to that remote.

The driving position memory activated (Driver 1, Driver 2) is shown on the back of each transmitter. Make sure you store your desired driving position in the memory that is activated by the transmitter you normally carry.

Here are the settings activated with the remote:

- Customized settings (see page 97).
- Driving position memory (see page 164).
- Audio system settings (see page 226).
- Climate control settings (see page 216).

When you unlock and open the driver's door with the remote, the driver's seat (except power lumbar) and outside mirrors move to the positions stored in memory. An indicator on one of the driving position memory buttons on the driver's door also comes on.

You will also see the "DRIVER 1" or "DRIVER 2" message on the multi-information display, depending on which linked remote transmitter is used.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

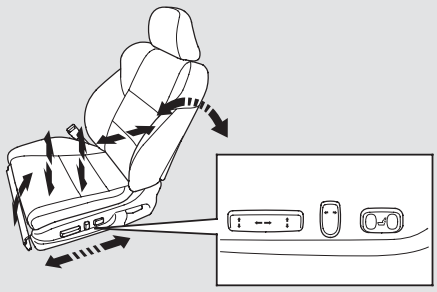
Front Seat Power Adjustments

See pages 13 – 15 for important safety information and warnings about how to properly position the seats and seat-backs.

The controls for the power adjustable front seats are on the outside edge of each seat bottom. You can adjust the seats with the ignition switch* in any position. Make all seat adjustments before you start driving.

The passenger seat has the same adjustments as the driver's seat but without any lumbar adjustment.

* : Models equipped with the keyless access system have an engine start/stop button instead of an ignition switch. VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) Mode is the equivalent of LOCK (0), ACCESSORY Mode is the equivalent of ACCESSORY (I), and ON Mode is the equivalent of ON (II). For more information, see pages 178 and 181 .



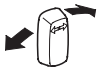
Driver's seat

Moves the seat forward and backward.

Moves the front of the seat up or down.

Raises or lowers the seat.

Moves the whole seat up and forward, or down and backward. The front of the seat also tilts up or down at the same time.



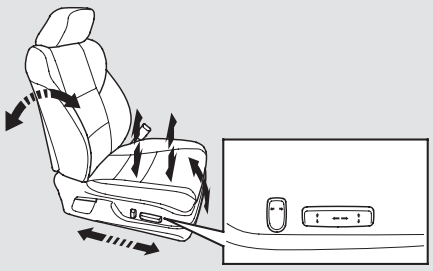
Adjusts the seat-back angle forward or backward.

Driver's seat only:
Increases or decreases the lumbar support.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Seats



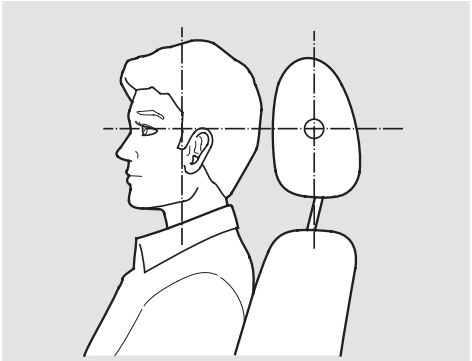
Passenger's seat

The driver's seat includes a memory feature. Two seat positions can be stored in separate memories. You can then select a memorized position by pushing the appropriate memory button. Refer to page 164 for how to memorize and select the seat positions.

Head Restraints

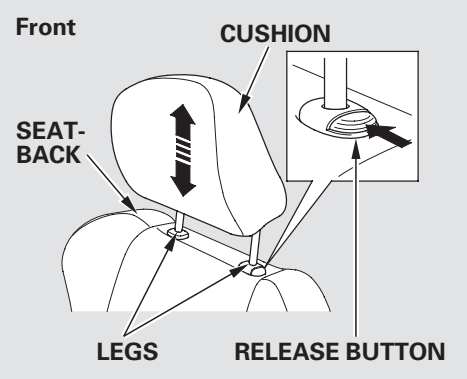
See page 15 for important safety information and a warning about improperly positioning head restraints.

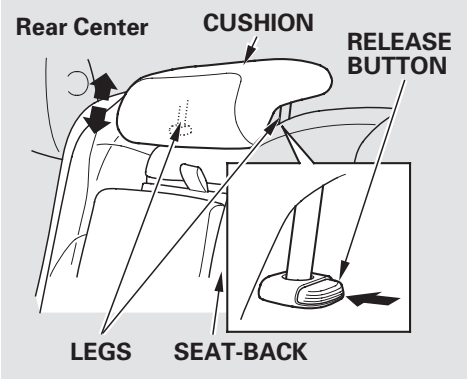
Your vehicle is equipped with head restraints in all seating positions to help protect you and your passengers from the likelihood of whiplash and other injuries.

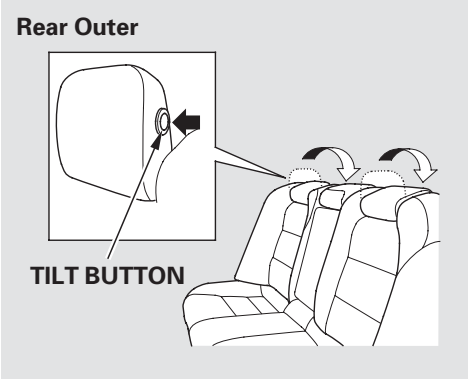


They are most effective when you adjust them so the center of the back of the occupant's head rests against the center of the restraint.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine







Adjusting the Head Restraint

The head restraints adjust for height. You need both hands to adjust the restraint. Do not attempt to adjust it while driving. To raise a front or rear center head restraint, pull upward. To lower the restraint, push the release button sideways, and push the restraint down.

To lower either rear outer head restraint for better visibility, press the tilt button on the side of the head restraint. It folds down backward. To raise the rear outer head restraint, pull it up from behind by hand. Make sure the head restraint locks in position when you lower or raise it.

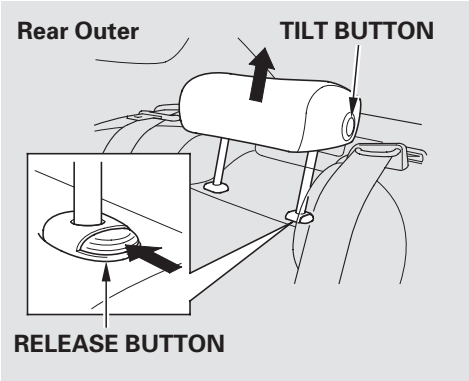
CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Seats

Removing the Head Restraint

To remove a front or rear center head restraint for cleaning or repair, pull it up as far as it will go. Push the release button, then pull the restraint out of the seat-back.



To remove either rear outer head restraint, push the tilt button, then fold the head restraint backward. Push the release button, then pull the restraint out of the seat-back.

⚠ WARNING

Failure to reinstall the head restraints can result in severe injury during a crash.

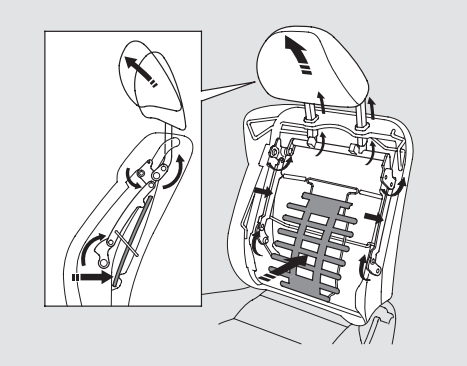
Always replace the head restraints before driving.

When reinstalling a head restraint, put the legs back in place. Then adjust it to the appropriate height while pressing the release button.

Make sure the head restraint locks in position when you reinstall it.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Active Head Restraints



The driver's and front passenger's seats have active head restraints. If the vehicle is struck severely from the rear, the occupant properly secured with the seat belt will be pushed against the seat-back and the head restraint will automatically move forward.

This reduces the distance between the restraint and the occupant's head. It also helps protect the occupants against the likelihood of whiplash and injuries to the neck and upper spine.

After a collision, the activated restraint should return to its normal position.

If the restraints do not return to their normal position, or in the event of a severe collision, have the vehicle inspected by an Acura dealer.

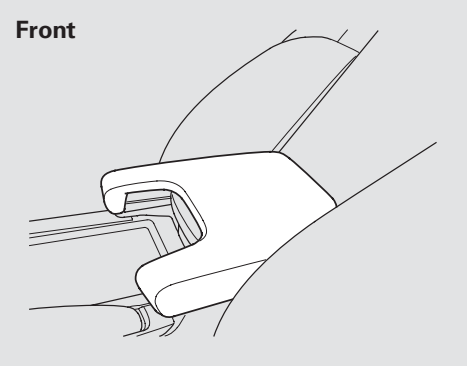
For a head restraint system to work properly:

- Do not hang any items on the head restraints, or from the restraint legs.
- Do not place any object between an occupant and the seat-back.
- Install each restraint in its proper location.
- Only use genuine Acura replacement head restraints.

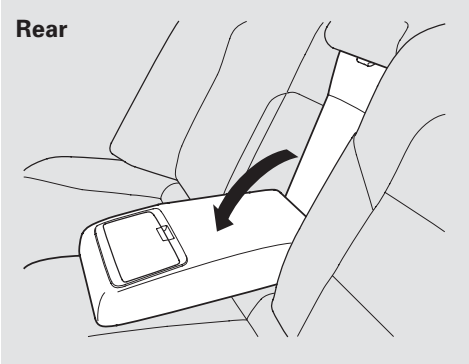
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Seats

Armrest



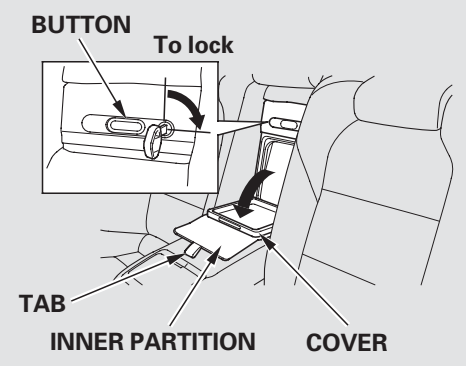
The lid of the console compartment can be used as an armrest.



The rear seat armrest is in the center of the rear seat. Pivot it down to use it.

A beverage holder is located in the armrest.

Trunk Pass-through Cover



To open the cover, pull down the rear seat armrest. Pull on the tab at the top of the inner partition, and press on the button to fully release the cover. To close the cover, swing it up, and push firmly on the top. Make sure it latches properly.

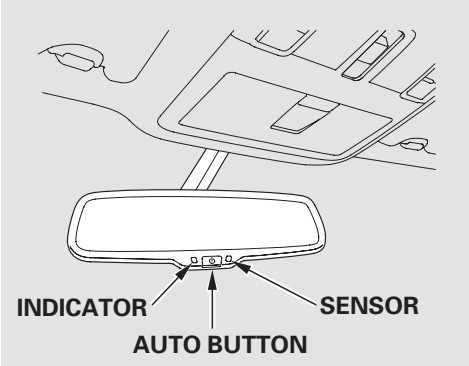
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Make sure all items in the trunk and those extending through the pass-through are secured.

For security, this cover can be locked and unlocked only with the master key (the built-in key on models with keyless access system). To lock the cover, insert the key, and turn it clockwise.

Never drive with this cover open and the trunk lid open.
See **Carbon Monoxide Hazard** on page 57 .

Mirrors



Keep the inside and outside mirrors clean and adjusted for best visibility. Be sure to adjust the mirrors before you start driving.

The inside mirror can automatically darken to reduce glare. To turn on this feature, press the button on the bottom of the mirror. The AUTO indicator comes on as a reminder. When it is on, the mirror darkens when it senses the headlights of a vehicle behind you, then returns to normal visibility when the lights are gone. Press the button again to turn off this feature.

NOTICE

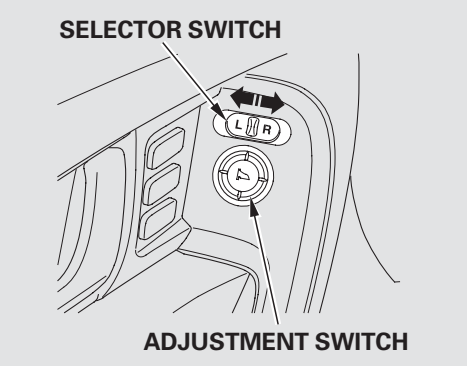
There is also a sensor on the back of the mirror. Items hung on the mirror may block this sensor and affect its performance.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Mirrors

Adjusting the Power Mirrors



1. With the ignition switch* in the ON (II) position, move the selector switch to the L (driver's side), or R (passenger's side).
2. Push the appropriate edge of the adjustment switch to move the mirror right, left, up, or down.
3. When you finish, move the selector switch to the center (off) position. This turns the adjustment switch off to keep your settings.

* : Models equipped with the keyless access system have an engine start/stop button instead of an ignition switch. ON Mode is the equivalent of ON (II). For more information, see pages 178 and 181 .

Reverse Tilt Door Mirror

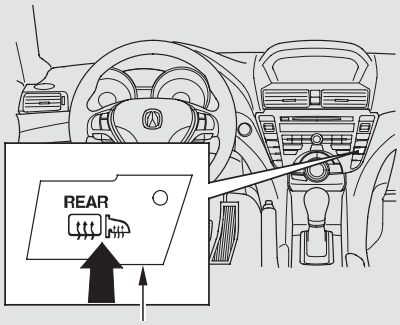
Both outside door mirrors have a reverse tilt feature. When in reverse, the selected mirror will tilt down slightly to improve your view as you parallel park. Shifting out of reverse will return the mirror to its original position.

- To tilt the driver's mirror, place the selector switch in the left position.
- To tilt the passenger's mirror, place the switch in the right position.
- To turn the feature off, place the switch in the center position.

Outside mirror positions can be stored in the driving position memory system (see page 164).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Power Mirror Heaters



HEATED MIRROR BUTTON

The outside mirrors are heated to remove fog and frost. With the ignition switch in the ON (II) position, or the power mode* ON, turn on the heaters by pressing the button. The indicator in the button comes on as a reminder. Press the button again to turn the heaters off. Pressing this button also turns the rear window defogger on and off.

This heated mirror function has a timer (see page 139).

* : Models equipped with the keyless access system have an engine start/stop button instead of an ignition switch. ON Mode is the equivalent of ON (II). For more information, see pages 178 and 181 .

If the outside temperature is below 41°F (5°C), the heated mirror function will come on automatically for 10 minutes when you turn the ignition switch* to the ON (II) position.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Driving Position Memory System

Your vehicle has a memory feature for the driver's seat and outside mirror positions.

Seat, except for power lumbar, and outside mirror positions can be stored in separate memories. You select a memorized position by pushing the appropriate button or using the appropriate remote transmitter or the keyless access remote (Driver 1 or Driver 2).

Storing a Driving Position in Memory

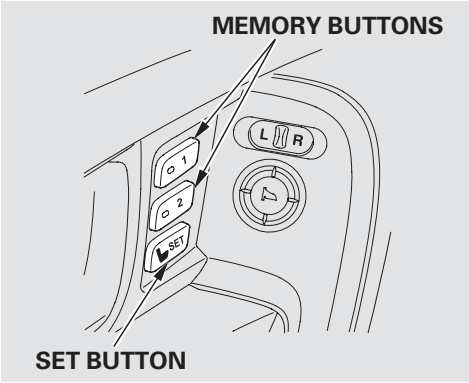
Store a driving position only when the vehicle is parked.

1. Turn the ignition switch* to the ON (II) position. You cannot add a new driving position to the memory unless the ignition switch is in the ON (II) position. You can recall a memorized position with the ignition switch in any position.

* : Models equipped with the keyless access system have an engine start/stop button instead of an ignition switch. ON Mode is the equivalent of ON (II). For more information, see pages 178 and 181 .

2. Adjust the seat to a comfortable position (see page 155).

   Adjust the outside mirrors for best visibility (see page 162).



3. Press and release the SET button on the control panel. You will hear a beep. Immediately press and hold one of the memory buttons (1 or 2) until you hear two beeps. The indicator in the memory button will come on. The current positions of the driver's seat and outside mirrors are now stored.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To cancel the storing procedure after pressing the SET button, do any of the following:

- Fail to press a memory button within 5 seconds.
- Readjust the seat position.
- Readjust the outside mirror position.

On models without keyless access system

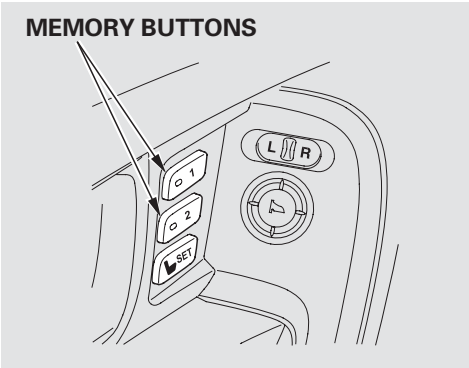
- Turn the ignition switch out from the ON (II) position.

On models with keyless access system

- Change the power mode out from ON.

Each memory button stores only one driving position. Storing a new position erases the previous setting stored in that button's memory. If you want to add a new position while retaining the current one, use the other memory button.

Selecting a Memorized Position



To select a memorized position, do this:

1. Make sure the parking brake is set and the shift lever is in Park (automatic).
2. Press the desired memory button (1 or 2) until you hear a beep, then release the button.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Driving Position Memory System

The system will move the seat and outside mirrors to the memorized positions. The indicator in the selected memory button will flash during movement. When the adjustments are complete, you will hear two beeps, and the indicator will remain on.

To change the “MEMORY POSITION LINK” setting, see page page 109 .

On vehicles with manual transmission
If the parking brake is not set, you must press and hold the memory button until the adjustment is complete.

To stop the system’s automatic adjustment, do any of these actions:

- Press any button on the driver’s door: SET, memory button 1 or 2.
- Push any of the adjustment switches for the seat.
- Adjust the outside mirrors.
- Shift out of Park (automatic).
- Release the parking brake (manual).

If desired, you can use the adjustment switches to change the positions of the seat or outside mirrors after they are in their memorized positions. If you change the memorized position, the indicator in the memory button will go out. To keep this driving position for later use, you must store it in the driving position memory.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

On models with navigation system

Your vehicle has a keyless access system. This system allows you to operate the vehicle without an ignition key. When you carry the remote with you, you can lock/unlock the door(s), unlock the trunk, and start the engine.

The system may not work if:

- The battery of the remote is weak.
- There is strong electrical current nearby.
- You carry a cell phone, a laptop computer, or other electrical device near the remote.
- The remote is covered by metal.
- A vehicle is being operated with a transmitter nearby.
- When the remote battery is dead.
- When the vehicle battery is dead.

Each keyless access remote has a built-in key. This key is used to lock/unlock the doors when the remote battery becomes weak and the power door lock/unlock operation is disabled. You cannot start the engine with this key.

Make sure the driver always carries the remote/built-in key set.

Protect the remote and the built-in key from direct sunlight, high temperature, and high humidity.

Do not drop the remote or the built-in key, and do not set heavy objects on them.

Keep the remote and the built-in key away from liquids. If they get wet, dry them immediately with a soft cloth.

The built-in keys do not contain batteries.

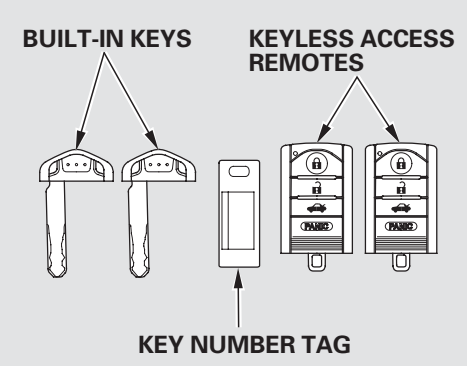
Always keep the remote and the built-in key away from any magnetic material.

You should have received a key number tag with your built-in key. You will need this key number if you ever have to get a lost key replaced. Use only Acura-approved key blanks.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

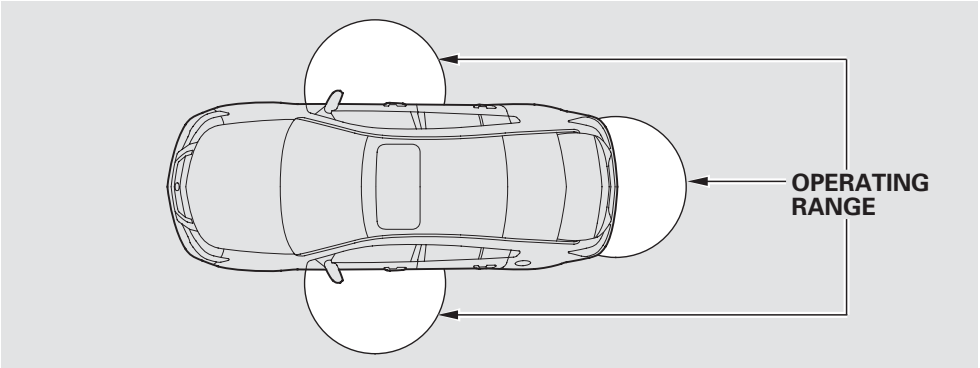
Keyless Access System

Keys



The following keys come with your vehicle. Refer to page 195 for how to separate the keys.

Built-in Key
This key is used to lock/unlock the doors, glove box, and trunk pass-through cover.



Keyless Access Remote
This remote is used to lock/unlock the doors and unlock the trunk. When you carry the remote, you can lock/unlock the doors, unlock the trunk, and start the engine.

You can lock/unlock the doors within about a 32 inch (about 80 cm) radius from the outside door handle. You can open the trunk within about a 32 inch (about 80 cm) radius from the trunk release switch.

Anyone can lock/unlock a door or open the trunk if the remote is within the operating range of the door or the trunk.

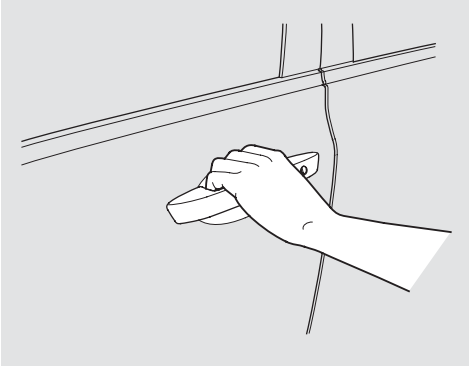
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The remote may not work if:

- It is too close to the vehicle.
- It is above or below the vehicle, even when it is within its operating range.

Each front door has a LOCK/UNLOCK feature.

Unlocking the Door(s)



The handle of each front door has a sensor. That sensor works with the remote so you can automatically unlock the door(s).

By default, only the driver's door unlocks when you grab its handle.

To unlock the remaining doors and the trunk, press the UNLOCK button on the remote or the rear of the master door lock switch on the driver's door.

To change the "DOOR UNLOCK MODE" setting, see page 112 .

All the doors unlock when you grab the handle of the front passenger's door.

When you unlock the door(s), some exterior lights blink twice and the system beeps twice.

To change the "KEYLESS ACCESS LIGHT FLASH" setting, see page 113 .

To change the "KEYLESS ACCESS BEEP" setting, see page 114 .

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Keyless Access System

If you wear a glove while grabbing a front door handle, the door sensor may be slow to respond or may not respond by unlocking the doors.

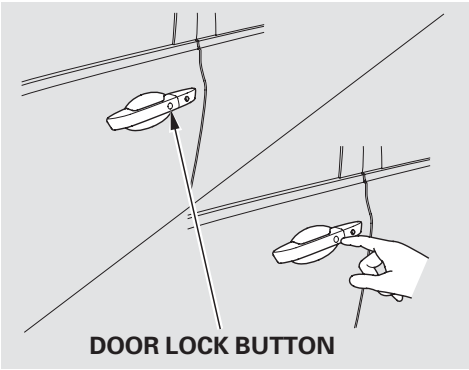
If you do not open any of the doors within 30 seconds, they will automatically relock.

If a remote is within operating range while you wash your vehicle or when it is raining heavily, the door sensors may respond by unlocking the doors.

Each unlock sensor does not operate when:

- The remote is not within the operating range.
- The remote is too close to the vehicle.
- When the doors are unlocked.
- The remote battery is dead.
- The vehicle battery is dead.

Locking the Doors


DOOR LOCK BUTTON

When you press the door lock button on the front door, all the doors and the trunk will lock.

Before locking the doors, make sure the remote is not inside the vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Keyless Access System

When you lock the doors, some exterior lights blink and the system beeps once. If no exterior lights blink and/or no beeper sounds, check to see if the trunk or hood is open.

To change the “KEYLESS ACCESS LIGHT FLASH” setting, see page 113.

To change the “KEYLESS ACCESS BEEP” setting, see page 114 .

Within 2 seconds of pressing the door lock button or locking the doors with the remote, pull the handle to make sure the doors are actually locked. The door unlock sensors will not operate for about 2 seconds after the doors are locked.

The door lock button does not work if:

- The remote is not within the operating range.
- Any door is open.
- The power mode is not set to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).
- The remote is in the keyless access slot.
- The remote is too close to the vehicle.
- The remote battery is dead.
- The vehicle battery is dead.

Door Lock Prevention

If you open the driver’s door, pull its lock tab rearward on the door, and shut it when the remote is inside the vehicle, the driver’s door will unlock. Make sure you carry the remote with you when you lock the doors.

This function is also activated on the front passenger’s door. If you open the front passenger’s door, and shut it after pulling its lock tab rearward when the remote is inside the vehicle, all doors will unlock.

The door lock prevention will also activate if you try to lock the doors with the master door lock switch when the remote is inside the vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Keyless Access System

Locking and Unlocking the Trunk

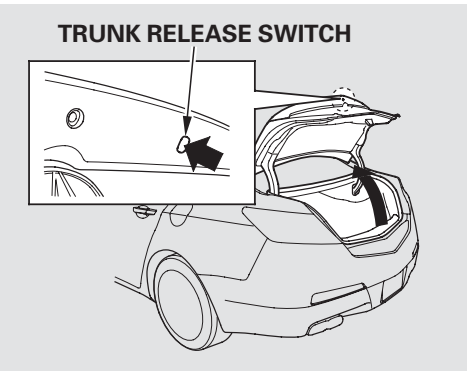
When you close the trunk with all doors locked, the trunk will lock.

When you unlock all the doors with the remote, built-in key or power door lock master switch, the trunk will unlock.

The trunk cannot be locked if:

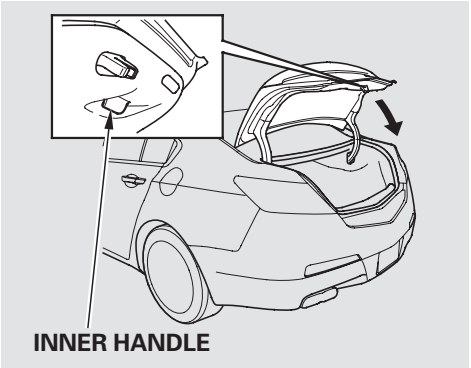
- The remote is too close to the trunk lid.
- The remote is on the interior rear panel.
- The remote is too close to the seat-back of the rear seat or the seat cushion.

Opening and Closing the Trunk



You can open the trunk in any of these ways:

- Push the trunk release switch when the doors are unlocked.
- Press the trunk release button inside the vehicle.
- Press the trunk button on the remote.
- Push the trunk release switch when carrying the remote (if the doors are locked).



To close the trunk, use the inner handle to lower the lid, then press down on the back edge.

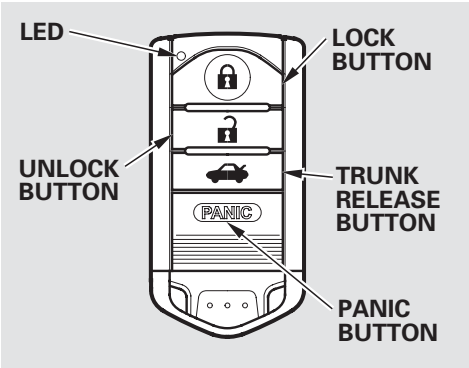
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Before closing the trunk, make sure the remote is not in the trunk.

If you close the trunk when the remote is in it, the system beeps, and the trunk reopens.

Keep the trunk lid closed at all times while driving to avoid damaging the lid, and to prevent exhaust gas from getting into the interior. See **Carbon Monoxide Hazard** on page 57.

Keyless Access Remote



LOCK – Press this button once to lock all doors. Some exterior lights will flash. When you push the LOCK button twice within 5 seconds, you will hear a beep to verify that the doors are locked and the security system is set.

You cannot lock the doors if any door is not fully closed, if the remote is in the keyless access remote slot, or if the power mode is in any position except VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

When you cannot set the security system because the trunk or hood is open, no exterior light blinks and/or no beeper sounds.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Keyless Access System

UNLOCK – Press this button once to unlock the driver's door. Press it twice to unlock the other doors. Some exterior lights will flash twice each time you press the button. The door activated map lights (if the door activated light switch is set) will come on when you press the UNLOCK button. If you do not open any door within 30 seconds, the map lights fade out. If you relock the doors with the remote before 30 seconds have elapsed, the lights will go off immediately.

To change the "KEY AND REMOTE UNLOCK MODE" setting, see page 125.

To change the "INTERIOR LIGHT DIMMING TIME," see page 117 .

If you unlock the doors with the remote, but do not open any door within 30 seconds, the doors automatically relock and the security system sets.

To change the "SECURITY RELOCK TIMER" setting, see page page 127.

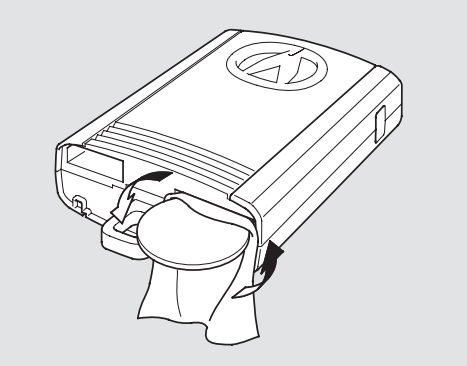
To change the "KEYLESS LOCK ACKNOWLEDGMENT" setting, see page 126.

TRUNK – Press this button for about 1 second to open the trunk. You cannot open the trunk with the exterior trunk release switch if the remote is in the keyless access remote slot, or the power mode is in any position except VEHICLE OFF (LOCK). You cannot open the trunk with the remote if the trunk main switch in the glove box is turned off.

PANIC – Press this button for about 2 seconds to attract attention: the horn will sound and the exterior lights will flash for about 30 seconds. To cancel panic mode, press any other button on the remote.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

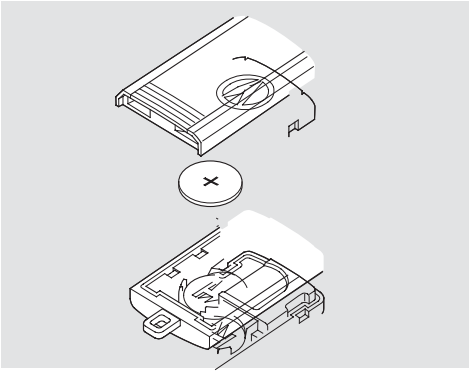
Replacing the Remote Battery



Replace the battery if necessary.
Battery type: CR2032

To replace the battery:
1. Remove the built-in key (see page 195).

2. Place a cloth on the edge to prevent scratches, then remove the upper half by carefully prying on the edge with a coin.



3. Replace the old battery with a new battery. Place the battery so the + side is facing up. Snap the two halves of the remote case back together.

An improperly disposed of battery can hurt the environment.
Always confirm local regulations for battery disposal.

As required by the FCC:
This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

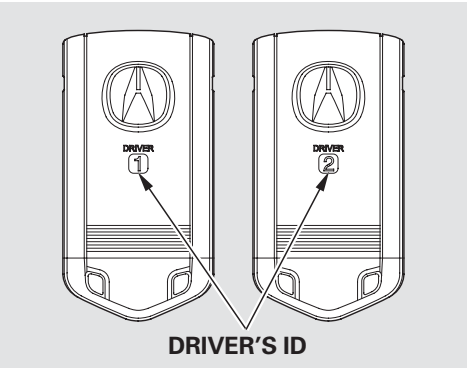
Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

This device complies with Industry Canada Standard RSS-210.
Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Keyless Access System

Keyless Memory Settings™



DRIVER'S ID

When you unlock the door with your remote, each remote activates the keyless memory settings related to that remote. The driver's ID (Driver 1 or Driver 2) is shown on the back of each remote.

Here are the settings activated with the remote:

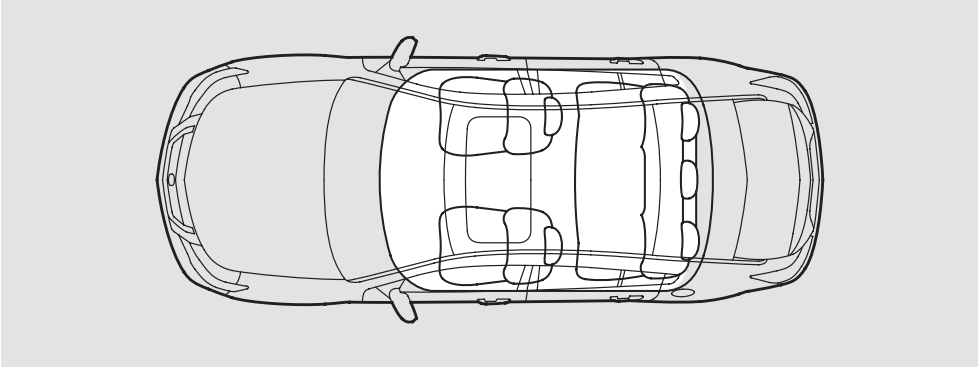
- Driving position memory (see page 164).
- Keyless memory settings (see page 97).
- Audio system settings (see page 273).
- Climate control settings (see page 217).
- Navigation system preferences (see the navigation system manual).

Remote Care

- Avoid dropping or throwing the transmitter.
- Protect the transmitter from extreme temperature.
- Do not immerse the transmitter in any liquid.
- If you lose a transmitter, the replacement needs to be reprogrammed by your dealer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Engine Start/Stop Button Operating Range



The engine may not run, and some malfunctions may occur, if the remote is outside the vehicle.

The engine may not start if the remote is subjected to strong radio waves.

Also, the engine may not start if the remote is too close to the windows.

NOTICE

Make sure you know where the remote is when you are inside the vehicle.

Remember that you can start the engine when the remote is inside the vehicle.

Make sure you always carry the remote with you.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Keyless Access System

Engine Start/ Stop Button Operation

This system uses the engine start/ stop button instead of an ignition switch to start and stop the engine. If you are carrying the keyless access remote, you can start the engine by pressing the engine start/stop button with the brake pedal (automatic transmission) or the clutch pedal (manual transmission) depressed. You can also stop the engine by pushing this button when the vehicle is stopped.

Switching the Power Modes

The keyless access system has four power modes: VEHICLE OFF (LOCK), ACCESSORY, ON, and START.

Each time you press the engine start/stop button without pressing the brake pedal (automatic transmission) or the clutch pedal (manual transmission) while carrying the keyless access remote, the power mode switches between VEHICLE OFF (LOCK), ACCESSORY, and ON.

Automatic transmission:

You can start the engine at any time by pressing the engine start/stop button, while pressing the brake pedal, with the shift lever in Park or neutral position.

Manual transmission:

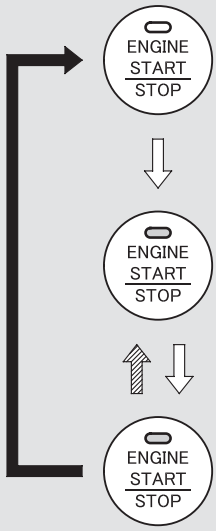
You can start the engine at any time by pressing the engine start/stop button, while pressing the clutch pedal fully, with the shift lever in any gear position.

Changing the Power Mode without Starting the Engine

To change the power mode without turning on the engine, press the engine start/stop button without pressing the brake pedal (automatic transmission) or the clutch pedal (manual transmission). The power mode will be changed as shown on the next page.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Automatic Transmission



VEHICLE OFF (LOCK)
Indicator in the button is off.

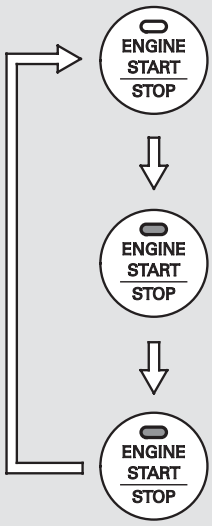
ACCESSORY
Indicator in the button comes on green.
Some electrical components such as the audio system and accessory power sockets can be operated.

ON
Indicator in the button remains green when the engine is not running.
(If the engine is running,this indicator is off.)
All electrical components can be used.

Do the following without pressing the brake pedal.

: Press the engine start/stop button.
: Press the engine start/stop button without the shift lever in P.
: Shift to Park, then press the engine start/stop button.

Manual Transmission



: Press the engine start/stop button without pressing the clutch pedal.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Keyless Access System

Automatic Transmission

How the mode is switched depends on if the shift lever is in Park or not.

With the shift lever in Park, the power mode changes from ON to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) when you push the engine start/stop button.

To change the mode from ON to ACCESSORY with the shift lever position in Park, take your foot off the brake and press the engine start/stop button twice.

To change the mode from ACCESSORY to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK), shift to Park, then press the engine start/stop button twice.

Manual Transmission

Each time you press the engine start/stop button without pressing the clutch pedal, the power mode switches between VEHICLE OFF (LOCK), ACCESSORY, and ON modes. To change the mode from ON to ACCESSORY, or ACCESSORY to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK), press the engine start/stop button twice.

NOTE: If the keyless access system main switch in the glove box is off, make sure to insert the keyless access remote into the keyless access slot to turn on your vehicle's power mode. For more information, refer to page 189 .

To remove the keyless access remote from the slot, make sure the power mode is VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

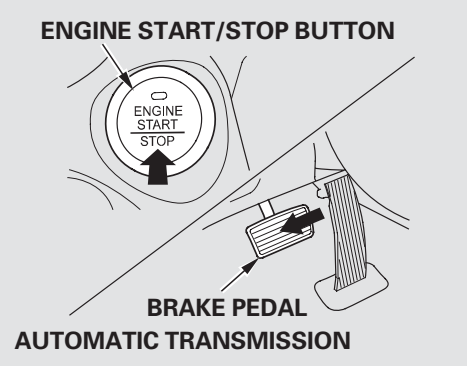
Ignition Switch and Power Mode Comparison

Ignition Switch Position	LOCK (0)	ACCESSORY (I)	ON (II)	START (III)
Without Keyless Access System	• Engine is turned off and power is shut down. • The steering wheel is locked. • No electrical components can be used.	• Engine is turned off. • Some electrical components such as the audio system and accessory power sockets can be operated.	• Normal key position while driving. • All electrical components can be used.	• Use this position to start the engine. • The ignition switch returns to the ON (II) position when you release the key.
Power Mode	VEHICLE OFF (LOCK)	ACCESSORY	ON Green OFF	START
With Keyless Access System and Engine Start/Stop Button	Indicator-Off • Engine is turned off and power is shut down. • The steering wheel is locked. • No electrical components can be used.	Indicator-Green • Engine is turned off. • Some electrical components such as the audio system and accessory power sockets can be operated.	Indicator- Green (engine is turned off) Off (engine is running) • All electrical components can be used.	Indicator-Off • The mode automatically returns to ON after the engine starts.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Keyless Access System

Starting the Engine

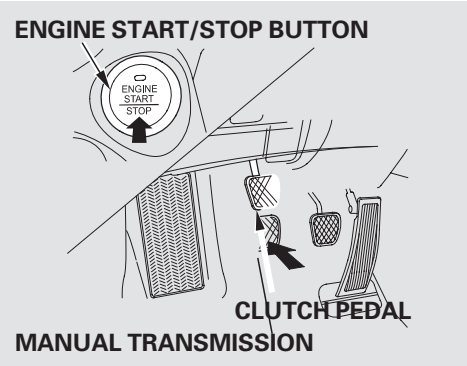


You can start the engine in any power mode.

To start the engine:

Automatic Transmission

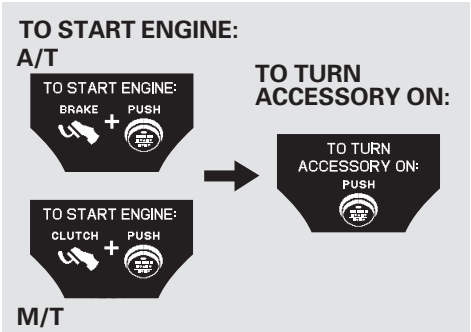
1. Move the shift lever to Park (P).
2. Depress the brake pedal and press the engine start/stop button.



Manual Transmission

1. Apply the parking brake.
2. Press the clutch pedal down all the way.
   The engine does not start unless the clutch pedal is pressed.
3. Press the engine start/stop button.

Starting Guidance



After you unlock and open the driver's door, you will see the "TO START ENGINE:" message on the multi-information display. The "TO TURN ACCESSORY ON:" message will be shown after three seconds. The display switches between the "TO START ENGINE:" and "TO TURN ACCESSORY ON:" messages every three seconds.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

When the keyless access system main switch in the glove box is off, the multi-information display shows the "INSERT KEYLESS REMOTE INTO SLOT" message, then the "TO START ENGINE:" message will be shown after you insert the remote into the slot. Each time you press the engine start/stop button, the "INSERT KEYLESS REMOTE INTO SLOT" message is shown on the multi-information display if the remote is not in the slot.

NOTE:
If the keyless access remote battery dies, you may have to use the built-in key to unlock/lock the vehicle. The built-in key is stored inside the keyless access remote (see page 195).

After entering the vehicle, insert the keyless access remote into the slot to start the engine (see page 191).

To unlock the steering wheel

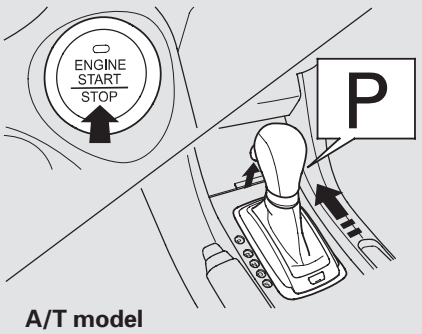
TO UNLOCK WHEEL

If the steering wheel is locked, the engine cannot start. The multi-information display shows you the above message and the indicator in the engine start/stop button blinks. To unlock the steering wheel, apply force by turning it left and right while pressing the engine start/stop button at the same time.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Keyless Access System

Stopping the Engine



A/T model

To turn the vehicle off, make sure the vehicle is completely stopped and do the following.

Automatic Transmission

1. Shift to park (P).
2. Press the engine start/stop button with your foot on the brake pedal.

Manual Transmission

- If the shift lever is in neutral, press the engine start/stop button.
- If the shift lever is in any gear other than neutral, depress the clutch pedal, then press the engine start/stop button.

The engine stops and the power mode switches from ON to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

Before leaving the vehicle, make sure it is off. You can verify if the power is off by checking the engine start/stop button LED indicator.

On manual transmission models

Make sure to press the brake pedal or set the parking brake before turning off the engine. If your foot is OFF the clutch pedal in any gear position, pressing the engine start/stop button turns off the engine, and the vehicle may move forward or backward.

Operation Guidance

SHIFT TO PARK

A/T model only

On automatic transmission models

You can only place the vehicle in the VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) mode if the transmission is in Park. You will see the “SHIFT TO PARK” message on the multi-information display if you press the engine start/stop button to turn the vehicle off with the shift lever in any other position except for P (Park).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ACCESSORY MODE

All models

If the power mode is in ACCESSORY, you may see the "ACCESSORY MODE" message on the multi-information display.

TO TURN VEHICLE OFF

After the driver's door is opened, you will see the "TO TURN VEHICLE OFF:" message on the multi-information display. Press the engine start/stop button twice with your foot off the brake pedal to change the power mode from ACCESSORY to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

If you open the driver's door in the ACCESSORY mode, a beeper will sound. You will also see a "ACCESSORY MODE" or "TO TURN VEHICLE OFF:" message on the multi-information display.

Press the engine start/stop button twice with your foot off the brake pedal (automatic transmission) or the clutch pedal (manual transmission) to change the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

Before leaving the vehicle, make sure it is in VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Keyless Access System

Emergency Engine Stop

The engine start/stop button may be used to stop the engine due to an emergency situation even while driving. If you must stop the engine, do either of the following operations:

- Press and hold the engine start/stop button for three seconds.
- Firmly press the engine start/stop button three times.

Do not press the button while driving unless it is absolutely necessary for the engine to be switched off.

If you are driving, the power mode switches from ON to ACCESSORY or VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) whenever you perform either procedure. However, the steering wheel will NOT lock.

If you cannot stop the engine by pressing the engine start/stop button once when the vehicle is stopped and the shift lever is in Park (automatic transmission), do either emergency engine stop procedure. In this case, the power mode will change to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK), however, the steering wheel may NOT lock.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Beeper and Message
Keyless Remote Not Detected

If you take the keyless access remote out of the vehicle and close the door with the power mode ON or ACCESSORY, the inside and outside beepers sound and a “KEYLESS REMOTE NOT DETECTED” message will be displayed on the multi-information display, and the doors will not lock.

The displayed message goes away when you bring the remote back inside the vehicle.

If the engine is running and you take the remote out of the vehicle, it will continue to run, and the inside and outside beepers will sound. Once the power mode is changed to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK), the engine will not restart until you bring back a remote into the vehicle.

The engine does not start if you push the engine start/stop button when the remote is outside the vehicle. Check where the remote is. Make sure that the remote is in the vehicle with you when you operate the engine start/stop button.

Even when the remote is inside the vehicle, the beeper may sound when the location of the remote is not detected due to surrounding conditions. It is not a failure. Make sure that you carry the remote with you.

The outside beeper sounds when the power mode is in ACCESSORY, and a door is opened, then closed.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Keyless Access System

Keyless Remote Low Battery

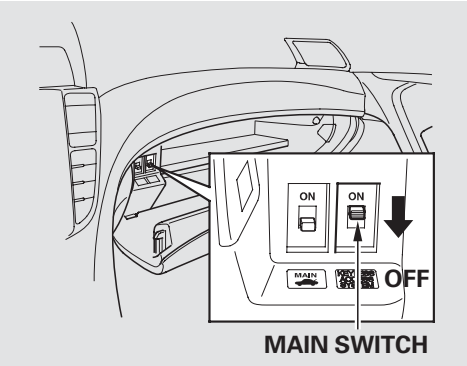
The battery in the remote normally lasts about 2 years. To ensure maximum battery life, do not store the remote close to electrical devices such as computers or TVs. When the multi-information display shows "CHANGE KEYLESS REMOTE BATTERY," replace the battery as soon as possible (see page 175).

If the remote battery becomes weak and the power door lock/unlock operation is disabled, you should insert the remote into the keyless access remote slot to set the power mode and start the engine. After inserting the remote to the slot, operate the engine start/stop button as previously described (see pages 178 and 182). For more information on the keyless access slot, see page 191 .

Inserting the remote does not charge the remote battery. You should replace the battery as soon as possible.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Keyless Access Remote System Main Switch



This switch is in the glove box. You can cancel the keyless access system features, which are locking/unlocking the doors, unlocking the trunk, and starting the engine while carrying the keyless access remote. To cancel the system, turn the keyless access system main switch off by pushing it down.

NOTE: Turning off the keyless access system will disable lockout prevention.

With the keyless access remote system main switch off, you should insert the keyless access remote into the keyless remote slot to start the engine. For more information, see page 191 .

Keyless Access System Indicator

According to the message on the multi-information display, this indicator has two indications. A "CHECK KEYLESS ACCESS SYSTEM" message indicates a problem with the keyless access system. A "CHECK KEYLESS STARTING SYSTEM" message indicates a problem with the keyless starting system.

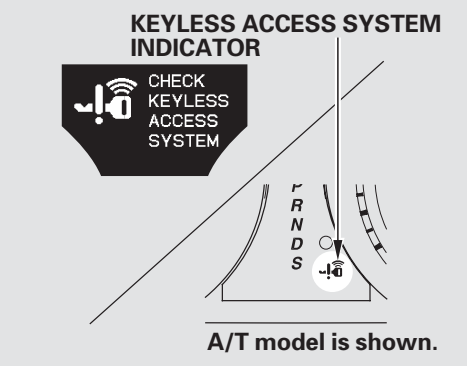
This indicator normally comes on for several seconds when you change the power mode to ON.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Keyless Access System

Check Keyless Access System

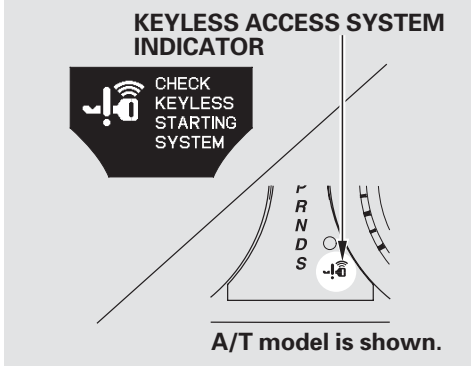


Have your vehicle checked by your dealer if:

- The keyless access system indicator comes on and stays on while you are driving.
- The indicator comes on after the engine has started.
- The multi-information display shows “CHECK KEYLESS ACCESS SYSTEM.”

In this case, use the built-in key to lock/unlock the doors and insert the keyless access remote into the slot to start the engine (see page 191).

Check Keyless Starting System



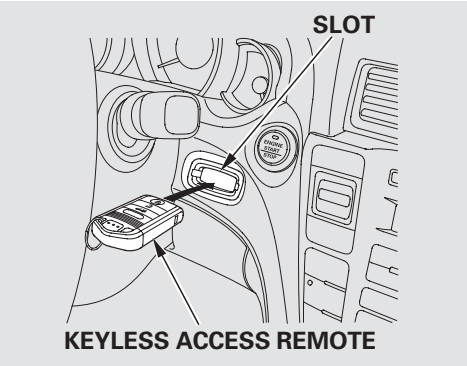
Have your vehicle checked by your dealer if:

- The keyless access system indicator comes on and stays on while you are driving.
- The indicator comes on and stays on in any power mode.
- The multi-information display shows “CHECK KEYLESS STARTING SYSTEM.”

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

In this case, you should not shut off your engine until you are in a safe location or at your dealer, as your vehicle may not restart.

Keyless Access Remote Slot



In the following two cases, you have to insert the keyless access remote into the keyless access remote slot to set the power mode and start the engine:

- If the remote battery becomes weak and the power door lock/unlock operation is disabled.
- When the keyless access remote system main switch in the glove box is set to off.

To remove the keyless access remote, place the vehicle in the VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) mode, then pull out the keyless access remote.

If the keyless access remote has been inserted into the slot with the keyless access remote system main switch in the glove box turned off, it will lock into place when the power is on. The slot will unlock when the power is turned off.

NOTE: If the keyless access remote does not come out of the slot easily, try to push it in before pulling it out. Make sure the vehicle is in VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) mode.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Keyless Access System

On automatic transmission models
The multi-information display shows the “ACCESSORY MODE” or “TO UNLOCK KEYLESS REMOTE TURN OFF POWER” message to remind you to change the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

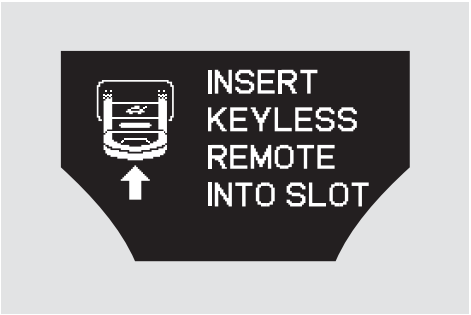
On manual transmission models
The multi-information display shows the “ACCESSORY MODE” message to remind you that the power mode is in ACCESSORY.

On all models
To avoid damaging the slot, do not insert any other objects into the slot or put a sticker on the keyless access remote.

Inserting the remote does not charge the remote battery. If necessary, you should replace the battery as soon as possible.

Unlocked Keyless Access Remote
When the keyless access remote system main switch in the glove box is set to ON, the remote remains unlocked when you insert it into the keyless access remote slot and the power mode is turned on.

Operation Guidance
To insert the keyless access remote:

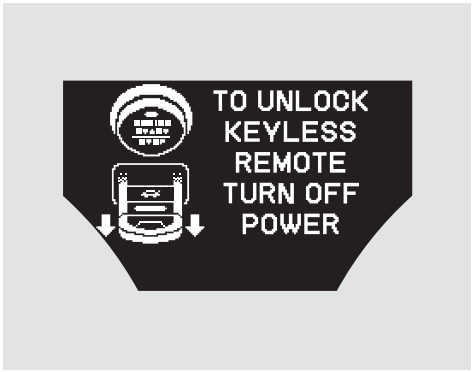


When you open the driver’s door, and each time you press the engine start/stop button, you will see the “INSERT KEYLESS REMOTE INTO SLOT” message on the multi-information display in the following situations:

- When the keyless access system main switch (see page 189) is off.
- When the keyless access remote is not in the vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To unlock the keyless access remote: On automatic transmission models



When the keyless access remote system main switch in the glove box is set to ON, the multi-information display will show the "TO UNLOCK KEYLESS REMOTE TURN OFF POWER" message after you shift to Park.

The message reminds you that the keyless access remote is locked in the keyless access remote slot, and that the power mode is in the ACCESSORY or ON position. To remove the keyless access remote, turn the power mode off by pressing the engine start/stop button twice (in ACCESSORY mode) or once (in ON mode) without pressing the brake pedal.

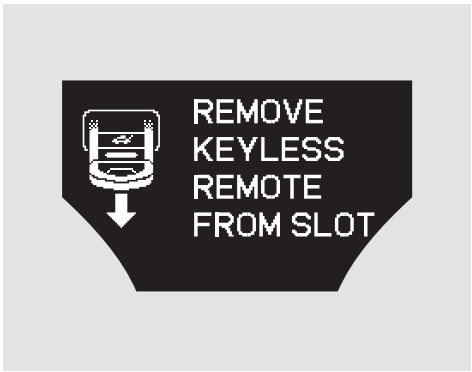
In ACCESSORY mode, the "ACCESSORY MODE" message will be displayed a few seconds after the "TO UNLOCK KEYLESS REMOTE TURN OFF POWER" message is displayed.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Keyless Access System

To remove the keyless access remote:



If the vehicle is left in the ACCESSORY mode, the “TO TURN VEHICLE OFF” message is shown on the multi-information display when you open the driver’s door. If the vehicle is left in the VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) mode with the keyless access remote in the slot, the “REMOVE KEYLESS REMOTE FROM SLOT” message is shown on the multi-information display.

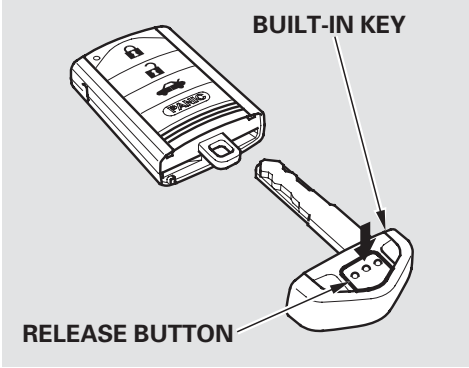
On automatic transmission models

The shift lever must be in Park before you can press the engine start/stop button twice without pressing the brake pedal to set the vehicle into the VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) mode.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Built-in key and Remote

The built-in key can be used to lock/unlock the doors and the trunk when the remote battery becomes weak and the power door lock/unlock operation is disabled.



To remove the built-in key, pull it out while pressing the release button. To reinstall the built-in key, push the key into the remote until it clicks.

To avoid damaging the remote and the built-in key, never pull on the built-in key unless you are pressing the release button.

The keyless access system uses an electric field to identify the remote.

If you use medical equipment such as a cardiac pacemaker, ask your doctor if the electric field used by the remote will affect it.

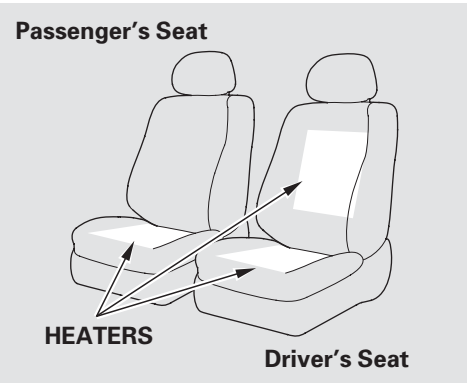
Valet Function

The trunk and glove box cannot be opened when you turn the trunk main switch off and lock the glove box and trunk pass-through cover with the built-in key. Then, the trunk cannot be opened by using the remote or the exterior trunk release switch.

Remove the built-in key from the remote by pressing the button, then give that remote to someone else as a valet key.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

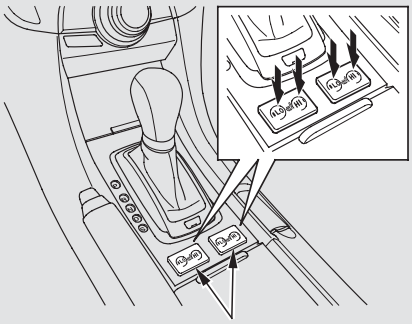
Seat Heaters



Both front seats are equipped with seat heaters. Because of the sensors for the side airbag cutoff system, there is no heater in the passenger's seat-back.

The ignition switch* must be in the ON (II) position to use the heaters.

* : Models equipped with the keyless access system have an engine start/stop button instead of an ignition switch. ON Mode is the equivalent of ON (II). For more information, see pages 178 and 181 .



Push the right side of the switch, HI, to rapidly heat up the seat. After the seat reaches a comfortable temperature, select LO by pushing the left side of the switch. This will keep the seat warm.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

In the HI setting, the heater turns off when the seat gets warm, and turns back on after the seat's temperature drops.

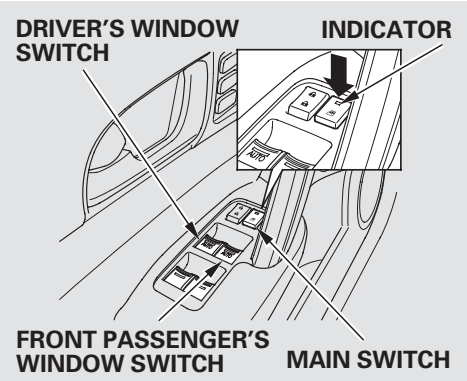
In the LO setting, the heater runs continuously. It does not cycle with temperature changes.

Follow these precautions whenever you use the seat heaters:

- Use the HI setting only to heat the seats quickly, because it draws large amounts of current from the battery.
- If the engine is left idling for an extended period, do not use the seat heaters even on the LO setting. It can weaken the battery, causing hard starting.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Power Windows



Turn the ignition switch* to the ON (II) position to raise or lower any window. To open a window, push the switch down and hold it. Release the switch when you want the window to stop. Pull back on the switch and hold it to close the window.

* : Models equipped with the keyless access system have an engine start/stop button instead of an ignition switch. ON Mode is the equivalent of ON (II). For more information, see pages 178 and 181 .

⚠WARNING

Closing a power window on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.

Make sure your passengers are away from the windows before closing them.

AUTO – To open either front window fully, push the window switch firmly down to the second detent, then release it. The window automatically goes down all the way. To stop the window from going all the way down, pull back on the window switch briefly.

To close either front window fully, pull back the window switch firmly to the second detent, then release it. The window automatically goes all the way up. To stop the window from going all the way up, push down on the window switch briefly.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

When you push the main switch in, the indicator comes on and the passengers' windows cannot be raised or lowered. Use the main switch when you have children in the vehicle so they do not injure themselves by operating the windows unintentionally. To cancel this feature, push on the switch again. The switch will pop out and the indicator will go off.

The windows and the main switch will operate for up to 10 minutes after you turn off the ignition switch (set VEHICLE OFF mode on models with keyless access system). Opening either front door cancels this function.

Auto Reverse
If either front window runs into any obstacle while it is closing automatically, it will reverse direction, and then stop. To close the window, remove the obstacle, then use the window switch again.

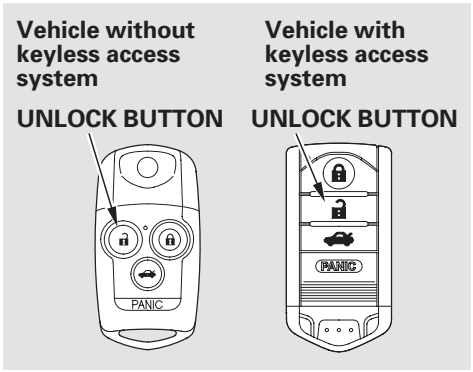
Auto reverse stops sensing when the window is almost closed. You should always check that all passengers and objects are away from the window before closing it.

NOTE: The driver's window auto reverse function is disabled when you continuously pull up the switch.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Power Windows

Opening the Windows and Moonroof with the Remote Transmitter/Keyless Access Remote

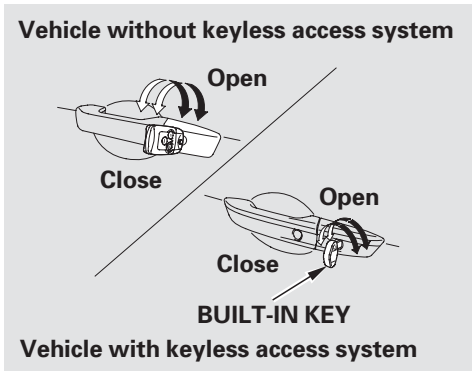


You can open all of the windows and the moonroof from outside with the remote transmitter (the keyless access remote on models with keyless access system).

1. Press the UNLOCK button once to unlock the driver's door.
2. Press the UNLOCK button a second time, and hold it. The remaining doors unlock, and all four windows and the moonroof start to open. To stop the windows and moonroof, release the button.
3. To open the windows and moonroof further, press the button again (within 10 seconds of step 1) and hold it. If the windows and the moonroof stop before the desired position, repeat steps 1 and 2.

You cannot close the windows or the moonroof with the remote transmitter.

Opening/Closing the Windows and Moonroof with the Key or the Built-in key



You can open and close the windows and moonroof with the key in the driver's door lock.

To open:

1. Insert the key in the driver's door lock.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

2. Turn the key clockwise, then release it.

3. Turn the key clockwise again, and hold it. All four windows and the moonroof start to open. To stop the windows and the moonroof, release the key.

4. To open the windows and the moonroof further, turn and hold the key again (within 10 seconds of step 2).

To close:

1. Insert the key in the driver's door lock.

2. Turn the key counterclockwise, then release it.

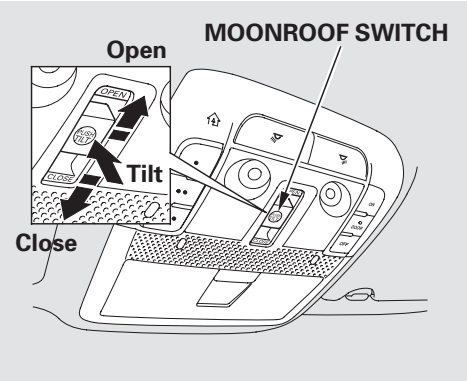
3. Turn the key counterclockwise again, and hold it. All four windows and the moonroof start to close. To stop the windows and the moonroof, release the key.

4. To close the windows and the moonroof further, turn and hold the key again (within 10 seconds of step 2).

NOTE: If the windows and the moonroof stop before the desired position, repeat steps 2 and 3.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Moonroof



The moonroof can be tilted up in the back for ventilation, or it can be slid back into the roof. Use the switch on the front ceiling to operate the moonroof. You must turn the ignition switch* to the ON (II) position to operate the moonroof.

* : Models equipped with the keyless access system have an engine start/stop button instead of an ignition switch. ON Mode is the equivalent of ON (II). For more information, see pages 179 and 181 .

To tilt up the moonroof, push on the center of the moonroof switch. To stop the moonroof from tilting up fully, push the switch briefly.

To open the moonroof, pull back on the switch and hold it. Release the switch when the moonroof reaches the desired position. To close the moonroof, push the switch forward and hold it. Release the switch to stop the operation.

⚠WARNING

Opening or closing the moonroof on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.

Make sure all hands and fingers are clear of the moonroof before opening or closing it.

AUTO – To open the moonroof fully, pull back the moonroof switch firmly, then release it. The moonroof automatically opens all the way. To stop the moonroof from opening, push the switch briefly.

To close the moonroof fully, firmly push the moonroof switch forward, then release it. The moonroof automatically closes all the way. To stop the moonroof from closing, push the switch briefly.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Moonroof

To open or close the moonroof partially, lightly pull the switch back or push it forward and hold it. The moonroof will stop when you release the switch.

Auto Reverse
If the moonroof runs into any obstacle while it is closing automatically, it will reverse direction, and then stop. To close the moonroof, remove the obstacle, then use the moonroof switch again.

Auto reverse stops sensing when the moonroof is almost closed. You should always check that all passengers and objects are away from the moonroof before closing it.

You can open and close the moonroof for up to 10 minutes after you turn off the ignition switch, on models with keyless access system, set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK). Opening either front door cancels this function.

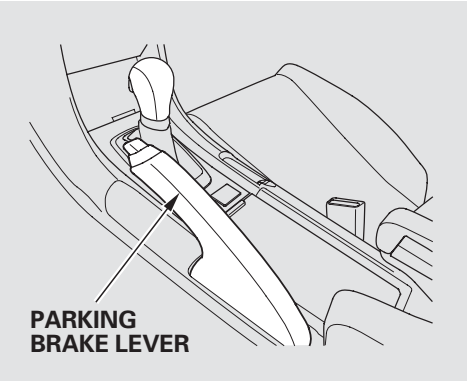
NOTICE

If you try to open the moonroof in below-freezing temperatures, or when it is covered with snow or ice, you can damage the moonroof panel or its motor.

You can use the remote transmitter/ keyless access remote or the key/ built-in key to operate the moonroof from the outside. Refer to page 200 for details.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Parking Brake



To apply the parking brake, pull the lever up fully. To release it, pull up slightly, push the button, and lower the lever. The parking brake indicator on the instrument panel should go out when the parking brake is fully released (see page 65).

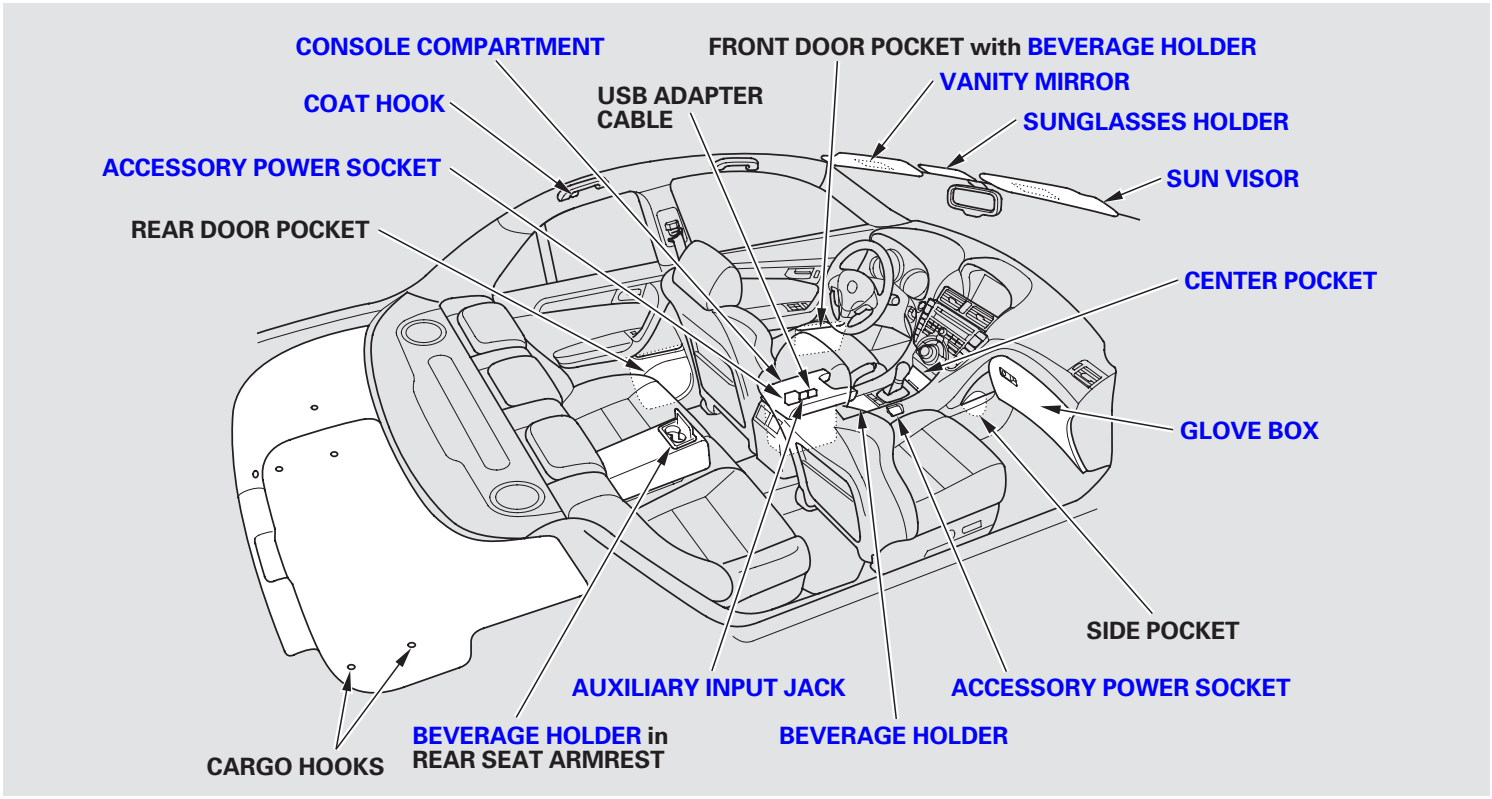
If you drive without releasing the parking brake, a beeper will sound, and you will also see a “RELEASE PARKING BRAKE” message on the multi-information display (see page 65).

NOTICE

Driving the vehicle with the parking brake applied can damage the rear brakes and hubs. A beeper will sound if the vehicle is driven with the parking brake on.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

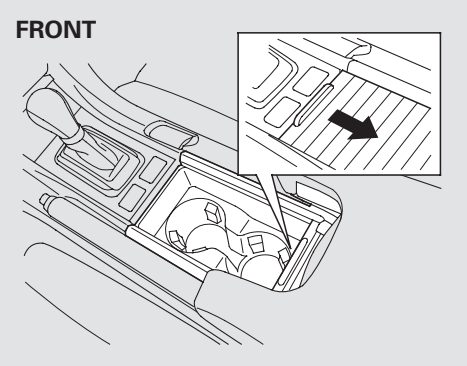
Interior Convenience Items



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Interior Convenience Items

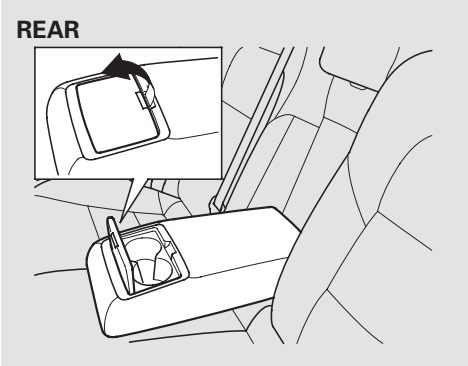
Beverage Holders



Open the front beverage holder by sliding its cover backward.

Be careful when you are using the beverage holders. A spilled liquid that is very hot can scald you or your passengers. Liquid can also spill from the front door pocket beverage holders when you open or close the doors. Use only resealable containers in the door pockets.

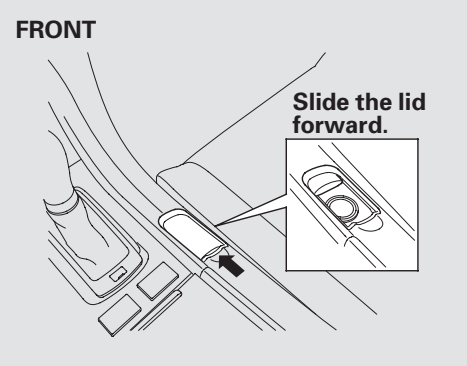
Spilled liquids can damage the upholstery, carpeting, and electrical components in the interior.



To open the rear beverage holder, pull out the lid by the tab. To close it, push it down.

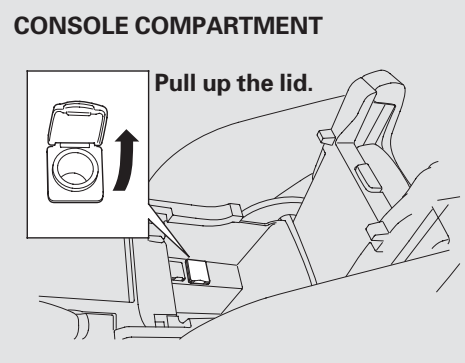
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Accessory Power Sockets



Your vehicle has two accessory power sockets. One is next to the shift lever. The other is in the console compartment.

To access the front accessory socket, slide the lid forward until it latches. To close it, push in on the lid to slide it backward.



To use an accessory power socket, the ignition switch* must be in the ACCESSORY (I) or ON (II) position.

* : Models equipped with the keyless access system have an engine start/stop button instead of an ignition switch. ACCESSORY Mode is the equivalent of ACCESSORY (I), and ON Mode is the equivalent of ON (II). For more information, see pages 178 and 181.

Each socket is intended to supply power for 12 volt DC accessories that are rated 120 watts or less (10 amps).

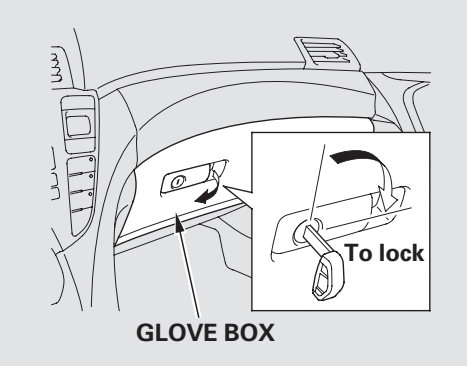
None of the sockets will power an automotive type cigarette lighter element.

Make sure to put the socket cover back in place to prevent any small foreign objects from getting into the socket.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Interior Convenience Items

Glove Box



Open the glove box by pulling out the handle. Close it with a firm push. Lock or unlock the glove box with the master key or the built-in key on models with keyless access system.

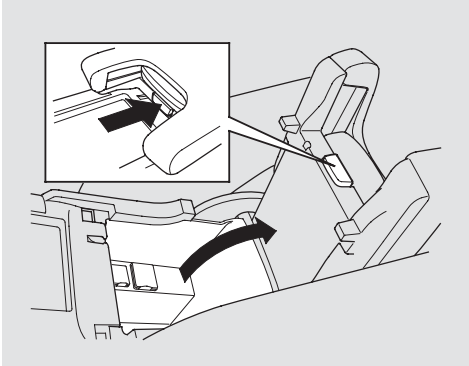
The glove box light comes on only when the parking lights are on.

⚠WARNING

An open glove box can cause serious injury to your passenger in a crash, even if the passenger is wearing the seat belt.

Always keep the glove box closed while driving.

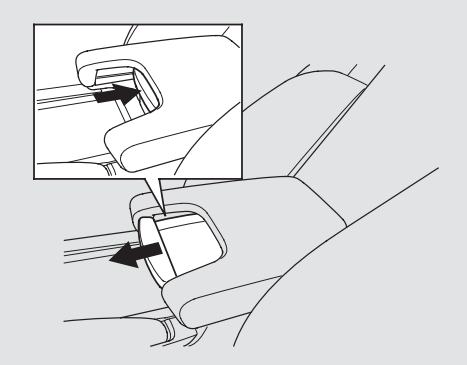
Console Compartment



To open the console compartment, push in on the lever and lift the armrest. To close, lower the armrest, and push it down until it latches.

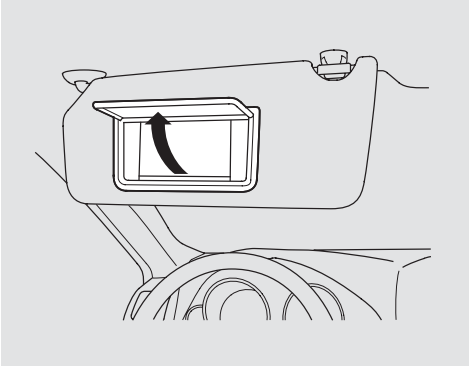
Make sure to slide back the tray before opening the console compartment.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



You can put small items in the sliding tray located in the console compartment lid. To use the tray, push it in to open it, then slide out fully. Make sure to slide back the tray firmly until you hear a click when not in use.

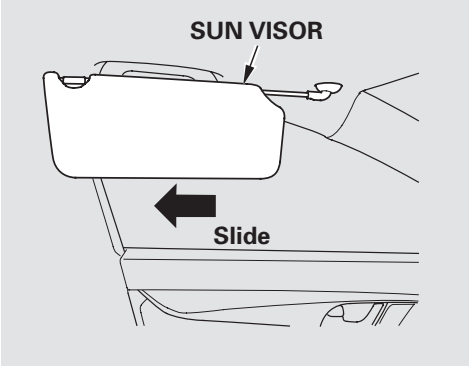
Vanity Mirror



To use the vanity mirror on the back of the sun visor, pull up the cover.

The vanity mirror lights come on when you pull up the cover.

Sun Visor



To use a sun visor, pull it down. You can also use a sun visor at the side window. Remove the support rod from the clip, and swing the sun visor toward the side window. You can extend the sun visor further by pulling it back.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

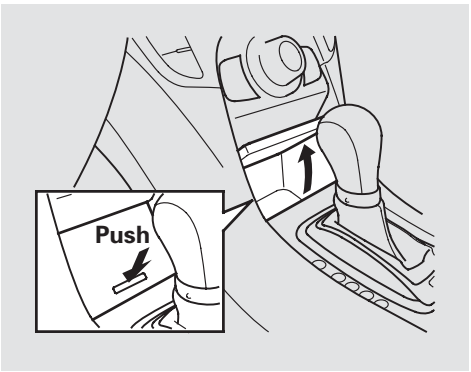
Interior Convenience Items

Do not use the sun visor extension feature over the rearview mirror.

Make sure to slide the sun visor back to its original position before flipping it back in place.

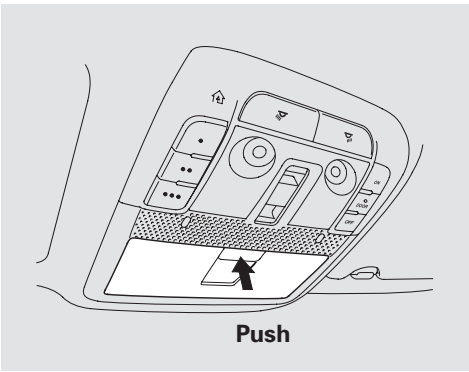
Make sure you put the sun visor back in place when you are getting into or out of the vehicle.

Center Pocket



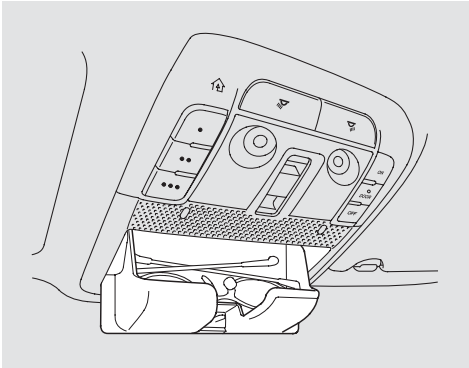
To open the center pocket, push on the lid. It will unlatch and swing up. To close it, push the lid down until it latches.

Sunglasses Holder



To open the sunglasses holder, push on the lid. It will unlatch and swing down. To close it, push it until it latches. Make sure the holder is closed while you are driving.

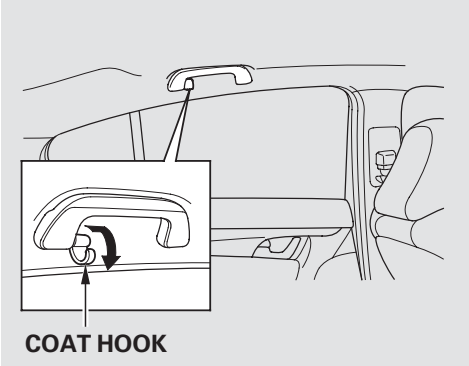
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Some larger styles of sunglasses may not fit in the holder.

You may also store small items in this holder. Make sure they are small enough to let the holder close and latch, and that they are not heavy enough to cause the holder to pop open while driving.

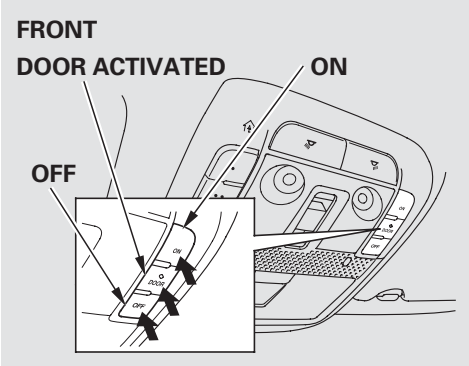
Coat Hook



To use a coat hook, slide it out slightly, then pull it down.

Make sure the coat hook is pulled up when you are not using it. This hook is not designed for large or heavy items.

Light Control Buttons



Your vehicle has the light control buttons on the front ceiling. With these buttons, you can select three positions: OFF, Door (door activated position), and ON. To select a position, press the appropriate button.

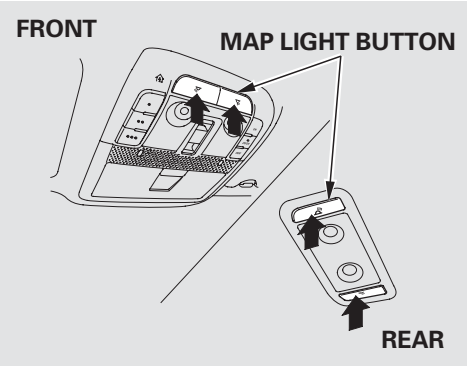
When you press the DOOR button, the green indicator in the button comes on as a reminder.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Interior Lights

To turn off the setting, press the OFF button.



OFF position:

- The front individual map lights can be turned on and off by pressing each map light button (/).
- The rear individual map lights cannot be turned on.

Door (Door activated position):

- The individual map lights in the front and rear come on when any door is opened, when the remote transmitter (the keyless access remote on models with keyless access system) is used to unlock the doors. When the doors are closed, each light can be turned on and off by pushing the map light button (/).

After all doors are closed tightly, the lights dim slightly, then fade out in about 30 seconds.

To change the “INTERIOR LIGHT DIMMING TIME” setting, see page 117.

With any door left open, the lights stay on about 15 minutes, then go out.

On models without keyless access system

The lights also come on when the key is removed from the ignition switch.

On models with keyless access system

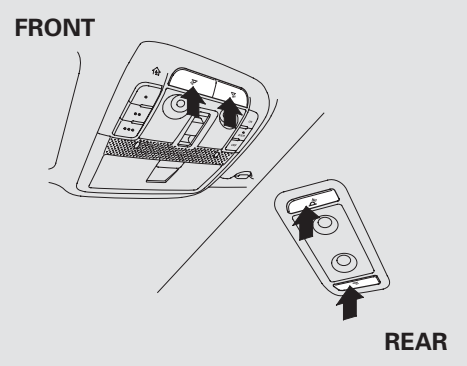
The lights also come on when the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

ON position:

- All the individual map lights come on and stay on.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

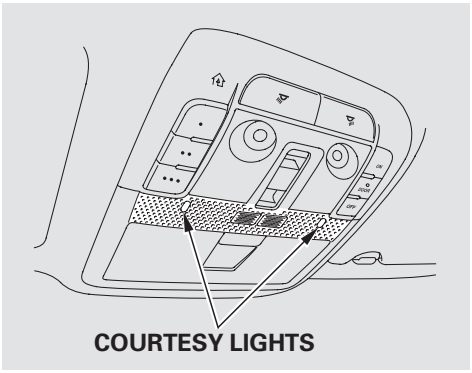
Individual Map Lights



Turn on the front individual map lights by pushing each map light button (/). Push the button again to turn it off. When the door activated position is selected with the light control button, the rear map lights can be turned on by pushing each map light button (/). Push the button again to turn it off.

If any map light is left on when the ignition switch is turned off or the VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) mode is set, and all doors are closed, it will turn off when the vehicle is locked with the remote transmitter (the keyless access remote on models with keyless access system), or after 15 minutes.

Courtesy Lights



The courtesy lights come on when the parking lights are turned on. To adjust its brightness, press either of the instrument panel brightness control buttons (+ or −) with the ignition switch* in the ON (II) position.

* : Models equipped with the keyless access system have an engine start/stop button instead of an ignition switch. ON Mode is the equivalent of ON (II). For more information, see pages 178 and 181.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Interior Lights

The courtesy light in each front door comes on when the door is opened, and goes out when the door is closed.

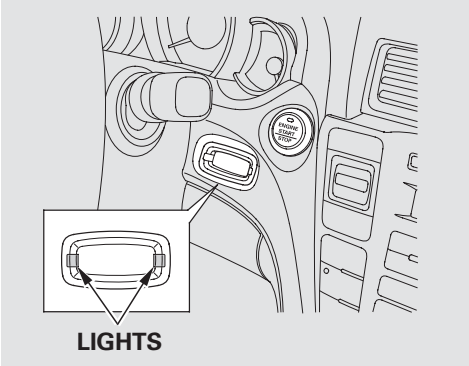
In addition to the courtesy light on the ceiling, the driver's ambient foot light comes on.

On models without keyless access system

Your vehicle also has a courtesy light in the ignition switch. This light comes on when you open the driver's door. It fades out in about 30 seconds after the door is closed.

Keyless Access Remote Slot Light

On models with keyless access system



Your vehicle has a keyless access remote slot light. The light comes on when you:

- Open any door.
- Set the vehicle mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).
- Remove the keyless access remote from the keyless access remote slot.

After all doors are closed tightly, the light dims slightly, then fades out in about 30 seconds (depending on the interior light dimming timer setting). The light turns off before 30 seconds have elapsed if you lock the driver's door.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The climate control system in your vehicle provides a comfortable driving environment in all weather conditions. The standard audio system has many features. This section describes those feature and how to use them.

Your vehicle has an anti-theft audio system that requires a code number to enable it.

The security system helps to discourage vandalism and theft of your vehicle.

Climate Control System 216
Using Automatic Climate Control 218
Dual Temperature and Mode Control 222
Climate Control Sensors 224
Audio System 225

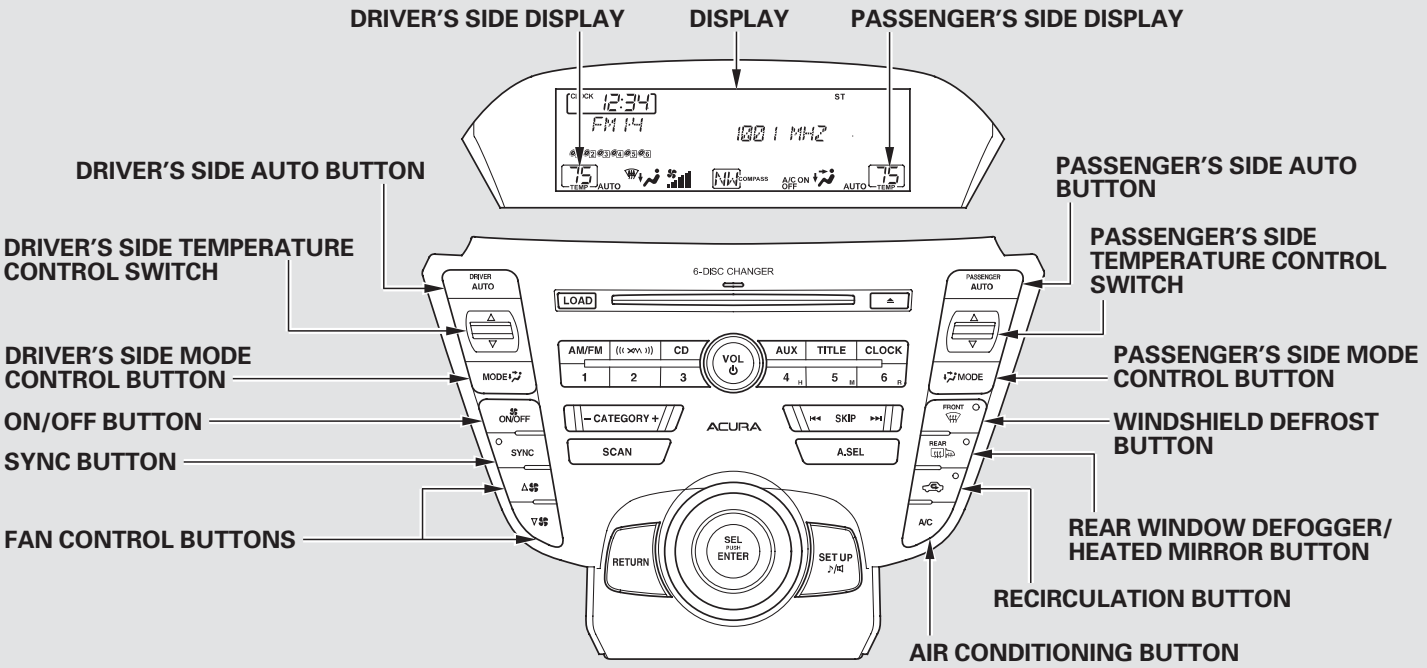
Models without navigation system
Audio System 226
Playing the AM/FM Radio 227
Playing the XM® Radio 235
Playing Discs 241
Disc Changer Error Messages 251
Playing an iPod® 252
iPod® Error Messages 259
Playing a USB Flash Memory Device 260
USB Flash Memory Device Error Messages 268
Bluetooth® Audio System 269

Models with navigation system
Audio System 273
Playing the AM/FM Radio 274
Playing the XM® Radio 287
Playing a Disc 295
Disc Player Error Messages 307
Playing Hard Disc Drive (HDD) Audio 308
Playing an iPod® 338
iPod® Error Messages 346
Playing a USB Flash Memory Device 347
USB Flash Memory Device Error Messages 358
Bluetooth® Audio System 359
Protecting Your Discs 364
AM/FM Radio Reception 368
Remote Audio Controls 370
Auxiliary Input Jack 372
Radio Theft Protection 373
Setting the Clock 374
Security System 377
Compass 379
Cruise Control 383
HomeLink® Universal Transceiver 386
Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® (Models without navigation system) 389
Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® (Models with navigation system) 406
AcuraLink® (U.S. models only) ... 425
Rearview Camera and Monitor 441

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Climate Control System

Models without navigation system

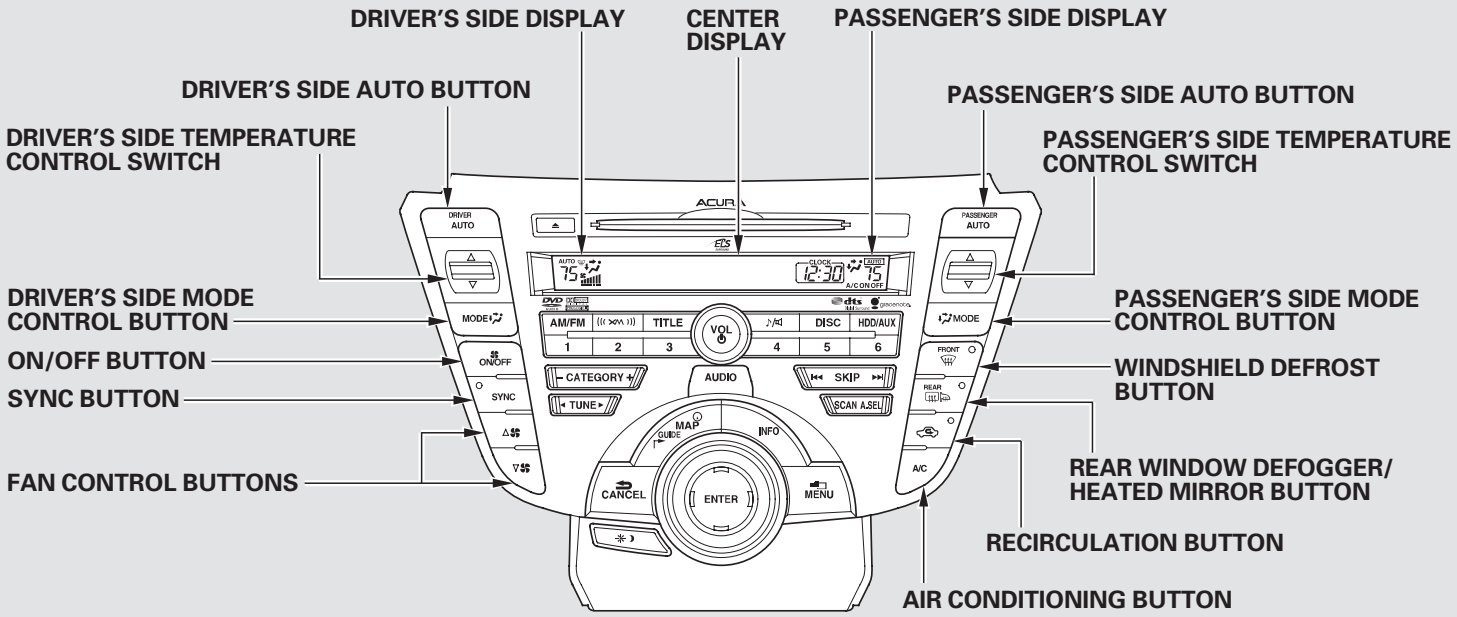


U.S. model is shown.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Climate Control System

Models with navigation system



U.S. model is shown.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Climate Control System

Voice Control System

On models with navigation system

The climate control system for your vehicle can also be operated using the voice control system. See the navigation system manual for complete details.

Personalization Setting

When you unlock the doors with your remote transmitter (keyless access remote on models with navigation system), the driver's ID (Driver 1 or Driver 2) is detected, and the climate control settings are turned to the respective mode automatically with the ignition switch in the ON (II) position, or the power mode ON.

Using Automatic Climate Control

The automatic climate control system in your vehicle picks the proper combination of air conditioning, heating, and ventilation to maintain the interior temperature you select, and to remove moisture from the air and make the interior dry. The system also adjusts the fan speed and airflow levels.

1. Press the Driver's or Passenger's AUTO button. You will see AUTO and the selected temperature on the appropriate side of the display (in the center display on models with navigation system).

2. Set the desired temperature with the temperature control switch. You can set the driver's side temperature and the passenger's side temperature separately.

   The system automatically selects the proper mix of conditioned and/or heated air that will, as quickly as possible, raise or lower the interior temperature to your preference. The system also dehumidifies the interior.

Temperature Control

The driver's side temperature and the passenger's side temperature can be set separately. Push up the switch of the appropriate temperature control to increase the temperature of airflow. Push down the switch to decrease it. Each set temperature is shown in the display (in the center display on models with navigation system).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

When you set the temperature to its lower limit (Lo) or its upper limit (Hi), the system runs at full cooling or heating only. It does not regulate the interior temperature.

When you adjust a fan control, the fan is taken out of AUTO mode.

You can also select the appropriate mode on the driver's side and the passenger's side separately. To change a mode, press and release the appropriate side mode control button. This will take the mode control out of AUTO mode.

On models with navigation system
In AUTO mode, the vehicle's interior temperature is independently regulated for the driver and front passenger according to each adjusted temperature. The system also regulates each temperature based on the information of the sunlight sensor and the sun's position which is updated automatically by the navigation's global positioning system (GPS). If one side of the vehicle is getting too much sun, the system lowers the temperature only on that side.

SYNC Button
When you press this button, the indicator in the button comes on, and the passenger's side temperature and mode control is synchronized to the driver's side set temperature and mode control. Changing the passenger's side temperature or mode control makes the indicator go off and takes the system out of SYNC mode.

ON/OFF Button
Each time you press this button, the climate control system switches between on and off. Turning on the system with this button selects your last climate control selection.

To Turn Everything Off
To turn the system completely off, press the ON/OFF button.

- Keep the system completely off for short periods only.
- To keep stale air and mustiness from collecting, you should have the fan running at all times.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Climate Control System

Semi-automatic Operation
You can manually select various functions of the climate control system when it is in fully automatic mode. All other features remain automatically controlled. Making any manual selection causes the word AUTO in the display to go out.

Fan Control
Press the ▲ button to increase the fan speed and airflow. Press the ▼ button to decrease it.

Air Conditioning (A/C) Button
This button turns the air conditioning on and off. You will see A/C ON or A/C OFF in the display (in the center display on models with navigation system).

When you turn the A/C off, the system cannot regulate the inside temperature if you set the temperature control below the outside temperature.

Recirculation Button
When the indicator in the button is on, air from the vehicle's interior is sent through the system again. When the indicator is off, air is brought in from the outside of the vehicle (fresh air mode).

The outside air intakes for the climate control system are at the base of the windshield. Keep this area clear of leaves and other debris.

The system should be left in fresh air mode under almost all conditions. Keeping the system in recirculation mode, particularly with the A/C off, can cause the windows to fog up.

Switch to recirculation mode when driving through dusty or smoky conditions, then return to fresh air mode.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Rear Window Defogger Button
This button turns the rear window defogger on and off (see page 139).

Pushing this button also turns the power mirror heaters on and off.

Mode Controls
The driver's side mode and the passenger's side mode can be selected separately. Use the appropriate mode control button to select the vents the air flows from. Some air will flow from the dashboard vents in all modes.

Airflow is divided between the floor and corner vents and the defroster vents at the base of the windshield.

This mode can only be selected from the driver's side, however the passenger's side controls can still change the temperature.

Air flows from the floor vents.

Airflow is divided between the vents in the dashboard and the back of the center console, and the floor vents.

Air flows from the center and corner vents in the dashboard, and the vents on the back of the center console.

Each time you press the mode control button, the display shows the mode selected.

Windshield Defroster Button
This button directs the main airflow to the windshield for faster defrosting. It also overrides any mode selection you may have made.

When you select , the system automatically switches to fresh air mode and turns on the A/C. For faster defrosting, the fan speed automatically increases. You can also increase airflow to the windshield by closing the corner vents on the dashboard. To close the vents, rotate the wheel on the side of each corner vent.

Select to help clear the rear window.

When you turn off by pressing the button again, the system returns to its former settings.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Climate Control System

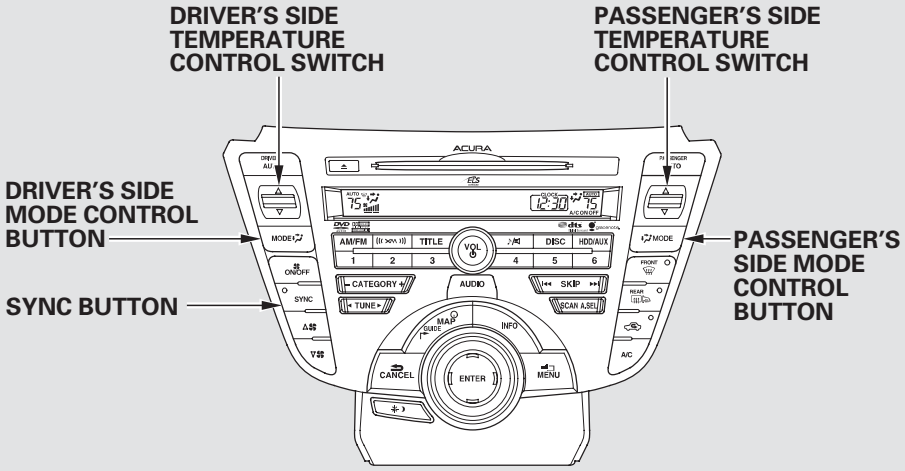
For your safety, make sure you have a clear view through all the windows before driving.

When the indicator in the button is on, the SYNC indicator also comes on. The front passenger's temperature cannot be set separately from the driver's.

Dual Temperature and Mode Control

Your vehicle has two temperature control switches and two mode control buttons, one for the driver, and one for the front passenger.

The driver's side and the passenger's side temperature and mode can be controlled independently.



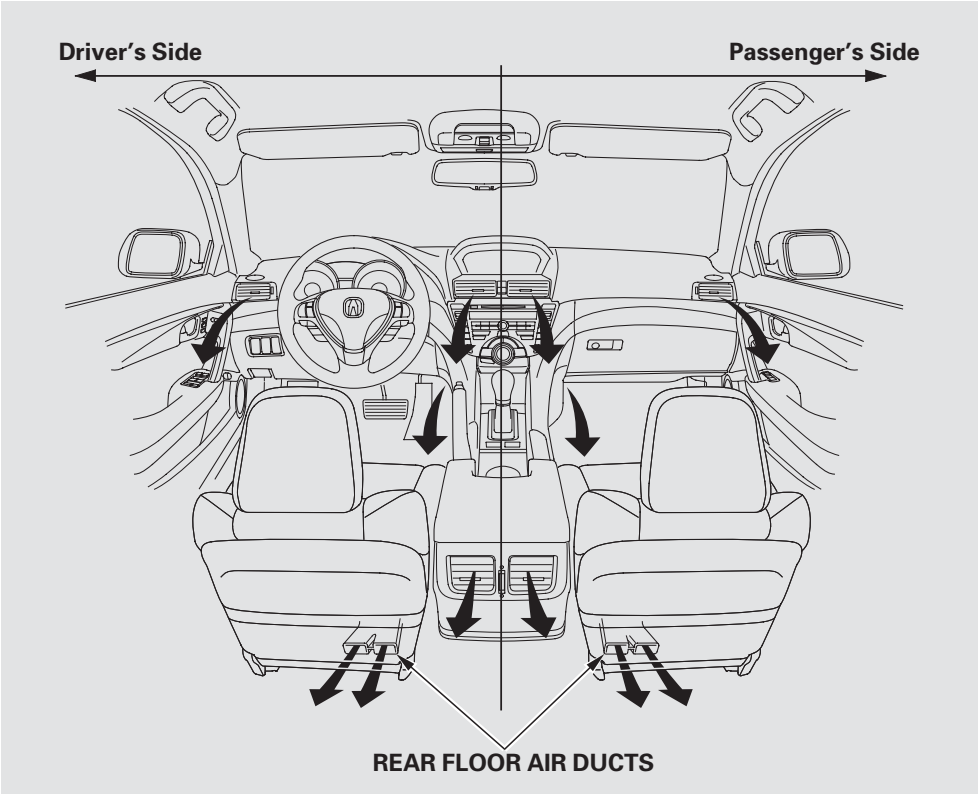
U.S. model with navigation system is shown.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Synchronized Control

The selected temperatures and mode appear in the display (in the center display on models with navigation system). When the indicator in the SYNC button is on, you can adjust both sides to the same temperature and mode by pushing the driver's side temperature and mode controls.

When you set the temperature to its upper or lower limit, it is displayed as Hi or Lo .



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

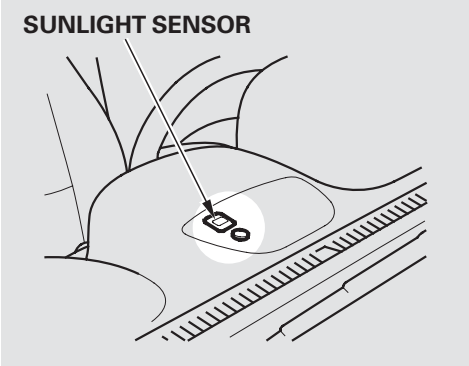
Climate Control System

Rear Ventilation

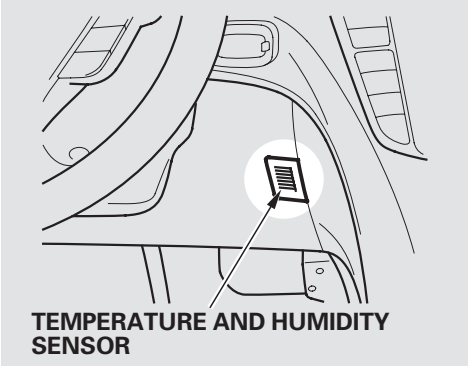
The airflow from the rear vents can be adjusted when either AUTO mode (driver or passenger) is selected or the fan mode is in the or position.

You can adjust the direction of the airflow by moving the tab on each vent up-and-down and side-to-side. You can also open or close the vents with the dial between them.

Climate Control Sensors



The climate control system has two sensors: a sunlight sensor on top of the dashboard, and a temperature and humidity sensor next to the steering column. Do not cover the sensors or spill any liquid on them.



The humidity sensor helps reduce window fogging and also monitors and adjusts cabin humidity by automatically changing the mode to Defrost.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

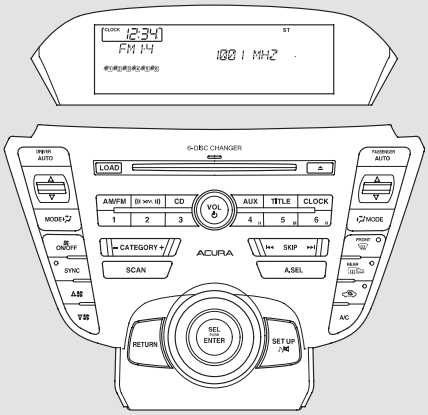
Audio System

An audio system is standard on all models. Read the appropriate pages (as shown below) to use your vehicle's audio system.

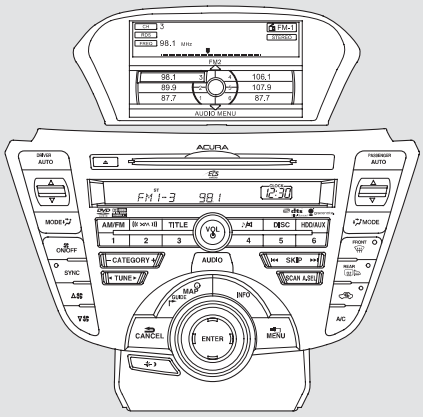
For vehicles without navigation system, see pages 226 through 272 .

For vehicles with navigation system, see pages 273 through 363 .

Models Without navigation system



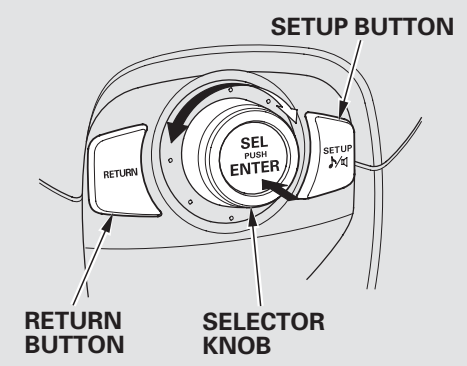
Models With navigation system



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Audio System (Models without navigation system)

Selector Knob



Most audio system functions can be controlled by standard buttons, bars, and knobs. In addition, you can access some functions by using the selector knob on the audio system.

The knob turns left and right. Use it to scroll through lists, or to make selections or adjustments to a list or menu item on the display. When make a selection, push the center of the selector (ENTER) to go to that selection.

When the audio system is in XM® Radio mode or playing discs, pushing the selector (ENTER) knob switches the display between the normal display and the extended display. The extended display has three segments to display the detailed information.

SETUP Display

To select any setting such as the clock or sound adjustment, press the SETUP button. To use any audio system function, the ignition switch must be in the ACCESSORY (I) or ON (II) position. You can select the item by turning the selector knob. To go back to the previous display, press the RETURN button.

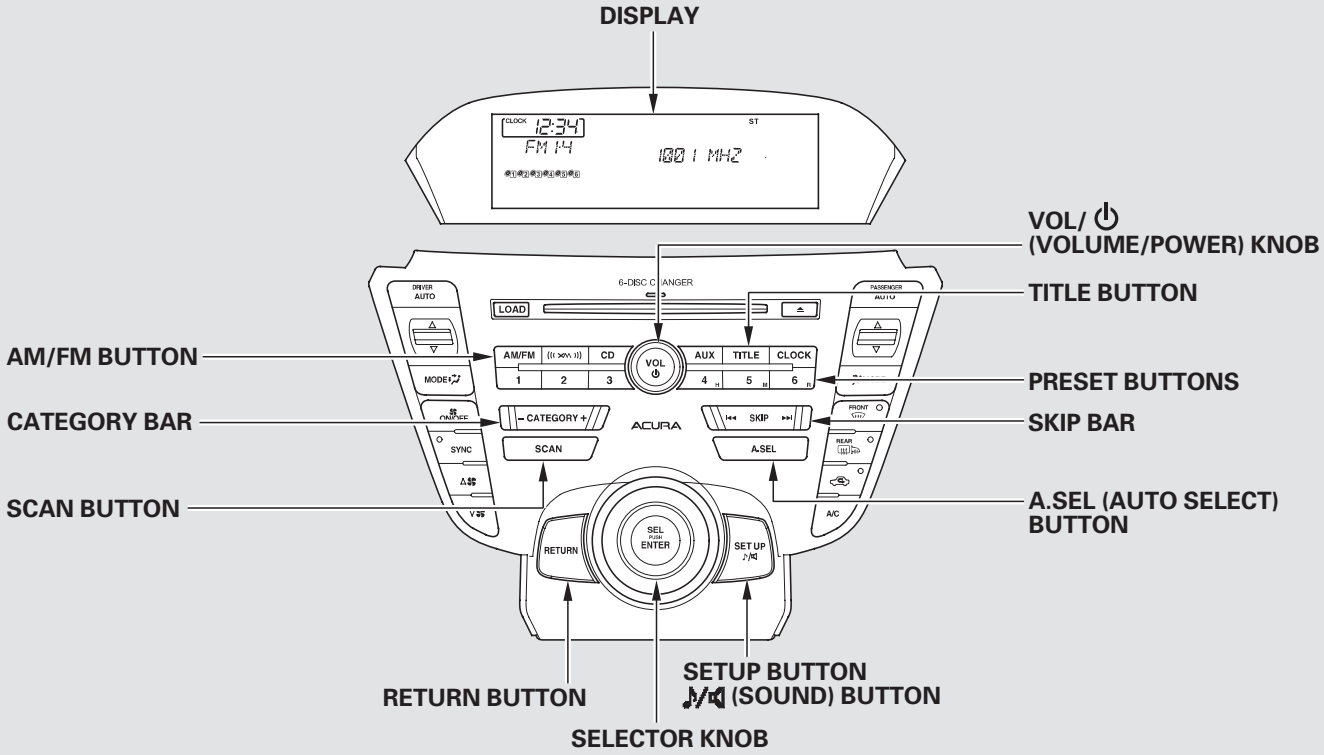
Pressing the SETUP button again will also cancel the setup display mode.

Personalization Setting

When you unlock the doors with your remote transmitter and turn the audio system on with the ignition switch in the ACCESSORY (I) or ON (II) position, the driver's ID (Driver 1 or Driver 2) is detected, and the radio presets and sound level settings (see page 233) are turned to the respective memorized mode automatically.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing the AM/FM Radio (Models without navigation system)



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing the AM/FM Radio (Models without navigation system)

To Play the Radio
The ignition switch must be in the ACCESSORY (I) or ON (II) position. Turn the system on by pushing the VOL/ ⏻ (power/volume) knob or the AM/FM button. Adjust the volume by turning the VOL/ ⏻ knob.

The band and frequency that the radio was last tuned to are displayed. To change bands, press the AM/FM button. On the FM band, ST will be displayed if the station is broadcasting in stereo. Stereo reproduction in AM is not available.

On the AM band, AM noise reduction turns on automatically.

To Select a Station
You can use any of five methods to find radio stations on the selected band: tune, skip, scan, the preset buttons, and auto select.

On the FM band, you can also use the features provided by the radio data system (RDS). For more information on the RDS, see page 230.

TUNE — Use the selector knob to tune the radio to a desired frequency. Turn the knob right to tune to a higher frequency, or left to tune to a lower frequency.

SKIP — The skip function searches up and down from the current frequency to find a station with a strong signal. To activate it, press and hold the ►►| or |◄◄ side of the SKIP bar until you hear a beep, then release it.

SCAN — The scan function samples all stations with strong signals on the selected band. To activate it, press the SCAN button, then release it. You will see SCAN in the display. When the system finds a strong signal, it will stop and play that station for about 10 seconds.

If you do nothing, the system will scan for the next strong station and play it for 10 seconds. When it plays a station that you want to listen to, press the SCAN button again.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing the AM/FM Radio (Models without navigation system)

Preset — Each preset button can store one frequency on AM and two frequencies on FM.

1. Select the desired band, AM or FM. FM1 and FM2 let you store six stations each.
2. Use the tune, skip, scan, or RDS function to tune the radio to a desired station.
3. Pick a preset button, and hold it until you hear a beep.
4. Repeat steps 1 through 3 to store a total of six stations on AM and twelve stations on FM.

AUTO SELECT — If you are traveling and can no longer receive your preset stations, you can use the auto select feature to find stations in the local area.

Press the A. SEL button. "A-SEL" flashes in the display, and the system goes into scan mode for several seconds. It stores the frequencies of six AM and twelve FM stations in the preset buttons.

You will see a "0" displayed after pressing a preset button if auto select cannot find a strong station for that preset button.

If you do not like the stations auto select has stored, you can store other frequencies on the preset buttons as previously described.

To turn off auto select, press the A. SEL (auto select) button. This restores the presets you originally set.

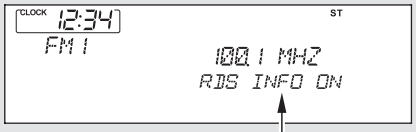
For information on AM/FM radio frequencies and reception, see page 368.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing the AM/FM Radio (Models without navigation system)

Radio Data System (RDS)
On the FM band, you can select a favorite station and display the program service name provided by the radio data system (RDS).

RDS INFO Display
The RDS information display function shows the name of the RDS station you are listening to. With the audio system on and the FM band selected, you can turn this function on or off.



RDS INFO DISPLAY ON

To switch the function between on and off, press and release the TITLE button. With the system on, you will see the “RDS INFO ON” message on the display. If the station you are listening to is an RDS station, the display shows the station name.

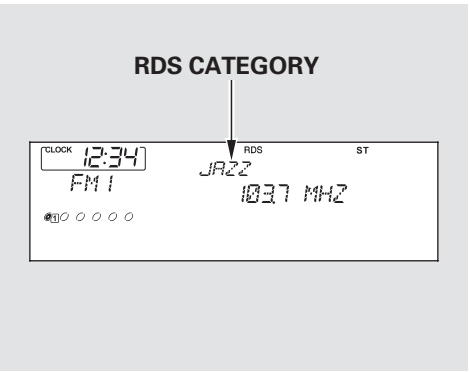
If the station you are listening to is not an RDS station, the display continues to show the frequency with the RDS information display function on.

When you turn off this function by pressing the TITLE button, the display shows “RDS NAME OFF.”

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing the AM/FM Radio (Models without navigation system)

Radio Data System (RDS) Category



On the FM band selected, you can select the program category provided by the RDS. Press either side (− or +) of the CATEGORY bar to display and select an RDS category. The principal RDS categories are shown as follows:

ALL: All RDS category stations

ROCK: Rock, classic rock and soft rock music

COUNTRY: Country music

SOFT: Adult hits and soft music

TOP 40: Top 40 hits

OLDIES: Nostalgia music and oldies

R & B: Rhythm and blues, and soft rhythm and blues

RELIGION: Programs concerned with religion

CLASSIC: Classical music

JAZZ: Jazz

INFO: News, information, sports, talk shows, foreign language, personality, public, college, and weather

TRAFFIC: Traffic information

Press either side of the CATEGORY bar to select an RDS category. The display shows the selected RDS category name for about 10 seconds. You can use the search or scan function to find radio stations in the selected RDS category. If you do nothing while the RDS category name is displayed, the selected category is canceled.

RDS Program Search

This function searches up and down a frequency for the strongest signal from the frequencies that carry the selected RDS category information. This can help you to find a station in your favorite category. To activate it, press and release either side (|◄◄ or ►►|) of the SKIP bar. You will see the selected RDS category name blinking while searching it. When the system finds a station, the selected RDS category name will be displayed again for about 5 seconds.

If the system does not find a station, “NOTHING” will blink for about 5 seconds, then the system goes back to the last selected station.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing the AM/FM Radio (Models without navigation system)

RDS Program SCAN

The scan function samples all stations with strong signals on the selected RDS category. To activate it, press and release the SCAN button. You will see SCAN in the display. The system will scan for a station with a strong signal in the selected RDS category. You will also see the selected RDS category name blinking while searching it. When it finds a strong signal, it will stop and play that station for about 10 seconds.

If you do nothing, the system will scan for the next strong station and play it for 10 seconds. When it plays a station that you want to listen to, press the SCAN button again.

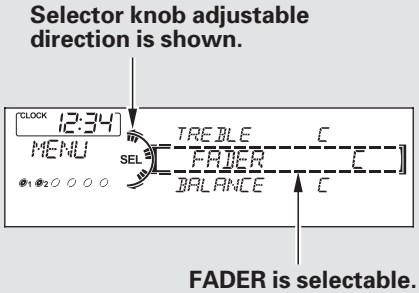
If the system does not find a station, “NOTHING” will blink for about 5 seconds, then the system goes back to the last selected station.

You can use the RDS program search or scan function even if the RDS information display function is off.

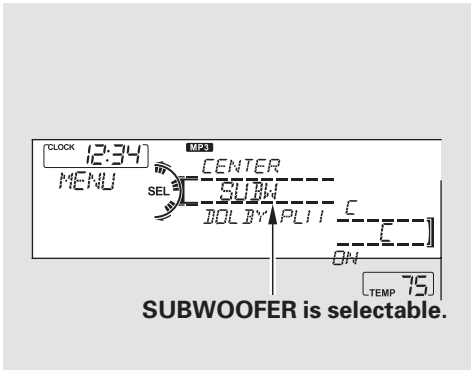
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing the AM/FM Radio (Models without navigation system)

Adjusting the Sound



Press the SETUP button to display the sound settings. Turn the selector knob to select an appropriate setting: BASS, TREBLE, FADER, BALANCE, SUBW (subwoofer), CENTER, Dolby PL (Prologic) II, and SVC (speed-sensitive volume compensation). Press the selector (ENTER) knob to enter the setting, then turn the selector knob to adjust the setting.



BASS — Adjusts the bass.

TREBLE — Adjusts the treble.

FADER — Adjusts the front-to-back strength of the sound.

BALANCE — Adjusts the side-to-side strength of the sound.

CENTER — Adjusts the strength of sound from the center speaker.

SUBW — Adjusts the strength of sound from the subwoofer speaker.

If the fader adjustment is set to F9 (maximum front level), the subwoofer is turned off.

Dolby PL (ProLogic) II — Dolby PL (ProLogic) II signal processing creates multi-channel surround sound from 2 channel stereo audio sources. Dolby ProLogic II can only be activated when listening to DISC (CD-DA, MP3/WMA), XM Radio, and AUX. When ProLogic II is active, "PL II" is shown in the audio display.

Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. Dolby, Pro Logic, MLP Lossless and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing the AM/FM Radio (Models without navigation system)

SVC – Adjusts the volume level based on the vehicle speed.

Each mode is shown in the display as it changes. Turn the selector knob to adjust the setting to your liking.

Except SVC adjustment
When the level reaches the center, you will see “C” in the display.

To return to normal play, push the RETURN or SETUP button after you stop adjusting a mode.

Speed-sensitive Volume Compensation (SVC)
The SVC mode controls the volume based on vehicle speed. The faster you go, the louder the audio volume becomes. As you slow down, the audio volume decreases.

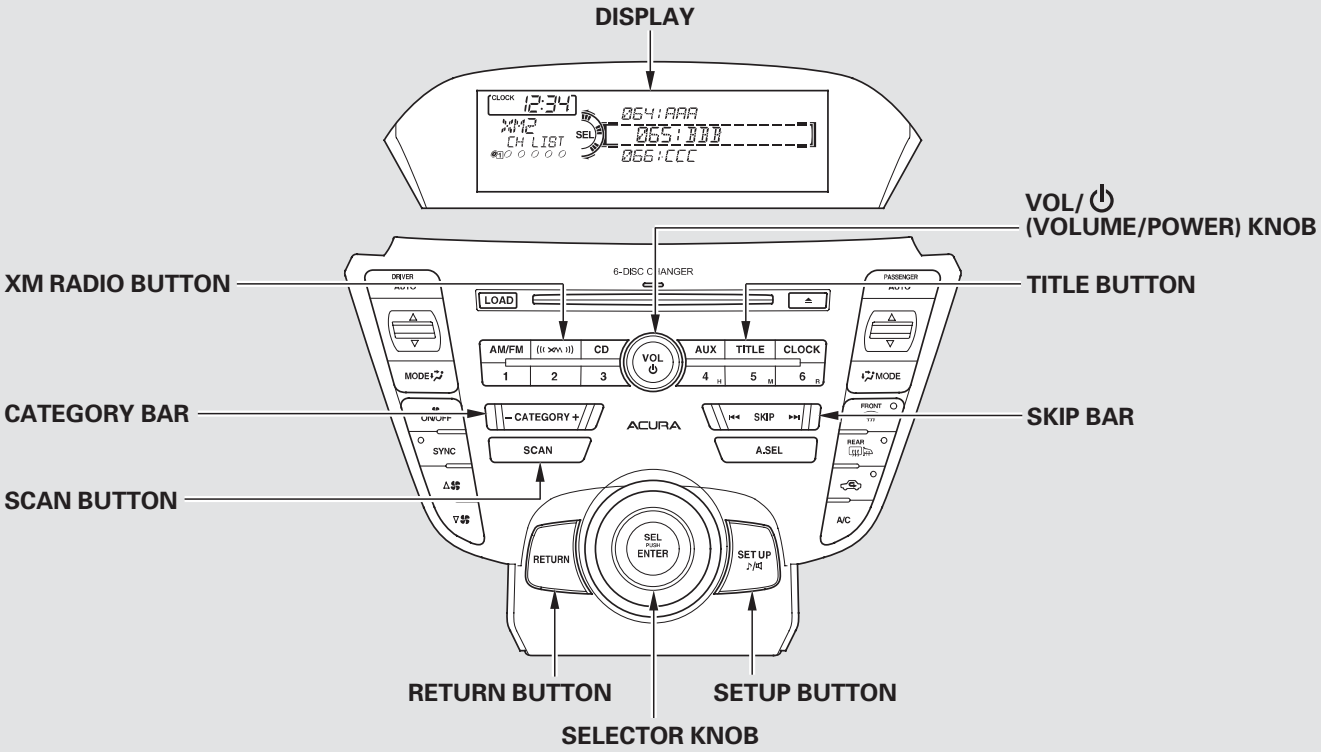
The SVC has four modes: SVC OFF, SVC LOW, SVC MID, and SVC HIGH. Turn the selector knob to adjust the setting to your liking. If you feel the sound is too loud, choose low. If you feel the sound is too quiet, choose high.

This function is set to MID as the default setting when the vehicle leaves the factory.

Audio System Lighting
You can use the instrument panel brightness control buttons (+ or –) to adjust the illumination of the audio system (see page 137). The audio system illuminates when the parking lights are on, even if the radio is turned off.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing the XM® Radio (Models without navigation system)



CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing the XM® Radio (Models without navigation system)

Your vehicle is capable of receiving XM® Radio anywhere in the United States and Canada, except Hawaii, Alaska, and Puerto Rico. XM is a registered trademark of Sirius XM Radio®, Inc. and XM CANADA® is a registered business name of Canadian Satellite Radio Inc.

XM Radio receives signals from two satellites to produce clear, high-quality digital reception. It offers many channels in several categories. Along with a large selection of different types of music, XM Radio allows you to view channel and category selections in the display.

Operating the XM Radio
To listen to XM Radio, turn the ignition switch to the ACCESSORY (I) or ON (II) position, and press the «XM» button. The last channel you listened to will show in the display. Adjust the volume by turning the VOL/ ⏻ knob.

MODE — To switch between channel mode and category mode, press and hold the TITLE button until the mode changes.

In the channel mode, you can select all of the available channels. In the category mode, such as Jazz, Rock, Classical, etc., you can select all of the channels within that category.

Each time you press and release the TITLE button, the display changes in the following sequence: name, title, and category.

You can also change the mode from the menu items. Press the SETUP button to display the menu items, then turn the selector knob to select MODE/CATEGORY or MODE/CHANNEL and press the selector knob (ENTER). Each time you press and release the selector knob (ENTER), the display changes between CHANNEL and CATEGORY. To enter the setting, press the TITLE button.

You may experience periods when XM Radio does not transmit the artist's name and song title information. If this happens, there is nothing wrong with your system.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing the XM® Radio (Models without navigation system)

TUNE − Turn the selector knob to change channel selections. Turn the knob right for higher numbered channels and left for lower numbered channels. In the category mode, you can only select channels within that category.

Channel list is shown.

You can also select a channel or category from the list by using the selector knob. Push the selector knob (ENTER) to switch the display to the list displayed with three segments, then turn the knob to select a channel or category. Press the selector knob (ENTER) to set your selection.

CATEGORY (− or +) − Press either side of the CATEGORY bar to select another category.

SCAN − The SCAN function gives you a sampling of all channels while in the channel mode. In the category mode, only the stations within that category are scanned. To activate scan, press the SCAN button. The system plays each channel in numerical order for a few seconds, then selects the next channel. When you hear a channel you want to continue listening to, press the button again.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing the XM® Radio (Models without navigation system)

Preset — You can store up to 12 preset channels using the six preset buttons. Each button stores one channel from the XM1 band and one channel from the XM2 band.

To store a channel:
1. Press the «XM» button. Either XM1 or XM2 will show in the display.

2. Use the selector knob, or the CATEGORY bar or SCAN button to tune to a desired channel.

In category mode, only channels within that category can be selected. In channel mode, all channels can be selected.

3. Pick the preset button you want for that channel. Press and hold the button until you hear a beep.

4. Repeat steps 2 and 3 to store the first six channels.

5. Press the «XM» button again. The other XM band will show. Store the next six channels using steps 2 and 3.

Once a channel is stored, simply press and release the proper preset button to tune to it.

XM Radio Display Messages

"LOADING" — XM is loading the audio or program information.

"OFF AIR" — The channel currently selected is no longer broadcasting.

"UPDATING" — The encryption code is being updated. Wait until the encryption code is fully updated. Channels 0 and 1 should still work normally.

"NO SIGNAL" — The signal is currently too weak. Move the vehicle to an area away from tall buildings, and with an unobstructed view of the southern horizon.

" - - - - " — The selected channel number does not exist, or is not part of your subscription, or this channel has no artist or title information at this time.

"NO INFO" — The selected channel has no artist or title information at this time.

"ANTENNA" — There is a problem with the XM antenna. Please consult your dealer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

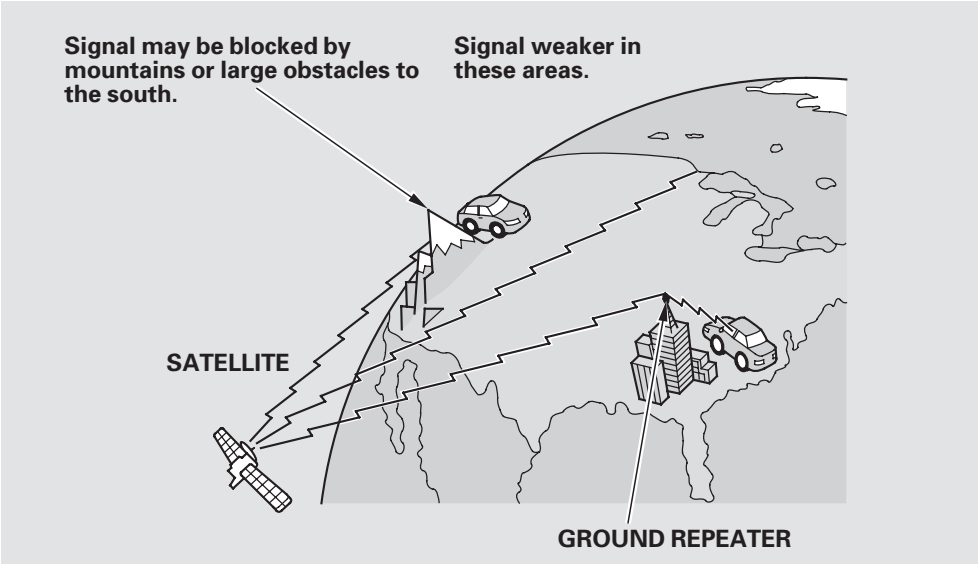
Playing the XM® Radio (Models without navigation system)

The XM satellites are in orbit over the equator; therefore, objects south of the vehicle may cause satellite reception interruptions. To help compensate for this, ground-based repeaters are placed in major metropolitan areas.

Satellite signals are more likely to be blocked by tall buildings and mountains the farther north you travel from the equator. Carrying large items on a roof rack can also block the signal.

Depending on where you drive, you may experience reception problems. Interference can be caused by any of these conditions:

- Driving on the north side of an east/west mountain road.
- Driving on the north side of a large commercial truck on an east/west road.
- Driving in tunnels.


Signal may be blocked by mountains or large obstacles to the south.
Signal weaker in these areas.
SATELLITE
GROUND REPEATER

When DPLII is turned on (see page 233), sound coming from the rear speakers may be distorted due to the compression of the music being broadcast. Turn DPLII off if this happens.

- Driving on a road beside a vertical wall, steep cliff, or hill to the south of you.
- Driving on the lower level of a multi-tiered road.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing the XM® Radio (Models without navigation system)

- Driving on a single lane road alongside dense trees taller than 50 ft. (15 m) to the south of you.

There may be other geographic situations that could affect XM Radio reception.

As required by the FCC:
Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Receiving XM Radio Service
If your XM Radio service has expired or you purchased your vehicle from a previous owner, you can listen to a sampling of the broadcasts available on XM Radio. With the ignition switch in the ACCESSORY (I) or the ON (II) position, press the «XM» button. A variety of music types and styles will play.

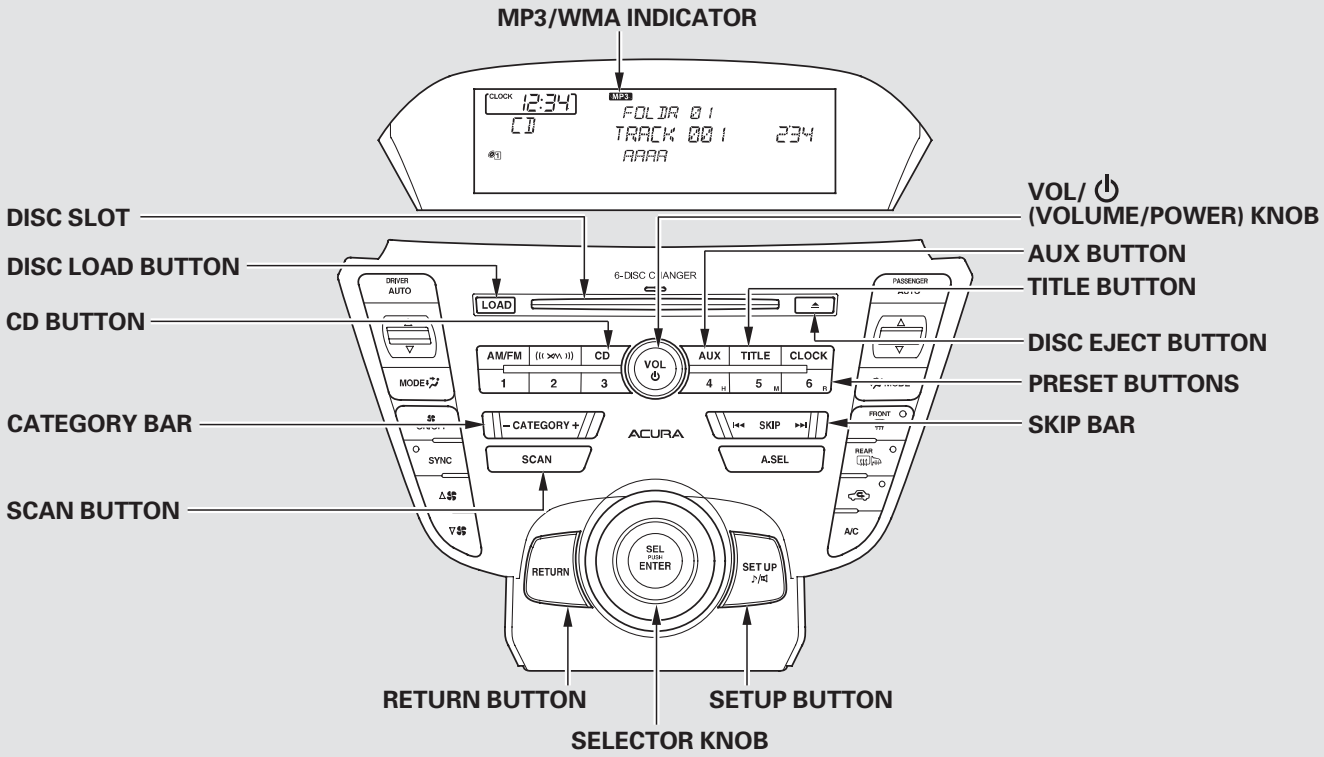
If you decide to purchase XM radio service, contact XM Radio at *www.xmradio.com*, or at 1-800-852-9696. In Canada, contact XM CANADA® at *www.xmradio.ca*, or at 1-877-209-0079. You will need to give them your radio I.D. number and your credit card number. To get your radio I.D. number, press the «XM» button, then turn the selector knob until "CH 000" appears in the display. Your I.D. will appear in the display.

After you've registered with XM Radio, keep your audio system in the XM Radio mode while you wait for activation. This should take about 30 minutes.

While waiting for activation, make sure your vehicle remains in an open area with good reception. Once your audio system is activated, "CATEGORY" or "CHANNEL" will appear in the display, and you'll be able to listen to XM Radio broadcasts. XM Radio will continue to send an activation signal to your vehicle for at least 12 hours from the activation request. If the service has not been activated after 36 hours, contact XM® Radio. In Canada, contact XM CANADA®.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing Discs (Models without navigation system)



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing Discs (Models without navigation system)

To Play a Disc
To load or play discs, the ignition switch must be in the ACCESSORY (I) or ON (II) position.

You operate the disc changer with the same controls used for the radio. To select the disc changer, press the CD button. You will see “CD” in the display. The disc and track numbers, and the elapsed time are shown in the display. You can also select the displayed information with the TITLE button (see page 244). The system will continuously play a disc until you change modes.

NOTICE

Do not use discs with adhesive labels. The label can curl up and cause the disc to jam in the unit.

This audio system can also play CD-Rs and CD-RWs compressed in MP3 or WMA format. When playing a disc in MP3, you will see “MP3” in the display. In WMA format, “WMA” will appear in the display. The disc, folder and track numbers are displayed. You can select up to 255 folders or tracks.

A disc compressed in AAC format cannot be played in this audio system.

Video CDs and DVDs do not work in this unit.

Depending on the software the files were made with, it may not be possible to play some files, or display some text data.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing Discs (Models without navigation system)

NOTE:
If a file on a WMA disc is protected by digital rights management (DRM), the audio unit displays UNSUPPORTED, and then skips to the next file.

Loading Discs
Your vehicle's in-dash disc changer holds up to six discs.

1. To load more than one disc, press the LOAD button until you hear a beep and see "LOAD" in the display. To load only one disc, press and release the LOAD button.

2. The disc number for an empty position begins blinking.

3. Insert the disc into the disc slot when the green disc load indicator comes on. Insert it only about halfway; the drive will pull it in the rest of the way. You will see "DISC READ" in the display while the disc load indicator turns red and blinks as the disc is loaded. You cannot load and play 3-inch (8-cm) discs in this unit.

4. When the disc load indicator turns green and "LOAD" appears in the display again, insert the next disc in the slot. Do not try to insert a disc until "LOAD" appears. You could damage the audio unit.

5. Repeat this until all six positions are loaded. If you are not loading all six positions, the system begins playing the last disc loaded.

You can also load a disc into an empty position while a disc is playing by pressing the appropriate preset button. The system stops playing the current disc and starts the loading sequence. It then plays the disc just loaded.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing Discs (Models without navigation system)

Text Data Display Function
Each time you press the TITLE button, the display shows you the text, if the disc was recorded with text data.

If you select name off, the text display is turned off.

You can see the album, artist, and track name in the display. If a disc is recorded in MP3 or WMA, you can see the folder and file name, and the artist, album, and track tag.

With the folder name, you will see the FOLDER indicator in the display. The TRACK indicator is shown with the file or track name.

When you press and release the TITLE button while a disc without text data is playing, you will see “NO INFO” on the display.

The display shows up to 16 characters of selected text data (the folder name, file name, etc.).

If the text data has more than 16 characters, you will see the first 16 characters and the ▶ indicator in the display. Press and hold the TITLE button until the next 16 characters are shown. You can see up to 32 characters of the text data.

If you press and hold the TITLE button again, the display shows the first 16 characters again.

If any letter is not available, it is replaced with “ . ” (dot) in the display. When the disc has no text data, you will see “NO INFO” on the display.

You will also see some text data under these conditions:

- When a new folder, file, or track is selected.
- When you change the audio mode to play a disc with text data or in MP3 or WMA.
- When you insert a disc, and the system begins to play.

When playing a CD-DA with text data, the album and track name are shown in the display. With a disc in MP3 or WMA, the display shows the folder and file name.

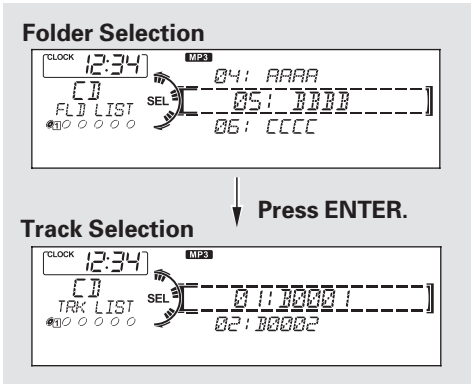
When you turn on the audio system next time, the system keeps your selection with the TITLE button.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To Change or Select Tracks/Files
Use the SKIP bar while a disc is playing to select passages and change tracks (files in MP3 or WMA mode).

In MP3 or WMA mode, use the CATEGORY bar to select folders on the disc and use either side of the SKIP bar to change files.

To select a different disc, use the appropriate preset buttons (1 through 6). If you select an empty position, the system will go into the loading sequence (see page 243).



In MP3 or WMA mode, you can also select a folder or track/file from the list by using the selector knob. Push the selector knob (ENTER) to switch the display to the list displayed with three segments, then turn the knob to select a folder. Press the selector knob (ENTER) to change the display to the track/file list, then turn the same knob to select a track/file. Press the selector knob (ENTER) to set your selection.

SKIP – Each time you press and release the ►►| side of the SKIP bar, the player skips forward to the beginning of the next track (file in MP3 or WMA mode). Press and release the |◄◄ side of the bar to skip backward to the beginning of the current track. Press it again to skip to the beginning of the previous track.

To move rapidly within a track or file, press and hold either side (|◄◄ or ►►|) of the SKIP bar.

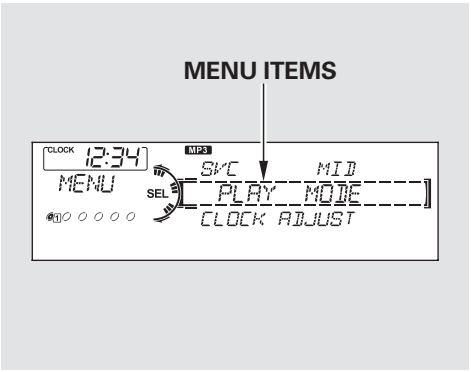
CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing Discs (Models without navigation system)

In MP3 or WMA mode
FOLDER SELECTION − To select a different folder, press either side (+ or −) of the CATEGORY bar to move to the beginning of the next folder. Press the + side to skip to the next folder, and press the − side to skip to the beginning of the previous folder.

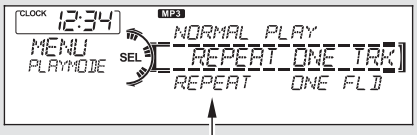
To Select Repeat, Random or Scan Mode:



You can select any type of repeat, random and scan modes by using the SETUP button and the selector knob. Push the SETUP button to display the menu items, then turn the selector knob to select "PLAY MODE." Press the selector knob (ENTER) to set the selection.

Turn the selector knob to select an appropriate repeat, random or scan mode, then press the selector knob (ENTER) to set your selection.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



PLAY MODE ITEMS

To cancel the selected repeat, random, or scan mode, press the SETUP button to show "PLAY MODE," then press the selector knob (ENTER). When you see "NORMAL PLAY," press ENTER again.

REPEAT ONE TRK – To continuously replay a track (file in MP3 or WMA mode), select REPEAT ONE TRK from the menu items. You will see REPEAT in the display. Select normal play to turn it off.

Pressing either side of the SKIP bar also turns off the repeat feature.

In MP3 or WMA mode

REPEAT ONE FLD – This feature, when activated, replays all the files on the selected folder in the order they are compressed in MP3 or WMA. To activate folder repeat mode, select REPEAT ONE FLD from the menu items. You will see F-REPEAT in the display. The system continuously replays the current folder. Select normal play to turn it off. Selecting a different folder with the CATEGORY bar also turns off the repeat feature.

REPEAT DISC – This feature continuously replays the current disc. To activate disc repeat, select REPEAT DISC from the menu items. You will see D-REPEAT in the display. Select normal play to turn it off.

In MP3 or WMA mode

RANDOM IN FLD – This feature, when activated, plays the files within the current folder in random order, rather than in the order they are compressed in MP3 or WMA. To activate folder random play, select RANDOM IN FLD from the menu items. You will see F-RANDOM in the display. The system will then select and play files randomly. This continues until you deactivate folder random play by selecting normal play, or you select a different folder with the CATEGORY bar.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing Discs (Models without navigation system)

RANDOM IN DISC — This feature plays the tracks within a disc (the files in MP3 or WMA mode) in random order. To activate random play, select RANDOM IN DISC from the menu items. You will see RANDOM in the display. Select normal play to return to normal play.

SCAN TRK — The SCAN function samples all the tracks on the disc in the order they are recorded on the disc (all files in the selected folder in MP3 or WMA mode). To activate the scan feature, press and release the SCAN button. You will see SCAN in the display. You will get a 10 second sampling of each track/file in the disc/folder. Press and hold the SCAN button to get out of scan mode and play the last track sampled.

You can also select the scan feature from the menu items with the selector knob (see page 246).

In MP3 or WMA mode

SCAN FLD — This function samples the first file in each folder on the disc in the order they are stored. To activate the folder scan feature, press and release the SCAN button repeatedly. You will see F-SCAN in the display. You will get a 10 second sampling of the first file in each folder. Press and hold the SCAN button to get out of the folder scan mode and play the last file sampled.

You can also select the folder scan feature from the menu items with the selector knob (see page 246).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Pressing either side of the SKIP bar, or selecting a different disc (using the preset buttons) or folder (using the CATEGORY bar) turns off the SCAN or F-SCAN feature.

SCAN DISC – This feature, when activated, samples the first track on each disc in order (the first file in the main folder on each disc in MP3 or WMA mode). To activate the disc scan feature, press and release the SCAN button repeatedly until D-SCAN shows in the display. The system will then play the first track/file in the first main folder on the first disc for about 10 seconds. If you do nothing, the system will then play the following first track/file for 10 seconds each. When it plays a track/file that you want to continue listening to, press and hold the SCAN button again.

When the first track on the last disc, or the first file in the last main folder on the last disc begins to play, the disc scan mode will be canceled. Pressing either side of the SKIP bar or selecting a different folder with the CATEGORY bar also turns off the scan feature.

Each time you press and release the SCAN button, the mode changes from scan, disc scan, then to normal play.

In MP3 or WMA mode
Each time you press and release the SCAN button, the mode changes from file scan, folder scan, disc scan, then to normal play.

You can also select the disc scan feature from the menu items with the selector knob (see page 246).

To Stop Playing a Disc
Press the eject button (⏏) to remove the disc. If you eject the disc, but do not remove it from the slot, the system will automatically reload the disc after 10 seconds and begin playing.

To eject all discs, press and hold the eject button until the first disc begins to eject.

You can also eject the disc when the ignition switch is off.

To play the radio when a disc is playing, press the AM/FM or «» button. Press the AUX button to switch to an appropriate audio unit (if it is connected to the auxiliary input jack or the USB adapter cable). Press the CD button again to switch back to the disc changer.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing Discs (Models without navigation system)

You can also press the MODE button on the steering wheel to change modes.

If you turn the system off while a disc is playing, either with the VOL/ ⏻ knob or by turning off the ignition switch, the disc will stay in the drive. When you turn the system back on, the disc will begin playing where it left off.

Removing Discs from the In-dash Disc Changer

To remove the disc currently in play, press the eject button. When a disc is removed from a slot, the system automatically begins the load sequence so you can load another disc in that position. If you do not remove the disc from the changer within 10 seconds, the disc will reload into the slot. Then the system returns to the previous mode (AM, FM, or XM Radio).

To remove a different disc from the changer, first select it with the appropriate preset button. When that disc begins playing, press the eject button. Continue pressing the eject button to remove all the discs from the changer.

You can also eject discs when the ignition switch is off. The disc that was last selected is ejected first.

Protecting Discs

For information on how to handle and protect compact discs, see page 364 .

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Disc Changer Error Messages (Models without navigation system)

The chart on the right explains the error messages you may see in the display while playing a disc.

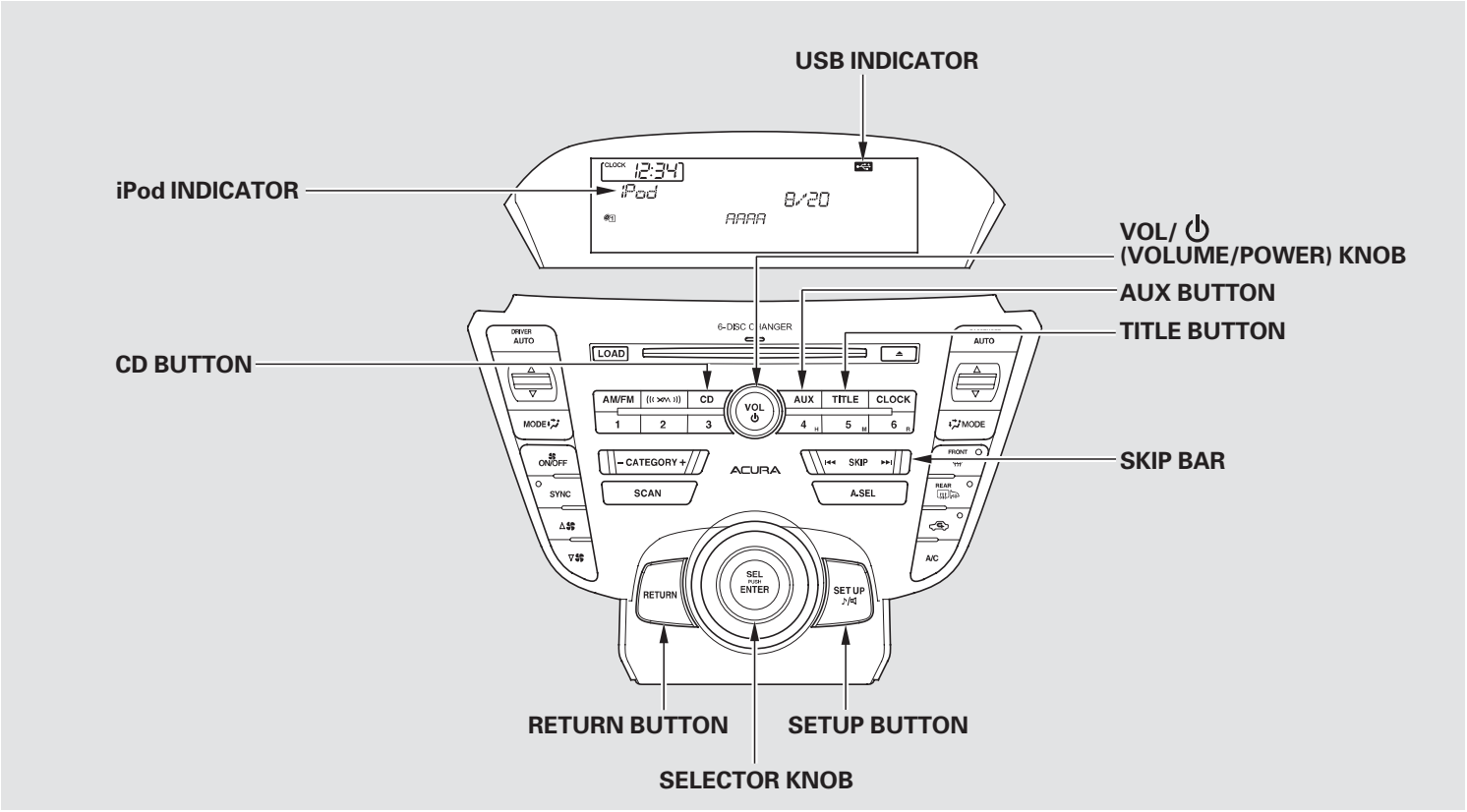
If you see an error message in the display while playing a disc, press the eject button. After ejecting the disc, check it for damage or deformation. If there is no damage, insert the disc again.
For additional information on damaged discs, see page 365.

The audio system will try to play the disc. If there is still a problem, the error message will reappear. Press the eject button, and pull out the disc. Insert a different disc. If the new disc plays, there is a problem with the first disc. If the error message cycle repeats and you cannot clear it, take your vehicle to a dealer.

Error Message	Cause	Solution
HEAT ERROR	High Temperature	Will disappear when the temperature returns to normal.
UNSUPPORTED	Track/File format not supported	Current track will be skipped. The next supported track or file plays automatically.
BAD DISC PLEASE CHECK OWNERS MANUAL PUSH EJECT	Mechanical Error	Press the EJECT button and pull out the disc(s). Check the disc for serious damage, signs of deformation, excessive scratches, and/or dirt (see page 365). Insert the disc again. If the code does not disappear, or the disc(s) cannot be removed, consult your dealer. Do not try to force the disc out of the player.
MECH ERROR		
CHECK DISC LOAD		
BAD DISC PLEASE CHECK OWNERS MANUAL	Servo Error	
CHECK DISC EJECT	Disc Error	Check the disc for serious damage, signs of deformation, excessive scratches, and/or dirt (see page 365).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing an iPod® (Models without navigation system)



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing an iPod® (Models without navigation system)

To Play an iPod®
This audio system can select and play the audio files on the iPod® with the same controls used for the disc player. To play an iPod, connect it to the USB adapter cable in the console compartment by using your dock connector, then press the AUX button. The ignition switch must be in the ACCESSORY (I) or ON (II) position. The iPod will also be charged with the ignition switch in these positions.

The audio system reads and plays playable sound files on the iPod. The system cannot operate an iPod as a mass storage device. The system will only play songs stored on the iPod with iTunes.

iPod and iTunes are registered trademarks owned by Apple Inc.

iPod models confirmed to be compatible with your audio system using the USB adapter cable are:

Model
iPod classic (80/160 G)
iPod classic (120 G)
iPod with video (iPod 5th generation)
iPod nano
iPod nano 2nd generation
iPod nano 3rd generation
iPod nano 4th generation
iPod nano 5th generation
iPod touch
iPod touch 2nd generation

This system may not work with all software versions of these devices.

CONTINUED

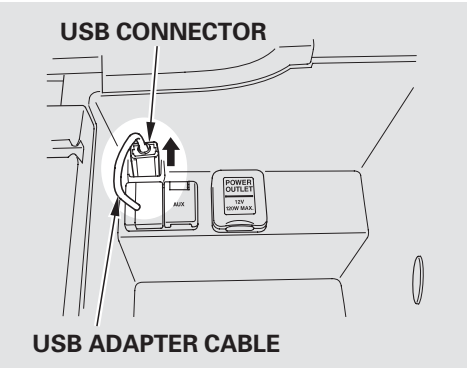
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing an iPod® (Models without navigation system)

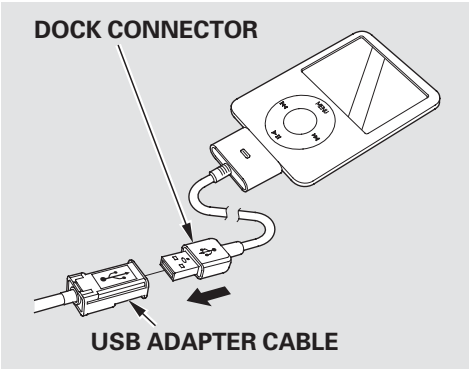
NOTE:

- Do not connect your iPod using a hub.
- Do not keep the iPod in the vehicle. Direct sunlight and high heat will damage it.
- Do not use an extension cable between the USB adapter cable equipped with your vehicle and your dock connector.
- We recommend backing up your data before playing it.
- Some devices cannot be powered or charged via the USB adapter. If this is the case, use the accessory adapter to supply power to your device.

Connecting an iPod



1. Pull out the USB connector from the holder.



2. Connect your dock connector to the iPod correctly and securely.
3. Install the dock connector to the USB adapter cable securely.

If the iPod indicator does not appear in the audio display, check the connections, and try to reconnect the iPod a few times.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing an iPod® (Models without navigation system)

If the audio system still does not recognize the iPod, the iPod may need to be reset. Follow the instructions that came with your iPod, or you can find reset instructions online at *www.apple.com/itunes/*

Text Data Display Function

Each time you press the TITLE button the display mode switches between the album name, the song name, the artist name, or name off (which turns off the text display).

The display shows up to 16 characters (including spaces) of the selected data. If the text data has more than 16 characters, you will see the first 16 characters and the ▶ indicator in the display. Press and hold the TITLE button until the next 16 characters are shown.

To Change or Select Files

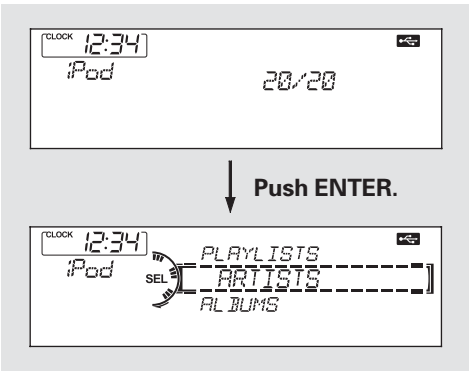
Use the SKIP bar while an iPod is playing to select passages and change files.

SKIP – Each time you press and release the ►►| side of the SKIP bar, the system skips forward to the beginning of the next file. Press and release the |◄◄ side of the bar to skip backward to the beginning of the current file. Press it again to skip to the beginning of the previous file.

To move rapidly within a file, press and hold either side (►►| or |◄◄) of the SKIP bar.

Turning the selector knob to the right or the left also changes the file.

To Select a File from iPod Menu

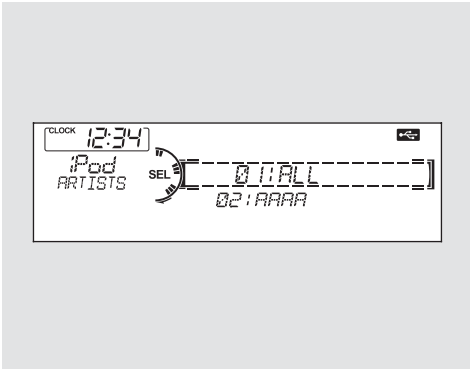


You can also select a file from any list on the iPod menu: playlists, artists, albums and songs, by using the selector knob. Push the selector knob (ENTER) to switch the display to an iPod menu, then turn the selector knob to select a desired list. Press ENTER to set your selection.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing an iPod® (Models without navigation system)

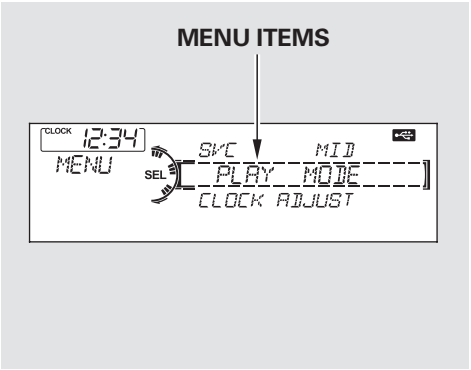


The display shows items on the selected list. Turn the selector knob to select an item, then press ENTER to set your selection.

If you select “ALL,” all available files on the selected list are played.

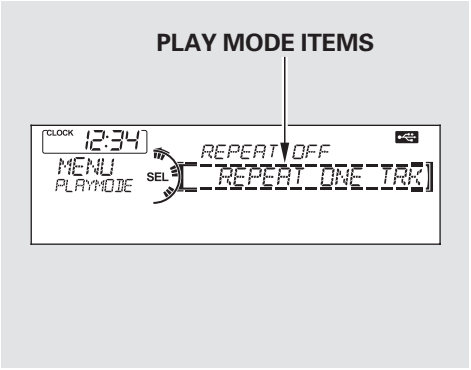
Pressing the RETURN button goes back to the previous display and pressing the SETUP button cancels this setting mode.

To Select Repeat or Shuffle Mode:



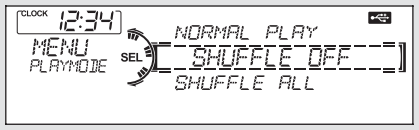
You can select any type of repeat and shuffle mode by using the SETUP button and the selector knob. Press the SETUP button to display the menu items, then turn the selector knob to select “PLAY MODE.” Press ENTER to set the selection.

Turn the selector knob to select a play mode: normal play, shuffle off, shuffle all, shuffle album, repeat off, or repeat one track, then press ENTER to set your selection.



To cancel the selected mode, press the SETUP button and turn the selector knob to show “PLAY MODE,” then press ENTER. When you see “NORMAL PLAY,” press ENTER again.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



SHUFFLE OFF — This feature turns off either of the shuffle modes (SHUFFLE ALL and SHUFFLE ALBUM).

SHUFFLE ALL — This feature plays all available files in a selected list (playlists, artists, albums or songs) in random order.
You will see SHUFFLE in the display. Select the normal play mode or SHUFFLE OFF to turn off this feature.

SHUFFLE ALBUM — This feature plays all available albums in a selected list (playlists, artists, albums or songs) in random order. The files in each album are played in the recorded order. You will see ALB SHUF in the display.

Select the normal play mode or SHUFFLE OFF to turn off this feature.

REPEAT OFF — This feature turns off the repeat mode.

REPEAT ONE TRK — This feature continuously plays a file. You will see REPEAT in the display. Select normal play or REPEAT OFF to turn it off.

Pressing either side of the SKIP bar or turning the selector knob changes the file while keeping the repeat feature.

Pressing either side of the SKIP bar or turning the selector knob changes a file while keeping the shuffle function.

NOTE:
Available operating functions vary on models or versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle's audio system.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing an iPod® (Models without navigation system)

To Stop Playing Your iPod

To play the radio, press the AM/FM, or «» button. Press the CD button to switch to the disc mode (if a disc is loaded). Press the AUX button to switch the audio mode between the *Bluetooth*® audio and iPod.

You can also press the MODE button on the steering wheel to change modes.

Disconnecting an iPod

You can disconnect the iPod at any time when you see the "OK to disconnect" message* in the iPod display. Always make sure you see "OK to disconnect" message in the iPod display before you disconnect it. Make sure to follow the iPod's instructions on how to disconnect the dock connector from the USB adapter cable.

* : The displayed message may vary on models or versions. On some models, there is no message to disconnect.

If you reconnect the same iPod, the system may begin playing where it left off, depending on what mode the iPod is in when it is reconnected.

iPod® Error Messages

If you see an error message in the display, see page 259.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

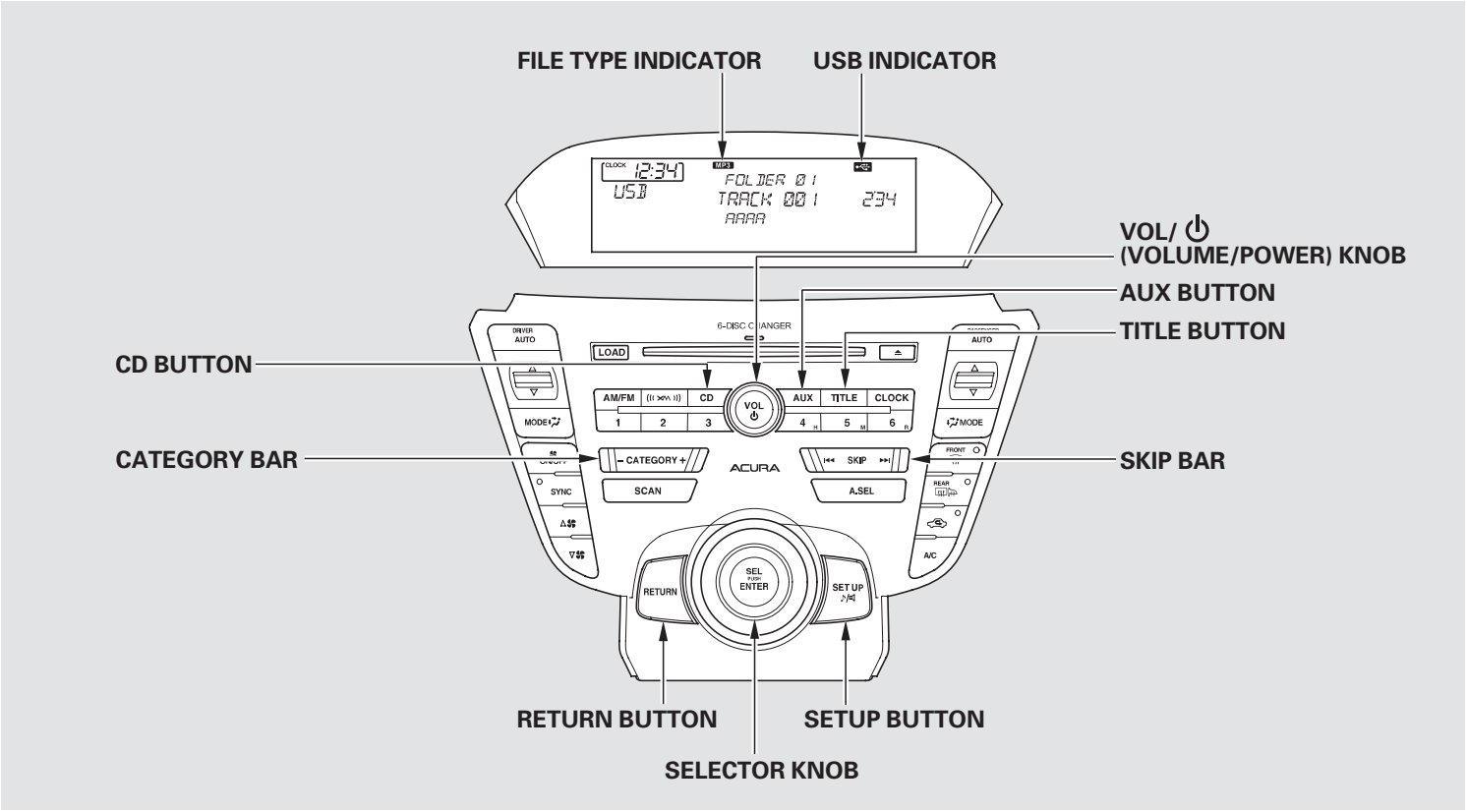
iPod® Error Messages (EX, EX-L and V6 models without navigation system)

If you see an error message on the audio display while playing an iPod, find the solution in the chart to the right. If you cannot clear the error message, take your vehicle to your dealer.

Error Message	Cause	Solution
USB ERROR	USB ROM Error	There is a problem with the USB adapter unit.
BAD USB DEVICE PLEASE CHECK OWNERS MANUAL	Appears when an incompatible device is connected.	Disconnect the device. Then, turn the audio system off, and turn it on again. Do not reconnect the device that caused the error.
iPod NO SONG	No files in iPod	Appears when the iPod is empty. Store some files in the iPod.
UNSUPPORTED VER.	Use of unsupported iPod	Appears when an unsupported iPod is connected. See page 253 for specification information on iPods. If it appears when a supported iPod is connected, update the iPod software to the newer version.
CONNECT RETRY	Recognition failure of iPod	Appears when the system does not acknowledge the iPod. Reconnect the iPod.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing a USB Flash Memory Device (Models without navigation system)



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing a USB Flash Memory Device (Models without navigation system)

To Play a USB Flash Memory Device

This audio system can select and play the audio files on a USB flash memory device with the same controls used for the disc player. To play a USB flash memory device, connect it to the USB adapter cable in the console compartment, then press the AUX button. The ignition switch must be in the ACCESSORY (I) or ON (II) position.

The audio system reads and plays the audio files on the USB flash memory device in MP3, WMA or AAC* formats. Depending on the format, the display shows MP3, WMA or AAC when a USB flash memory device is playing. The USB flash memory device limit is up to 700 folders or up to 65535 files.

* : Only AAC format files recorded with iTunes are playable on this audio unit.

The recommended USB flash memory devices are 256 MB or higher, and formatted with the FAT file system. Some digital audio players may be compatible as well.

Some USB flash memory devices (such as devices with security lock-out features, etc.) will not work in this audio unit.

NOTE:

- Do not use a device such as a card reader or hard drive as the device or your files may be damaged.
- Do not connect your USB flash memory device using a hub.
- Do not use an extension cable to the USB adapter cable equipped with your vehicle.
- Do not keep a USB flash memory device in the vehicle. Direct sunlight and high heat will damage it.
- We recommend backing up your data before playing a USB flash memory device.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing a USB Flash Memory Device (Models without navigation system)

- Depending on the type and number of files, it may take some time before they begin to play.
- Depending on the software the files were made with, it may not be possible to play some files, or display some text data.
- Depending on the type of encoding and writing software used, there may be cases where character information does not display properly.
- Some devices cannot be powered or charged via the USB adapter. If this is the case, use the accessory adapter to supply power to your device.
- The order of files in USB playback may be different from the order of files displayed in PC or other devices etc. Files are played in the order stored in USB flash memory device.

Some versions of MP3, WMA, or AAC format may not be supported. If an unsupported file is found, the audio unit displays UNSUPPORTED, then skips to the next file.

In WMA or AAC format, DRM (digital rights management) files cannot be played. If the system finds a DRM file, the audio unit displays UNPLAYABLE FILE, and then skips to the next file.

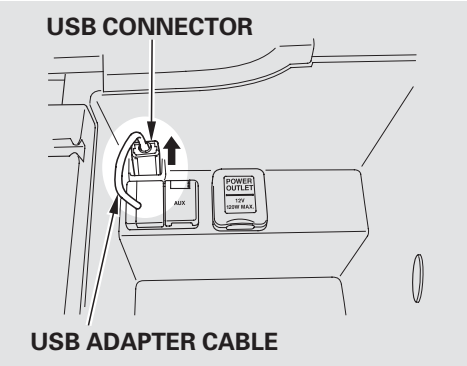
NOTICE

Combining a low sampling frequency with a low bitrate may result in extremely degraded sound quality.

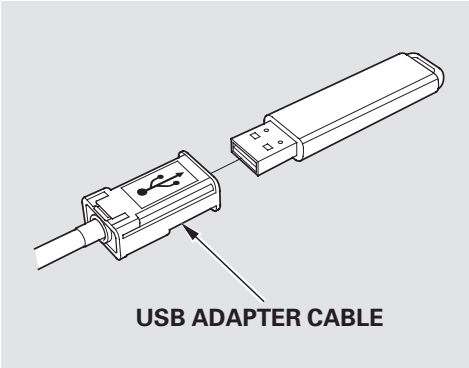
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing a USB Flash Memory Device (Models without navigation system)

Connecting a USB Flash Memory Device



1. Pull out the USB connector from the holder.



2. Connect the USB flash memory device to the USB adapter cable correctly and securely.

When the USB flash memory device is connected, the USB indicator is shown in the display.

Text Data Display Function

Each time you press the TITLE button, the display mode shows you in sequence, the folder name, the file name, the artist name, the album name, the song name, or name off (which turns off the text display).

The display shows up to 16 characters (including spaces) of the selected data. If the text data has more than 16 characters, you will see the first 16 characters and the ▶ indicator in the display. Press and hold the TITLE button until the next 16 characters are shown.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing a USB Flash Memory Device (Models without navigation system)

To Change or Select Files
Use the SKIP bar while a USB flash memory device is playing to select passages and change files.

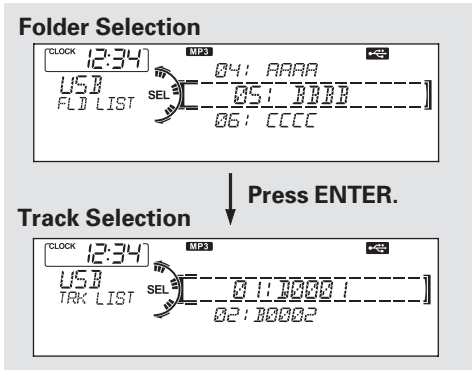
SKIP – Each time you press and release the ►►| side of the SKIP bar, the system skips forward to the beginning of the next file. Press and release the |◄◄ side of the bar to skip backward to the beginning of the current file. Press it again to skip to the beginning of the previous file.

To move rapidly within a file, press and hold either side (►►| or |◄◄) of the SKIP bar.

Turning the selector knob to the right or the left also changes the file.

Folder Selection – To select a different folder, press and release either side of the CATEGORY bar. Press the + side to skip to the next folder, and press the – side to skip to the beginning of the previous folder.

To Select a File from Folder and File Lists



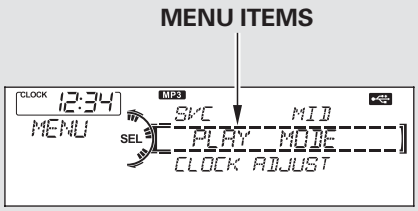
You can also select a folder or file from the list by using the selector knob. Push the selector knob (ENTER) to switch the display to the folder list, then turn the selector knob to select a folder. Press ENTER to change the display to the file list, then turn the same knob to select a file. Press ENTER to set your selection.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing a USB Flash Memory Device (Models without navigation system)

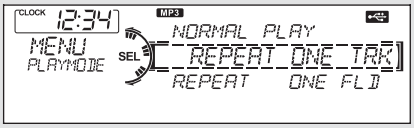
Pressing the RETURN button goes back to the previous display and pressing the SETUP button cancels this setting mode.

To Select Repeat, Random or Scan Mode:



You can select any type of repeat, random and scan modes by using the SETUP button and the selector knob. Push the SETUP button to display the menu items, then turn the selector knob to select "PLAY MODE." Press the selector knob (ENTER) to set the selection.

Turn the selector knob to select an appropriate repeat, random or scan mode, then press the selector knob (ENTER) to set your selection.

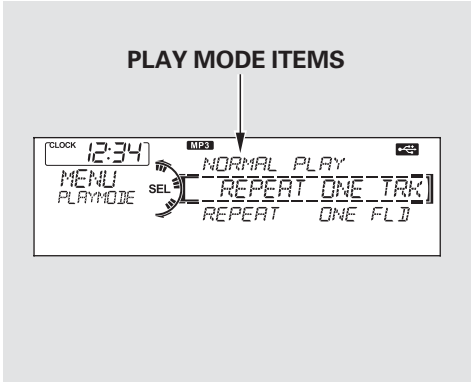


To cancel the selected mode, press the SETUP button and turn the selector knob to show "PLAY MODE," then press ENTER. When you see "NORMAL PLAY," press ENTER again.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing a USB Flash Memory Device (Models without navigation system)



REPEAT ONE TRK — This feature continuously plays a file. Select normal play to turn it off. Pressing either side of the SKIP bar also turns off this feature.

REPEAT ONE FLD — This feature replays all the files on the selected folder in the order they are stored. Select normal play to turn it off. Pressing either side of the CATEGORY bar also turns off this feature.

RANDOM IN FLD — This feature plays the files in the selected folder in random order. You will see F-RANDOM in the display. Select normal play to turn it off.

RANDOM IN DISC — This feature plays all the files in random order. You will see RANDOM in the display. Select normal play to turn it off.

SCAN TRK — This function samples all files in the selected folder in the order they are stored. To activate the scan feature, press and release the SCAN button. You will see SCAN in the display. You will get a 10 second sampling of each file in the folder. Press and hold the SCAN button to get out of the scan mode and play the last file sampled.

You can also select the scan feature from the menu items with the selector knob (see page 265).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing a USB Flash Memory Device (Models without navigation system)

SCAN FLD – This function samples the first file in each folder in the order they are stored. To activate the folder scan feature, press and release the SCAN button repeatedly. You will see F-SCAN in the display. You will get a 10 second sampling of the first file in each folder. Press and hold the SCAN button to get out of the folder scan mode and play the last file sampled.

You can also select the folder scan feature from the menu items with the selector knob (see page 265).

Select normal play to turn either scan feature off. Pressing either side of the CATEGORY or SKIP bar also turns off the feature.

To Stop Playing a USB Flash Memory Device

To change modes, press the AM/FM or «» button. Press the CD button to switch to the disc mode (if a disc is loaded). Press the AUX button to switch the audio mode between the USB or *Bluetooth*® Audio.

You can also press the MODE button on the steering wheel to change modes.

If you reconnect the same USB flash memory device, the system will begin playing where it left off.

Disconnecting a USB Flash Memory Device

You can disconnect the USB flash memory device at any time even if the USB mode is selected on the audio system. Make sure to follow the USB flash memory device's instructions when you remove it.

USB Flash Memory Device Error Messages

If you see an error message in the display, see page 268 .

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

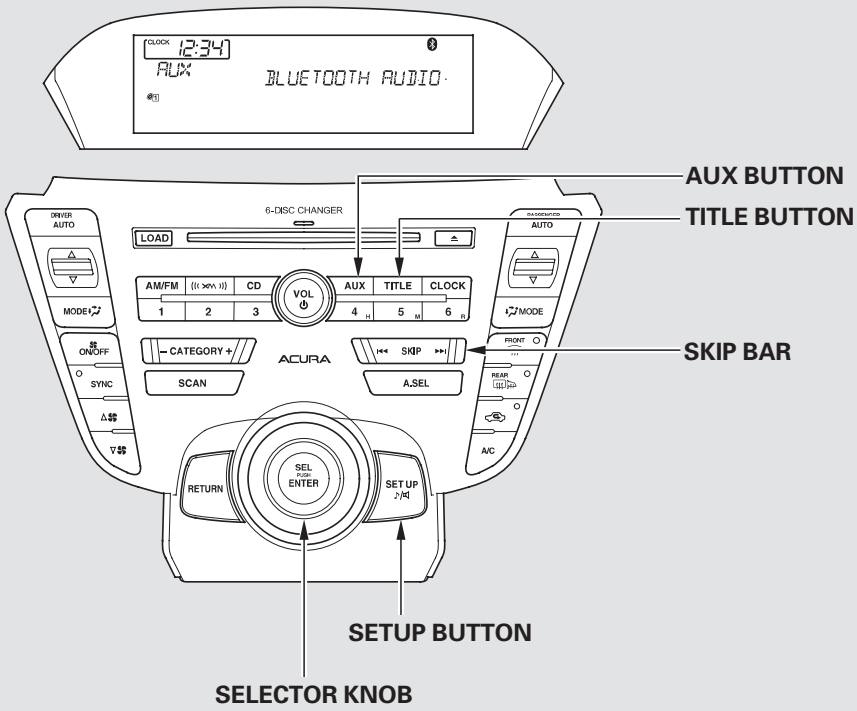
USB Flash Memory Device Error Messages (EX, EX-L and V6 models without navigation system)

If you see an error message on the audio display while playing a USB flash memory device, find the solution in the chart to the right. If you cannot clear the error message, take your vehicle to your dealer.

Error Message	Cause	Solution
USB ERROR	USB ROM Error	There is a problem with the USB adapter unit.
BAD USB DEVICE PLEASE CHECK OWNERS MANUAL	Appears when an incompatible device is connected.	Disconnect the device. Then, turn the audio system off, and turn it on again. Do not reconnect the device that caused the error.
UNPLAYABLE FILE	Use of unsupported files	Appears when the files in the USB flash memory device are DRM or an unsupported format. This error message appears for about 3 seconds, then plays the next song.
USB NO SONG	No files in USB flash memory device	Appears when the USB flash memory device is empty or there are no MP3, WMA, or AAC files in the USB flash memory device. Save some MP3, WMA, or AAC files in the USB flash memory device.
UNSUPPORTED	Use of unsupported USB flash memory device	Appears when an unsupported device is connected. See page 261 for the specification information for the USB flash memory device. If it appears when the supported device is connected, reconnect the device.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Bluetooth® Audio System (Models without navigation system)



CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

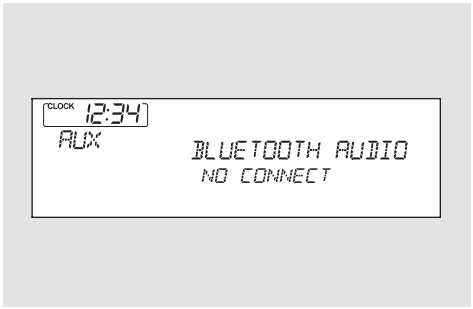
Bluetooth® Audio System (Models without navigation system)

Your vehicle is equipped with a *Bluetooth*® Audio system, which allows you to listen to streaming audio from your *Bluetooth*® Audio compatible phone. This function is only available on phones that are paired and linked to the vehicle's *Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink® (HFL) system (see page 389).

Not all Bluetooth-enabled phones with streaming audio capabilities are compatible with the system. You can find an approved phone by visiting *www.acura.com/handsfreelink*, or by calling the HandsFreeLink® consumer support at 1-888-528-7876. In Canada, visit *www.handsfreelink.ca*, or call (888) 528-7876.

NOTE: In some states, provinces, and territories, it may be illegal to perform some data device functions while driving.

To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files



Make sure that your phone is paired and linked to HFL.

Press the AUX button* with the ignition switch in the ACCESSORY (I) or ON (II) position. The audio display shows the *Bluetooth*® Audio message and mark. Until the phone is recognized, you will see "NO CONNECT" on the display. This message will go off when the phone is recognized, then the system begins to play.

After a device is linked, press the TITLE button to confirm the device name. The name of the device will appear on the audio display.

If more than one phone is paired to the HFL system, there will be a delay before the system begins to play.

To begin to play the audio files, you may need to operate your phone. If so, follow the phone maker's operating instructions.

*: If an iPod, USB flash memory device, or audio unit connected to the auxiliary input jack was selected at the last mode, you will see iPod, USB, or AUX in the audio display. Push the AUX button again to play audio files from your *Bluetooth*® Audio phone.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

In the following conditions, the display shows "NO CONNECT" message.

- The phone is not linked to HFL.
- The phone is not turned on.
- The phone is not in the vehicle.
- Another HFL compatible phone, which is not compatible for *Bluetooth*® Audio, is already connected.

To skip a file

Press the ►►| side of the SKIP bar to skip forward to the next file, and press the |◄◄ side to skip backward to the beginning of the current file. Push the |◄◄ side again to skip to the previous file.

Turning the selector knob to the right or left also changes a file.

NOTE: The skip function may not be available on some phone devices.

To pause or resume a file

The resume/pause mode can stop playing a file temporarily. Press the SETUP button to display the audio settings.

Turn the selector to select RESUME/PAUSE mode, then press ENTER to set your selection. Repeat to resume play.

NOTE: The pause function may not be available on some phone devices.

To change sound settings

Press the SETUP button to display the audio settings. Turn the selector to select a desired sound mode, then press ENTER to set your selection. Turn the selector to your liking (see page 231 for more sound setting information).

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Bluetooth® Audio System (Models without navigation system)

To switch to HFL mode
If you receive a call when the *Bluetooth*® Audio is playing, press the HFL Talk button on the steering wheel. The display switches to the HFL mode (see page 390).

After ending the call, press the HFL Back button to go back to the *Bluetooth*® Audio mode.

If you receive a call while the system is in the pause mode, the mode will be canceled and *Bluetooth*® Audio will continue to play.

To turn off the Bluetooth*® *Audio mode
Select any other audio mode by pressing a button: AM/FM, «XM» or CD (if a disc is loaded), on the audio control panel, or press the mode button on the steering wheel to select another audio mode. If an iPod or USB flash memory device is connected to the USB adapter cable, or audio unit is connected to AUX jack, pressing the AUX button also changes the mode.

Switching to another mode pauses the music playing from your phone.

As required by the FCC:
This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

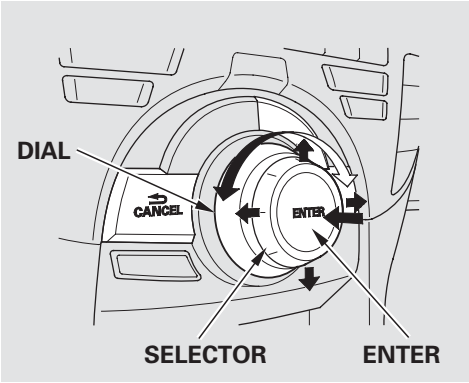
This device complies with Industry Canada Standard RSS-210.
Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Audio System (Models with navigation system)

Interface Dial

Most audio system functions can still be controlled by standard buttons, dials, and knobs, but some functions can only be accessed using the interface dial. The interface dial has two parts, a dial and a selector.



The dial turns left and right. Use it to make selections or adjustments to a list or menu on the screen.

The selector can be pushed left, right, up, down, and in. Use the selector to scroll through lists, to select menus, and to highlight menu items. When you make a selection, press ENTER to go to that selection.

Voice Control System

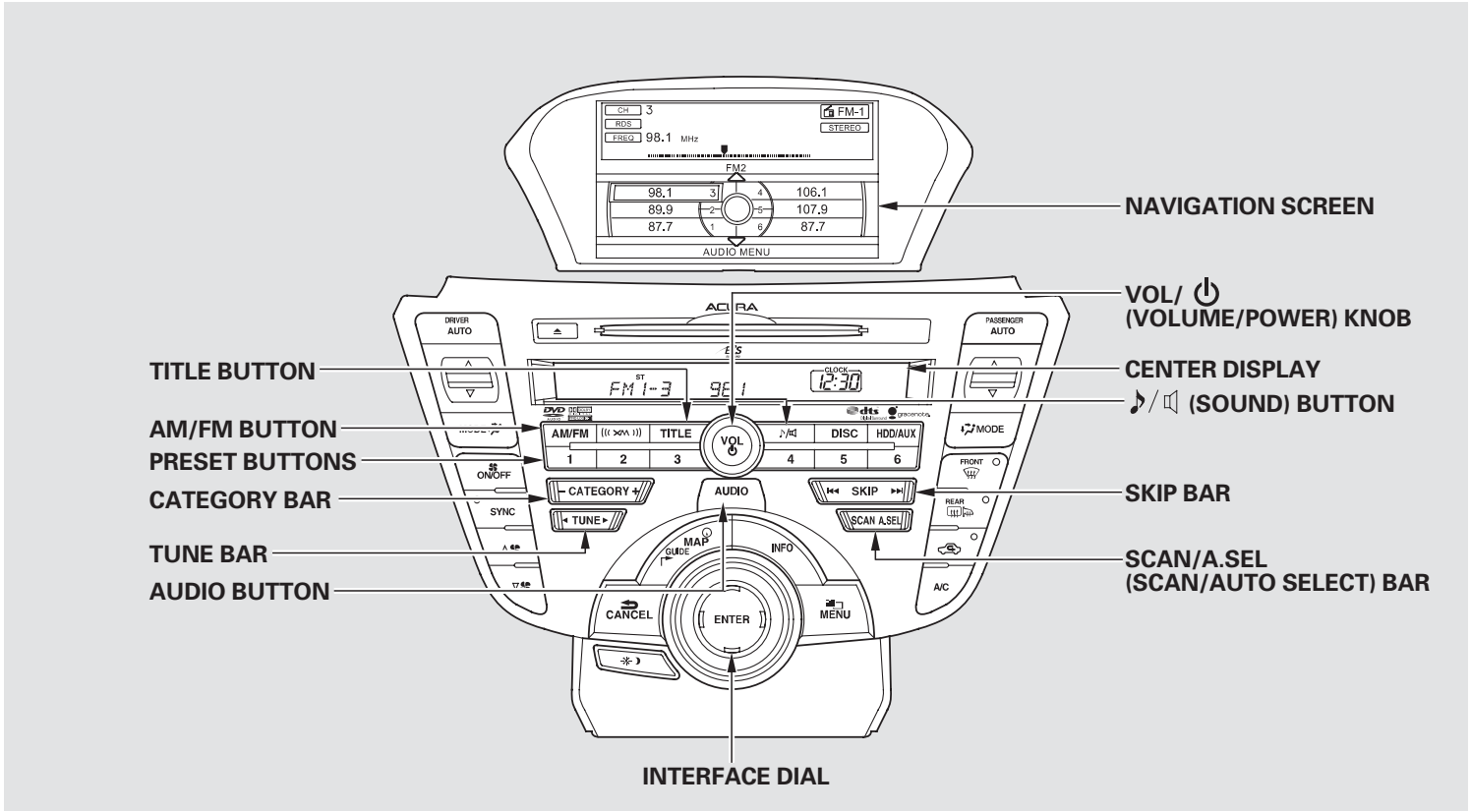
The audio system can also be operated by voice control. See the navigation system manual for complete details.

Personalization Setting

When you unlock the doors with your remote and turn the audio system on, the driver's ID (Driver 1 or Driver 2) is detected, and the radio presets and sound level settings (see page 284) are turned to the respective memorized mode automatically.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

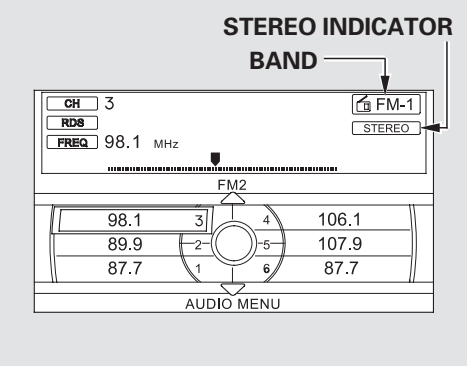
Playing the AM/FM Radio (Models with navigation system)



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing the AM/FM Radio (Models with navigation system)

To Play the AM/FM Radio



The power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON. Press the AUDIO button to view the audio control display. Turn the system on by pressing the VOL/ ⏻ knob or the AM/FM button. Adjust the volume by turning the VOL/ ⏻ knob.

Your vehicle has the engine start/stop button instead of an ignition switch. For more information on how to select the power mode, see page 178 .

The band and frequency that the radio was last tuned to are shown on the display. To change bands, press the AM/FM button. You can also change bands by pushing the interface selector up. Each time you push it up, the band will change to FM1, FM2 or AM. On the FM bands, STEREO will be shown on the navigation screen and ST on the center display, if the station is broadcasting in stereo. Stereo reproduction on AM is not available.

On the AM band, AM noise reduction turns on automatically.

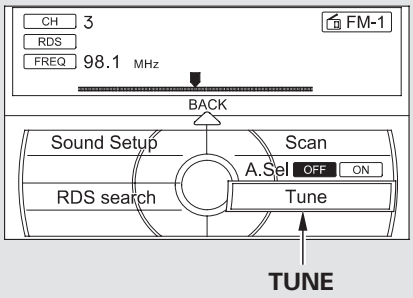
To Select a Station

You can use any of five methods to find radio stations on the selected band: tune, skip (seek), scan, the preset buttons, and auto select. On the FM band, you can also use the features provided by the radio data system (RDS). For more information on the RDS, see page 278 .

CONTINUED

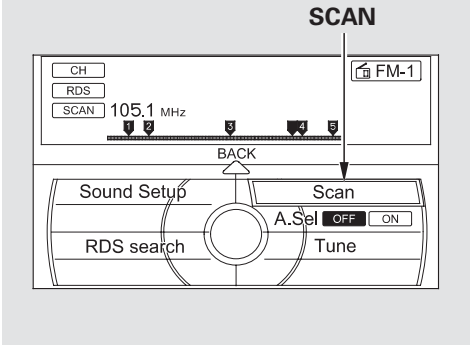
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing the AM/FM Radio (Models with navigation system)



TUNE – Use the TUNE bar to tune the radio to a desired frequency. Press the ▶ side of the bar to tune to a higher frequency, or the ◀ side to tune to a lower frequency. To tune with the interface dial, push the interface selector down, and turn the interface dial to select Tune. Then press ENTER on the interface selector, and turn the interface dial to the desired frequency. To exit the TUNE mode, press ENTER on the interface selector, then push the interface selector up to go back.

SKIP (SEEK) – The skip (seek) function searches up and down from the current frequency to find a station with a strong signal. To activate it, press either side (⏮ or ⏭) of the SKIP bar, then release it.



SCAN – The SCAN function samples all stations with strong signals on the selected band. To activate it, press the SCAN side of the SCAN A.SEL bar, then release it.

To scan with the interface dial, push the interface selector down, and turn the interface dial to select Scan, then press ENTER on the interface selector.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

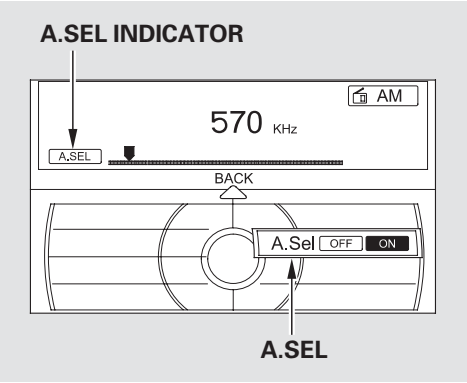
Playing the AM/FM Radio (Models with navigation system)

When the system finds a strong signal, it will stop and play that station for about 10 seconds. If you do nothing, the system will then scan for the next strong station and play it for 10 seconds. When it plays a station that you want to listen to, press the SCAN side of the bar again.

Preset — Each preset button or preset icon can store one frequency on AM and two frequencies on FM.

To store a preset memory location:

1. Select the desired band, AM or FM. FM1 and FM2 let you store six stations each.
2. Use the tune, skip (seek), scan, or RDS function to tune the radio to a desired station.
3. Press the preset button, and hold it until you hear a beep. You can also store frequencies with the interface dial. Select the preset icon you want to store the frequency on, then press ENTER on the interface selector, and hold it until you hear a beep.
4. Repeat steps 1 through 3 to store a total of six stations on AM and twelve stations on FM.



AUTO SELECT — If you are traveling and can no longer receive your preset stations, you can use the auto select feature to find stations in the local area.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing the AM/FM Radio (Models with navigation system)

Push the interface selector down to display the AUDIO MENU. Turn the interface dial to select A.SEL, then press ENTER on the interface selector. Turn the interface dial to select ON, then press ENTER on the interface selector. You will see A.SEL on the center display and the audio control display (if selected), and the system goes into auto select mode for several seconds.

You can also press the A.SEL side of the SCAN/A.SEL bar. You will see A.SEL on the center display or the screen, and the system goes into auto select mode for several seconds.

The system stores the frequencies of six AM and twelve FM stations in the preset buttons (icons).

You will see “0” displayed if auto select cannot find a strong station for every preset button (icon).

If you do not like the stations auto select has stored, you can store other frequencies on the preset buttons (icons) as previously described.

To cancel auto select, select A.Sel on the audio menu again and turn the interface dial to select A.SEL OFF, or press the A.SEL side of the bar again. This restores the presets you originally set.

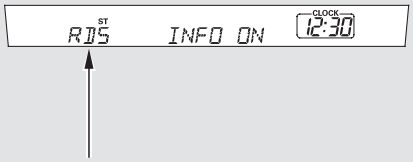
For information on AM/FM radio frequencies and reception, see page 368 .

Radio Data System (RDS)
On the FM band, you can select a favorite station and display the program service name provided by the radio data system (RDS).

RDS INFO Display
The RDS INFO display function shows the name of the station you are listening to. With the audio system on and the FM band selected, you can turn this function on or off.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing the AM/FM Radio (Models with navigation system)



RDS INFO MESSAGE

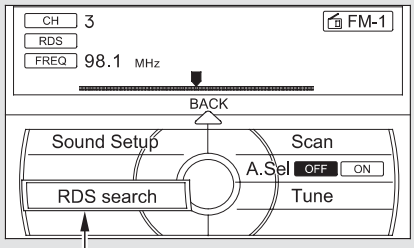
To switch the RDS INFO display function on and off, press and release the TITLE button. With the system on, you will see the “RDS INFO ON” message on the center display. If the station you are listening to is an RDS station, the displayed frequency switches to the station name.

If the station you are listening to is not an RDS station, the audio screen and the center display continue to show the frequency.

When you turn off this function by pressing the TITLE button, the center display shows “RDS INFO OFF.”

NOTE: If the station you are listening to is an RDS station, the audio screen will always display the RDS information.

Radio Data System (RDS) Category



RDS SEARCH

On the FM band selected, you can select the program type provided by the RDS. Press the AUDIO button to display the radio information on the screen. Push down the interface selector, then turn the interface dial to select RDS search. Press ENTER to set your selection. The principal RDS categories are shown as follows:

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing the AM/FM Radio (Models with navigation system)

ALL: All RDS category stations

COUNTRY: Country music

TOP 40: Top 40 hits

ROCK: Rock, classic rock and soft rock music

OLDIES: Nostalgia music and oldies

JAZZ: Jazz

SOFT: Adult hits and soft music

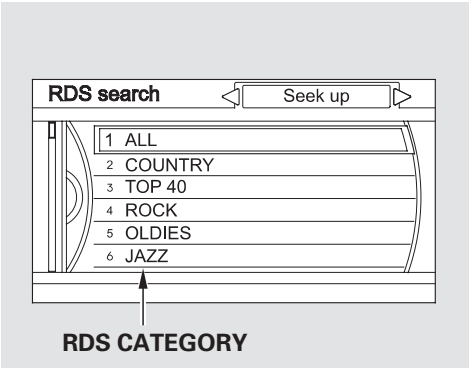
R & B: Rhythm and blues, and soft rhythm and blues

CLASSIC: Classical music

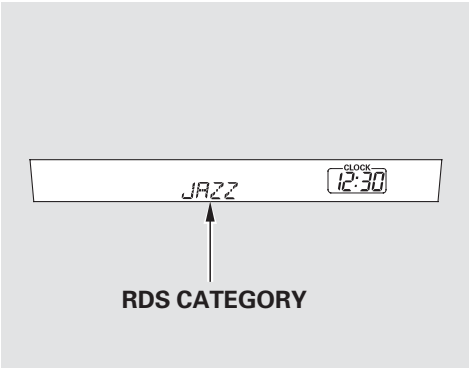
RELIGION: Programs concerned with religion

INFO: News, information, sports, talk shows, foreign language, personality, public, college, and weather

TRAFFIC: Traffic information



Turn the interface dial to select an RDS category. You can use the search or scan function to find radio stations on the selected RDS category by pressing the interface selector to the left or the right. Press ENTER to set your selection. If you do nothing while the RDS category is selected, the selected category is canceled.



You can also select an RDS category with the CATEGORY bar. Press either side (+ or −) of the CATEGORY bar to display an RDS category in the center display. Select a category by pressing either side of the bar.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

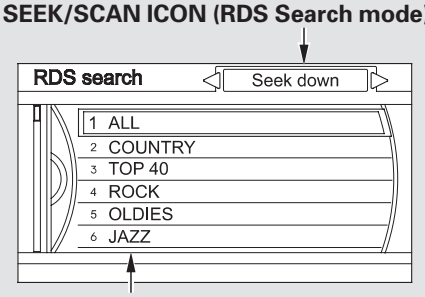
Playing the AM/FM Radio (Models with navigation system)

RDS Category Search

This function searches up and down for strong signal frequencies that carry the selected RDS category information. This can help you to find a station in your favorite category. To activate it, press and release either side (⏮ or ⏭) of the SKIP bar. You will also see the selected RDS category name blinking in the center display while searching it.

If the system does not find a station, "NOTHING" will blink for about 5 seconds, then the system goes back to the last selected station.

SEEK/SCAN ICON (RDS Search mode)



RDS CATEGORY LIST

SEEK is selected.

To activate RDS category search with the interface dial, push the AUDIO button to display the FM radio information on the screen. Push the interface selector down, and turn the interface dial to select RDS search. Press ENTER on the interface selector. The screen shows you the RDS category list.

Turn the interface dial to the desired RDS category.

While the RDS category is selected, move the interface selector to the left or right to select SEEK up, SEEK down, or SCAN in the upper right corner of the screen. Press ENTER to activate the RDS category search (SEEK up/down).

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing the AM/FM Radio (Models with navigation system)

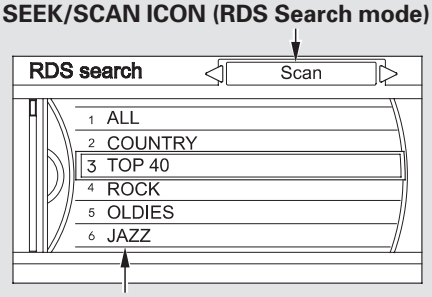
RDS Category SCAN

The scan function samples all stations with strong signals on the selected RDS category one by one. To activate it, press and release the SCAN side of the SCAN/A.SEL bar. You will see SCAN in the center display. The system will scan for a station with a strong signal in the selected RDS category. You will also see the selected RDS category name blinking in the center display while scanning it. When the system finds one, it will stop and play that station for about 10 seconds.

If you do nothing, the system will scan for the next strong station and play it for 10 seconds. When it plays a station that you want to listen to, press the SCAN side of the SCAN/A.SEL bar again.

If the system does not find a station, "NOTHING" will blink for about 5 seconds, then the system goes back to the last selected station.

SEEK/SCAN ICON (RDS Search mode)



RDS CATEGORY LIST

SCAN is selected.

To activate RDS category scan with the interface dial, push the AUDIO button to display the FM radio information on the screen. Push the interface selector down, and turn the interface dial to select RDS search on the audio menu. Press ENTER on the interface selector. The screen shows you the RDS category list.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing the AM/FM Radio (Models with navigation system)

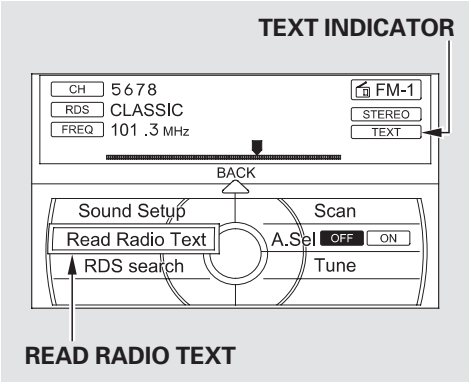
Turn the interface dial to the desired RDS category.

While the RDS category is selected, move the interface selector to the left or the right to select SCAN. Then press ENTER to activate the RDS SCAN.

Radio Text Display

This function displays the radio text information of the selected RDS station.

If the selected RDS station has the radio text information, you will see the text indicator on the screen.

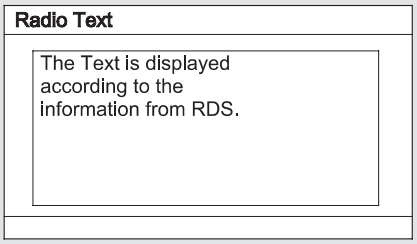


To activate radio text display, use the interface dial. Push the interface selector down, and turn the interface dial to select Read Radio Text. Press ENTER on the interface selector to enter the setting.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing the AM/FM Radio (Models with navigation system)

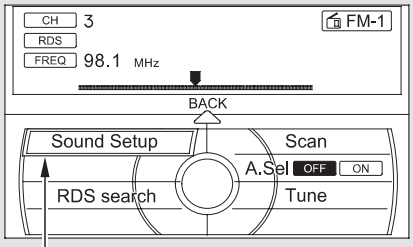


The display shows up to 64 characters on the selected RDS station.

Adjusting the Sound

BASS, TREBLE, FADER, and BALANCE are each adjustable. You can also adjust the strength of the sound coming from the center and subwoofer speakers. In addition, you can set the Dolby PL (ProLogic) II and Speed-sensitive volume compensation (SVC).

These adjustments can be made with the ♪/🔊 (Sound) button or the interface dial.



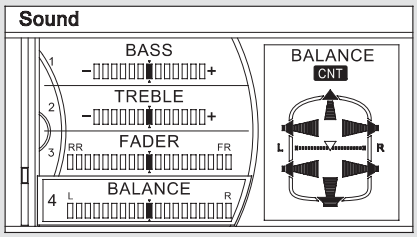
SOUND SETUP

To adjust the sound, press the AUDIO button, push the interface selector down, and turn the interface dial to Sound Setup. Then press ENTER on the interface selector.

Select the mode you want to adjust by turning the interface dial.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing the AM/FM Radio (Models with navigation system)



You can also adjust the sound by pushing the ♪/🔇 (Sound) button repeatedly. Each mode is shown in the center display as you push the button.

Turn the VOL/ ⏻ knob or interface knob to adjust the setting to your liking. You can check the level on the navigation screen or on the center display. When the level reaches the center, you will see "C" in the center display.

The system will return to the audio playing mode in the center display about 10 seconds after you stop adjusting a mode.

If you do not make an adjustment within 10 seconds, you will need to select the mode again.

BASS/TREBLE – To adjust bass and treble, select BASS or TREBLE, and press ENTER on the interface selector. The current setting is shown on the display. Turn the interface dial or VOL/ ⏻ knob to the desired level, and enter your selection by pressing ENTER on the interface selector.

FADER/BALANCE – These modes adjust the strength of the sound coming from each speaker. Fader adjusts the front-to-back strength, while balance adjusts the side-to-side strength. To adjust fader and balance, select FADER or BALANCE, then press ENTER on the interface selector. The current setting is shown on the screen. Turn the interface dial or VOL/ ⏻ knob to the desired level, and enter your selection by pressing ENTER on the interface selector. To equalize the fader or balance, turn the interface dial or VOL/ ⏻ knob until the marks on the sound grid come to the center of the adjustment bar.

If the fader adjustment is set to F9 (maximum front level), the subwoofer is turned off.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing the AM/FM Radio (Models with navigation system)

CENTER — Adjusts the strength of sound from the center speaker.

SUBWOOFER — To adjust the strength of the sound from the subwoofer speaker, select it and press ENTER on the interface selector. Turn the interface dial to the desired level, and enter your selection by pressing ENTER on the interface selector.

Speed-sensitive Volume Compensation (SVC)

The SVC mode controls the volume based on vehicle speed. The faster you go, the louder the audio volume becomes. As you slow down, the audio volume decreases.

The SVC has four modes: OFF, LOW, MID, and HIGH. The default setting is MID. To change the SVC mode, select SVC, then press ENTER on the interface selector. The current setting is shown on the screen. Turn the interface dial to the desired level, and enter your selection by pressing ENTER on the interface selector. If you feel the sound is too loud, choose low. If you feel the sound is too quiet, choose high.

Dolby PL (ProLogic) II — Dolby PL (ProLogic) II signal processing creates multi-channel surround sound from 2 channel stereo audio sources. Dolby ProLogic II can only activate when listening to DISC (CD-DA, MP3, WMA, AAC), XM Radio, AUX (USB, iPod®, AUX, *Bluetooth*® Audio), and HDD Audio. When ProLogic II is available, "PL II" is shown in the audio display.

When ProLogic II is not available in the selected audio source, "DPL2 N/A" is shown on the center display.

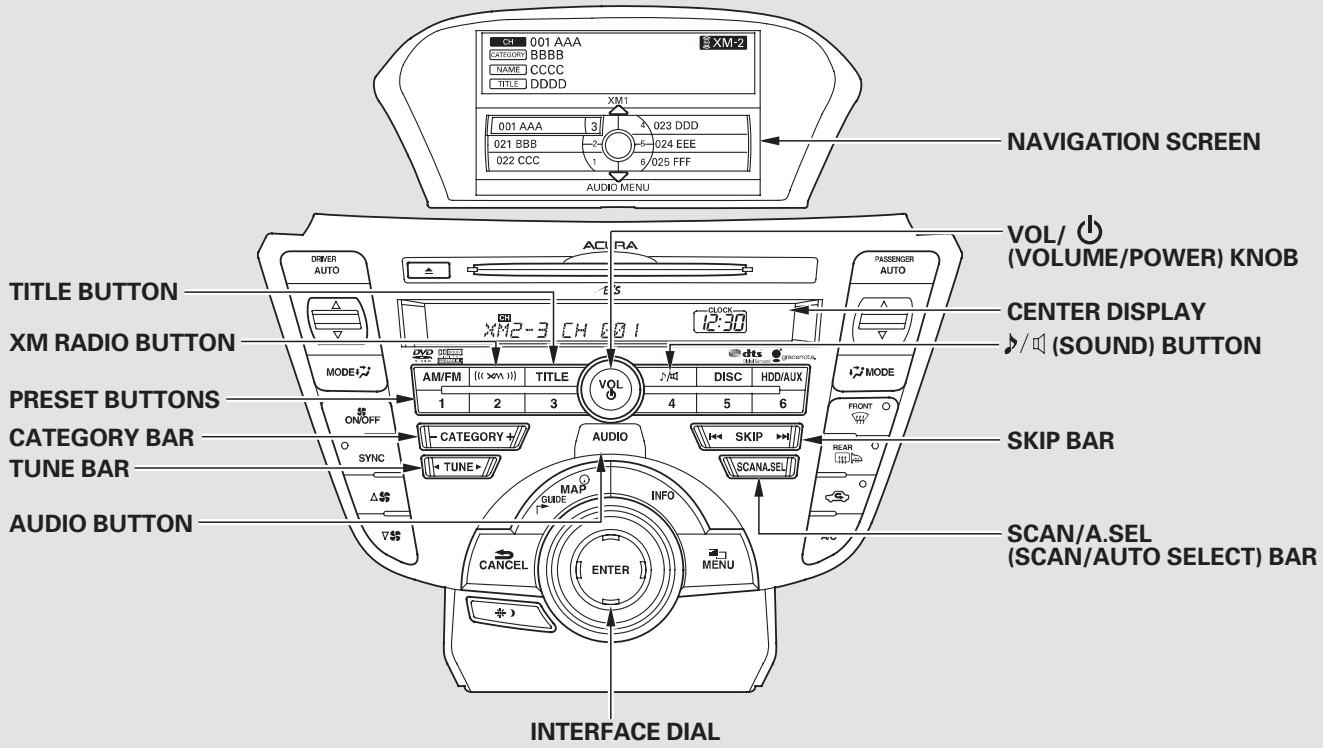
To set this feature on or off, select Dolby PL II, and press ENTER on the interface selector. Rotate the interface dial to ON or OFF, and press ENTER.

Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. Dolby, Pro Logic, MLP Lossless and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.

NOTE: In some audio playing modes (XM, AUX), when DPLII is on, the music coming from the rear speakers may sound distorted. This is due to compression of the music, and it does not indicate a problem with the setting.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing the XM® Radio (Models with navigation system)



CONTINUED

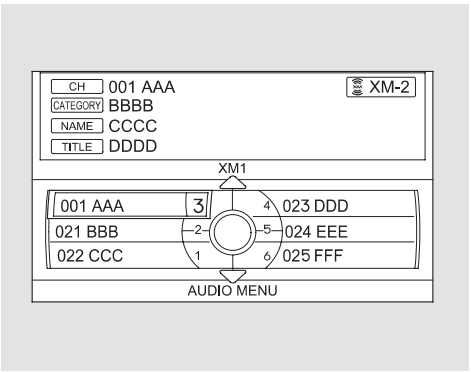
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing the XM® Radio (Models with navigation system)

Your vehicle is capable of receiving XM® Radio anywhere in the United States and Canada, except Hawaii, Alaska, and Puerto Rico. XM is a registered trademark of Sirius XM Radio®, Inc. and XM CANADA® is a registered business name of Canadian Satellite Radio Inc.

XM Radio receives signals from two satellites to produce clear, high-quality digital reception. It offers many channels in several categories. Along with a large selection of different types of music, XM Radio also allows you to view channel and category selections in the audio display.

Operating the XM Radio



To listen to XM Radio, set the power mode to ACCESSORY or ON. Push the «» button to select the XM Radio. The last channel you listened to will show in the audio screen (if selected) and the center display. Adjust the volume by turning the VOL/ ⏻ knob.

Your vehicle has the engine start/stop button instead of an ignition switch. For more information on how to select the power mode, see page 178 .

Each time you push the interface selector up, the band will change to XM1 or XM2. Push the AUDIO button to display XM information on the screen. You can operate the XM radio system with the interface dial.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing the XM® Radio (Models with navigation system)

MODE — To switch between the category mode and channel mode, push the interface selector down to display AUDIO MENU, then turn the interface dial to select Mode, and press ENTER on the interface selector.

Turn the interface dial to select CH or CAT, then press ENTER on the interface selector. Move the interface selector up to go back.

You can also switch the mode by pressing the TITLE button for 3 seconds.

In the category mode, such as Jazz, Rock, Classical, etc., you can navigate through all of the channels within that category. In the channel mode, you can select all of the available channels.

Each time you press and release the TITLE button, the center display changes in the following sequence: NAME (artist name), TITLE (music title), and CHANNEL NAME (channel name).

On the screen, you will see the selected CHANNEL (number), CATEGORY, NAME (artist name), and TITLE (music title).

You may experience periods when XM Radio does not transmit the artist's name and song title information. If this happens, there is nothing wrong with your system.

TUNE — Press either side of the TUNE bar to change channel selections. Press the ▶ side of the bar for higher numbered channels and the ◀ side for lower numbered channels. You can also change channels with the interface selector. Push down the interface selector to select AUDIO MENU, then turn the interface dial to choose Tune and press ENTER on the interface selector. Turn the interface dial to the appropriate direction. In the category mode, you can only select channels within that category.

CHANNEL LIST — Push down the interface selector to select AUDIO MENU, then turn the interface dial to select Channel List and press ENTER on the selector. Turn the interface dial to select a channel, then press ENTER to set your selection.

CATEGORY (— or +) — Press either side of the bar to select another category.

CONTINUED

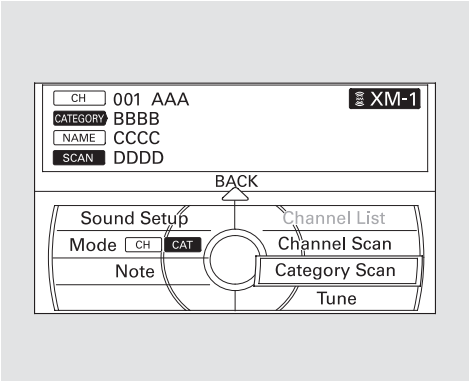
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing the XM® Radio (Models with navigation system)

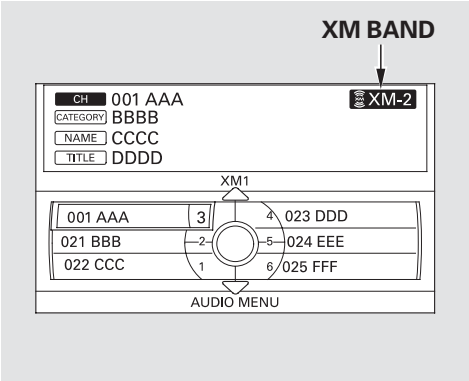
SCAN – The scan function gives you a sampling of all channels while in the channel mode. In the category mode, only the channels within that category are scanned. To activate SCAN, press the SCAN side of the SCAN/A.SEL bar. You will see SCAN on the screen and center display.

The system plays each channel in numerical order for a few seconds, then selects the next channel. When you hear a channel you want to continue listening to, press the SCAN side of the bar to cancel.

CHANNEL SCAN – This function samples all channels. Push down the interface selector to select AUDIO MENU, then turn the interface dial to select Channel Scan and press ENTER on the interface selector.



CATEGORY SCAN – This function samples the stations in the selected category. Push down the interface selector to select AUDIO MENU, then turn the interface dial to select Category Scan and press ENTER on the interface selector.



Preset – You can store up to 12 preset channels using the six preset buttons. Each button stores one channel from the XM1 band and one channel from the XM2 band.

To store a channel:

1. Press the «XM» button. Either XM1 or XM2 will be shown on the display.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

2. Use the tune, list, or scan function to tune to a desired channel.

   In category mode, only channels within that category can be selected. In channel mode, all channels can be selected.

3. Pick the preset button you want for that channel. Press and hold the preset button until you hear a beep. You can also pick the number with the interface dial. Select your desired number and press and hold ENTER on the interface selector.

4. Repeat steps 2 and 3 to store the first six channels.

5. Press the «XM» button or scroll up again. The other XM band will be shown. Store the next six channels using steps 2 and 3.

   Once a channel is stored, press and release the proper preset button to tune to it.

XM Radio Display Messages

"OFF AIR" — The channel currently selected is no longer broadcasting.

"LOADING" — XM is loading the audio or program information.

"UPDATING" — The encryption code is being updated. Wait until the encryption code is fully updated. Channels 0 and 1 should still work normally.

"NO SIGNAL" — The signal is currently too weak. Move the vehicle to an area away from tall buildings, and with an unobstructed view of the southern horizon.

"- - - -" — The selected channel number does not exist, or is not part of your subscription, or this channel has no artist or title information at this time.

"NO INFO" — The selected channel has no artist or title information at this time.

"CHECK ANTENNA" — There is a problem with the XM antenna. Please consult your dealer.

CONTINUED

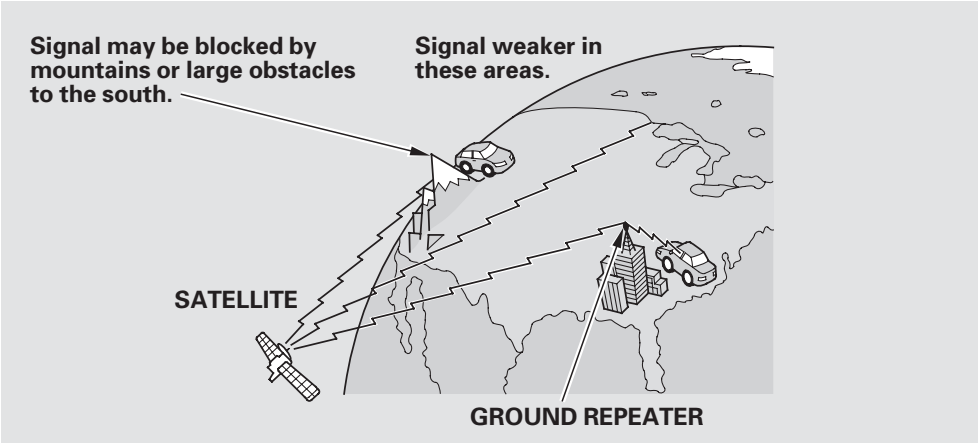
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing the XM® Radio (Models with navigation system)

The XM satellites are in orbit over the equator; therefore, objects south of the vehicle may cause satellite reception interruptions. To help compensate for this, ground-based repeaters are placed in major metropolitan areas. Satellite signals are more likely to be blocked by tall buildings and mountains the farther north you travel from the equator.

Depending on where you drive, you may experience reception problems. Interference can be caused by any of these conditions:

- Driving on the north side of an east/west mountain road.
- Driving on the north side of a large commercial truck on an east/west road.
- Driving in tunnels.


Signal may be blocked by mountains or large obstacles to the south.
Signal weaker in these areas.
SATELLITE
GROUND REPEATER

- Driving on a road beside a vertical wall, steep cliff, or hill to the south of you.
- Driving on the lower level of a multi-tiered road.
- Driving on a single lane road alongside dense trees taller than 50 ft. (15 m) to the south of you.

When DPLII is turned on (see page 286), sound coming from the rear speakers may be distorted due to the compression of the music being broadcast. Turn DPLII off if this happens.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing the XM® Radio (Models with navigation system)

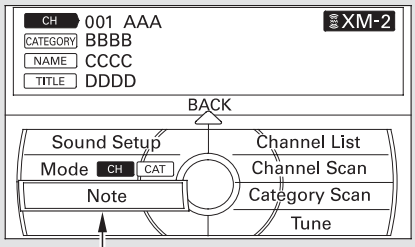
There may be other geographic situations that could affect XM Radio reception.

As required by the FCC:
Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Note Function
U.S. models only
This function stores the sound content played on the selected XM Radio station with the channel, category, name, and title information.

To activate this function, press and hold the «XM» button for about 2 seconds while a song or passage which you want to store is playing. You can record for up to 10 seconds. To stop recording, press the AM/FM button or «XM» button.

Once you store the recorded sound file, you can replay it and confirm the information. The system can store up to 30 sound files. If you continue to store more files, the oldest one will be deleted each time you add a new file.



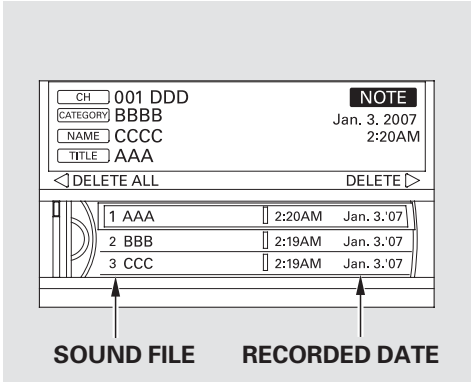
To replay and see the stored file, press the AUDIO button to select the audio display on the navigation screen.

Push down the interface selector to display the audio menu. Turn the interface dial to select Note, then press ENTER.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing the XM® Radio (Models with navigation system)



Turn the selector dial to select a sound file, then press ENTER. The display shows the category, name and title information of the selected file.

To delete all files, push the interface selector to the left to select "DELETE ALL," then press ENTER. To delete one file, select the file you want to delete and push the interface selector to the right, then press ENTER.

Receiving XM Radio Service

If your XM Radio service has expired or you purchased your vehicle from a previous owner, you can listen to a sampling of the broadcasts available on XM Radio. With the power mode in ACCESSORY or ON, press the «XM» button. A variety of music types and styles will play.

Your vehicle has the engine start/stop button instead of an ignition switch. For more information on how to select the power mode, see page 178.

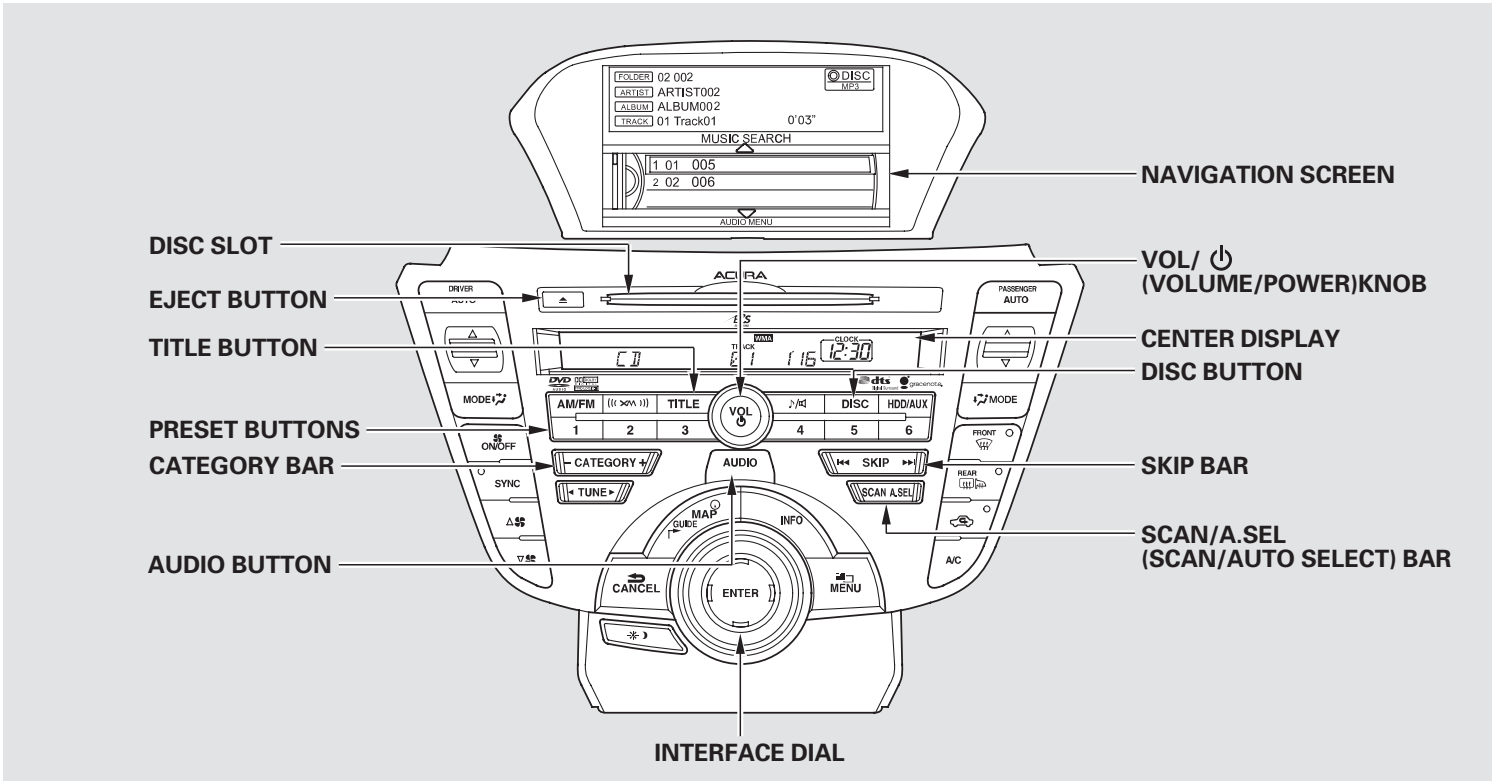
If you decide to purchase XM radio service, contact XM Radio at *www.xmradio.com*, or at 1-800-852-9696. In Canada, contact XM CANADA® at *www.xmradio.ca*, or at 1-877-209-0079. You will need to give them your radio I.D. number and your credit card number. To get your radio I.D. number, press the ▶ side of the TUNE bar until "0" appears in the display. Your I.D. will appear in the display.

After you have registered with XM Radio, keep your audio system in the XM Radio mode while you wait for activation. This should take about 30 minutes.

While waiting for activation, make sure your vehicle remains in an open area with good reception. Once your audio system is activated, CAT (category) or CH (channel) will appear in the center display, and you'll be able to listen to XM Radio broadcasts. XM Radio will continue to send an activation signal to your vehicle for at least 12 hours from the activation request. If the service has not been activated after 36 hours, contact XM® Radio. In Canada, contact XM CANADA®.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing a Disc (Models with navigation system)



CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing a Disc (Models with navigation system)

Your vehicle's audio system has an in-dash disc player. To operate the disc player, the power mode must be in the ACCESSORY or ON.

Your vehicle has the engine start/stop button instead of an ignition switch. For more information on how to select the power mode, see page 178.

The disc player can play these disc formats:

- CD (CD-DA, CD-TEXT)
- CD-R/CD-RW (MP3, WMA, AAC)
- DVD-A
- DVD-R/DVD-RW (MP3, WMA, AAC)

The disc packages or jackets should have one of these marks.

The disc player can also play MP3, WMA, or AAC format that saved on CD-R/RW or DVD-R/RW (see page 301).

NOTE:
If a file on WMA or AAC disc is protected by digital rights management (DRM), the audio system skips to the next file.

DVD-A discs not meeting DVD verification standards may not be playable.

Video CDs and DVD-V format discs will not work in this unit.

Some CD-DA and CD-ROM mixed discs are not playable.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing a Disc (Models with navigation system)

You cannot load and play 3-inch (8-cm) discs in this system.

It is possible to select up to 999 files for inclusion in CD-Rs and CD-RWs, and up to 3,500 files for inclusion in DVD-Rs and DVD-RWs.

Depending on the software the files were made with, it may not be possible to play some files, or display some text data.

NOTICE

Do not use discs with adhesive labels. The label can curl up and cause the disc to jam in the unit.

Manufactured under license under U.S. Patent #'s: 5,451,942; 5,956,674; 5,974,380; 5,978,762; 6,487,535 & other U.S. and worldwide patents issued & pending. DTS and DTS Digital Surround are registered trademarks and the DTS logos and Symbol are trademarks of DTS, Inc. © 1996-2008 DTS, Inc. All Rights Reserved.

To Load a Disc

Insert a disc about halfway into the disc slot. The drive will pull the disc in the rest of the way to play it. You operate the disc player with the same controls used for the radio. The number of the current track is shown in the display. When playing a disc in MP3, WMA or AAC, the numbers of the current folder and file are shown. The system will continuously play a disc until you change modes.

For information on how to handle and protect compact discs, see page 364.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing a Disc (Models with navigation system)

To Play a Disc
Select the disc player by pressing the DISC button. The system will begin playing the last selected track in the disc. You will see the current track position highlighted.

Title information will be displayed by a list when the information is found in the Gracenote® Album Info (Gracenote® Media Database) on the built-in hard disk drive. When you play a CD recorded with text data, you will see the genre, artist name, album and track name on the screen. When you play MP3/WMA/AAC discs, you will see the genre, artist name, album name and track name on the screen. If the disc was not recorded with this information, it will not be displayed.

Each time you press the TITLE button, the center display changes from artist name to album name, to track name and then to normal display that shows the track number and the elapsed time. When playing a disc in MP3/WMA/AAC, the display mode changes from folder name, to file name, to artist tag, to album tag, to track tag, and then to normal display.

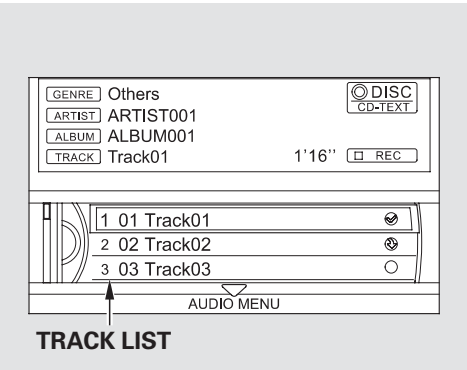
To Change Tracks
Each time you press and release the ►►| side of the skip bar, the player skips forward to the beginning of the next track. Press and release the |◄◄ side of the skip bar to skip backward to the beginning of the current track. Press the |◄◄ side again to skip to the previous track. To move rapidly within a track, press and hold either side of the skip bar.

When you insert a CD for the first time, the system automatically starts recording to the hard disc. For information on recording from music CDs, see page 310 .

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

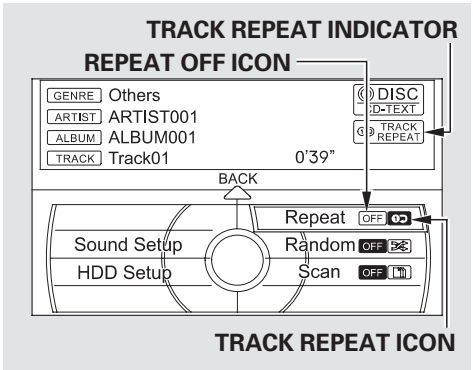
Playing a Disc (Models with navigation system)

To Choose a Track



You can also choose a track directly from a track list. If there are no track names, you will see “No Title” displayed. Turn the interface dial to select the desired track, then press ENTER on the interface selector.

Track Repeat



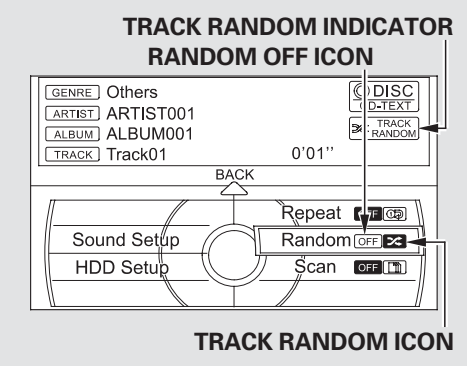
To replay the current track continuously, push the interface selector down while playing a disc. Turn the interface dial to select Repeat on the AUDIO MENU, and press ENTER on the interface selector. Turn the interface dial to select Repeat icon, and press ENTER on the interface selector.

To turn this feature off, turn the interface dial to select the OFF icon, and press ENTER on the interface selector.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing a Disc (Models with navigation system)

Random Play



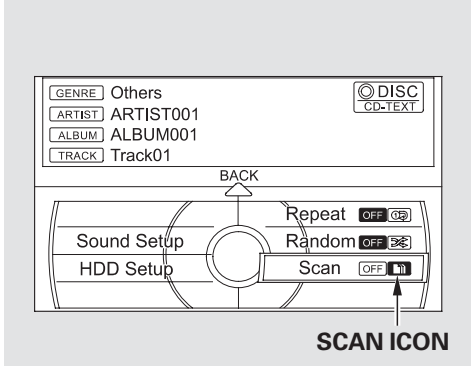
This feature plays the tracks within a disc in random order. When playing MP3, WMA or AAC format discs, all the tracks within the disc are played in random order, regardless of the configuration of the folder.

Push the interface selector down while playing a disc. Turn the interface dial to select Random on the AUDIO MENU, and press ENTER on the interface selector.

Turn the interface dial to select the track random icon, and press ENTER on the interface selector.

To turn this feature off, turn the interface dial to select the OFF icon, and press ENTER on the interface selector.

Track Scan



The scan function samples all tracks on the disc in the order they are recorded on the disc.

To activate scan, press the SCAN side of the SCAN/A.SEL bar, or push the interface selector down while playing a disc. Turn the interface dial to select Scan on the AUDIO MENU, and press ENTER on the interface selector.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing a Disc (Models with navigation system)

Turn the interface dial to select the Scan icon, and press ENTER on the interface selector. You will hear a 10-second sampling of each track on the disc. When you return to disc mode, the disc will begin playing from where it left off.

To turn this feature off, press the SCAN side of the SCAN/A.SEL bar again, or turn the interface dial to select the OFF icon, and press ENTER on the interface selector. The system begins to play the last track sampled.

To Stop Playing a Disc

To take the system out of disc mode, press the AM/FM button, the «XM» button, or the HDD/AUX button. To return to disc mode, press the DISC button.

You can also press the MODE button on the steering wheel to change modes.

If you turn the system off while a disc is playing, either with the VOL/ ⏻ knob or the engine start/stop button, the disc will stay in the drive. When you turn the system back on, the disc will begin playing where it left off.

Your vehicle has the engine start/stop button instead of an ignition switch. For more information to turn the power mode off, see page 178 .

Playing an MP3/WMA/AAC Disc

This audio system plays CD-ROM, CD-R/RW, DVD-ROM, and DVD-R/RW compressed in MP3, WMA, or AAC formats. You can select up to 255 folders or tracks.

Disc	Maximum folders*	Maximum Files	Maximum layers*
CD-ROM CD-R CD-RW	255	999	8
DVD-ROM DVD-R DVD-RW	255	3500	8

*: Including Root folder

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing a Disc (Models with navigation system)

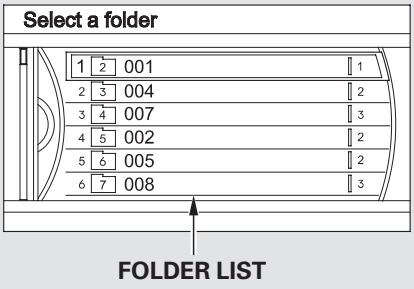
NOTE:
Combining a low sampling frequency with a low bitrate may result in extremely degraded sound quality.

To play an MP3/WMA/AAC disc, use the disc controls previously described, along with the following information.

Changing the Folders

While playing an MP3/WMA/AAC disc, you can select a folder within the disc by pressing either side of the category bar. Each time you press either side of the bar, the folder title and its first file's information appear on the center display and on the navigation screen in hierarchical order of the folders which contain files within the disc.

Changing and Selecting the Folders/Files

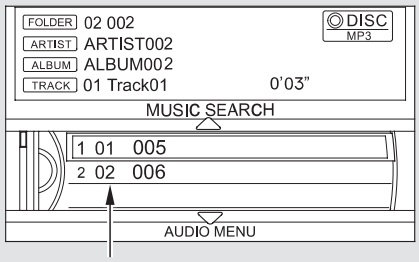


Using the interface selector, you can see the list of all the folders within a disc. While playing an MP3/WMA/AAC disc, push the interface selector up. The folder list in the currently playing disc will appear on the screen.

If the root folder has some additional folders in the lower layer, they will be listed on the screen.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing a Disc (Models with navigation system)

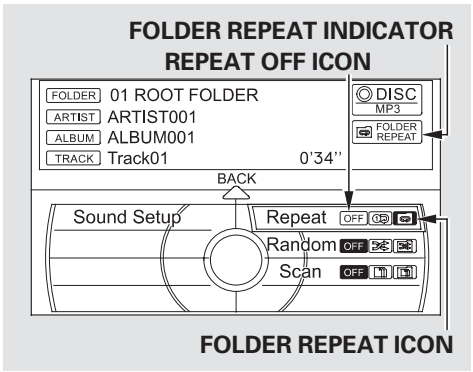


TRACK LIST

Select a desired folder by turning the interface dial, then press ENTER. The display returns to normal play, and the first track in the selected folder begins to play.

To change a file, turn the interface dial to select a desired file, then press ENTER.

Folder Repeat



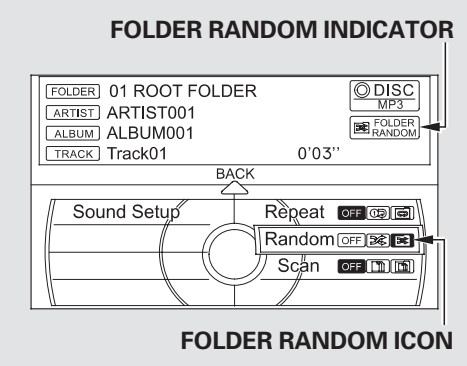
This feature, when activated, replays all files on the selected folder in the order they are compressed. To activate folder repeat play, push the interface selector down while playing a disc. Turn the interface dial to select Repeat on the AUDIO MENU, and press ENTER on the interface selector. Turn the interface interface dial to select the folder repeat icon, and press ENTER on the interface selector.

To turn this feature off, turn the interface dial to select the OFF icon, and press ENTER on the interface selector.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing a Disc (Models with navigation system)

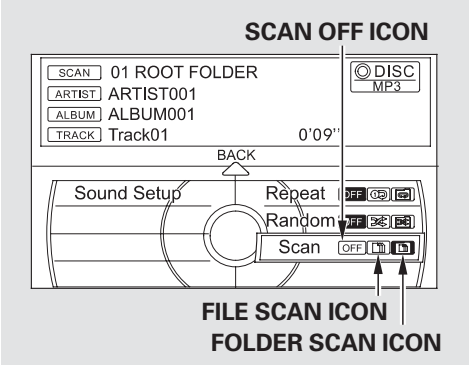
Folder Random



This feature, when activated, plays all files in the current folder in random order. To activate folder random play, push the interface selector down while playing a disc. Turn the interface dial to select Random on the AUDIO MENU, and press ENTER on the interface selector. Turn the interface dial to select the folder random icon, and press ENTER on the interface selector.

To turn this feature off, turn the interface dial to select OFF icon, and press ENTER on the interface selector.

File Scan



This feature samples all files in the selected folder in the order they are stored. To activate this feature, press the SCAN side of the SCAN/A.SEL bar. You can also select the SCAN icon with the interface dial. Push the selector down, turn the dial to select Scan on the AUDIO MENU, then press ENTER. Turn the dial to select the scan icon, then press ENTER. The system begins to play a file for about 10 seconds, and continues to sample the remaining files.

To turn this feature off, press the SCAN side of the bar again, or select OFF icon by turning the dial, then press ENTER.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Folder Scan
This feature, when activated, samples the first file of each folder for 10 seconds. To scan a folder, press the SCAN side of the SCAN/A.SEL bar. Or, push the interface selector down while playing a disc. Turn the interface dial to select Scan on the AUDIO MENU, and press ENTER on the interface selector. Turn the interface dial to select the folder scan icon, and press ENTER on the interface selector.

The system plays the first file in the first folder for about 10 seconds. If you do nothing, the system will then play the first files in the next folders for 10 seconds. After playing the first file in the last folder, the system plays normally.

To turn this feature off, turn the interface dial to select OFF icon, and press ENTER on the interface selector. The last track sampled begins to play.

NOTE:
When playing MP3, WMA or AAC format disc, each time you press the SCAN side of the SCAN/A.SEL bar, the system changes in the following sequence: Scan → Scan first track in folder → OFF → Scan.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing a Disc (Models with navigation system)

Removing a Disc from the Player
To remove the disc, press the eject (⏏) button.

If you do not remove the disc from the slot, the system will reload the disc after 10 seconds. The disc starts playing automatically.

Playing a DVD-A Disc
Use the disc controls previously described.

Protecting Discs
For information on how to handle and protect discs, see page 364 .

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Disc Player Error Messages (Models with navigation system)

The chart on the right explains the error messages you may see in the center display while playing a disc.

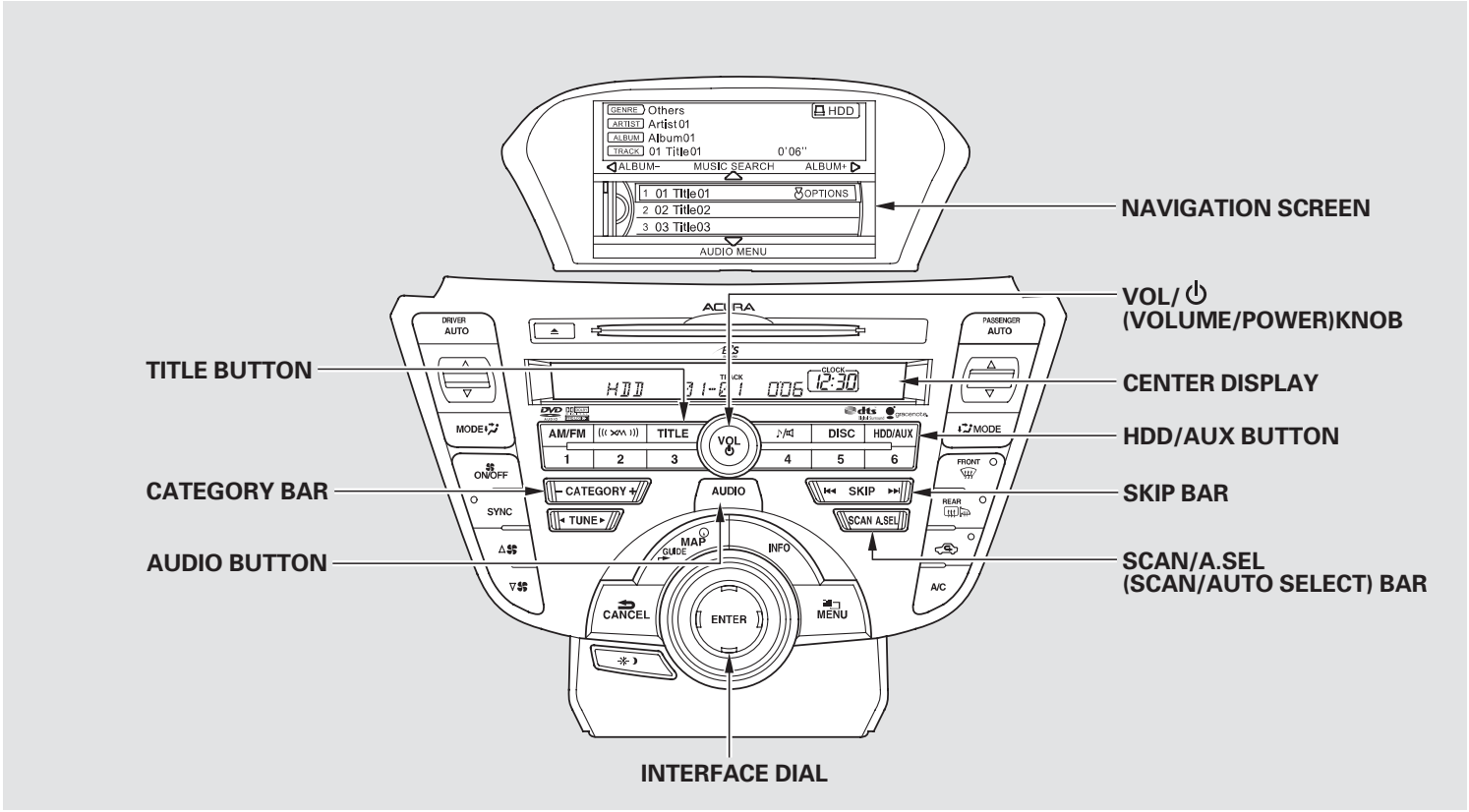
If you see an error message in the center display while playing a disc, press the eject button. After ejecting the disc, check it for damage or deformation. If there is no damage, insert the disc again.
For additional information on damaged discs, see page 365 .

The audio system will try to play the disc. If there is still a problem, the error message will reappear. Press the eject button, and pull out the disc. Insert a different disc. If the new disc plays, there is a problem with the first disc. If the error message cycle repeats and you cannot clear it, take your vehicle to a dealer.

Error Message	Cause	Solution
BAD DISC PLEASE CHECK OWNERS MANUAL	Servo Error	Press the eject button and pull out the disc. Check the disc for serious damage, signs of deformation, excessive scratches, and/or dirt (see page 365). Insert the disc again. If the code does not disappear, or the disc cannot be removed, consult your dealer. Do not try to force the disc out of the player.
BAD DISC PLEASE CHECK OWNERS MANUAL PUSH EJECT	Mechanical Error	
MECH ERROR		
CHECK DISC	FOCUS Error Disc violates copyright Disc not supported	
CHECK DISC LOAD	Load Error	
UNPLAYABLE FILE	Track/File format not supported	Current track will be skipped. The next supported track or file plays automatically.
HEAT ERROR	High Temperature	Will disappear when the temperature returns to normal.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing Hard Disc Drive (HDD) Audio (Models with navigation system)



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing Hard Disc Drive (HDD) Audio (Models with navigation system)

The Hard Disc Drive (HDD) Audio function can record tracks from music CDs to the navigation system's hard disc. This function also allows for various playing methods, such as playing recorded tracks on an artist-by-artist or genre-by-genre basis. For example, you can play the tracks that you want to listen to in any order that you like for each playlist.

NOTE:

- Only recordings from a standard CD-DA (44.1 kHz, 16 bit stereo PCM digital sound data) to HDD are supported.
- Digital music files, such as MP3, WMA, AAC etc., in CD-R, DVD-R and USB flash memory devices cannot be copied to HDD. Likewise, digital music files recorded to HDD cannot be copied to CD-R, DVD-R and USB devices.
- Music data recorded on HDD can only be used for personal enjoyment.
- Data is recorded using ultra-efficient compression technology, therefore, sound quality may vary slightly from the original.
- Title information will be displayed when the information is found in the Gracenote® Album Info (Gracenote® Media Database) on the built-in hard disk drive. See page 335 .
- Recording function from following media is not supported.

— CD-DA which prohibits the copying by SCMS
— CD-DA with copy control
— SACD (Super Audio CD)
— DTS-CD
— DVD-A
— CD-R/RW
— DVD-R/RW
— Copy controlled CDs (Playback cannot be guaranteed)
— DTS-CDs (Only enabled for playback)

If the HDD is ever replaced, all data will be lost and stored music will not be recovered.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing Hard Disc Drive (HDD) Audio (Models with navigation system)

Playlists
Playlists are track lists in a certain playback group.

Original Playlist
This playlist is automatically generated when the music CD is recorded. The maximum number of original playlists that can be stored to the HDD is 999, with 99 songs on each playlist. Each album name on the music CD is counted as a playlist.

User Playlist
The HDD has six playlist folders for user customizing. Each playlist can be edited by the user, and will store up to 999 songs. For more information on how to edit the user playlist, see page 316.

Track Search Methods
Songs that have been recorded on the HDD are categorized in groups for easy searching.

There are six categories:

Album record date: Album titles are arranged by date of recording.

Album: Album names are arranged in alphabetical order.

Artist: Artist names are arranged in alphabetical order.

Genre: Songs are arranged by genre.

Playlist: Any of six playlists that are arranged by the user.

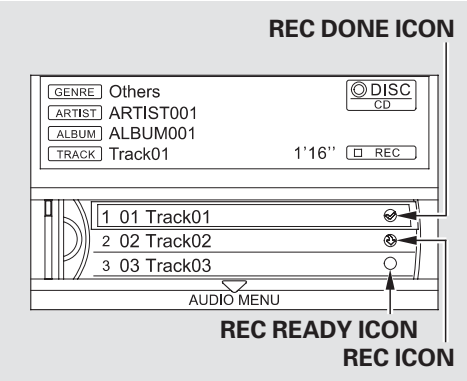
Track: Track titles are arranged in alphabetical order.

For more information of how to search a music, see page 317.

Recording a Music CD to HDD Audio
If you play a music CD that has not yet been recorded on the HDD, the system will automatically begin recording to the HDD once the disc is loaded. To turn this feature off, see page 312.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing Hard Disc Drive (HDD) Audio (Models with navigation system)



The icons show the recording conditions for each track:

Rec icon: Now recording

Rec ready icon: Next to be recorded

Rec done icon: Recording finished

NOTE:

- Please note that there will be no compensation offered in the case of unsuccessful recording of audio data or the loss of audio data due to any cause whatsoever.
- During recording, operation of this product may be slower.
- If you stop the engine or the power system is turned off while recording a CD, there may be pauses between songs when you play back from the HDD.
- Tracks from music CDs are recorded at four times the playback speed. You can listen to tracks as they are being recorded.
- Forward/rewind, repeat, random and scan functions are not available during recording.
- You can listen to tracks from other playlists that have already been recorded while recording. Press the HDD/AUX button and switch over to HDD Audio.
- With the factory settings, all of the songs on a music CD are automatically recorded.
- Recording settings cannot be changed during recording.
- If the number of songs in the playlist exceeds 999, the oldest song will be overwritten each time you add a new song.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

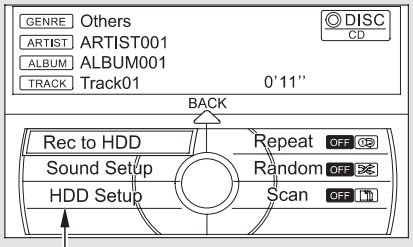
Playing Hard Disc Drive (HDD) Audio (Models with navigation system)

To Cancel Recording a Music CD to HDD

In order to suspend recording, push the interface selector down, select Cancel Rec to HDD, and press ENTER on the interface selector.

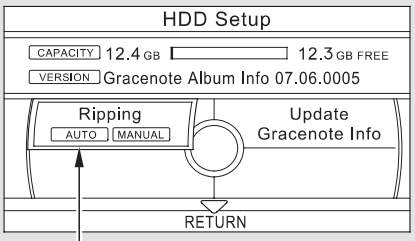
Changing the Recording Settings

Recording a Track on a Music CD Manually



HDD SETUP

To change the setting to manual mode, push the interface selector down on the HDD screen. Turn the interface dial to select HDD Setup and press ENTER.



RIPPING ICON

Turn the dial to select Ripping and press ENTER on the interface selector.

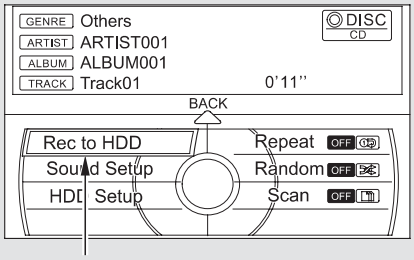
Turn the interface dial to select MANUAL and press ENTER on the interface selector.

Push down the interface selector to go back to the audio screen.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing Hard Disc Drive (HDD) Audio (Models with navigation system)

To Record a Track Manually



REC TO HDD ICON

Select a track to record from the music CD, push the HDD/AUX button, then push the interface selector down to display the audio menu. Turn the interface dial to select Rec to HDD, and then press ENTER on the interface selector.

Recording All of the Tracks on a Music CD Automatically

To change the setting to automatically record all of the tracks on a music CD, move the interface selector down on the HDD Audio screen. Turn the interface dial to select HDD Setup, and press ENTER on the interface selector.

Turn the interface selector to select Ripping, and press ENTER on the interface selector.

Turn the interface dial to select AUTO, and press ENTER on the interface selector.

Playing Tracks on HDD

To play tracks on HDD, push the HDD/AUX button until the HDD Audio screen appears. Playback will start automatically with the track previously selected.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing Hard Disc Drive (HDD) Audio (Models with navigation system)

Changing a Track/Tracklist

To change a track or tracklist*, press on the Category bar or the Skip bar.

Category Bar	
+	The next tracklist is selected. If you press + during the last tracklist, the first tracklist is selected.
–	The previous tracklist is selected. If you press – during the first tracklist, the last tracklist is selected.

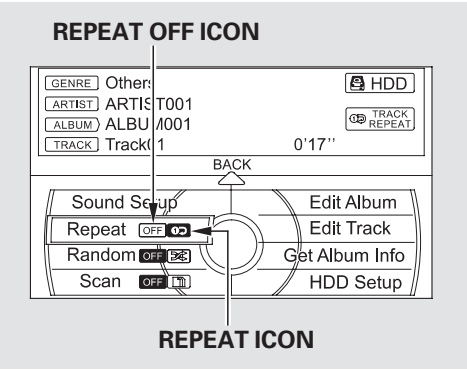
* : The tracklist has six search mode categories: album, artist, track, playlist, genre, and album record date. Within the selected category, the tracklist will be changed with the category bar.

Skip Bar	
I◄◄	Returns to the beginning of the song that is being played. Press twice to play, the previous track. If you press this bar during the first song, the last song is selected.
►►I	The next song is selected. If you press this bar during the last song, the first song is selected.

Fast Forwarding and Rewinding

To fast forward, press and hold the ►►I side of the SKIP bar. To rewind, press and hold the I◄◄ side of the SKIP bar.

Repeat Playback



To replay the current track continuously, push the interface selector down during track playback.

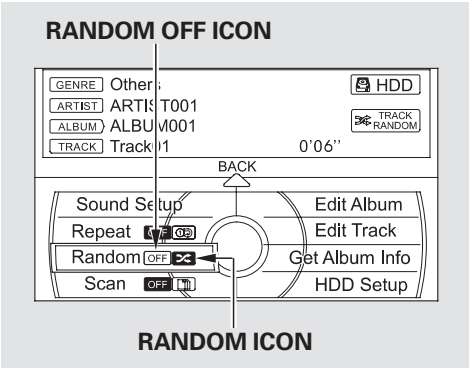
Turn the interface dial to select Repeat on the HDD AUDIO MENU, and press ENTER on the interface selector. Turn the interface dial to select the repeat icon, then press ENTER on the interface selector.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing Hard Disc Drive (HDD) Audio (Models with navigation system)

To turn this feature off, turn the interface dial to select the OFF icon, then press ENTER on the interface selector.

Random Playback



This function plays tracks in the current search mode in random order. To activate random play, push the interface selector down during track playback. Turn the interface dial to select Random on the HDD AUDIO MENU. Press ENTER on the interface selector.

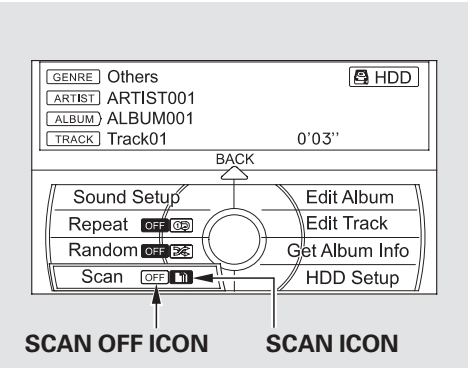
Turn the interface dial to select the track random icon, and press ENTER on the interface selector.

To turn this feature off, turn the interface dial to select the OFF icon, then press ENTER on the interface selector.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing Hard Disc Drive (HDD) Audio (Models with navigation system)

Scan Playback



This function samples the tracks in the current search mode in the order that they were recorded.

To activate scan, push the interface selector down during track playback. Turn the interface dial to select Scan on the HDD AUDIO MENU, and press ENTER on the interface selector.

Turn the interface dial to select the scan icon. Press ENTER on the interface selector. You will hear a 10-second sampling of each track in the current search mode.

To turn this feature off, turn the interface dial to select the OFF icon. Press ENTER on the interface selector to play the last track sampled.

Making an User Playlist

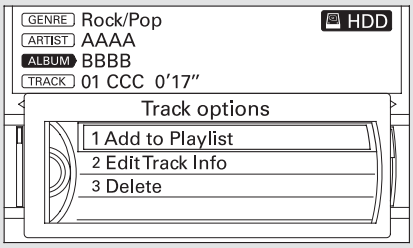
The HDD has two types of the playlists: original playlist and user playlist. On the original playlist, the music CD is recorded automatically when it is played. In addition, you can create up to six user playlists on the HDD. In each playlist, you can store a desired music data from the original playlists or music CDs.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing Hard Disc Drive (HDD) Audio (Models with navigation system)

Adding a Track to a User Playlist

1. While a track is playing on an Original Playlist or User Playlist Playback screen, turn the interface dial and select the track that you want to add to a User Playlist, then press ENTER on the interface selector.



2. The track options box is displayed. Select Add to Playlist, then press ENTER on the interface selector.
3. On the Playlist screen, turn the interface dial and select the Playlist to which the song is to be added, then press ENTER on the interface selector. You will be returned to the Playback screen.

After storing music data, you can customize the original and user playlists (see page 322).

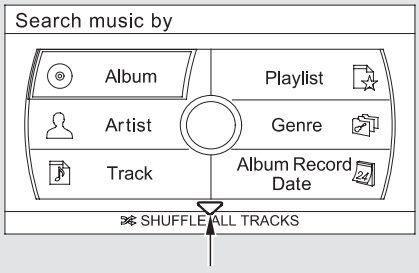
Searching the Music

While playing music in the HDD playback screen, push the interface selector up to select MUSIC SEARCH. You can search a track by album, artist, track, playlist, genre, or album record date, or you can shuffle all tracks.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing Hard Disc Drive (HDD) Audio (Models with navigation system)



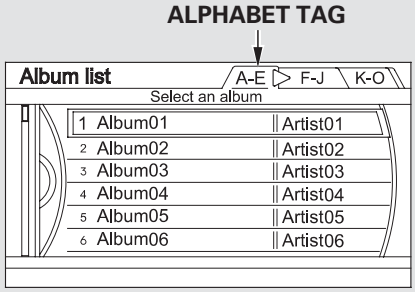
Push the selector down.

SHUFFLE ALL TRACKS

Shuffles the playback of all tracks that have been recorded on HDD.

To shuffle all tracks, push the interface selector up to display the "Search music by" screen, and then push the interface selector down. Shuffled playback begins.

Searching Music by Album



Push the interface selector up to display the "Search music by" screen, and turn the interface dial to select "Albums." Press ENTER on the selector, and the album list will be displayed in alphabetical order.

If you push the interface selector right or left, you can change the alphabet tag.

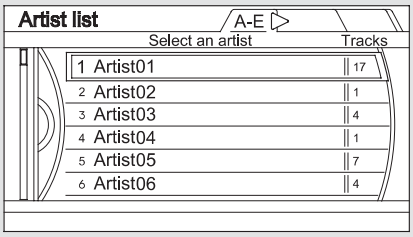
Turn the interface dial to select the album you want to listen to, then press ENTER on the selector.

The first track on the selected album begins to play.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing Hard Disc Drive (HDD) Audio (Models with navigation system)

Searching Music by Artist



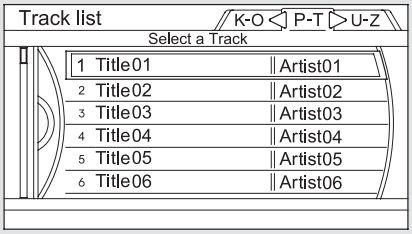
Push the interface selector up to display the Search music by screen, and turn the interface dial to select "Artists." Press ENTER on the interface selector, and the artist list will be displayed in alphabetical order.

If you push the interface selector right or left, you can change the alphabet tag.

Turn the interface dial to select the artist you want to listen to, and press ENTER on the interface selector.

The first track on the selected artist begins to play.

Searching Music by Track



Push the interface selector up to display the Search music by screen, and turn the interface dial to select "Tracks." Press ENTER on the interface selector, and the track list will be displayed in alphabetical order.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

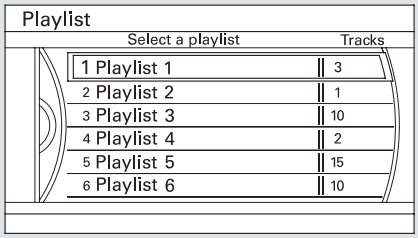
Playing Hard Disc Drive (HDD) Audio (Models with navigation system)

If you push the interface selector right or left, you can change the alphabet tag.

Turn the interface dial to select a track you want to listen to, then press ENTER on the interface selector.

The selected track begins to play.

Searching Music by Playlists



Push the interface selector up to display the Search music by screen, and turn the interface dial to select "Playlists." Press ENTER on the interface selector then the playlist will be displayed.

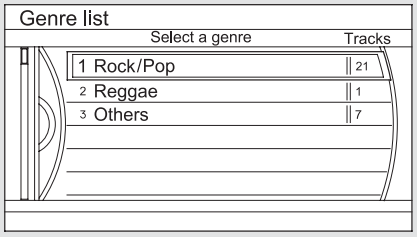
Turn the interface dial to select the playlist you want to listen to, then press ENTER on the interface selector.

The first track on the selected playlist begins to play.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing Hard Disc Drive (HDD) Audio (Models with navigation system)

Searching Music by Genre

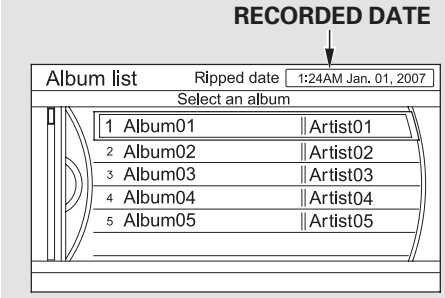


Push the interface selector up to display the Search music by screen, and turn the interface dial to select "Genres." Press ENTER on the interface selector, and the genre list will be displayed.

Turn the interface dial to select the genre you want to listen to, and then press ENTER on the interface selector.

The first track on the selected genre begins to play.

Searching Music by Album Record Date



Push the interface selector up to display the Search music by screen, and turn the interface dial to select Album Record Date. Press ENTER on the interface selector. The album list will be displayed.

Turn the interface dial to select the album you want to listen to, then press ENTER on the selector.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing Hard Disc Drive (HDD) Audio (Models with navigation system)

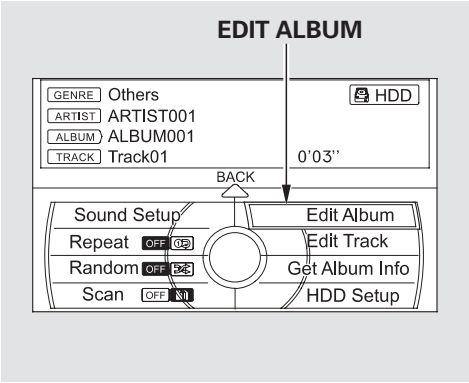
The first track on the selected album begins to play.

Customizing Original/User Playlist

After storing the data, you can change some items: order of tracks on the user playlist, name of the playlist, track title, artist name, and music genre. You can also add a track to the playlist, and delete the track or the album from the playlist.

Adding an Original Playlist or User Playlist to a Different User Playlist

1. While playing back an Original Playlist or User Playlist that you want to add to a different User Playlist, push the interface selector down to display AUDIO MENU.



2. Turn the interface dial and select Edit Album (or Edit Playlist if you want to edit an User Playlist), and then press ENTER on the interface selector.

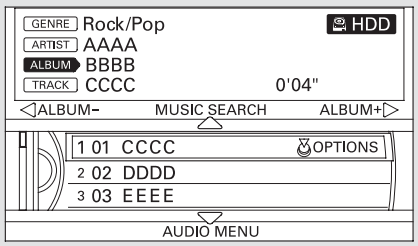
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing Hard Disc Drive (HDD) Audio (Models with navigation system)

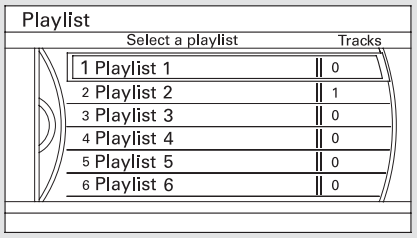
3. On the Edit Album (or Edit Playlist) screen, turn the interface dial and select Add to Playlist, and then press ENTER on the interface selector.

4. On the Playlist screen, turn the interface dial and select a desired User Playlist, then press ENTER on the interface selector. You will be returned to the Playback screen for the Original Playlist or User Playlist.

Changing the Order of Tracks within the User Playlist



1. On the HDD audio screen, push up the interface selector to select MUSIC SEARCH. Select Playlist by turning the interface dial, then press ENTER.



2. Turn the interface dial to select the playlist, then press ENTER.

3. Push the interface selector down to display the AUDIO MENU for the playlist.

CONTINUED

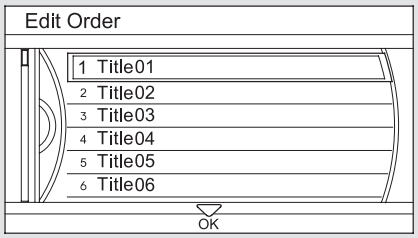
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing Hard Disc Drive (HDD) Audio (Models with navigation system)

4. Turn the interface dial and select Edit Playlist, then press ENTER on the interface selector.

5. Turn the interface dial to select Edit Order, then press ENTER on the interface selector.

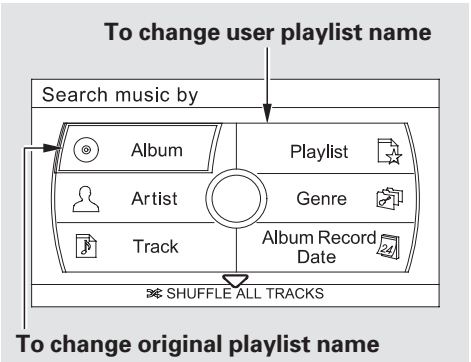
6. Turn the interface dial to select the track to be moved, then press ENTER on the interface selector.



7. Turn the interface dial to select where the track is to be moved, then press ENTER on the interface selector.

8. Push the interface selector down to return to the Playback screen of the User Playlist.

Changing the Name of the Original Playlist or User Playlist



1. Select a desired playlist to change the user playlist name, or a desired album to change the original playlist name (album name). Refer to the Music Search function on page 317 for how to select a playlist or an album. Push the interface selector down to display the AUDIO MENU for a selected playlist or album.

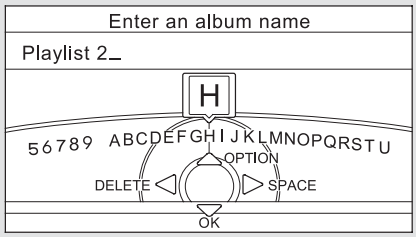
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing Hard Disc Drive (HDD) Audio (Models with navigation system)

2. Turn the interface dial and select Edit Playlist (or Edit Album to edit Original Playlist), then press ENTER on the interface selector.

3. Turn the interface dial to select Edit Playlist Name (or Edit Album Name to edit Original Playlist), then press ENTER on the interface selector.

4. On the Edit Album Name screen, turn the interface dial to select Edit Album, then press ENTER on the interface selector.



5. On the Enter an album name screen, input the new Original Playlist name or User Playlist name.

   Select a letter by turning the interface dial, then press ENTER.

6. After inputting the name, push the interface selector down to select OK.

7. The confirmation screen is displayed. Confirm that the new name is correct, and then push the interface selector down to select OK. You will be returned to the Edit Album or Edit Playlist screen for the Original Playlist or User Playlist.

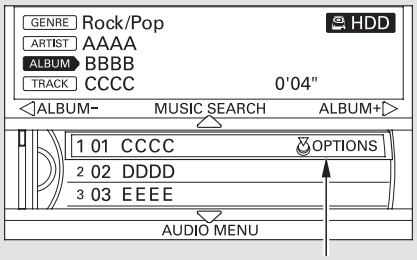
8. Push the selector down to select OK. The screen returns to the playlist.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing Hard Disc Drive (HDD) Audio (Models with navigation system)

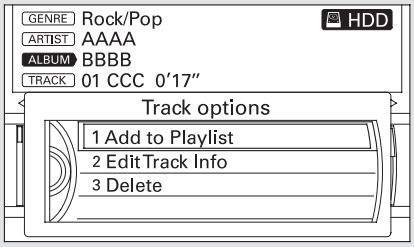
Changing the Track Titles



OPTIONS ICON

1. Select a desired playlist, then turn the interface dial to select the track of which you want to change the name, then press ENTER on the interface selector. Refer to the Music Search function on page 317 for how to select a playlist.

2. The OPTIONS icon will appear in the selected track. Press ENTER on the interface selector.



3. The track options box is displayed. Select Edit Track Info, then press ENTER on the interface selector.

4. On the Edit Track screen, turn the interface dial and select Edit Track Name, then press ENTER on the interface selector.

5. On the Edit Track Name screen, turn the interface dial and select Edit Track, then press ENTER on the interface selector.

6. Input the new track name on the Enter a track name screen.

7. After inputting the name, push the selector down to select OK.

8. The confirmation screen is displayed. Confirm that the new track name is correct, and then push the interface selector down to select OK. You will be returned to the Edit screen of the Original Playlist or User Playlist.

9. Push the selector down to select OK. The screen returns to the playlist.

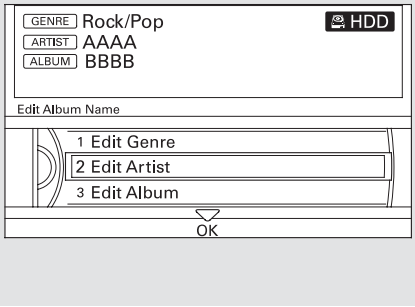
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing Hard Disc Drive (HDD) Audio (Models with navigation system)

NOTE:
After selecting the track for which you want to change the track title, you can also push the interface selector down to display the AUDIO MENU, and then select Edit Track. The subsequent procedure is the same as step 4.

Changing the Artist Name of the Original Playlist or User Playlist

1. Select a desired playlist to change the user playlist artist name or a desired album to change the original playlist artist name. Refer to the Music Search function on page 317 for how to select a playlist or an album. Push the interface selector down to display AUDIO MENU for a selected playlist or album.
2. Turn the interface dial and select Edit Album (or Edit Playlist if you want to edit User Playlist), then press ENTER on the interface selector.
3. Turn the interface dial to select Edit Album Name (or Edit Playlist Name), then press ENTER on the interface selector in Edit Album (or Edit Playlist) screen.

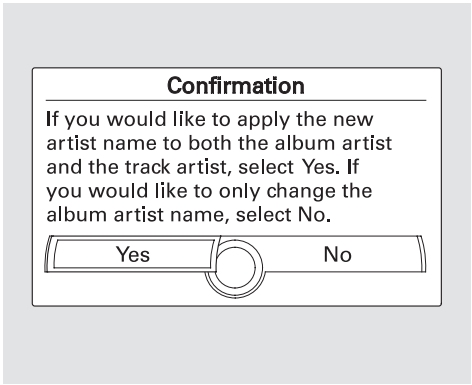


4. On the Edit Album Name screen, turn the interface dial to select Edit Artist, then press ENTER on the interface selector.
5. On the Enter an artist name screen input the new artist name.
6. After inputting the name, push the interface selector down to select OK.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing Hard Disc Drive (HDD) Audio (Models with navigation system)


Confirmation
If you would like to apply the new artist name to both the album artist and the track artist, select Yes. If you would like to only change the album artist name, select No.
Yes
No

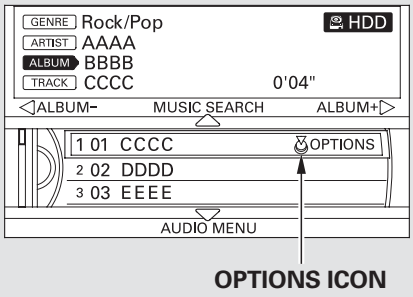
7. The confirmation screen is displayed. Choose if you would like to apply the new name to both the album artist and/or the track artist. Select Yes or No by turning the dial, then press ENTER.

8. Confirm that the new name is correct, and then push the interface selector down to select OK. You will be returned to the Edit Album Name screen.

9. Push the selector down to select OK. The screen returns to the playlist.

Changing the Artist Name of the Track

1. Select a desired playlist to change the artist name. Refer to the Music Search function on page 317 for how to select a playlist. Rotate the interface dial to select a track and press ENTER on the interface selector.



2. The OPTIONS icon will appear in the selected track. Press ENTER on the interface selector.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing Hard Disc Drive (HDD) Audio (Models with navigation system)

3. The track options box is displayed. Select Edit Track Info, then press ENTER on the interface selector.

4. On the Edit Track screen, turn the interface dial and select Edit Track Name, then press ENTER on the interface selector.

5. On the Edit Track Name screen, turn the interface dial and select Edit Artist, then press ENTER on the interface selector.

6. Input the new track name on the Enter an artist name screen.

7. After inputting the name, push the selector down to select OK. You will be returned to the Edit Track Name screen.

8. Push the selector down to select OK. The screen returns to the playlist.

NOTE:
After selecting the track for which you want to change the artist's name, you can also push the interface selector down to display the AUDIO MENU, and then select Edit Track. The subsequent procedure is the same as step 4.

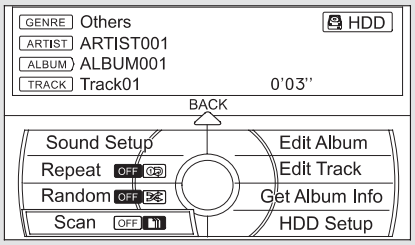
Changing the Musical Genre

1. Select a desired playlist to change the user playlist music genre, or a desired album to change the original playlist music genre. Refer to the Music Search function on page 317 for how to select a playlist or an album. Push the interface selector down to display AUDIO MENU for a selected playlist or album.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing Hard Disc Drive (HDD) Audio (Models with navigation system)



2. Turn the interface dial and select Edit Album (or Edit Playlist if you want to edit User Playlist), then press ENTER on the interface selector.

3. Turn the interface dial to select Edit Album Name (or Edit Playlist Name), then press ENTER on the interface selector in Edit Album (or Edit Playlist) screen.

4. On the Edit Album Name screen, turn the interface dial and select Edit Genre, and then press ENTER on the interface selector.

5. Turn the interface dial to select a genre, and then press ENTER. You will be returned to the Edit Album Name screen.

6. Push the selector down to select OK. The screen returns to the playlist.

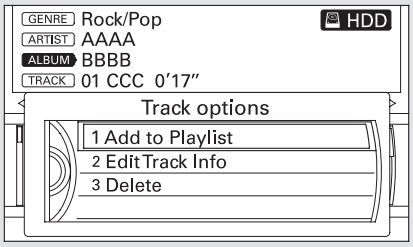
Deleting a Track

1. Select the track with the interface dial from the playback screen while it is playing. Press ENTER on the interface selector.

2. The OPTIONS icon will appear in the selected track. Press ENTER on the interface selector.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing Hard Disc Drive (HDD) Audio (Models with navigation system)



3. The track options box is displayed. Select Delete and press ENTER on the interface selector.

4. Select OK to confirm you want to delete the track. You will be returned to the Playback screen for the Original Playlist or User Playlist.

NOTE:

- When you delete a track from the Original Playlist, the track is also deleted from the User Playlist in which the deleted track was stored.

- Even if all the tracks are deleted from the User Playlist, the data folder for that playlist cannot be deleted, and their names (playlist and artist) are left. You can store tracks again on that playlist.

Deleting an Album

1. On the HDD playback screen of the album in which you want to delete, push the interface selector down to display the AUDIO MENU.

2. Turn the interface dial and select Edit Album (or Edit Playlist if you want to edit User Playlist), then press ENTER on the interface selector.

3. On the Edit Album (or Edit Playlist) screen, turn the interface dial and select Delete Album (or Delete Playlist), then press ENTER on the interface selector.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing Hard Disc Drive (HDD) Audio (Models with navigation system)

4. The delete box is displayed. Select OK and then press ENTER on the interface selector. You will be returned to the Playback screen for the Original Playlist or User Playlist.

NOTE:

- When you delete the Original Playlist, any tracks stored in a User Playlist are also deleted.
- Even if all the tracks are deleted from the User Playlist, the data folder for that playlist cannot be deleted, and their names (playlist and artist) are left. You can store tracks again on that playlist.

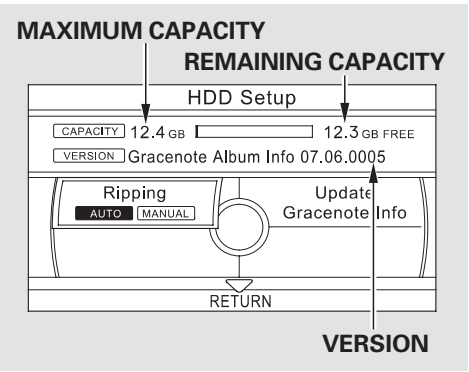
Acquiring Title Information

1. Push the interface selector down to display the AUDIO MENU.
2. Turn the interface dial and select Get Album Info, then press ENTER on the interface selector.
3. On the “Select an Album” screen, turn the interface dial and select the title information for the Original Playlist, then press ENTER. You will be returned to the “Audio Menu” screen.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing Hard Disc Drive (HDD) Audio (Models with navigation system)

Checking HDD Audio Capacity



You can check the HDD Audio capacity and remaining space as well as the Gracenote Music Recognition Service (CDDB) version included with the navigation system on the HDD Setup screen.

To check the HDD audio capacity, push the interface selector down to display the AUDIO MENU. Turn the interface dial to select HDD Setup, then press ENTER.

Updating Gracenote® Album Info (Gracenote® Media Database)

You can update the Gracenote® Album Info (Gracenote® Media Database) that is included with the navigation system.

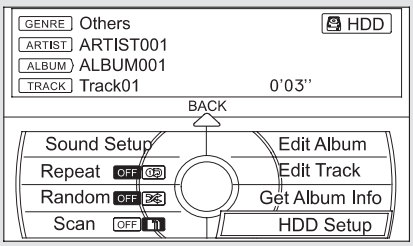
NOTE:
Consult your dealer, or visit *www.acura.com* (in U.S.), or *www.acura.ca* (in Canada), to acquire updated files.

1. Insert the update disc into the disc slot, or connect the USB flash memory device that includes the update.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing Hard Disc Drive (HDD) Audio (Models with navigation system)



2. Push the interface selector down to select AUDIO MENU in the HDD playback screen or CD playback screen.

3. Turn the interface dial to select HDD Setup, then press ENTER on the interface selector.

4. Turn the interface dial and select Update Gracenote Info, then press ENTER on the interface selector.

5. Turn the dial to select USB or DISC on the Update Gracenote Album info screen, then press ENTER on the selector.

6. Turn the dial to select Yes on the confirmation screen, and the update will start.

7. Turn the interface dial to select OK on the confirmation screen.

8. After updating is complete, press ENTER on the confirmation screen.

NOTE:
Once you perform an update, any information you edited before will be overwritten.

Clearing the HDD
Any music, data, calendar entries, etc. that have been stored on the HDD can be deleted.

1. Press the INFO button, rotate the interface dial to select “Set up,” and press ENTER.

2. Move the interface selector to the right to navigate to the “Set up (Other)” screen.

3. On the “Set up (Other)” screen, rotate the interface dial to select “Clear Personal Data,” and press ENTER.

4. Select the item you wish to delete.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing Hard Disc Drive (HDD) Audio (Models with navigation system)

5. A pop-up screen verifying whether the deletion is to be continued or not will be displayed. Select Yes to delete, or No to cancel.

6. A second confirmation will appear. Select Yes to delete, or No to cancel.

7. When you are finished deleting the data, press the interface selector down to select "Done."

NOTE: If you select "Music on HDD," the system will automatically restart after deletion.

Gracenote Music Recognition Service (CDDB)

Music recognition technology and related data are provided by Gracenote®. Gracenote is the industry standard in music recognition technology and related content delivery. For more information, please visit http://www.gracenote.com/.

When music is recorded to the HDD from a CD, information such as the recording artist and track name are retrieved from the Gracenote Database and displayed (when available). Gracenote may not contain information for all albums.

Gracenote is an internet-based music recognition service that allows artist, album, and track information from CDs to display on the HDD. More information about Gracenote is available at *www.acura.com* (in U.S.) or *www.acura.ca* (in Canada).

CD and music-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright© 2000—2010 Gracenote.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing Hard Disc Drive (HDD) Audio (Models with navigation system)

Gracenote Software, copyright© 2000 −2010 Gracenote. This product and service may practice one or more of the following U.S. Patents: # 5,987,525; #6,061,680; #6,154,773, #6,161,132, #6,230,192, #6,230,207, #6,240,459, #6,330,593, and other patents issued or pending. Some services supplied under license from Open Globe, Inc. for U.S. Patent: # 6,304,523.

Gracenote and CDDB are registered trademarks of Gracenote. The Gracenote logo and logotype, and the "Powered by Gracenote" logo are trademarks of Gracenote.

Gracenote® End User License Agreement

Version 20061005

This application or device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of Emeryville, California ("Gracenote"). The software from Gracenote (the "Gracenote Software") enables this application to perform disc and/or file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information ("Gracenote Data") from online servers or embedded databases (collectively, "Gracenote Servers") and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended End-User functions or this application or device.

You agree that you will use Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal non-commercial use only.

You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit the Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data to any third party.

YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.

You agree that your non-exclusive license to use the Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your license terminates, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing Hard Disc Drive (HDD) Audio (Models with navigation system)

Gracenote reserves all rights in Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote Servers, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will Gracenote become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide. You agree that Gracenote, Inc. may enforce its rights under this Agreement against you directly in its own name.

The Gracenote service uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow the Gracenote service to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page for the Gracenote Privacy Policy for the Gracenote service.

The Gracenote Software and each item of Gracenote Data are licensed to you “AS IS.”

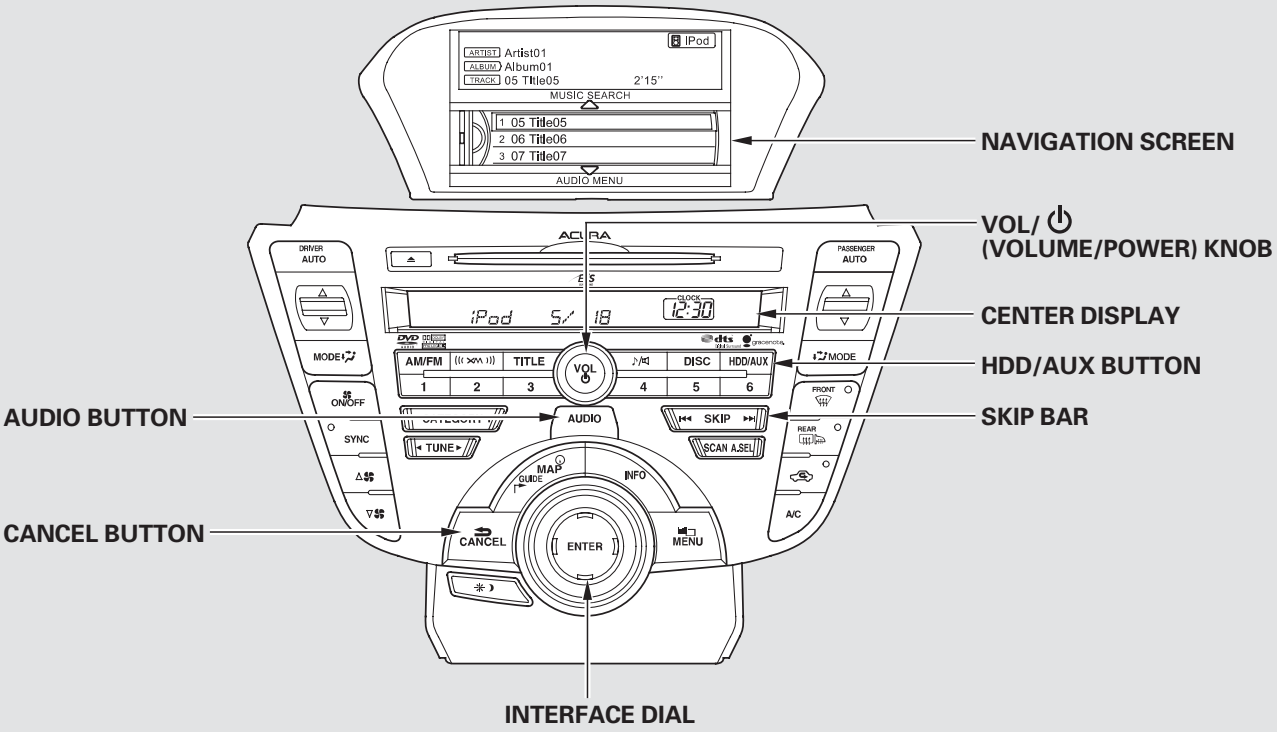
Gracenote makes no representations or warranties, express or implied, regarding the accuracy of any Gracenote Data from in the Gracenote Servers. Gracenote reserves the right to delete data from the Gracenote Servers or to change data categories for any cause that Gracenote deems sufficient. No warranty is made that the Gracenote Software or Gracenote Servers are error-free or that functioning of Gracenote Software or Gracenote Servers will be uninterrupted.

Gracenote is not obligated to provide you with new enhanced or additional data types or categories that Gracenote may provide in the future and is free to discontinue its services at any time.

GRACENOTE DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. GRACENOTE DOES NOT WARRANT THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES.
© Gracenote 2010

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing an iPod® (Models with navigation system)



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing an iPod® (Models with navigation system)

To Play an iPod®
This audio system can select and play the audio files on the iPod® with the same controls used for the in-dash disc player. To play an iPod, connect it to the USB adapter cable in the console compartment by using your dock connector, then press the HDD/AUX button. The power mode must be ACCESSORY or ON. The iPod will also be charged with the power mode in these settings.

Your vehicle has the engine start/stop button instead of an ignition switch. For more information on how to select the power mode, see page 178.

The audio system reads and plays playable sound files on the iPod. The system cannot operate an iPod as a mass storage device. The system will only play songs stored on the iPod with iTunes.

iPod and iTunes are registered trademarks owned by Apple Inc.

Voice Control System
You can select the AUX mode by using the voice control buttons.

iPod models confirmed to be compatible with your audio system using the USB adapter cable are:

Model
iPod classic 80 GB/160 GB (launch in 2007)
iPod nano (3rd and 4th generation)
iPod touch (2nd and 3rd generation)

This system may not work with all software versions of these devices.

CONTINUED

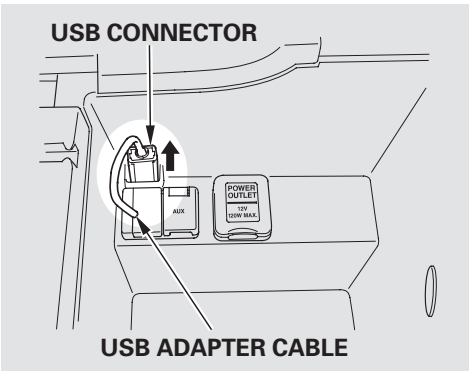
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing an iPod® (Models with navigation system)

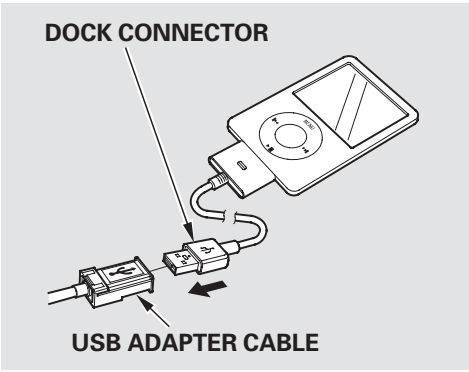
NOTE:

- Do not connect your iPod using a hub.
- Do not keep the iPod and dock connector cable in the vehicle. Direct sunlight and high heat will damage it.
- Do not use an extension cable between the USB adapter cable equipped with your vehicle and your dock connector.
- We recommend backing up your data before playing it.
- Some devices cannot be powered or charged via the USB adapter. If this is the case, use the accessory adapter to supply power to your device.

Connecting an iPod



1. Unclip the USB connector by pulling it up, and pull out the USB adapter cable in the console compartment.



2. Connect your dock connector to the iPod correctly and securely.
3. Install the dock connector to the USB adapter cable securely.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing an iPod® (Models with navigation system)

If the iPod indicator does not appear in the audio display, check the connections, and try to reconnect the iPod a few times.

If the audio system still does not recognize the iPod, the iPod may need to be reset. Follow the instructions that came with your iPod, or you can find reset instructions online at *www.apple.com/itunes/*

The current file number and total of the selected playable files are displayed in the center display. Pressing the AUDIO button displays the artist, album and track (file) names on the navigation screen.

To Change or Select Files

Use the SKIP bar while an iPod is playing to select passages and change files.

SKIP – Each time you press and release the ►►I side of the SKIP bar, the system skips forward to the beginning of the next track. Press and release the I◄◄ side of the bar to skip backward to the beginning of the current track. Press it again to skip to the beginning of the previous track.

To move rapidly within playing track, press and hold either side (►►I or I◄◄) of the SKIP bar.

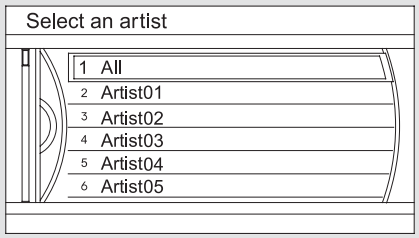
You can also select a track from any category on the list: playlists, artists, albums and songs, by using the interface dial.

Push the interface selector up to display the Music Search screen. Turn the interface dial to select a desired search method.

CONTINUED

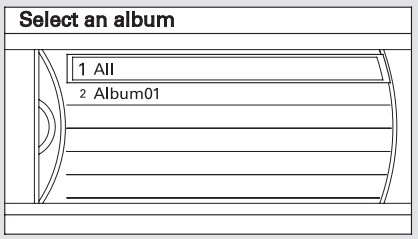
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing an iPod® (Models with navigation system)



Press ENTER on the interface selector to display the items on that list, then turn the interface dial to make a selection. Press ENTER to set your selection.

If you select “ALL” on the artists list, the albums list is displayed.



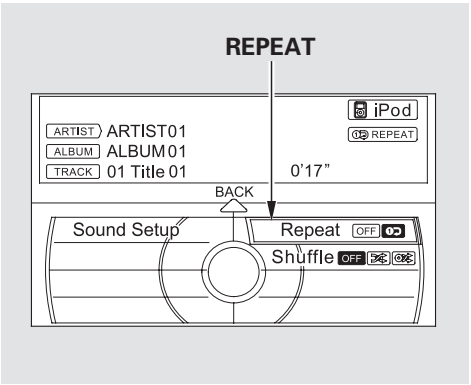
If you select “ALL” on the albums list, all the tracks become available for selection.

The track order that appears at this time varies depending on the iPod model and software.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing an iPod® (Models with navigation system)

Press the AUDIO button to go back to the normal audio playing display. Pressing the CANCEL button goes back to the previous screen, and pressing the MAP button cancels the audio control display on the screen.



REPEAT – This feature continuously plays a file.

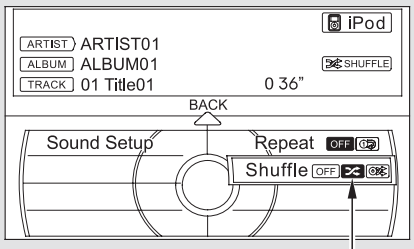
1. Press the AUDIO button to display the audio control screen, then push the interface selector down to display the AUDIO MENU.
2. Turn the interface dial, select Repeat, and press ENTER.
3. Turn the interface dial, select the Repeat icon and press ENTER. Playback of the track that is currently being played will be repeated.

To cancel this function, turn the interface dial and select the Repeat OFF icon, and then press ENTER.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing an iPod® (Models with navigation system)

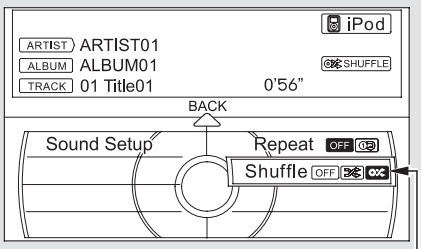


SHUFFLE ICON

SHUFFLE — This feature shuffles playback of tracks contained within the iPod. This function can be established at the same time that Repeat Playback is set up.

1. On the iPod screen, push the interface selector down to display the AUDIO MENU.
2. Turn the interface dial, select Shuffle and press ENTER on the interface selector.
3. Turn the interface dial, select the Shuffle icon and press ENTER on the interface selector.

Shuffle playback will begin. To cancel this function, turn the interface dial and select the Shuffle OFF icon, and then press ENTER on the interface selector.



ALBUM SHUFFLE ICON

ALBUM SHUFFLE — Shuffles playback of all available albums, which are selected by the desired list: playlists, artists, albums or songs. This function can be selected at the same time that Repeat Playback is setup.

1. On the iPod screen, push the interface selector down to display the AUDIO MENU.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

2. Turn the interface dial, select Shuffle and press ENTER on the interface selector.

3. Turn the interface dial, select the Album Shuffle icon and press ENTER on the interface selector. Shuffle playback of the album will begin.

To cancel this function, turn the interface dial and select the Shuffle OFF icon, and then press ENTER on the interface selector.

NOTE:
Available operating functions vary on models or versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle's audio system.

To Stop Playing Your iPod
To play the radio, press the AM/FM, or «XM» button. Press the DISC button to switch to the disc mode. Press the HDD/AUX button to switch the audio mode between HDD Audio, USB and *Bluetooth*® Audio.

You can also press the MODE button on the steering wheel to change modes.

Disconnecting an iPod
You can disconnect the iPod at any time when you see the "OK to disconnect" message* in the iPod display. Always make sure you see "OK to disconnect" message in the iPod display before you disconnect it. Make sure to follow the iPod's instructions on how to disconnect the dock connector from the USB adapter cable.

* : The displayed message may vary on models or versions. On some models, there is no message to disconnect.

When you disconnect the iPod while it is playing, the center display and the audio screen (if selected) show USB NO DATA.

If you reconnect the same iPod, the system may begin playing where it left off, depending on what mode the iPod is in when it is reconnected.

NOTICE

When you connect your iPod to the navigation system, the most recent settings (Shuffle, Repeat, etc.) will be carried over.

iPod® Error Messages
If you see an error message in the center display, see page 346 .

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

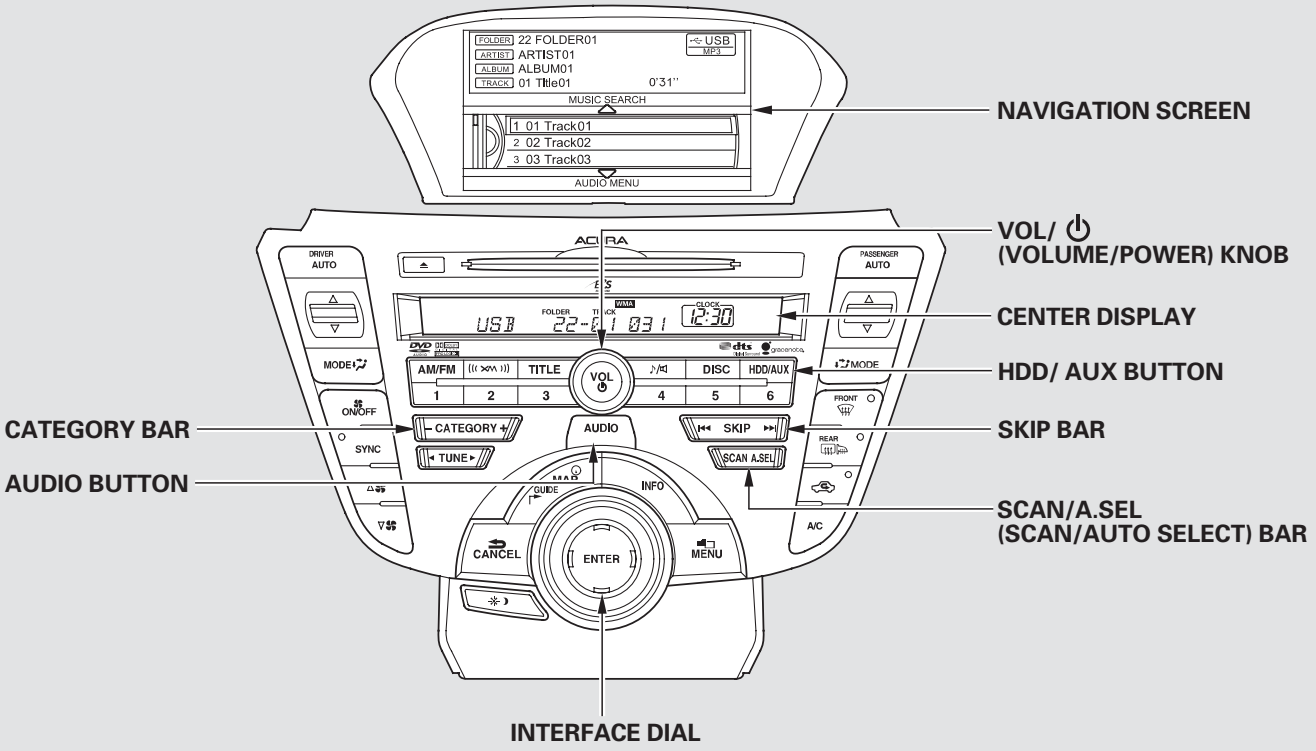
iPod® Error Messages (Models with navigation system)

If you see an error message in the center display while playing an iPod, find the solution in the chart to the right. If you cannot clear the error message, take your vehicle to your dealer.

Error Message	Solution
UNSUPPORTED Ver.	Appears when an unsupported iPod is inserted.
CONNECT RETRY	Appears when the iPod cannot be authenticated.
NO SONG	Appears when there are no files in the iPod.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing a USB Flash Memory Device (Models with navigation system)



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing a USB Flash Memory Device (Models with navigation system)

To Play a USB Flash Memory Device

This audio system can select and play the audio files on a USB flash memory device with the same controls used for the disc player. To play a USB flash memory device, connect it to the USB adapter cable in the console compartment, then press the HDD/AUX button until you see “USB” in the display. The power mode must be ACCESSORY or ON.

Your vehicle has the engine start/stop button instead of an ignition switch. For more information on how to select the power mode, see page 178 .

The audio system reads and plays the audio files on the USB flash memory device in MP3, WMA or AAC* formats. The USB flash memory device limit is up to 700 folders or up to 15000 files.

* : Only AAC format files recorded with iTunes are playable on this audio unit.

The recommended USB flash memory devices are 256 MB or higher, and formatted with the FAT file system. Some digital audio players may be compatible as well.

Some USB flash memory devices (such as devices with security lock-out features, etc.) will not work in this audio unit.

NOTE:

- Do not use a device such as a card reader or hard drive as it or your files may be damaged.
- Do not connect your USB flash memory device using a hub.
- Do not use an extension cable to the USB adapter cable equipped with your vehicle.
- Do not keep a USB flash memory device in the vehicle. Direct sunlight and high heat will damage it.
- We recommend backing up your data before playing a USB flash memory device.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing a USB Flash Memory Device (Models with navigation system)

- Depending on the type and number of files, it may take some time before they begin to play.
- Depending on the software the files were made with, it may not be possible to play some files, or display some text data.
- Depending on the type of encoding and writing software used, there may be cases where character information does not display properly.
- Some devices cannot be powered or charged via the USB adapter. If this is the case, use the accessory adapter to supply power to your device.
- The order of files in USB playback may be different from the order of files displayed in PC or other devices etc. Files are played in the order stored in USB flash memory device.

Voice Control System

You can select the AUX mode by using the voice control buttons, but cannot operate the play mode functions.

Some versions of MP3, WMA, or AAC format may not be supported. If an unsupported file is found, the audio unit displays UNSUPPORTED, then skips to the next file.

In WMA or AAC format, DRM (digital rights management) files cannot be played. If the system finds a DRM file, the audio unit displays UNPLAYABLE FILE, and then skips to the next file.

NOTICE

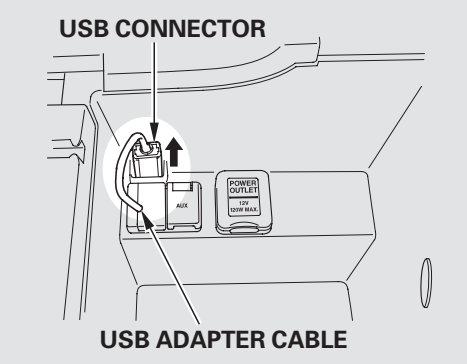
Combining a low sampling frequency with a low bitrate may result in extremely degraded sound quality.

CONTINUED

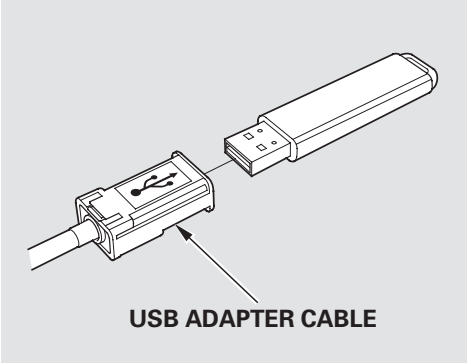
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing a USB Flash Memory Device (Models with navigation system)

Connecting a USB Flash Memory Device



1. Unclip the USB connector by pulling it up, and pull out the USB adapter cable in the console compartment.



2. Connect the USB flash memory device to the USB adapter cable correctly and securely.

When the USB device is connected and the USB mode is selected on the audio system, the USB indicator is shown in the center display. It also shows the folder and file numbers. Pressing the AUDIO button displays the USB indicator, the folder and file names, and the elapsed time in the navigation screen.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing a USB Flash Memory Device (Models with navigation system)

To Change or Select Files

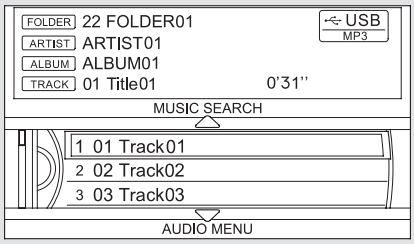
Use the SKIP bar while a USB flash memory device is playing to select passages and change files.

SKIP − Each time you press and release the ►►| side of the SKIP bar, the system skips forward to the beginning of the next file. Press and release the |◄◄ side of the bar, to skip backward to the beginning of the current file. Press it twice to skip to the beginning of the previous file.

To move rapidly within a file, press and hold either side (►►| or |◄◄) of the SKIP bar.

Folder Selection − To select a different folder, press and release either side of the CATEGORY bar. Press the + side to skip to the next folder, and press the − side to skip to the beginning of the previous folder.

To Select a File from Folder and File Lists

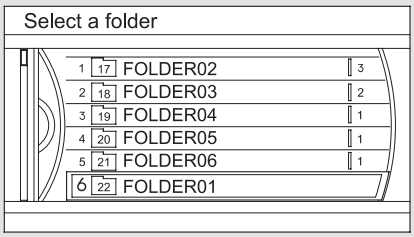


You can also select a folder or file from the list by using the interface dial. Press the AUDIO button to show the audio display on the navigation screen. Use the interface dial to highlight the file, then press ENTER to set your selection.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing a USB Flash Memory Device (Models with navigation system)



Push the selector up to display the “Select a folder” screen. Then turn the interface dial to select a folder, and press ENTER.

If you have more than one layer of folders (folders within folders), you can also see each folder on the screen.

To go back to the normal playing display, press the AUDIO button. Pressing the CANCEL button goes back to the previous screen and pressing the MAP button cancels the audio mode display.

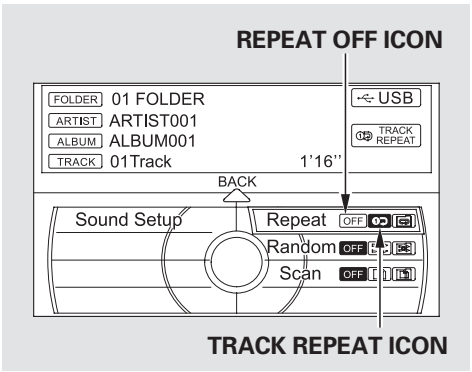
To Select Repeat, Random or Sacn Mode:

Push the interface selector down to display the AUDIO MENU.

You can select any type of repeat, random or scan mode on the audio menu screen.

Move the interface selector up to select BACK to show the USB screen, or press the CANCEL button to return to the previous screen.

TRACK REPEAT



This function repeats playback of the track.

1. On the USB main screen, push the interface selector down to display the AUDIO MENU.
2. Turn the interface dial to select Repeat and press ENTER.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

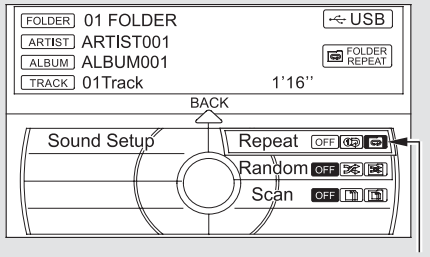
Playing a USB Flash Memory Device (Models with navigation system)

3. Turn the interface knob, select the Track Repeat icon and press ENTER on the interface selector. Playback of the track that is currently being played will be repeated.

To cancel this function, turn the interface dial and select the Repeat OFF icon, and then press ENTER.

Pressing either side of the SKIP bar also cancels this function.

FOLDER REPEAT



FOLDER REPEAT ICON

This function replays all the tracks in a folder in the order that they were stored.

1. On the USB main screen, push the interface selector down to display the AUDIO MENU.

2. Turn the interface dial to select Repeat and press ENTER.

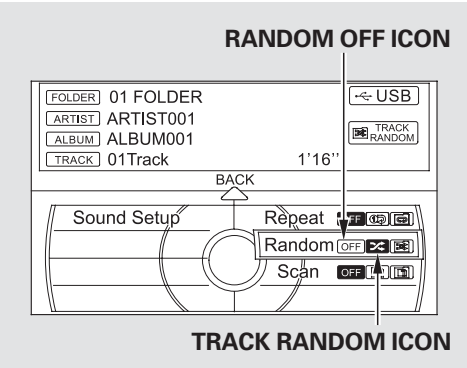
3. Turn the interface dial, select the Folder Repeat icon and press ENTER on the interface selector. Playback of the folder that is currently being played will be repeated.

To cancel this function, turn the interface dial and select the Repeat OFF icon, and then press ENTER on the interface selector.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing a USB Flash Memory Device (Models with navigation system)

TRACK RANDOM

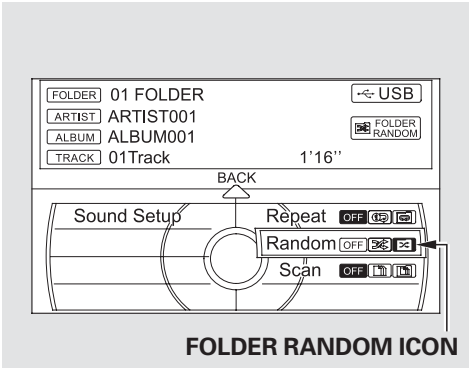


This function plays all the tracks on the USB flash memory device in random order.

1. On the USB main screen, push the interface selector down to display the AUDIO MENU.
2. Turn the interface dial, select Random and press ENTER on the interface selector.
3. Turn the interface dial, select the Track Random icon and press ENTER on the interface selector. The tracks are played in random order.

To cancel this function, turn the interface dial and select the Random OFF icon, and then press ENTER on the interface selector.

FOLDER RANDOM



This function plays all of the tracks in the current folder in random order.

1. On the USB main screen, push the interface selector down to display the AUDIO MENU.
2. Turn the interface dial, select Random and press ENTER on the interface selector.

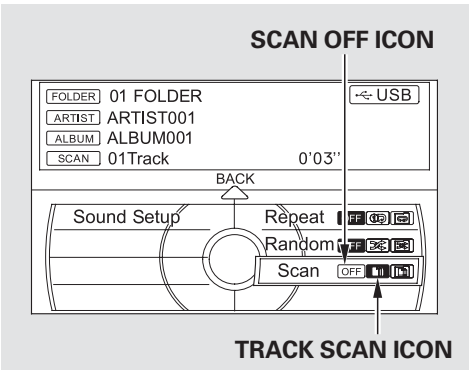
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing a USB Flash Memory Device (Models with navigation system)

3. Turn the interface dial, select the Folder Random icon and press ENTER on the interface selector. The files are played in random order.

To cancel this function, turn the interface dial and select the Random OFF icon, and then press ENTER on the interface selector.

TRACK SCAN



This function samples all the tracks in the current folder in the order that they were recorded.

1. On the USB main screen, push the interface selector down to display the AUDIO MENU.

2. Turn the interface dial, select the Scan icon and press ENTER on the interface selector.

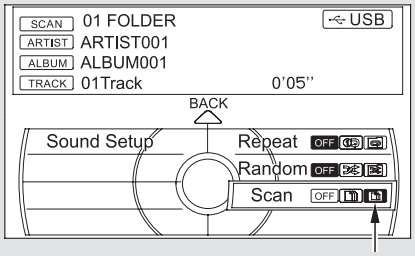
3. Turn the interface dial, select Track Scan icon and press ENTER on the interface selector. Each track or file is sampled for 10 seconds. When all the tracks in the folder have been scanned, regular playback is resumed.

To cancel this function, turn the interface dial and select the Scan OFF icon, and then press ENTER on the interface selector to play the last track sampled.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing a USB Flash Memory Device (Models with navigation system)

FOLDER SCAN



FOLDER SCAN ICON

This function samples the first file in each folder within the USB flash memory device.

1. On the USB main screen, push the interface selector down to display the AUDIO MENU.

2. Turn the interface dial, select the Scan icon and press ENTER on the interface selector.

3. Turn the interface dial, select Folder Scan icon and press ENTER on the interface selector.

The first file of the first folder is sampled for 10 seconds. If no other operations are carried out, the first files of the remaining folders are played for 10 seconds. After the first file of the last folder is played back, regular playback is resumed.

To cancel this function, turn the interface dial and select the Scan OFF icon, and then press ENTER on the interface selector.

To Stop Playing a USB Flash Memory Device

To play the radio, press the AM/FM, or «XM» button. Press the DISC button to switch to the disc mode. Press the HDD/AUX button to switch the audio mode between HDD Audio, USB and *Bluetooth*® Audio.

You can also press the MODE button on the steering wheel to change modes.

If you reconnect the same USB flash memory device, the system will begin playing where it left off.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing a USB Flash Memory Device (Models with navigation system)

Disconnecting a USB Flash Memory Device

You can disconnect the USB flash memory device at any time even if the USB mode is selected on the audio system. Always follow the USB flash memory device's instructions when you remove it.

When you disconnect the USB flash memory device while it is playing, the center display and the audio screen (if selected) show NO DATA.

USB Flash Memory Device Error Messages

If you see an error message in the center display, see page 358 .

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

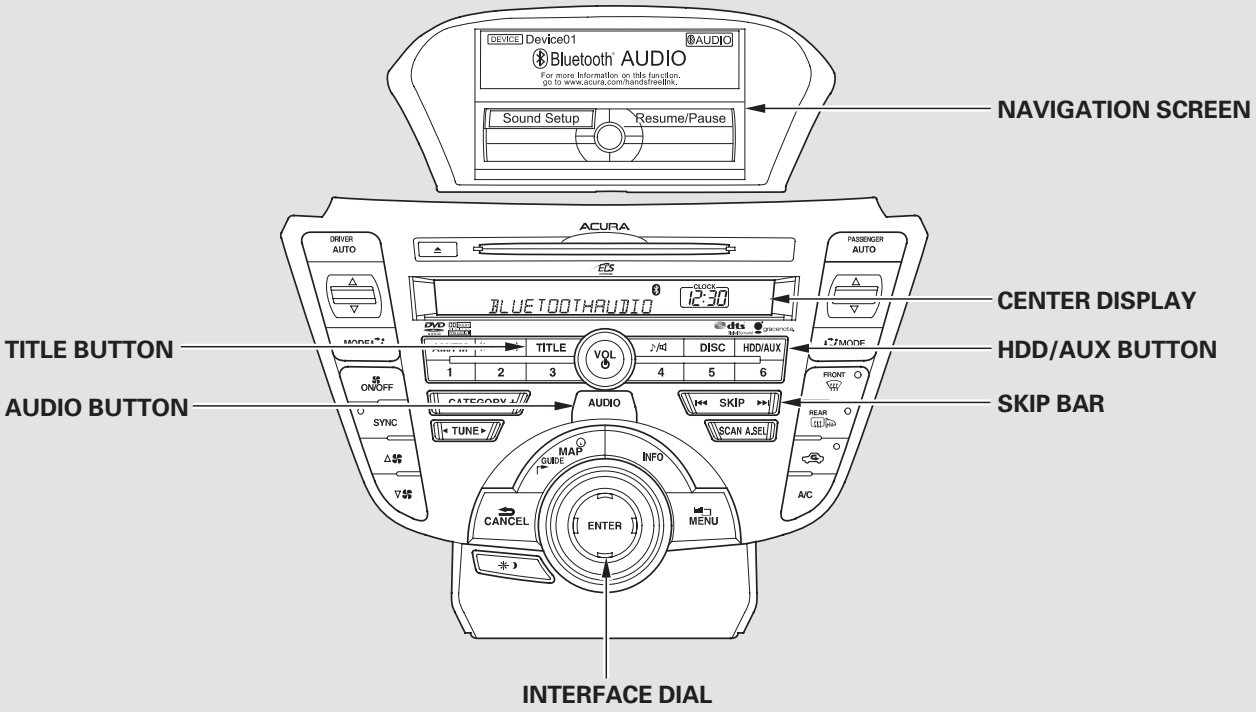
USB Flash Memory Device Error Messages (Models with navigation system)

If you see an error message in the center display while playing a USB flash memory device, find the solution in the chart to the right. If you cannot clear the error message, take your vehicle to your dealer.

Error Message	Solution
FILE ERROR	The system cannot read the file(s). Check the files in the USB flash memory device. There is a possibility that the files have been damaged.
UNSUPPORTED	Appears when an unsupported USB flash memory device is inserted.
UNPLAYABLE FILE	Appears when the file is copyright protected, such as DRM.
NO SONG	Appears when there are no playable files in the USB flash memory device.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Bluetooth® Audio System (Models with navigation system)



CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Bluetooth® Audio System (Models with navigation system)

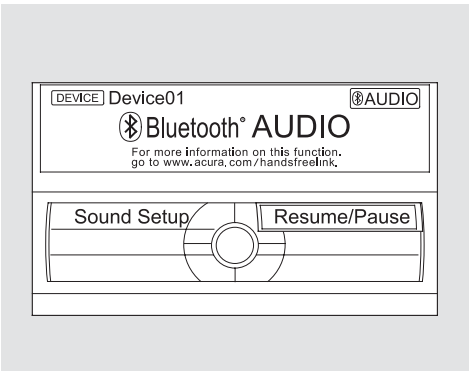
Your vehicle is equipped with a *Bluetooth*® Audio system, which allows you to listen to streaming audio from your *Bluetooth*® Audio compatible phone. This function is only available on phones that are paired and linked to the vehicle's *Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink® (HFL) system (see page 406).

Not all Bluetooth-enabled phones with streaming audio capabilities are compatible with the system. You can find an approved phone by visiting *www.acura.com/handsfreelink*, or by calling the HandsFreeLink® consumer support at 1-888-528-7876.

In Canada, visit *www.handsfreelink.ca*, or call (888) 528-7876.

NOTE: In some states, provinces, and territories, it may be illegal to perform some data device functions while driving.

To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files



Make sure that your phone is paired and linked to HFL.

To begin to play the audio files, you may need to operate your phone. If so, follow the phone maker's operating instructions.

Press the HDD/AUX button* with the power mode ACCESSORY or ON. When the phone is recognized, you will see the *Bluetooth*® Audio message and icon on the center display and the audio control display on the navigation screen (if selected), and the system begins to play.

Your vehicle has the engine start/stop button instead of an ignition switch. For more information on how to select the power mode, see page 178 .

*: If an iPod or USB flash memory device or audio unit connected to the auxiliary input jack was selected at the last mode, you will see iPod, USB or AUX in the center display and the audio control display on the navigation screen (if selected). Push the HDD/AUX button again to play audio files from your *Bluetooth*® Audio phone.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Bluetooth® Audio System (Models with navigation system)

Once a device is linked, the name of the device will appear on the screen. Pressing the TITLE button switches the center display between the *Bluetooth*® Audio and the device name.

If more than one phone is paired to the HFL system, there will be a delay before the system begins to play.

In the following conditions, the display shows "NO CONNECT" message after pressing the TITLE button.

- The phone is not linked to HFL.
- The phone is not turned on.
- The phone is not in the vehicle.
- Another HFL compatible phone, which is not compatible for *Bluetooth*® Audio, is already connected.

If your *Bluetooth*® Audio compatible phone does not operate as described, make sure it is an Acura approved phone.

To find out if your phone is approved, go to *www.acura.com/handsfreelink* (in Canada, *www.handsfreelink.ca*), or call the HandsFreeLink® consumer support at 1-888-528-7876.

Voice Control System

You can select the AUX mode by using the voice control buttons, but cannot operate the play mode functions.

To skip a file

Press the ►►| side of the SKIP bar to skip forward to the next file, and press the |◄◄ side to skip backward to the beginning of the current file. Push the |◄◄ side again to skip to the previous file.

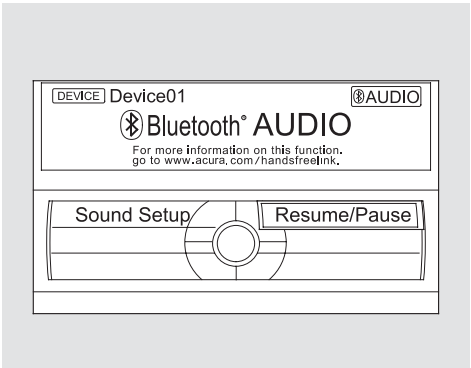
NOTE: The skip function may not be available on some phone devices.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Bluetooth® Audio System (Models with navigation system)

To pause or resume a file

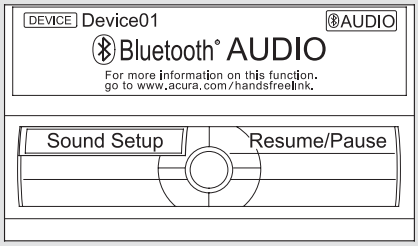


The resume/pause mode can stop playing a file temporarily.

Turn the interface dial to switch the setting between the resume/pause mode and the sound setup mode. Select Resume/Pause, then press ENTER to set your selection. Each time you press ENTER, the system switches between the resume mode and pause mode.

NOTE: The pause function may not be available on some phone devices.

To change sound settings



Press the AUDIO button to display the audio control display. Turn the dial to switch the setting between the resume/pause mode and the sound setup mode. Select Sound Setup, then press ENTER to set your selection.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Turn the dial to select a sound setup mode, then press ENTER to set your selection. See page 288 for more sound setting information.

To switch to HFL mode
If you receive a call when the *Bluetooth*® Audio is playing, press the PICK-UP button on the steering wheel. The screen and the center display switch to the HFL mode (see page 408).

After ending the call, press the HANG-UP button to go back to the *Bluetooth*® Audio mode.

To turn off the Bluetooth® Audio mode
Select any other audio mode by pressing a button; AM/FM, «XM», DISC, or HDD/AUX on the audio control panel, or press the MODE button on the steering wheel to select another audio mode.

Switching to another mode pauses the music playing from your phone.

As required by the FCC:
This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

This device complies with Industry Canada Standard RSS-210.
Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Protecting Your Discs

General Information

On models without navigation system

- When using CD-R or CD-RW discs, use only high quality discs labeled for audio use.
- When recording a CD-R or CD-RW, the recording must be closed for it to be used by the disc changer.

On models with navigation system

- When using CD-R, CD-RW, DVD-R or DVD-RW discs, use only high quality discs labeled for audio use.
- When recording a CD-R, CD-RW, DVD-R or DVD-RW the recording must be closed for it to be used by the disc player.
- When using DVD-R/RW discs, they should meet DVD verification standards.

All models

- Play only standard, round, 5-inch (12 cm) discs. Smaller or odd-shaped discs may jam in the drive or cause other problems.
- Handle your discs properly to prevent damage and skipping.

NOTICE

Do not use discs with adhesive labels. The label can curl up and cause the disc to jam in the unit.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

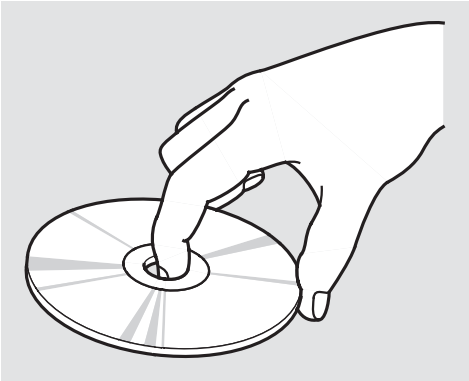
Protecting Your Discs

Protecting Discs
When a disc is not being played, store it in its case to protect it from dust and other contamination. To prevent warpage, keep discs out of direct sunlight and extreme heat.

To clean a disc, use a clean soft cloth. Wipe across the disc from the center to the outside edge.

A new disc may be rough on the inner and outer edges. The small plastic pieces causing this roughness can flake off and fall on the recording surface of the disc, causing skipping or other problems. Remove these pieces by rubbing the inner and outer edges with the side of a pencil or pen.

Never try to insert foreign objects in the disc changer.



Handle a disc by its edges; never touch either surface. Do not place stabilizer rings or labels on the disc. These, along with contamination from finger prints, liquids, and felt-tip pens, can cause the disc to not play properly, or possibly jam in the drive.

Additional Information on Recommended Discs
The in-dash disc player has a sophisticated and delicate mechanism. If you insert a damaged disc as indicated in this section, it may become stuck inside and damage the audio unit.

Examples of these discs are shown as follows.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Protecting Your Discs

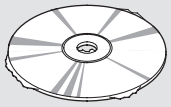
1. Bubbled, wrinkled, labeled, and excessively thick discs

Bubbled/ Wrinkled | With Label/ Sticker | Using Printer Label Kit | Sealed | With Plastic Ring

2. Damaged discs

Chipped/ Cracked | Warped

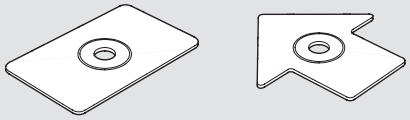
3. Poor quality discs



Burrs

4. Small, irregular shaped discs

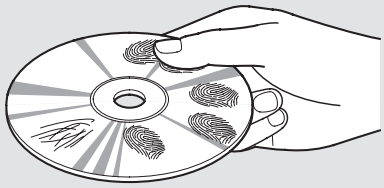
3-inch (8-cm) CD | Triangle Shape



Can Shape | Arrow Shape

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

5. Discs with scratches, dirty discs



Fingerprints, scratches, etc.

On models without navigation system
- CD-R or CD-RW may not play due to the recording conditions.

On models with navigation system
- CD-R, CD-RW, DVD-R or DVD-RW may not play due to the recording conditions.
- Scratches and fingerprints on the discs may cause the sound to skip.
- Recommended discs are printed with the following logo.

COMPACT disc DIGITAL AUDIO

- Audio unit may not play the following formats.

mp3 Plays Windows Media™

- This audio unit cannot play a Dual® disc .

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

AM/FM Radio Reception

Radio Frequencies
Your vehicle's radio can receive the complete AM and FM bands.

Those bands cover these frequencies:

AM band: 530 to 1,710 kHz

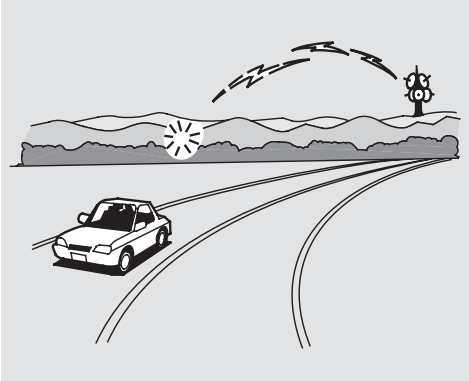
FM band: 87.7 to 107.9 MHz

Radio stations on the AM band are assigned frequencies at least 10 kHz apart (530, 540, 550). Stations on the FM band are assigned frequencies at least 0.2 MHz apart (87.9, 88.1, 88.3).

Stations must use these exact frequencies. It is fairly common for stations to round-off the frequency in their advertising, so your radio could display a frequency of 100.9 even though the announcer may identify the station as "FM101."

Radio Reception
How well your vehicle's radio receives stations is dependent on many factors, such as the distance from the station's transmitter, nearby large objects, and atmospheric conditions.

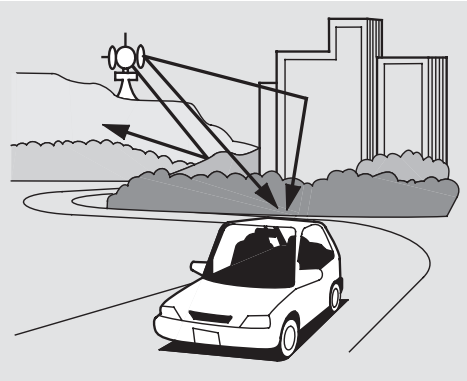
A radio station's signal gets weaker as you get farther away from its transmitter. If you are listening to an AM station, you will notice the sound volume becoming weaker, and the station drifting in and out. If you are listening to an FM station, you will see the stereo indicator flickering off and on as the signal weakens. Eventually, the stereo indicator will go off and the sound will fade completely as you get out of range of the station's signal.



Driving very near the transmitter of a station that is broadcasting on a frequency close to the frequency of the station you are listening to can also affect your radio's reception. You may temporarily hear both stations, or hear only the station you are close to.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

AM/FM Radio Reception



Radio signals, especially on the FM band, are deflected by large objects such as buildings and hills. Your radio then receives both the direct signal from the station's transmitter, and the deflected signal. This causes the sound to distort or flutter. This is a main cause of poor radio reception in city driving.

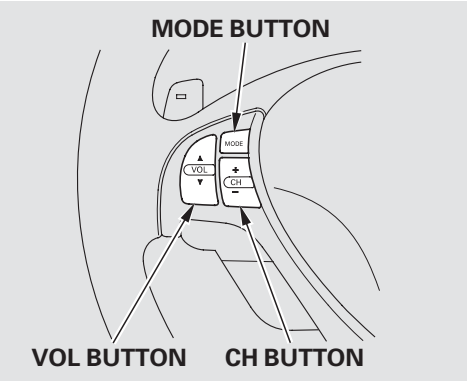
Radio reception can be affected by atmospheric conditions such as thunderstorms, high humidity, and even sunspots. You may be able to receive a distant radio station one day and not receive it the next day because of a change in conditions.

Electrical interference from passing vehicles and stationary sources can cause temporary reception problems.

As required by the FCC:
Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Remote Audio Controls



Three controls for the audio system are mounted in the steering wheel hub. These let you control basic functions without removing your hand from the wheel.

The VOL button adjusts the volume up (▲) or down (▼). Press the top or bottom of the button, hold it until the desired volume is reached, then release it.

The MODE button changes the mode. Pressing the button repeatedly selects FM1, FM2, AM, XM1, XM2, disc (if a disc is loaded), HDD (on models with navigation system), *Bluetooth*® Audio (if paired), AUX (if an appropriate audio unit is connected).

If an iPod or a USB flash memory device is plugged into the system, you can also select AUX.

If you are listening to the radio, use the CH button to change stations. Each time you press the top (+) of the button, the system goes to the next preset station on the band you are listening to. Press the bottom (−) to go back to the previous preset station. If you press and hold the CH button (+) or (−), the system goes into the skip (seek) mode. It stops when it finds a station with a strong signal.

If you are playing a disc, the system skips to the beginning of the next track/file (file in MP3, WMA, or AAC format) each time you press the top (+) of the CH button. Press the bottom (−) to return to the beginning of the current track/file. Press it twice to return to the previous track/file.

You will see the track/file number and the elapsed time. If the disc has text data or is compressed in MP3 or WMA, you can also see any other information (track title, file name, folder name, etc.).

In MP3, WMA or AAC mode, you can use the seek function to select folders. Press and hold the top (+) of the CH button until you hear a beep to skip forward to the first file of the next folder. Press the bottom (−) to skip backward to the previous folder.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If you are playing a USB flash memory device or iPod with the USB adapter cable, press and release the top (+) of the CH button to skip forward to the beginning of the next file. Press the bottom (−) to skip backward to the beginning of the current file. Press it twice to return to the previous file.

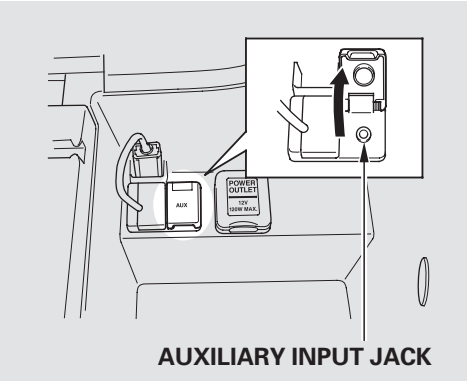
When playing a USB flash memory device, you can also use the seek function to skip the folder. To activate this, press and hold either side of the CH button until you hear a beep.

On models without navigation system

If you are playing a conventional CD (without the text data and not compressed in MP3 or WMA), you can use the skip function to select discs. Press and hold the top (+) of the CH button until you hear a beep, to skip forward to the next disc. Press and hold the bottom (−) to skip backward to the previous disc.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Auxiliary Input Jack



AUXILIARY INPUT JACK

The auxiliary input jack is inside the console compartment. The system will accept auxiliary input from standard audio accessories using a 1/8 inch (3.5 mm) stereo miniplug.

When you plug in a mini-jack cable between a compatible audio unit and the jack, you will see AUX in the display and the system automatically switches to AUX mode.

When a compatible audio unit is connected to the jack, press the HDD/AUX button (AUX button on models without navigation system) to select it.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Radio Theft Protection

Your vehicle's audio system may disable itself if it is disconnected from electrical power for any reason. To make it work again, you must enter a specific five-digit code with the preset buttons. Because there are hundreds of number combinations possible from the five digits, making the system work without knowing the exact code is nearly impossible.

You should have received a radio code card that lists your audio system's code and serial numbers. It is best to store this card in a safe place at home. In addition, you should write the audio system's serial number in this owner's manual.

If you lose the card, you must obtain the code number from your dealer. To do this, you will need the audio system's serial number.

NOTE:
If you have a My Acura account, you can retrieve the anti-theft code online.

If your vehicle's battery is disconnected or goes dead, the audio system will disable itself. If this happens, you will see "ENTER CODE" in the frequency display (on the center display on models with navigation system) the next time you turn on the system. Use the preset buttons to enter the five-digit code. The code is on the radio code card included in your owner's manual kit. When it is entered correctly, the radio will start playing.

If you make a mistake entering the code, do not start over; complete the five-digit sequence, then enter the correct code. You have ten tries to enter the correct code. If you are unsuccessful in ten attempts, you must then leave the system on for 1 hour before trying again.

The system will retain your AM and FM presets even if power is disconnected.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Setting the Clock

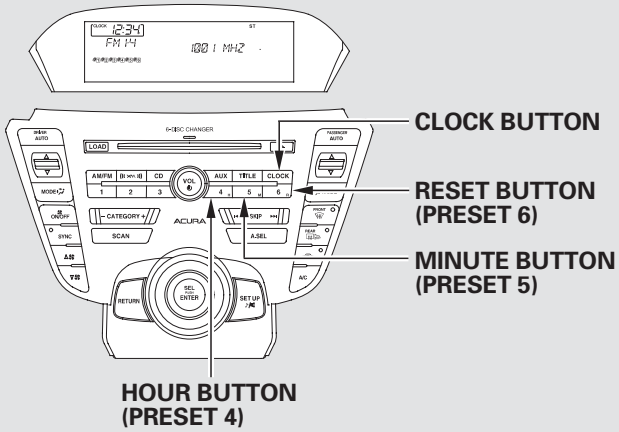
On models without navigation system
To set the time, press the CLOCK button until you hear a beep. The displayed time begins to blink.

Change the hours by pressing the H (hour) button until the numbers advance to the desired time. Change the minutes by pressing the M (minute) button until the numbers advance to the desired time.

Press the CLOCK button again to enter the set time.

You can quickly set the time to the nearest hour. If the displayed time is before the half hour, press and hold the CLOCK button, then press the R (reset) button to set the time back to the previous hour. If the displayed time is after the half hour, the same procedure sets the time forward to the beginning of the next hour.

On models without navigation system



For example:

- 1:06 would RESET to 1:00.
- 1:52 would RESET to 2:00.

On models with navigation system
The navigation system receives signals from the global positioning system (GPS), and the displayed time is updated automatically by the GPS. Refer to the navigation system manual for how to adjust the time.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Setting the Clock

On models without navigation system

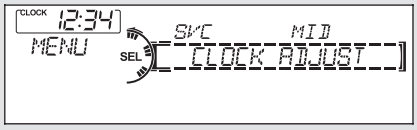
Adjusting the Clock with SETUP Button

You can also adjust the clock and switch the clock display between 24-hours and 12-hours in the menu mode.

To adjust the clock setting:

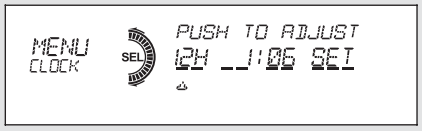
1. Press and release the SETUP button. The display shows you the menu items.

   You can adjust the clock setting with the ignition switch in the ACCESSORY (I) or ON (II) position.



2. Turn the selector knob to select "CLOCK ADJUST."

3. Press the selector knob (ENTER) to enter your selection. The display changes to the clock adjusting display.

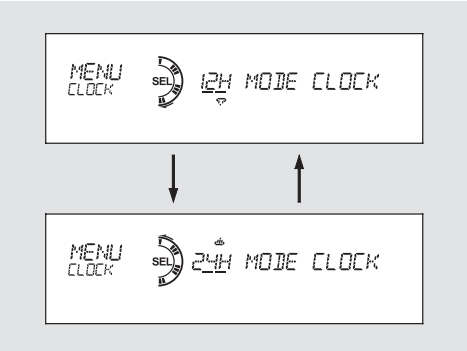


4. Turn the selector knob to select the item which you want to adjust. Turning the selector knob will change the selected item between the clock display setting, hours, minutes, and SET. The selected item is indicated with △ in the display.

CONTINUED

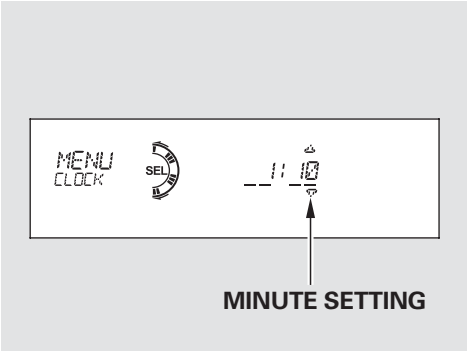
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Setting the Clock



5. Turn the selector knob to change the setting between 12H and 24H.

6. Press the selector knob (ENTER) to enter your selection. The display will return to the clock adjusting display.



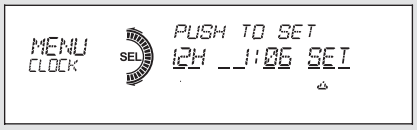
7. To set the time, turn the selector knob and select the hours or the minutes, then press the knob to enter your selection. The display changes to the setting display.

8. Turn the selector knob to count the numbers up or down.

9. Press the selector knob (ENTER) to enter your selection. The display will return to the clock adjusting display.

While setting the clock, pressing the RETURN button will go back to the previous display. Pressing the SETUP button again will cancel this setting mode.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



10. To enter the clock setting, turn the selector knob to select "SET," then press the knob. The display will return to the menu item display.

11. Press either the RETURN or SETUP button to go back to the normal display.

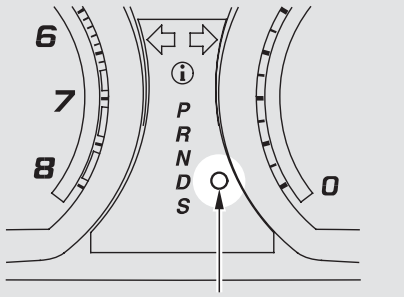
Security System

The security system helps to protect your vehicle and valuables from theft. The horn sounds and a combination of headlights, parking lights, side marker lights and taillights flash if someone attempts to break into your vehicle or remove the audio unit. This alarm continues for 2 minutes, then the system resets. To reset an activated system before the 2 minutes have elapsed, unlock the driver's door with the key or use the remote transmitter/keyless access remote.

On models with keyless access system

You can also turn off an activated system by grabbing either front door handle while carrying the keyless access remote to unlock the door.

The security system automatically sets 15 seconds after you lock the doors, hood, and trunk. For the system to activate, you must lock the doors from the outside with the key, driver's lock tab, master door lock switch, or remote transmitter (keyless access remote on models with keyless access system). The security system indicator on the instrument panel starts blinking immediately to show you the system is setting itself.



SECURITY SYSTEM INDICATOR
A/T model is shown.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Security System

Once the security system is set, opening any door (without using the key or the remote transmitter/keyless access remote), the hood, or the trunk will cause the alarm to activate. It will also activate if the audio unit is removed from the dashboard or the wiring is cut.

On models with keyless access system
You can also set the security system by pressing the lock button on either front door handle while carrying the keyless access remote.

With the system set, you can still open the trunk with the remote transmitter/keyless access remote without triggering the alarm. The alarm will sound if the trunk is opened with the trunk release button on the driver's door, the trunk release handle behind the trunk pass-through cover, or the emergency trunk opener.

NOTE: Use the remote transmitter/keyless access remote to quickly check that the hood, the trunk, and all doors are closed. Push the lock button twice within 5 seconds. There should be an audible confirmation beep.

The security system will not set if the hood, trunk, or any door is not fully closed. If the system will not set, turn the ignition switch* to the ON (II) position, and check the indicators on the multi-information display. Close any door or the trunk indicated on the display. Check the hood visually since it is not part of the display, and shut it if necessary.

Do not attempt to alter this system or add other devices to it.

* : Models equipped with the keyless access system have an engine start/stop button instead of an ignition switch. ON Mode is the equivalent of ON (II). For more information, see pages 178 and 181.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

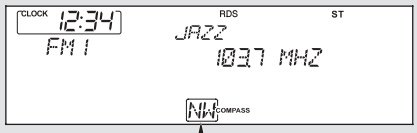
On models without navigation system

Compass Operation

Compass operation can be affected by driving near power lines or stations, across bridges, through tunnels, over railroad crossings, past large vehicles, or driving near large objects that can cause a magnetic disturbance. It can also be affected by accessories such as antennas and roof racks that are mounted by magnets.

When you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, the compass is self-calibrating, then the compass display is shown in the display.

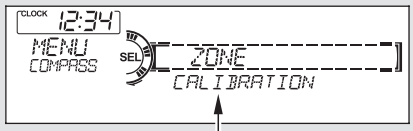
Compass Calibration



COMPASS

U.S. model is shown.

The compass may need to be manually calibrated after exposure to a strong magnetic field. If the compass seems to be continually showing the wrong direction and is not self-calibrating, or the compass display is blinking with the CAL indicator on, do the following procedure.



COMPASS SETTING MENU ITEMS

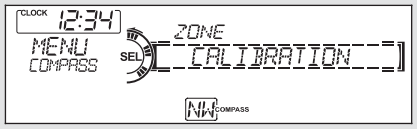
NOTE: Do this procedure in an open area, away from buildings, power lines, and other vehicles.

1. Turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position.
2. Press and hold the SETUP button for about 5 seconds. The display shows you the compass setting menu items.

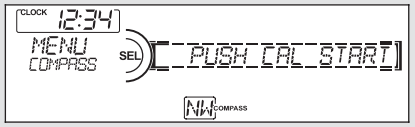
CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Compass



3. Turn the selector knob to select "CALIBRATION."



4. Press the selector knob (ENTER) to enter your selection. The display shows you "PUSH CAL START."

   While setting the compass, press the RETURN button to go back to the previous display. Pressing the SETUP button will cancel the compass setting mode.

5. Press the selector knob (ENTER). The compass display is blinking and the CAL indicator is shown.

6. Drive the vehicle slowly in two complete circles.

When the calibration is successfully completed, the CAL indicator goes off and the compass display will stop blinking and show an actual heading.

The audio system is not related to the compass system. Even if the compass system is calibrating, the display returns to the normal display which you last selected.

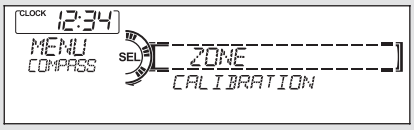
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Compass Zone Selection
In most areas, there is a variation between magnetic north and true north. Zone selection is required so the compass can compensate for this variation. To check and select the zone, do this:

1. Turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position.

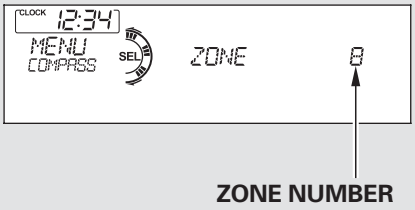
2. Press and hold the SETUP button for about 5 seconds. The display shows you the compass setting menu items.

3. Turn the selector knob to select "ZONE." Press the selector knob (ENTER) to enter your selection. The display shows you the currently selected zone number.



4. Find the zone for your area on the map. If the correct zone is not shown, turn the selector knob to cycle the zone lists up or down.

   If necessary, press the RETURN button to return to the previous display. Pressing the SETUP button will cancel the compass setting mode.



5. Once the correct zone is displayed, press the selector knob. The display then returns to normal.

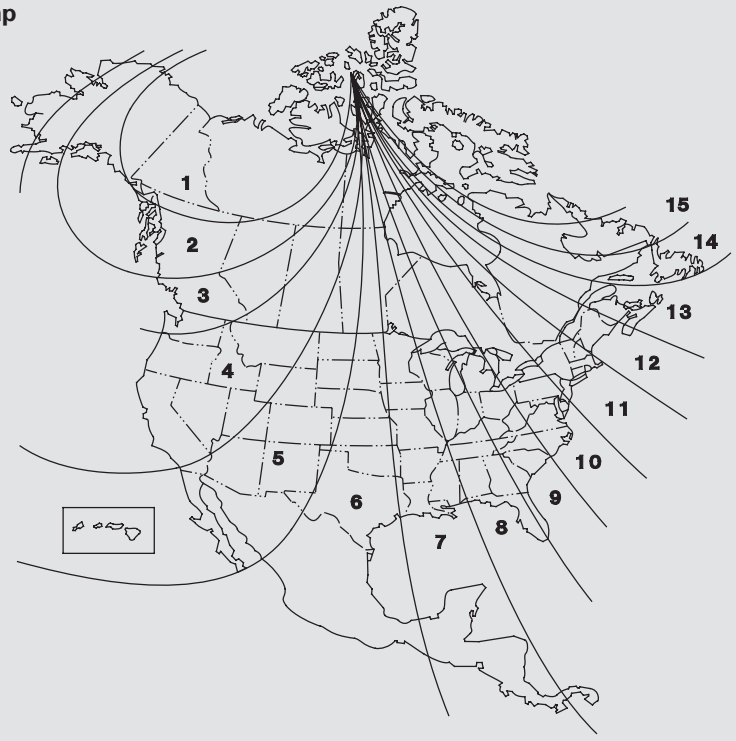
CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Compass

The audio system is not related to the compass system. Even if the compass system is in the zone setting mode, the display returns to the normal display which you last selected.

Zone Map



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Cruise Control

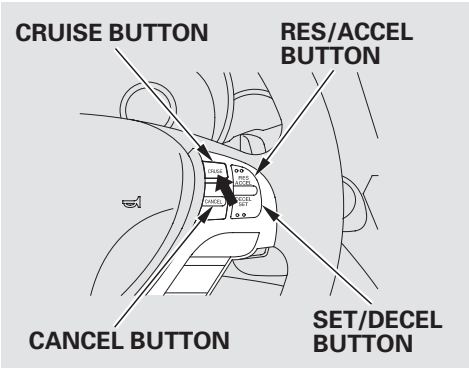
Cruise control allows you to maintain a set speed above 25 mph (40 km/h) without keeping your foot on the accelerator pedal. It should be used for cruising on straight, open highways. It is not recommended for city driving, winding roads, slippery roads, heavy rain, or bad weather.

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of the cruise control can lead to a crash.

Use the cruise control only when traveling on open highways in good weather.

Using the Cruise Control



1. Push in the CRUISE button on the steering wheel. The CRUISE MAIN indicator on the instrument panel will come on.

   The cruise control system can be left on, even when it is not in use.

2. Accelerate to the desired cruising speed above 25 mph (40 km/h).

3. Press and release the SET/DECEL button on the steering wheel. The CRUISE CONTROL indicator on the instrument panel comes on to show the system is now activated.

Cruise control may not hold the set speed when you are going up and down hills. If your vehicle speed increases going down a hill, use the brakes to slow down. This will cancel the cruise control. To resume the set speed, press the RES/ACCEL button. The CRUISE CONTROL indicator on the instrument panel will come back on.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Cruise Control

Changing the Set Speed
You can increase the set cruising speed in any of these ways:

- Press and hold the RES/ACCEL button. When you reach the desired cruising speed, release the button.
- Push on the accelerator pedal. Accelerate to the desired cruising speed, then press the SET/ DECEL button.
- To increase the speed in very small amounts, tap the RES/ ACCEL button. Each time you do this, your vehicle speeds up about 1 mph (1.6 km/h).

You can decrease the set cruising speed in any of these ways:

NOTE: If you need to decrease your speed quickly, use the brakes as you normally would.

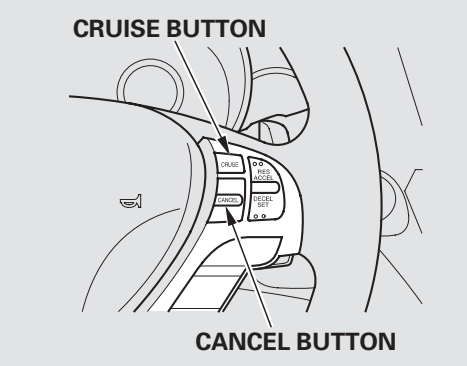
- Press and hold the SET/DECEL button. Release the button when you reach the desired speed.
- To slow down in very small amounts, tap the SET/DECEL button. Each time you do this, your vehicle will slow down about 1 mph (1.6 km/h).
- Tap the brake or clutch pedal lightly with your foot. The CRUISE CONTROL indicator on the instrument panel will go out. When the vehicle slows to the desired speed, press the SET/ DECEL button.

Even with cruise control turned on, you can still use the accelerator pedal to speed up for passing. After completing the pass, take your foot off the accelerator pedal. The vehicle will return to the set cruising speed.

Resting your foot on the brake or clutch pedal causes the cruise control to cancel.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Canceling Cruise Control



You can cancel cruise control in any of these ways:

- Tap the brake or clutch pedal.
- Push the CANCEL button on the steering wheel.
- Push the CRUISE button on the steering wheel.

Resuming the Set Speed

When you push the CANCEL button, or tap the brake or clutch pedal, the system will remember the previously set cruising speed. To return to that speed, accelerate to above 25 mph (40 km/h), and then press and release the RES/ACCEL button. The CRUISE CONTROL indicator comes on. The vehicle will accelerate to the same cruising speed as before.

Pressing the CRUISE button turns the system completely off and erases the previous cruising speed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

HomeLink® Universal Transceiver

The HomeLink® Universal Transceiver built into your vehicle can be programmed to operate up to three remote controlled devices around your home, such as garage doors, lighting, or home security systems.

General Safety Information
Before programming your HomeLink to operate a garage door opener, confirm that the opener has an external entrapment protection system, such as an "electronic eye," or other safety and reverse stop features.

If your garage door was manufactured before April 1, 1982, you may not be able to program HomeLink to operate it. These units do not have safety features that cause the motor to stop and reverse it if an obstacle is detected during closing, increasing the risk of injury. Do not use HomeLink with any garage door opener that lacks safety stop and reverse features.

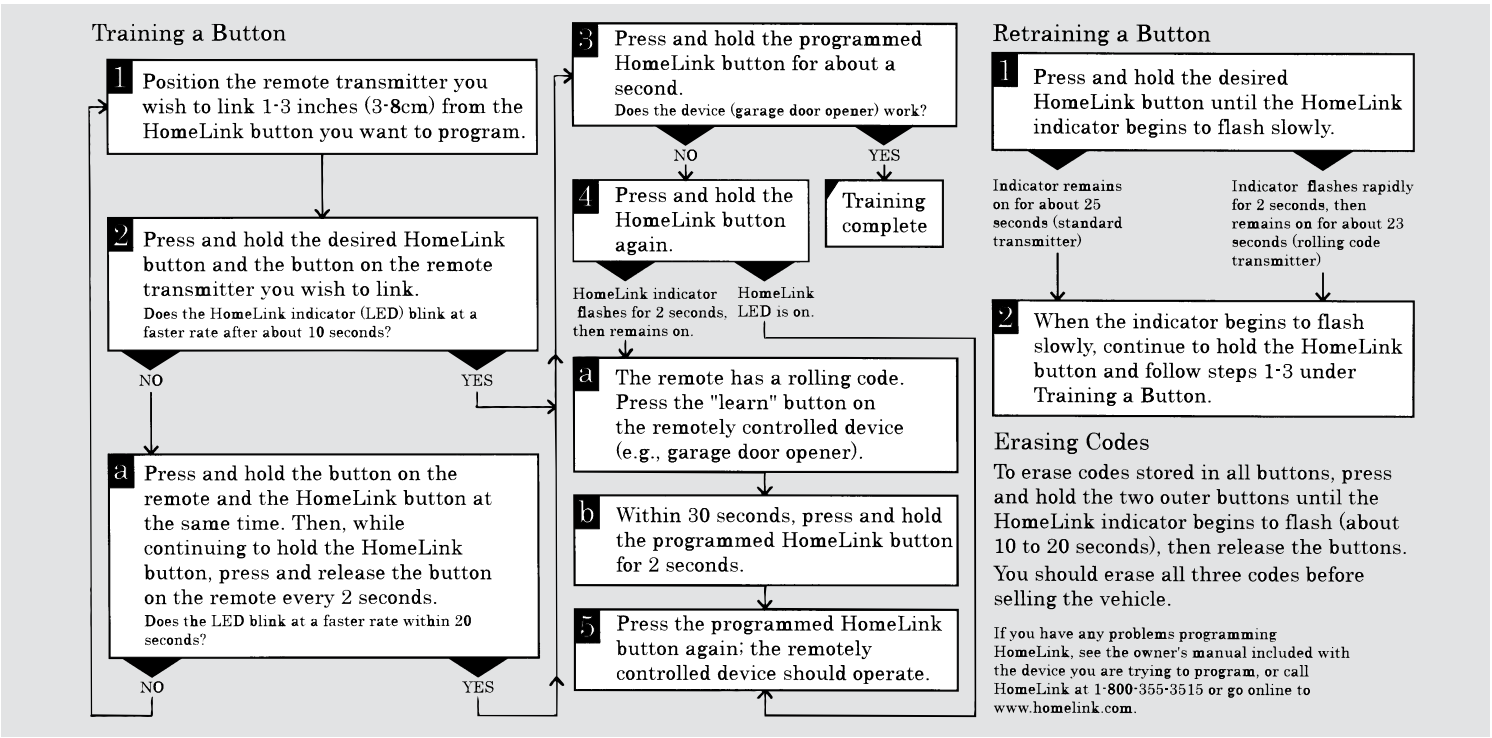
Units manufactured between April 1, 1982 and January 1, 1993 may be equipped with safety stop and reverse features. If your unit does not have an external entrapment protection system, an easy test to confirm the function and performance of the safety stop and reverse feature is to lay a 2 × 4 under the closing door. The door should stop and reverse upon contacting the piece of wood.
As an additional safety feature, garage door openers manufactured after January 1, 1993 are required to have external entrapment protection systems, such as an electronic eye, which detect an object obstructing the door.

Important Safety Precautions
Refer to the safety information that came with your garage door opener to test that the safety features are functioning properly. If you do not have this information, contact the manufacturer of the equipment.
Before programming HomeLink to a garage door or gate opener, make sure that people and objects are out of the way of the device to prevent potential injury or damage.
When programming a garage door opener, park just outside the garage.

Training HomeLink
Before you begin — If you just received your vehicle and have not trained any of the buttons in HomeLink before, you should erase any previously learned codes before training the first button. To do this, press and hold the two outside buttons on the HomeLink transceiver for about 10—20 seconds, until the red indicator flashes. Release the buttons, then proceed to step 1.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If you are training the second or third buttons, go directly to step 1.


Training a Button
1 Position the remote transmitter you wish to link 1-3 inches (3-8cm) from the HomeLink button you want to program.
2 Press and hold the desired HomeLink button and the button on the remote transmitter you wish to link.
Does the HomeLink indicator (LED) blink at a faster rate after about 10 seconds?
NO
YES
a Press and hold the button on the remote and the HomeLink button at the same time. Then, while continuing to hold the HomeLink button, press and release the button on the remote every 2 seconds.
Does the LED blink at a faster rate within 20 seconds?
NO
YES
3 Press and hold the programmed HomeLink button for about a second.
Does the device (garage door opener) work?
NO
YES
4 Press and hold the HomeLink button again.
Training complete
HomeLink indicator flashes for 2 seconds, then remains on.
HomeLink LED is on.
a The remote has a rolling code. Press the "learn" button on the remotely controlled device (e.g., garage door opener).
b Within 30 seconds, press and hold the programmed HomeLink button for 2 seconds.
5 Press the programmed HomeLink button again; the remotely controlled device should operate.
Retraining a Button
1 Press and hold the desired HomeLink button until the HomeLink indicator begins to flash slowly.
Indicator remains on for about 25 seconds (standard transmitter)
Indicator flashes rapidly for 2 seconds, then remains on for about 23 seconds (rolling code transmitter)
2 When the indicator begins to flash slowly, continue to hold the HomeLink button and follow steps 1-3 under Training a Button.
Erasing Codes
To erase codes stored in all buttons, press and hold the two outer buttons until the HomeLink indicator begins to flash (about 10 to 20 seconds), then release the buttons. You should erase all three codes before selling the vehicle.
If you have any problems programming HomeLink, see the owner's manual included with the device you are trying to program, or call HomeLink at 1-800-355-3515 or go online to www.homelink.com.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

HomeLink® Universal Transceiver

HomeLink® is a registered trademark of Johnson Controls, Inc.

As required by the FCC:
This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

This device complies with Industry Canada Standard RSS-210.
Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® (Models without navigation system)

Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® (HFL) allows you to place and receive phone calls using voice commands, without handling your cell phone.

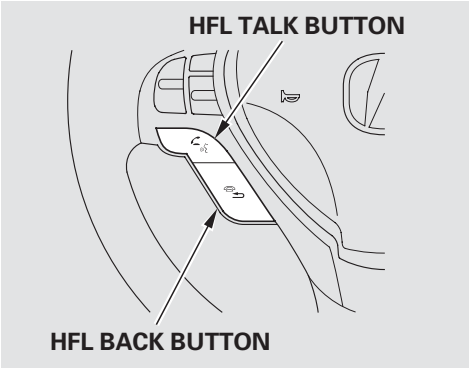
To use HFL, you need a Bluetooth-compatible cell phone. For a list of compatible phones, pairing procedures, and special feature capabilities:

In the U.S., visit *www.acura.com/handsfreelink*, or call (888) 528-7876.

In Canada, visit *www.handsfreelink.ca,* or call (888) 528-7876.

Using HFL

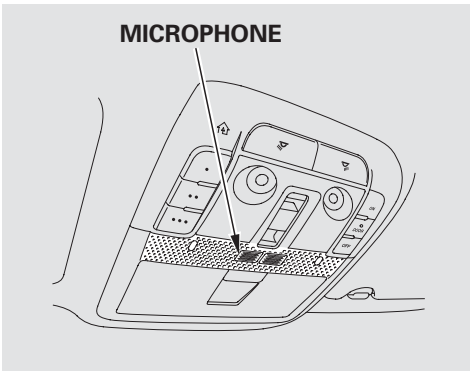
HFL Buttons



HFL Talk button – Press and release to give a command or answer a call.

HFL Back button – Press and release to end a call, go back to the previous command, or cancel the command.

Voice Control Tips



- Air or wind noise from the dashboard and side vents, windows and moonroof may interfere with the microphone. Adjust or close them as necessary.
- Press and release the HFL Talk button each time you want to make a command. After the beep, speak in a clear, natural tone.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® (Models without navigation system)

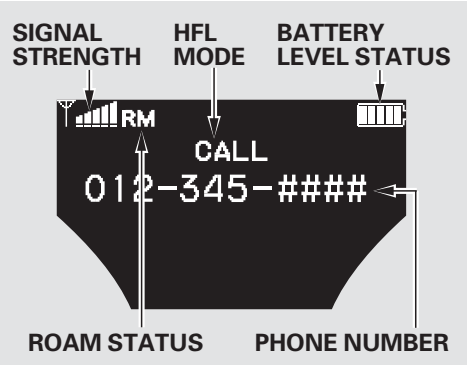
- Try to reduce all background noise. If the microphone picks up voices other than yours, commands may be misinterpreted.
- Many commands can be spoken together. For example, you can say “Call 123-456-# # # #” or “Dial Peter.”
- To change the volume level of HFL, use the audio system volume knob or the steering wheel volume controls.

Help Features

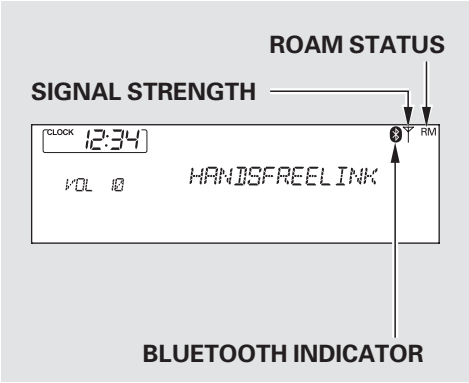
- To hear general HFL information, including help on pairing a phone or setting up the system, say “Tutorial.”
- For help at any time, including a list of available commands, say “Hands free help.”

Information Display

As an incoming call notification, you will see the following display:



Some phones may send battery, signal strength, and roaming status information to HFL.



When there is an incoming call, or HFL is in use, “HANDSFREELINK” will appear on the display.

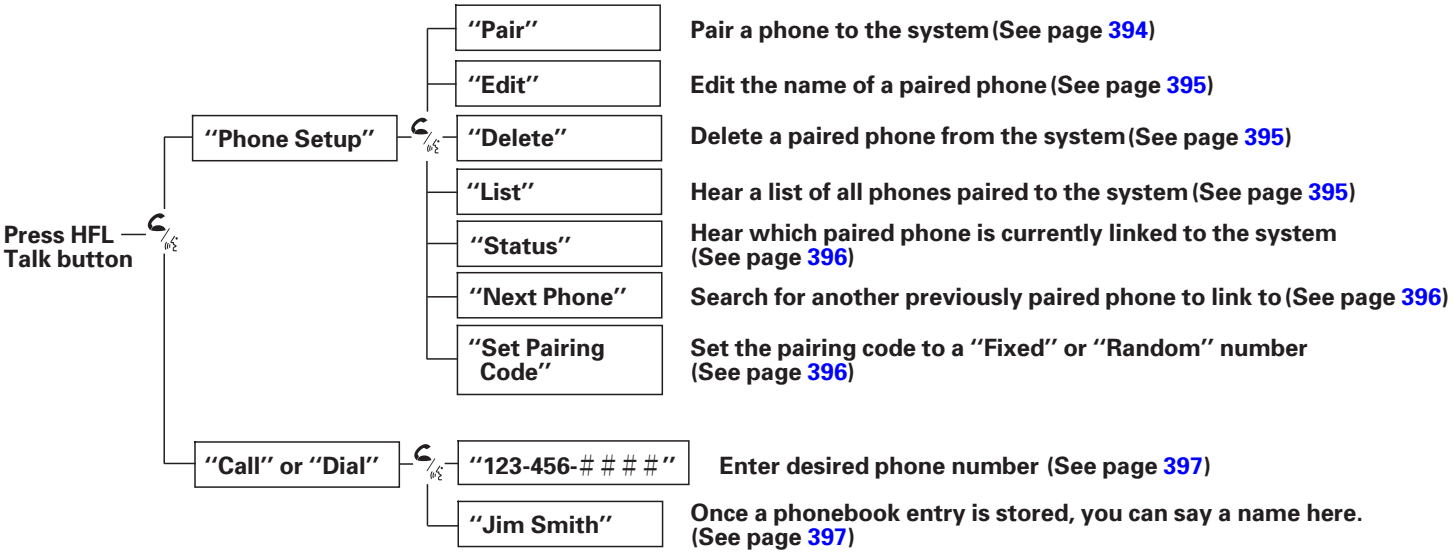
“ ” indicator will be displayed on the audio display when a phone is linked.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® (Models without navigation system)

How to Use HFL

The ignition switch must be in the ACCESSORY (I) or ON (II) position.

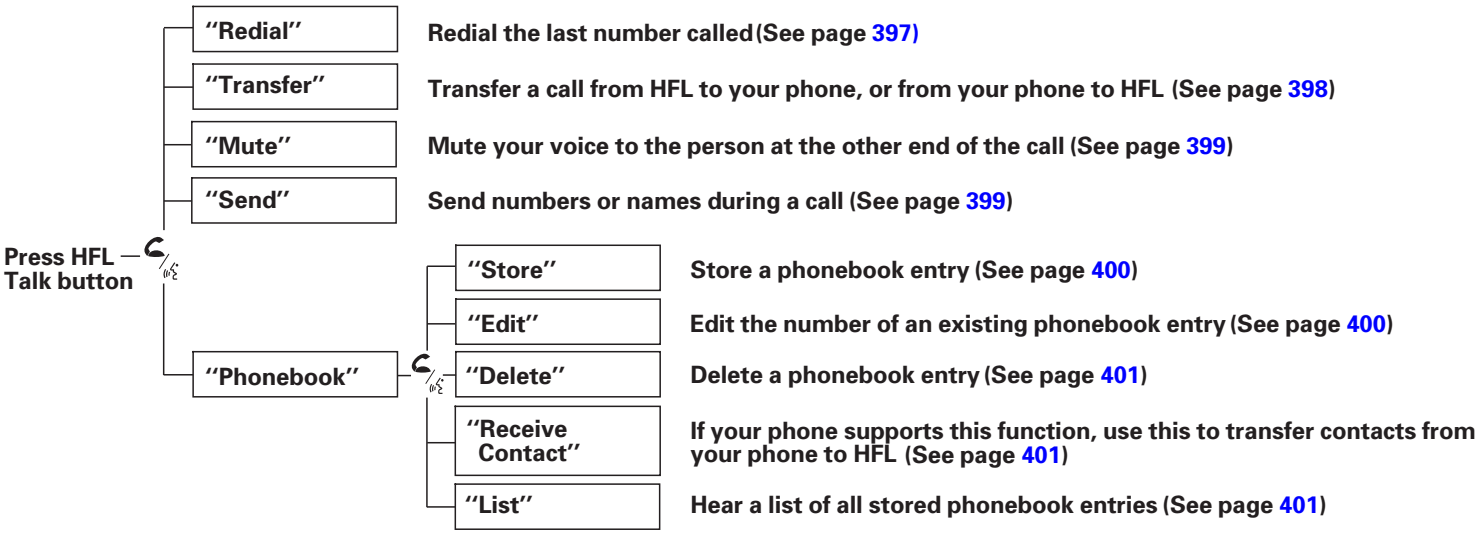

Press HFL Talk button
"Phone Setup"
"Pair"
Pair a phone to the system (See page 394)
"Edit"
Edit the name of a paired phone (See page 395)
"Delete"
Delete a paired phone from the system (See page 395)
"List"
Hear a list of all phones paired to the system (See page 395)
"Status"
Hear which paired phone is currently linked to the system (See page 396)
"Next Phone"
Search for another previously paired phone to link to (See page 396)
"Set Pairing Code"
Set the pairing code to a "Fixed" or "Random" number (See page 396)
"Call" or "Dial"
"123-456-# # # #"
Enter desired phone number (See page 397)
"Jim Smith"
Once a phonebook entry is stored, you can say a name here. (See page 397)

Press and release the HFL Talk button each time you give a command.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

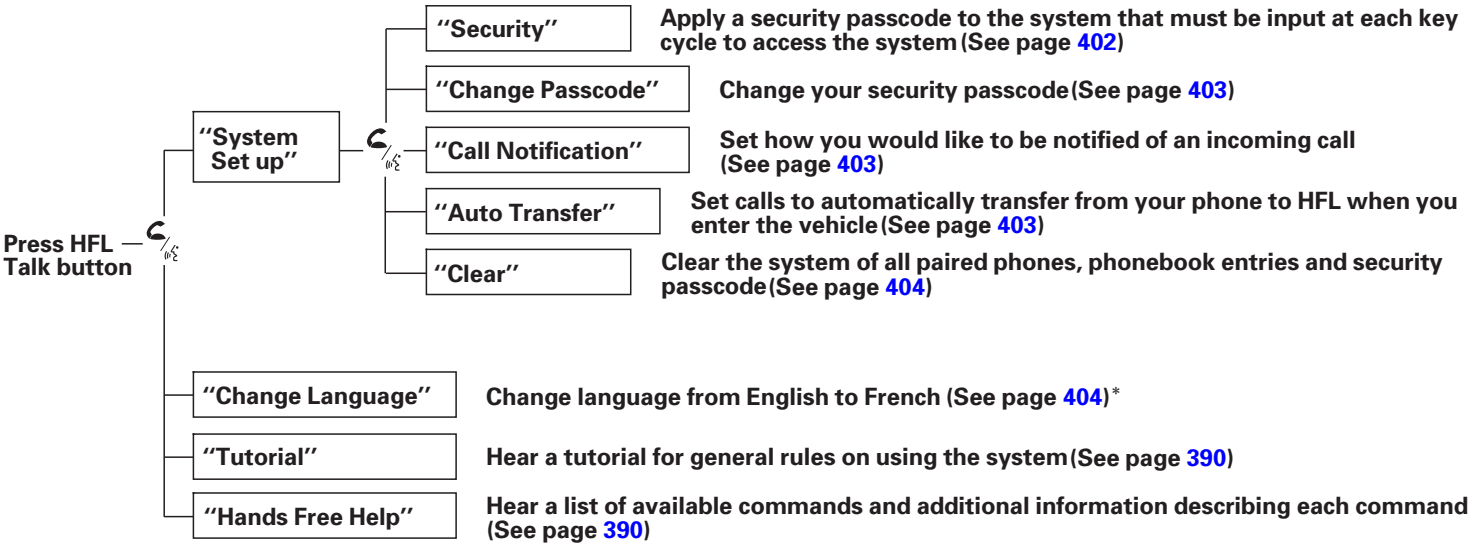
Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® (Models without navigation system)


Press HFL Talk button
"Redial"
Redial the last number called (See page 397)
"Transfer"
Transfer a call from HFL to your phone, or from your phone to HFL (See page 398)
"Mute"
Mute your voice to the person at the other end of the call (See page 399)
"Send"
Send numbers or names during a call (See page 399)
"Phonebook"
"Store"
Store a phonebook entry (See page 400)
"Edit"
Edit the number of an existing phonebook entry (See page 400)
"Delete"
Delete a phonebook entry (See page 401)
"Receive Contact"
If your phone supports this function, use this to transfer contacts from your phone to HFL (See page 401)
"List"
Hear a list of all stored phonebook entries (See page 401)

Press and release the HFL Talk button each time you give a command.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® (Models without navigation system)


Press HFL Talk button
"System Set up"
"Security"
Apply a security passcode to the system that must be input at each key cycle to access the system (See page 402)
"Change Passcode"
Change your security passcode (See page 403)
"Call Notification"
Set how you would like to be notified of an incoming call (See page 403)
"Auto Transfer"
Set calls to automatically transfer from your phone to HFL when you enter the vehicle (See page 403)
"Clear"
Clear the system of all paired phones, phonebook entries and security passcode (See page 404)
"Change Language"
Change language from English to French (See page 404)*
"Tutorial"
Hear a tutorial for general rules on using the system (See page 390)
"Hands Free Help"
Hear a list of available commands and additional information describing each command (See page 390)

Press and release the HFL Talk button each time you give a command.

∗ : Canadian models

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® (Models without navigation system)

To use HFL, you need to pair your Bluetooth-compatible cell phone to the system.

Phone Setup
This command group is available for paired cell phones.

Phone pairing tips

- You cannot pair your phone while the vehicle is moving.
- Your phone must be in discovery or search mode to pair. Refer to your phone's manual.
- Up to six phones can be paired.
- Your phone's battery may drain faster when it is paired to HFL.
- If after three minutes your phone is not ready to pair or a phone is not found, the system will time out and return to idle.

To pair a cell phone:

1. Press and release the HFL Talk button. If you are pairing a phone for the first time, HFL will give you information about the pairing process. If it is not the first phone you are pairing, say "**Phone setup**" and say "**Pair**."
2. Follow the HFL prompts and put your phone in discovery or search mode. HFL will give you a 4-digit pairing code and begin searching for your phone.
3. When your phone finds a Bluetooth device, select HFL from the options and enter the 4-digit code from the previous step.
4. Follow the HFL prompts and name the newly paired phone.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® (Models without navigation system)

To rename a paired phone:
Press and release the HFL Talk button before a command.

1. Say "**Phone setup**."
2. Say "**Edit**" after the prompts.
3. If there is more than one phone paired to the system, HFL will ask you which phone's name you want to change. Follow the HFL prompts and rename the phone.

To delete a paired phone:
Press and release the HFL Talk button before a command.

1. Say "**Phone setup**."
2. Say "**Delete**" after the prompts.
3. HFL will ask you which phone you want to delete. Follow the HFL prompts to continue with the deletion.

To hear the names of all paired phones:
Press and release the HFL Talk button before a command.

1. Say "**Phone setup**."
2. Say "**List**" after the prompts.
3. HFL will read out all the paired phone's names.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® (Models without navigation system)

To hear which paired phone is currently linked:
Press and release the HFL Talk button before a command.

1. Say "**Phone setup**."
2. Say "**Status**" after the prompts.
3. HFL will tell you which phone is linked to the system.

To change from the currently linked phone to another paired phone:
Press and release the HFL Talk button before a command.

1. Say "**Phone setup**."
2. Say "**Next phone**" after the prompts.
3. HFL disconnects the linked phone and searches for another paired phone.
4. Once another phone is found, it is linked to the system. HFL will inform you which phone is now linked.

If no other phones are found or paired, HFL will inform you that the original phone is linked again.

To change the pairing code setting:
Press and release the HFL Talk button before a command.

1. Say "**Phone setup**."
2. Say "**Set pairing code**" after the prompts.
3. If you want HFL to create a random code each time you pair a phone, say "**Random**." If you want to choose your own 4-digit code to be used each time, say "**Fixed**" and follow the HFL prompts.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® (Models without navigation system)

Making a Call

You can make calls using any phone number or a name in the HFL phonebook. You can also redial the last number called.

Bluetooth is the wireless technology that links your phone to HFL. HFL uses a Class 2 Bluetooth, which means the maximum range between your phone and vehicle is 30 feet (10 meters).

During a call, HFL allows you to talk up to 30 minutes after you remove the key from the ignition switch. However, this may weaken the vehicle's battery.

To make a call using a name in the HFL phonebook:

Press and release the HFL Talk button before a command.

1. Say "**Call**" or "**Dial**."
2. Follow the HFL prompts and say the name stored in the HFL phonebook that you want to call.
3. Follow the HFL prompts to confirm the name and make the call.

To make a call using a phone number:

Press and release the HFL Talk button before a command.

1. Say "**Call**" or "**Dial**."
2. Follow the HFL prompts and say the phone number you want to dial.
3. Follow the HFL prompts to confirm the number and say "**Call**" or "**Dial**."

Once connected, you will hear the person you called through the audio speakers.

To redial the last number called by HFL:

Press and release the HFL Talk button and say "**Redial**."

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® (Models without navigation system)

Receiving a Call
When you receive a call, an incoming call notification (if activated) will play and interrupt the audio system if it is on.

Press the HFL Talk button to answer the call, or the HFL Back button to hang up.

Call Waiting
If your phone has Call Waiting, press and release the HFL Talk button to put the original call on hold and answer the incoming call.

To return to the original call, press the HFL Talk button again. If you don't want to answer the incoming call, disregard it and continue with your original call. If you want to hang up the original call and answer the new call, press the HFL Back button.

Transferring a Call
You can transfer a call from HFL to your phone, or from your phone to HFL.

Press and release the HFL Talk button and say "**Transfer**."

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® (Models without navigation system)

Muting a Call

You can mute your voice to the person you are talking to during a call.

To mute your voice during a call, press and release the HFL Talk button and say "**Mute**."

To unmute your voice, press and release the HFL Talk button and say "**Mute**" again.

Send Numbers or Names During a Call

HFL allows you to send numbers or names during a call. This is useful when you call a menu-driven phone system.

To send a name or number during a call:

Press and release the HFL Talk button before a command.

1. Say "**Send**."
2. Follow the HFL prompts and say the name or number you want to send.
3. Follow the HFL prompts to send the tones and continue the call.

NOTE: To send a pound (#), say "pound." To send a star (*), say "star."

Phonebook

You can store up to 50 names with their associated numbers in HFL. The numbers you store can be not only phone numbers but other types, such as account numbers or passwords, which can be sent during a menu-driven call.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® (Models without navigation system)

To store a phonebook entry:
Press and release the HFL Talk button before a command.

1. Say "**Phonebook**."
2. Say "**Store**" after the prompts.
3. Say a name you want to list as your phonebook entry.
4. Say the number you want to store for the name entry.
5. Follow the HFL prompts and say "**Enter**" to store the entry.

NOTE:
- Avoid using duplicate name entries.
- Avoid using "home" as a name entry.
- It is easier for HFL to recognize a multisyllabic or longer name. For example, use "Peter" instead of "Pete," or "John Smith" instead of "John."

To edit the number stored in a name:
Press and release the HFL Talk button before a command.

1. Say "**Phonebook**."
2. Say "**Edit**" after the prompts.
3. Follow the HFL prompts and say the name entry you want to edit.
4. When asked, say the new number for that name.
5. Follow the HFL prompts to complete the edit.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® (Models without navigation system)

To delete a name:
Press and release the HFL Talk button before a command.

1. Say "**Phonebook**."
2. Say "**Delete**" after the prompts.
3. Say the name you want to delete and follow the HFL prompts to complete the deletion.

To list all names in the phonebook:
Press and release the HFL Talk button before a command.

1. Say "**Phonebook**."
2. Say "**List**" after the prompts.
3. HFL begins reading the names in the order they were stored.
4. If you hear a name you want to call, immediately press the HFL Talk button and say "**Call**."

To store a specific phone number from your cell phone directly to the HFL phonebook (available on some phones):
Press and release the HFL Talk button before a command.

1. Say "**Phonebook**."
2. Say "**Receive contact**" after the prompts.
3. Follow the HFL prompts, select a number from your cell phone, and send it to HFL.
4. Follow the HFL prompts and name the number, or say "**Discard**" if it is not the number you want to store.
5. Follow the HFL prompts if you want to store another number.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® (Models without navigation system)

System Setup
This command group allows you to change or customize HFL basic settings.

To set a 4-digit passcode to lock the HFL system for security purposes:
Press and release the HFL Talk button before a command.

1. Say "**System setup**."
2. Say "**Security**" after the prompts.
3. Follow the HFL prompts and say the 4-digit passcode you want to set.
4. Follow the HFL prompts to confirm the number.

NOTE: Once a passcode is set, you will need to enter it to use HFL each time you start the vehicle. If you forget the code, your dealer will have to reset it for you, or you will have to clear the entire system (see page 404).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® (Models without navigation system)

To change your security passcode:
Press and release the HFL Talk button before a command.

1. Say "**System setup**."
2. Say "**Change passcode**" after the prompts.
3. Follow the HFL prompts and say the new 4-digit passcode.
4. Follow the HFL prompts to confirm the number.

To select either a ring tone or a prompt as the incoming call notification*:
Press and release the HFL Talk button before a command.

1. Say "**System setup**."
2. Say "**Call notification**" after the prompts.
3. Follow the HFL prompts and say "**Ring tone**" or "**Prompt**." You can also say "**Off**" for no audible incoming call notification.

* : The default setting is a ring tone.

To activate or deactivate the auto transfer function:
If you get into the vehicle while you are on the phone, the call can be automatically transferred to HFL with the ignition switch in the ACCESSORY (I) or ON (II) position.

Press and release the HFL Talk button before a command.

1. Say "**System setup**."
2. Say "**Auto transfer**" after the prompts.
3. HFL will let you know if auto transfer is on or off, depending on the previous setting. Follow the HFL prompts to change the setting.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® (Models without navigation system)

To clear the system:
This operation clears the passcodes, paired phones, and all names in the HFL phonebook.

Press and release the HFL Talk button before a command.

1. Say "**System setup**."
2. Say "**Clear**" after the prompts.
3. Follow the HFL prompts to continue to complete the clearing procedure.

You can also clear the system when you have forgotten the passcode and cannot access HFL. When HFL asks you for the passcode, say "**System clear**." Paired phones, and all names in the HFL phonebook will be lost.

Quick Language Selection

Canadian models only

To quickly change the language:
Press and release the HFL Talk button before a command.

1. Say the language you want to change to in that language.
2. Follow the HFL prompts.

Change Language

Canadian models only

To change the system language between English and French:
Press and release the HFL Talk button before a command.

1. Say "**Change language**."
2. Follow the HFL prompts to change the language to English or French.

If you have not named your paired phone in the language you just selected, HFL will ask you to name it in the current language.

When French is your currently selected language, you can give voice commands in French.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Bluetooth® Wireless Technology

The *Bluetooth*® name and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Honda Motor Co., Ltd. is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

HFL Limitations

An incoming call on HFL will interrupt *Bluetooth*® Audio when it is playing. Audio will resume when the call is ended.

As required by the FCC:
This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

This device complies with Industry Canada Standard RSS-210.
Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® (Models with navigation system)

Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® (HFL) allows you to place and receive phone calls using either the navigation system controls or voice commands without the distraction of handling your cell phone.

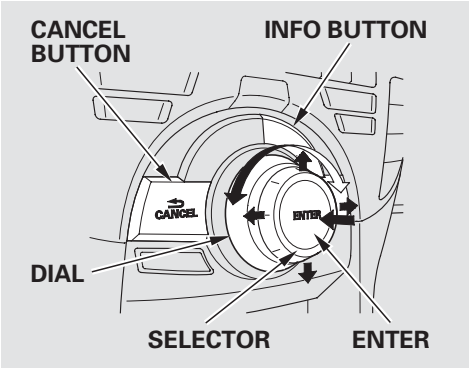
To use HFL, you need a Bluetooth-compatible cell phone. For a list of compatible phones, pairing procedures, and special feature capabilities:

In the U.S., visit *www.acura.com/handsfreelink*, or call (888) 528-7876.

In Canada, visit *www.handsfreelink.ca,* or call (888) 528-7876.

Using HFL

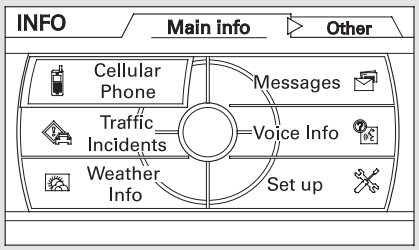
Interface Dial



Use the Interface Dial to make menu or list selections.

To select an item on the screen, turn the interface dial left or right to highlight it, and then press ENTER.

To select an item that comes with ▲ , ▼ , ◀ , or ▶ icons, push the interface selector up, down, left, or right.



U.S. model is shown.

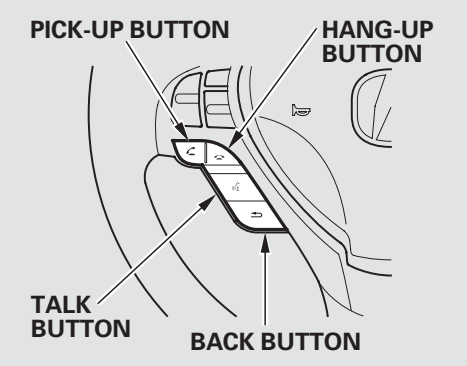
Press the INFO button to go to the main information screen to select the Cellular Phone menu.

Press the CANCEL button to go back to the previous screen.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® (Models with navigation system)

HFL Buttons



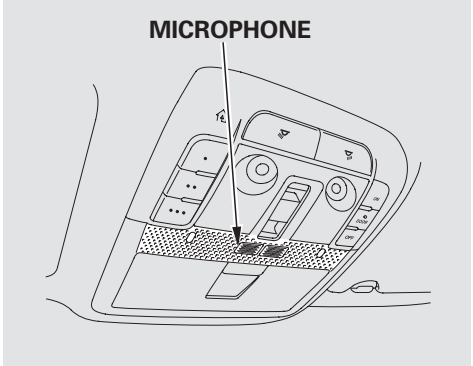
PICK-UP Button – Press and release to answer a call, or press to go directly to the Cellular Phone screen.

HANG-UP Button – Press and release to end or decline a call.

TALK Button – Press and release to give a command.

BACK Button – Press and release to go back to the previous command, or cancel the command.

Voice Control Tips



- Air or wind noise from the dashboard and side vents, windows and moonroof may interfere with the microphone. Adjust or close them as necessary.
- Press and release the Talk button each time you want to make a command. After the beep, speak in a clear, natural tone.
- Try to reduce all background noise. If the microphone picks up voices other than yours, commands may be misinterpreted.
- To change the volume level of HFL, use the audio system volume knob or the steering wheel volume controls.

Help Feature

For help at any time, including a list of available options, say “Help.”

Language Selection

Refer to the navigation system manual for how to change the system’s language between English, French, and Spanish.

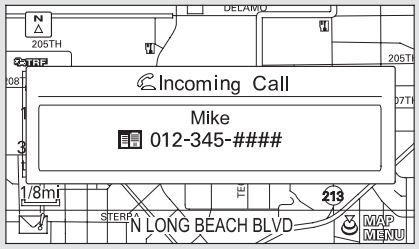
CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

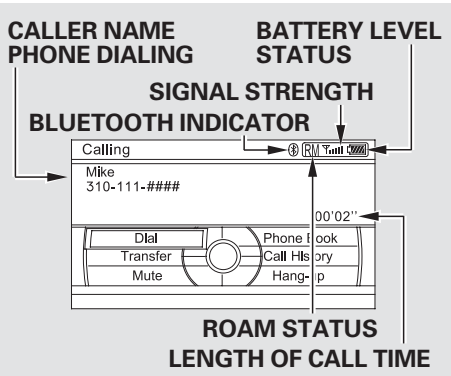
Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® (Models with navigation system)

HFL Display

As an incoming call notification, you will see the following display:



U.S. model is shown.



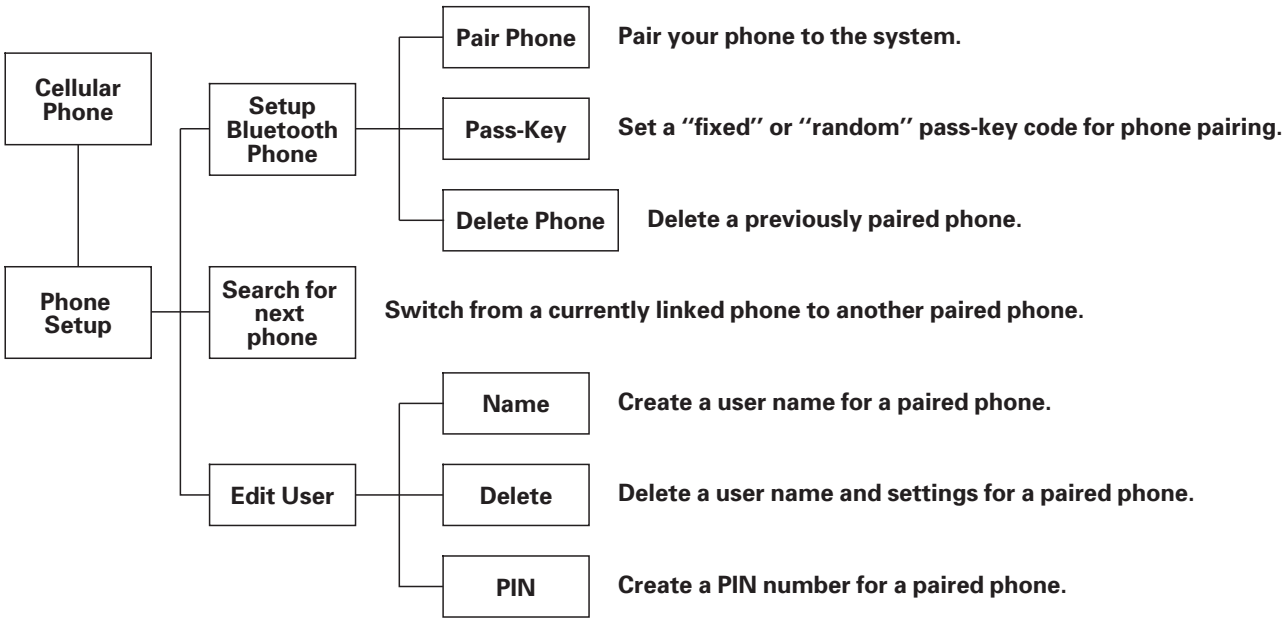
To answer the call and show the HFL information, press the PICK-UP button on the steering wheel.

Some phones may send battery, signal strength, and roaming status information to HFL.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

How to Use HFL

The power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON (see page 178).

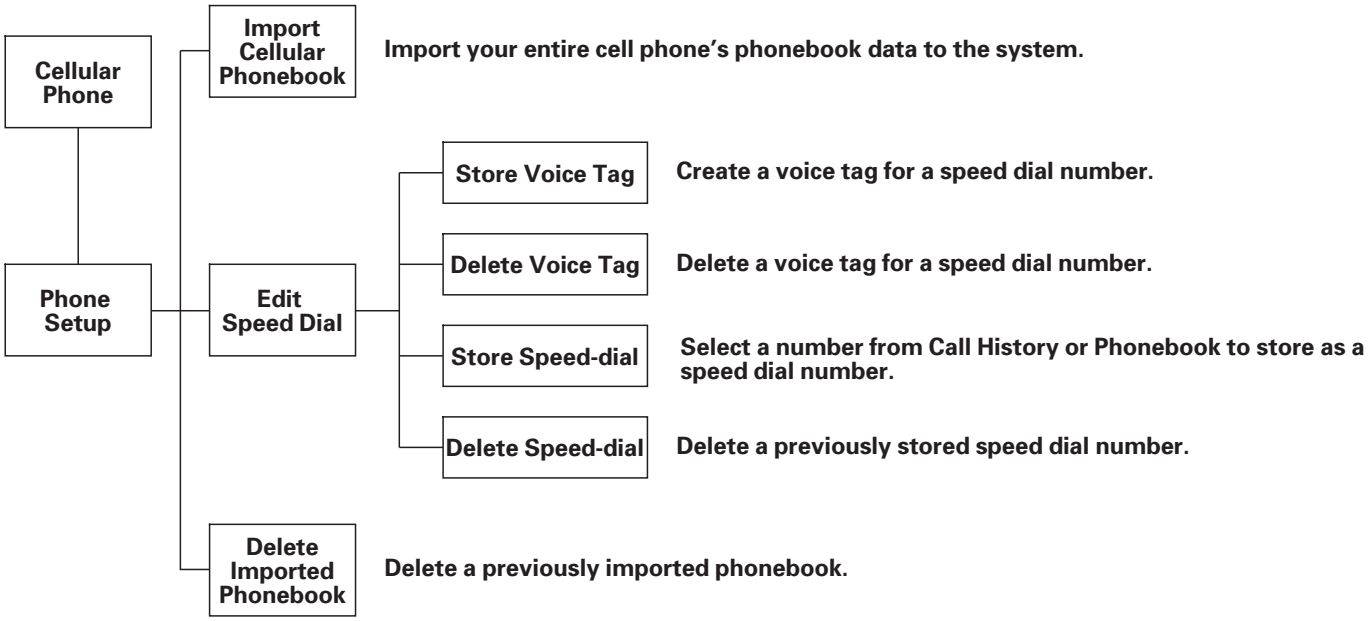

Cellular Phone
Phone Setup
Setup Bluetooth Phone
Search for next phone
Edit User
Pair Phone
Pass-Key
Delete Phone
Name
Delete
PIN
Pair your phone to the system.
Set a "fixed" or "random" pass-key code for phone pairing.
Delete a previously paired phone.
Switch from a currently linked phone to another paired phone.
Create a user name for a paired phone.
Delete a user name and settings for a paired phone.
Create a PIN number for a paired phone.

Voice commands can be used for all above options.
Press and release the Talk button each time you give a command.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

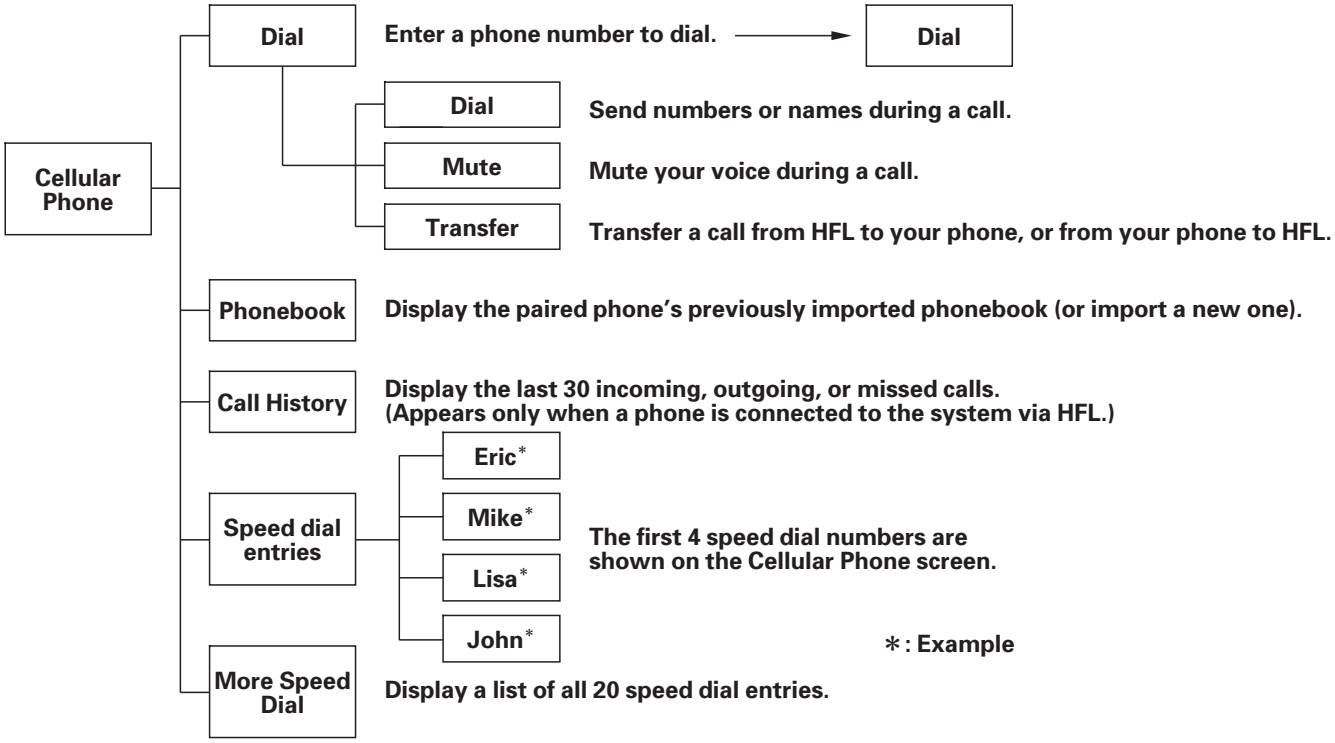
Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® (Models with navigation system)


Cellular Phone
Phone Setup
Import Cellular Phonebook
Import your entire cell phone's phonebook data to the system.
Edit Speed Dial
Store Voice Tag
Create a voice tag for a speed dial number.
Delete Voice Tag
Delete a voice tag for a speed dial number.
Store Speed-dial
Select a number from Call History or Phonebook to store as a speed dial number.
Delete Speed-dial
Delete a previously stored speed dial number.
Delete Imported Phonebook
Delete a previously imported phonebook.

Voice commands can be used for all above options.
Press and release the Talk button each time you give a command.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® (Models with navigation system)


Cellular Phone
Dial
Enter a phone number to dial.
Dial
Dial
Send numbers or names during a call.
Mute
Mute your voice during a call.
Transfer
Transfer a call from HFL to your phone, or from your phone to HFL.
Phonebook
Display the paired phone's previously imported phonebook (or import a new one).
Call History
Display the last 30 incoming, outgoing, or missed calls.
(Appears only when a phone is connected to the system via HFL.)
Speed dial entries
Eric*
Mike*
Lisa*
John*
The first 4 speed dial numbers are shown on the Cellular Phone screen.
*: Example
More Speed Dial
Display a list of all 20 speed dial entries.

Voice commands can be used for all above options.
Press and release the Talk button each time you give a command.

CONTINUED

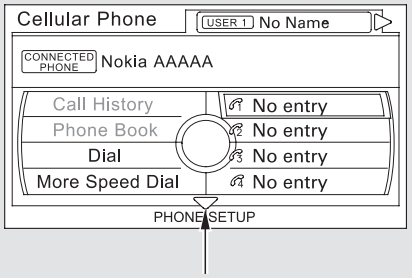
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® (Models with navigation system)

To use HFL, you need to pair your Bluetooth-compatible cell phone to the system.

HFL uses a Class 2 Bluetooth, which means, the maximum range between your phone and vehicle is 30 feet (10 meters).

Cellular Phone

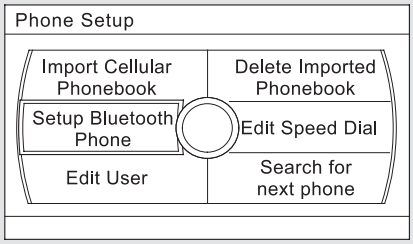


Push the selector down for PHONE SETUP.

Press the PICK-UP button to go directly to the Cellular Phone screen.

Phone Setup

This menu group is for phone pairing, and user, phonebook, and speed dial editing.

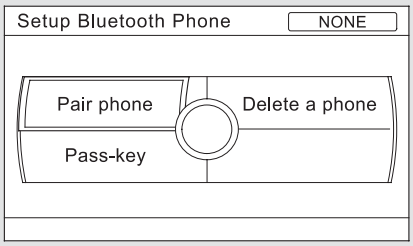


Select “PHONE SETUP” from the Cellular Phone screen.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

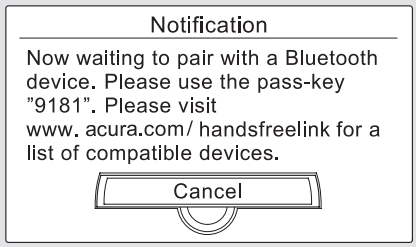
Setup Bluetooth Phone

To pair a cell phone:

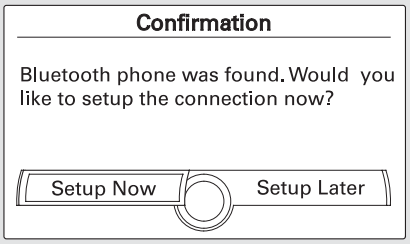


1. Select “Setup Bluetooth Phone” from the Phone Setup screen.
2. Select “Pair Phone.”
3. HFL gives you a 4-digit pass-key that you will need to input on your phone.

Example


Notification
Now waiting to pair with a Bluetooth device. Please use the pass-key ”9181”. Please visit www. acura.com/ handsfreelink for a list of compatible devices.
Cancel

4. Put your cell phone in “Discovery” or “Search” mode, and search for a Bluetooth device.
5. When your phone prompts you, input the 4-digit pass-key.



U.S. model is shown.

6. *On U.S. models*
   You will receive a notification to set up an AcuraLink® connection. If you want to do this, please see page 425 , or select “Setup Later.”

   On Canadian models
   You will receive a notification on the screen and your phone if pairing is successful.

CONTINUED

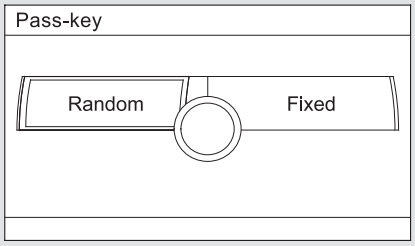
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® (Models with navigation system)

Phone pairing tips

- You cannot pair your phone while the vehicle is moving.
- Up to six phones can be paired.
- Your phone's battery may drain faster when it is paired to HFL.

To change the pass-key setting:

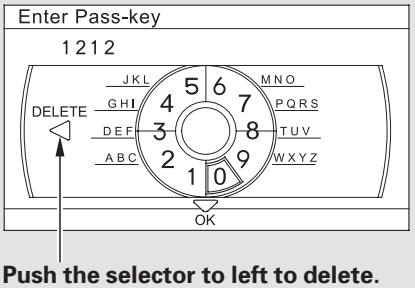


1. Select "Setup Bluetooth Phone" from the Phone Setup screen.
2. Select "Pass-key."

NOTE: The default pass-key "0000" is used until you change the setting.

For a randomly generated pass-key each time you pair a phone, select "Random."

Example



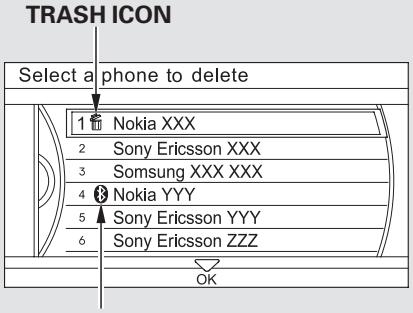
Push the selector to left to delete.

To create your own pass-key, select "Fixed" and follow steps 3 and 4.

3. Delete the current pass-key.
4. Enter a new pass-key, and select "OK."

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To delete a paired phone:



1. Select “Setup Bluetooth Phone” from the Phone Setup screen.
2. Select “Delete a phone.”
3. Select the phone you want to delete. The Bluetooth icon shows you the currently linked phone.
4. A trash icon appears next to the selected phone. Select “OK” to continue.

Search for Next Connected Phone

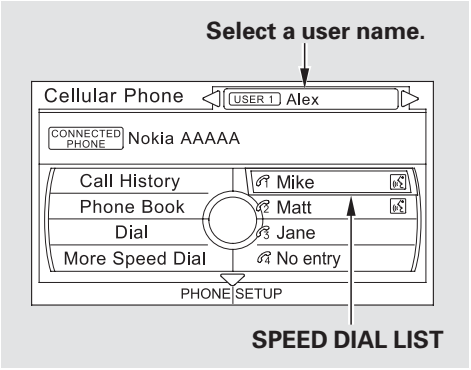
To change from the currently linked phone to another paired phone, select “Search for next phone” on the Phone Setup screen.

HFL disconnects the linked phone and starts searching for another paired phone.

If no other paired phone is found, HFL will automatically link the previous phone.

Edit User

You can name up to six HFL users. Each can be PIN protected, and have its own phonebook, speed dial, and call history.



Select the user you want to edit on the Cellular Phone screen.

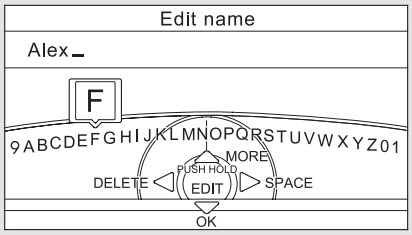
If the user you selected is PIN-protected, the “Speed Dial” list on the right side of the screen will not appear until the PIN is entered.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

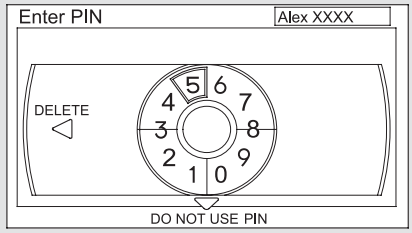
Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® (Models with navigation system)

To name a user:



1. Select “Edit User” from the Phone Setup screen.
2. Select “Name.”
3. Enter a user name, and select “OK” when complete.

To create a PIN for each user:
When you set a PIN for a user, you will be asked to enter the PIN every time you select the user on the Cellular Phone screen.



1. Select “Edit User” from the Phone Setup screen.
2. Select “PIN.”
3. Enter a 4-digit PIN, re-enter it, and select “OK.”

If you select “DO NOT USE PIN,” before entering any number, the user will not have a PIN.

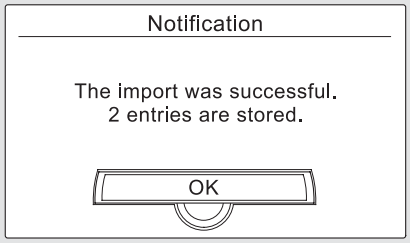
If the user is already PIN-protected, you need to enter the current PIN before creating a new one.

To delete a user:
Deleting a user will delete all settings, such as call history and phonebook.

1. Select “Edit User” from the Phone Setup screen.
2. Select “Delete.”
3. Follow the prompts to complete the deletion.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Import Cellular Phonebook
(available on some phones)
The entire phonebook data (1,000 entries) of the cell phone that is linked to HFL can be imported to the system.



1. Select “Import Cellular Phonebook” from the Phone Setup screen.

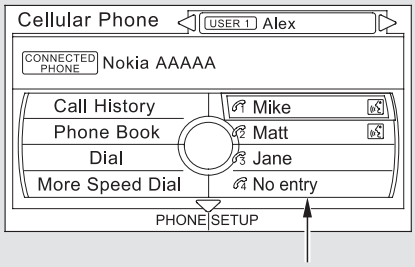
2. HFL begins importing the phonebook. Select “OK” after the import is completed.

Up to three category icons appear next to the phonebook entries*.

These indicate how many numbers are stored for the name. If a name has more than three category icons, “…” is displayed.

* : Available on some phones

Edit Speed Dial



The first four speed dial entries

Up to 20 speed dial numbers can be stored per user, and the first four numbers are displayed on the Cellular Phone screen.

Select a “No Entry” field to store a speed dial entry, or use the following procedure.

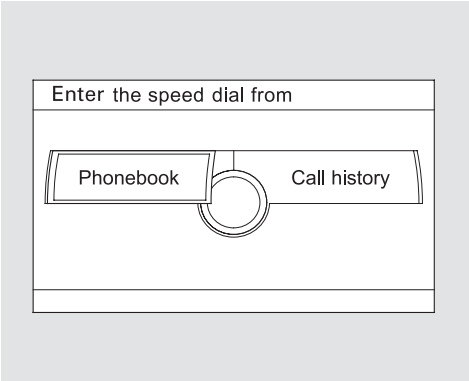
CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® (Models with navigation system)

To store a speed dial number:

1. Select “Edit Speed Dial” from the Phone Setup screen.
2. Select “Store Speed-dial.”
3. Select a number on the speed dial list where you want to store the number.



4. Choose a number from:

   Phonebook — the linked cell phone’s imported phonebook

   Call History — the last 30 numbers

5. When the speed dial number is successfully stored, you are asked to store a voice tag for the number. Follow the prompts.

When a voice tag is stored for the entry, you can dial the number by saying “Call” and the voice tag name.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To add a voice tag to a stored speed dial number:

1. Select “Edit Speed Dial” from the Phone Setup screen.
2. Select “Store Voice Tag.”
3. Select the number you want to store a voice tag for.

4. Follow the prompts to complete the voice tag.

NOTE:

- Avoid using duplicate voice tags.
- Avoid using “home” as a voice tag.
- It is easier for HFL to recognize a longer name. For example, use “John Smith” instead of “John.”

To delete a voice tag:

1. Select “Edit Speed Dial” from the Phone Setup screen.
2. Select “Delete Voice Tag.”
3. Select the number you want to delete the voice tag for, and select “OK.”

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® (Models with navigation system)

To delete a speed dial number:

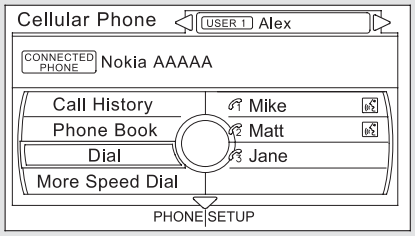
1. Select “Edit Speed Dial” from the Phone Setup screen.
2. Select “Delete Speed-dial.”
3. Select the number you want to delete, and select “OK.”

Delete Imported Phonebook

This option deletes the entire phonebook of the currently linked cell phone. Follow the confirmation and notification screens.

Making a Call

You can make calls by inputting any phone number, using the imported phonebook, using the call history, or with speed dial entries.

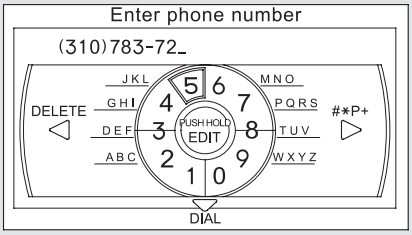


During a call, HFL allows you to talk up to 30 minutes after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK). However, this may weaken the vehicle’s battery.

For more information on how to select the power mode, see page 178 .

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

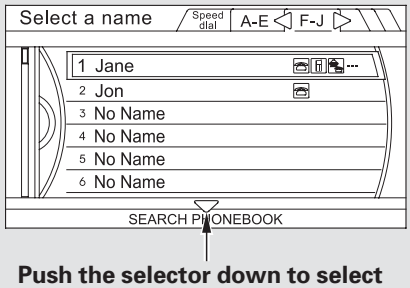
To make a call using a phone number:



1. Select “Dial” from the Cellular Phone screen.
2. Enter the phone number, and select “Dial.”

To enter the phone number by voice, say it in a continuous string.

To make a call using a name in the Phone Book:



Push the selector down to select SEARCH PHONEBOOK.

1. Select “Phone Book” from the Cellular Phone screen.

If a phonebook has not yet been imported, the system will attempt to import one first.

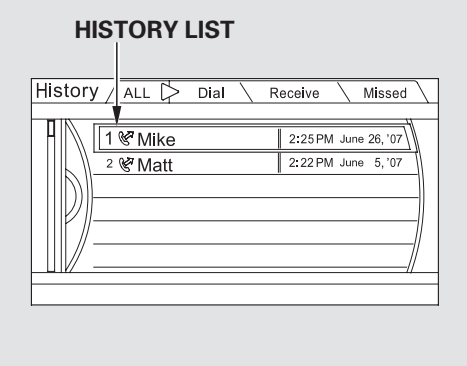
2. Select a name from the list. You can also select “SEARCH PHONEBOOK” and enter the first few letters of the name.
3. Push ENTER to begin automatic dialing.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

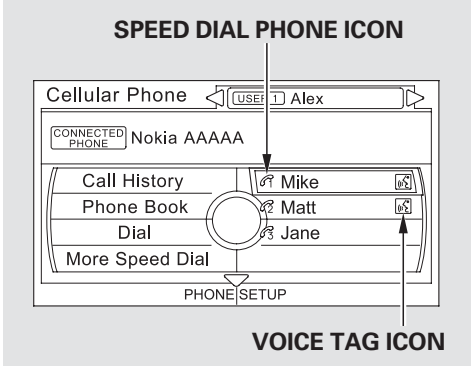
Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® (Models with navigation system)

To make a call using Call History:



1. Select “Call History” from the Cellular Phone screen.
2. Call History is sorted by “All,” “Dial,” “Receive,” and “Missed.” Selecting a number begins automatic dialing.

To make a call using Speed Dial:



Select one of the four entries on the Cellular Phone screen, and push ENTER to begin automatic dialing.

To make a call using More Speed Dial:

1. Select “More Speed Dial” on the Cellular Phone screen.
2. A list of up to 20 stored speed dial entries is shown. Select the entry you want to call, and push ENTER to begin automatic dialing.

NOTE: Any voice-tagged speed dial entry can be dialed by voice from the Cellular Phone screen.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Receiving a Call

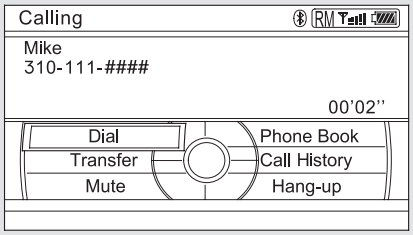
When you receive a call, a notification appears on the screen (see page 408).

To answer the call, press the PICK-UP button on the steering wheel.

To end or decline the call, press the HANG-UP button.

During a Call

Example



The following options are available during a call:

Dial * — Allows you to send numbers or names during a call. This is useful when you call a menu-driven phone system.

Transfer — Allows you to transfer a call from HFL to your phone, or from your phone to HFL.

Mute — Allows you to mute your voice.

* : Available on some phones

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® (Models with navigation system)

Call Waiting
If your phone has Call Waiting, press and release the PICK-UP button to put the original call on hold and answer the incoming call.

To return to the original call, press the PICK-UP button again. If you don't want to answer the incoming call, disregard it and continue with your original call. If you want to hang up the original call and answer the new call, press the HANG-UP button.

HFL Limitations
An incoming call on HFL will interrupt *Bluetooth*® Audio when it is playing. Audio will resume when the call is ended.

U.S. models only
In addition, you cannot use HFL while using AcuraLink.

***Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology**
The *Bluetooth*® name and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Honda Motor Co., Ltd. is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

As required by the FCC:
This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

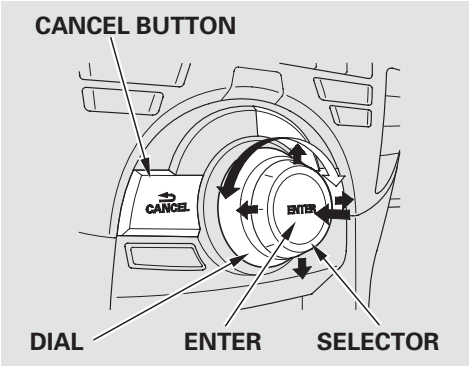
This device complies with Industry Canada Standard RSS-210.
Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

On models with navigation system
AcuraLink® enhances your ownership experience by providing a direct communication link between your vehicle and the Acura Server. Working through the XM® Radio, AcuraLink works in conjunction with the navigation system, *Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink® (HFL), and audio system in your vehicle. It displays and receives several kinds of messages, including:

- Operating tips and information on your vehicle's features.
- Important recall and safety information.
- Maintenance information to keep your vehicle in top condition.
- Diagnostic information to provide information about any problems with your vehicle.

Interface Dial
Most AcuraLink functions are controlled by the interface dial. The interface dial has two parts, a dial and a selector.



The dial turns left and right. Use it to make selections or adjustments to a list or menu on the screen.

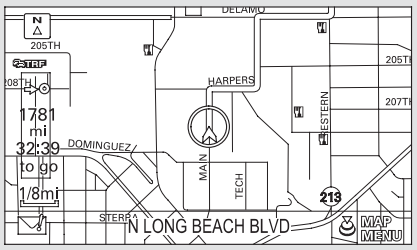
The selector can be pushed left, right, up, down, and in. Use the selector to scroll through lists, to select menus, and to highlight menu items. When you make a selection, push the center of the selector (ENTER) to go to that selection.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

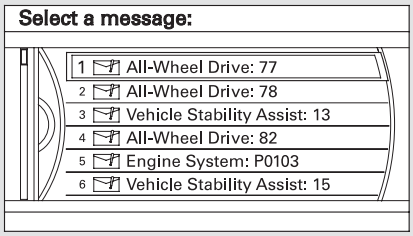
AcuraLink® (U.S. models only)

Reading Messages

If you have new messages, an envelope icon appears in the lower left hand part of the navigation screen.



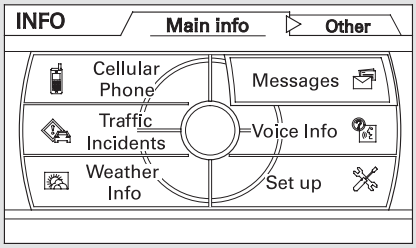
To open a message:
Press ENTER on the interface selector, then select New Message from the navigation system map menu.


Select a message:
1 All-Wheel Drive: 77
2 All-Wheel Drive: 78
3 Vehicle Stability Assist: 13
4 All-Wheel Drive: 82
5 Engine System: P0103
6 Vehicle Stability Assist: 15

A list of all messages will be shown. New messages will be at the top. Select the message you want to read by pressing ENTER.

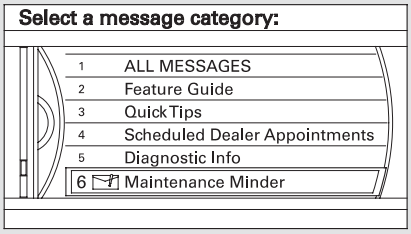
A red exclamation will be marked on an envelope icon with an important message.

To view previously read messages:



Press the INFO button. The information screen will be shown.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



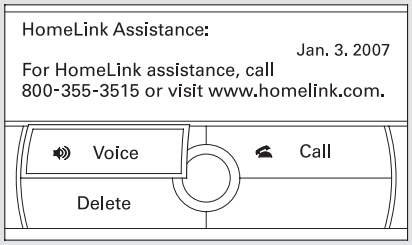
Select “Messages,” then select a message category. Select the message you want to read and press ENTER.

Unread messages have a closed envelope icon next to them. The icon disappears when it has already been read.

NOTE: Only Diagnostic Info messages appear on the navigation screen while driving. They indicate if your vehicle has a problem that may need immediate attention (see page 436).

After purchasing your vehicle, messages may not appear immediately.
Your dealer has to register the vehicle identification before you can receive messages. This can take several days to process.

Message Options



When you open a message, you can read a summary of it, and then choose one of several options. If an option is not available for a message, that option will not be highlighted.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

AcuraLink® (U.S. models only)

Delete — Select this option to delete the current message.

Voice — Select this option to hear a voice read the entire message. This gives you more information than the screen can display at one time. When you select the Voice option, it changes to a Stop Reading option. Select the option again to stop the voice.

Call — Select this option to call a phone number embedded in the message. When you select **Call**, *Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink® (HFL) dials the number for you.

To make a call, your *Bluetooth*® compatible phone must be paired to the vehicle's HandsFreeLink system, powered on, and located within the vehicle (see page 413).

Find Nearest Dealer — Select this option to find the nearest Acura dealer using the navigation system.

Call Your Dealer — Select this option to call the Acura dealer you purchased your vehicle from. AcuraLink also directs you to this dealer so you can schedule a maintenance appointment or receive information about a message. If your assigned servicing dealer changes, AcuraLink will reset to call that dealer.

Diagnostic Info — Select this option to get more information about the current diagnostic message. To use this option, your cell phone must be paired with HFL. In addition, the paired phone must have a compatible data service and be set up with the AcuraLink system to make a data connection. Go to *www.acura.com/handsfreelink* to find out which data services are currently compatible with AcuraLink.

Message Preferences

To set your AcuraLink preferences (the types of messages you want to receive, if any), visit the My Acura website at *www.owners.acura.com*, and choose what you would like to receive. If you do not have internet access, call Acura Client Services at (800) 382-2238; they can set your message preferences for you.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Deleting Messages

NOTE: Diagnostic info and recall/campaign messages can only be deleted by your dealer.

To delete a single message:

- Press the INFO button to bring up the Information screen.
- Scroll to the Messages option, then select it by pressing ENTER on the interface selector.
- Select the message category that contains the message you want to delete.
- Use the interface dial to scroll up or down to the message title you want to delete, and select it by pressing ENTER on the interface selector.
- Scroll to Delete with the interface dial, and select it by pressing ENTER on the interface selector.

To delete all messages:

NOTE: The Delete All Messages command does not apply to Diagnostic Info and Recall messages. They can only be deleted by your dealer.

- Press the SETUP button to view the setup screen.
- Select Other by pushing the interface selector to the right.
- Use the interface dial to scroll to the AcuraLink/Messages option, and select it by pressing ENTER on the interface selector.
- Scroll to the Delete Messages option, and select it by pressing ENTER on the interface selector.
- Scroll to the category with the messages you want to delete, and select the category by pressing ENTER on the interface selector.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

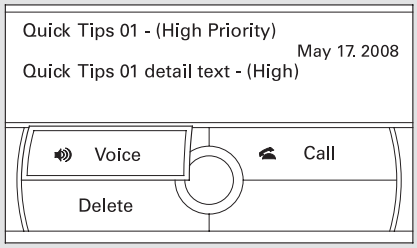
AcuraLink® (U.S. models only)

Message Categories

There are six message categories in AcuraLink: Quick Tips, Feature Guide, Maintenance Minder™, Recalls/Campaigns, Diagnostic Info, and Scheduled Dealer Appointment. The system can store up to 255 messages.

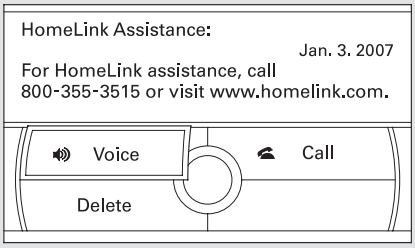
Message categories can be added, revised, or deleted through broadcast messages from Acura.

Quick Tips



These messages, based on updated vehicle information and comments from other TL owners, supplement your Owner's Manual. They provide you with relevant information for a safe and enjoyable ownership experience. For additional information, call Acura Client Services directly through the HFL.

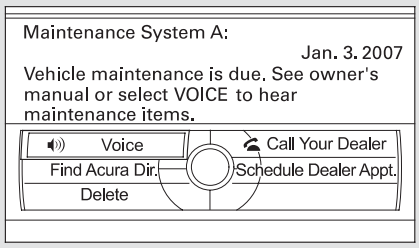
Feature Guide



During the first 90 days of ownership, a number of messages appears each day. These messages help you to use and understand the features of your vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Maintenance Minder™



These messages provide detailed information about the service needed for your vehicle. When a maintenance message appears on the multi-information display, a list of needed maintenance items is provided through an AcuraLink message. These messages tell you the exact maintenance needed, helping you to avoid unnecessary maintenance costs.

You can use the following message options:

- Make an appointment with your dealer.
- Reschedule the appointment with the dealer.
- Call your dealer for an appointment.
- Find the nearest dealer.

Automated Appointment

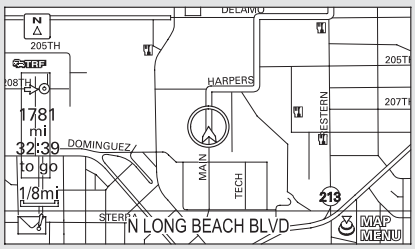
You can make an appointment with your dealer through AcuraLink when you receive a Maintenance Minder message.

To use the automated appointment function, you should visit the My Acura website at *www.owners.acura.com*, register some required settings, and complete the Phone-Data Connection set-up (see page 439). Your *Bluetooth*® compatible phone should also be paired and linked to your vehicle (see page 413).

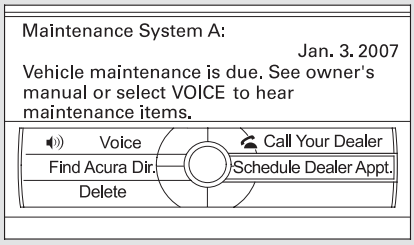
CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

AcuraLink® (U.S. models only)



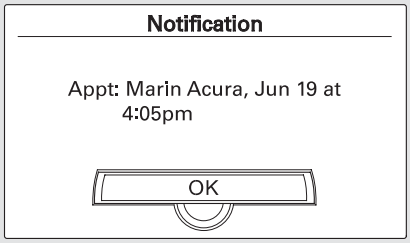
When you see the Maintenance Minder message on the multi-information display, you will also receive a message in the navigation screen. To open the message, press ENTER. Select “New Messages,” then press ENTER. You will see the list of all messages. The most recent message is listed at the top.



Select the received message, then press ENTER. You will see the message as shown. To make an appointment, select “Schedule Dealer Appt.” then press ENTER.

The system will automatically connect to the Acura server, then show you an appropriate appointment date and time on the navigation screen. If you accept this appointment, select “Confirm Appointment,” then press ENTER.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

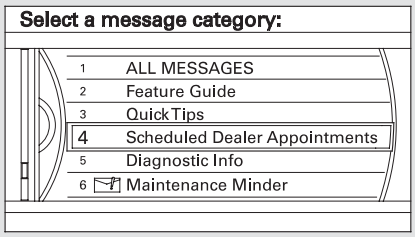


The confirmation message will be displayed on the screen. Make sure to confirm the appointment date, time and dealer. If it is OK, press ENTER.

If you want to change or reschedule the appointment date, select “Cancel,” then press ENTER.

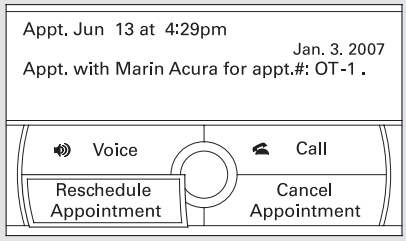
Scheduled Dealer Appointment

To reschedule the appointment:



Press the INFO button to go to the information screen. Select “Messages,” then select “Scheduled Dealer Appointment” from the message category list. Then press ENTER.

You will see the screen to reschedule as shown. To make an appointment, select “Reschedule Appointment,” then press ENTER.



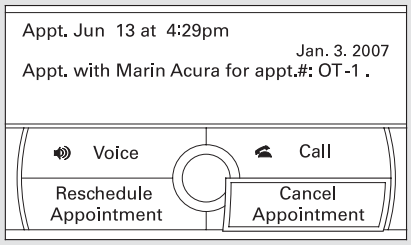
The system will automatically connect to the Acura server, then show you a new appointment date and time on the navigation screen. If you accept this appointment, select “Confirm Appointment,” then press ENTER.

CONTINUED

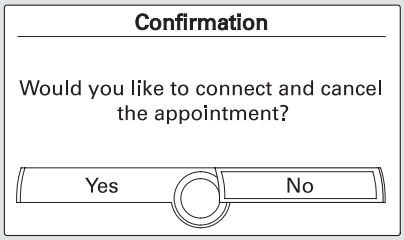
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

AcuraLink® (U.S. models only)

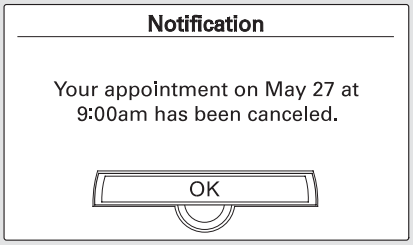
To cancel the appointment:



Select “Messages” on the information screen, then press ENTER. Select “Scheduled Dealer Appointment” from the message category list. Then press ENTER. To cancel the appointment, select “Cancel Appointment,” then press ENTER.



The system will request you to confirm the cancel on the navigation screen. To cancel the appointment, select “YES,” then press ENTER. If you select “NO,” the screen goes back to the previous message display.



The system will automatically connect to the Acura server, then show you the confirmation on the navigation screen. If you accept the cancel, press ENTER.

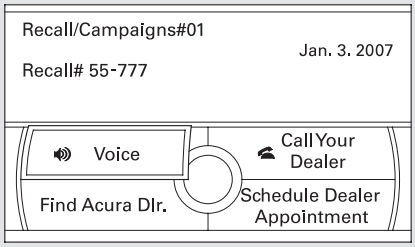
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If you cancel the appointment, you cannot reschedule it. If you want to change or reschedule the appointment date, call your dealer directly with HFL.

Using automated appointments, your registered dealer through My Acura is automatically selected. If you want to select another dealer, such as in case of an emergency, find the nearest dealer and call the dealer directly with HFL.

When a maintenance appointment is due soon, you will also receive an appointment reminder message.

Recall/Campaigns



If your vehicle is affected by a recall or other important safety information, a letter will be mailed to you about the issue and how to fix it. You will also receive a reminder message through AcuraLink. You can then use the message options to call your dealer for an appointment or to find the nearest dealer.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

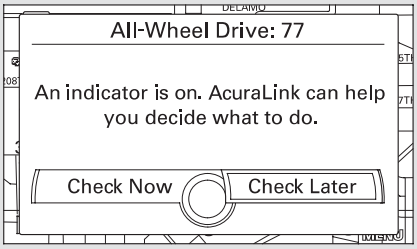
AcuraLink® (U.S. models only)

For this reason, it is important that we retain your current phone number. Please update your information using My Acura at *www.owners.acura.com.*

Diagnostic Info
When an indicator comes on or a message is displayed on the Multi-Information Display (MID), AcuraLink can provide information about the cause of the indicator or message and the recommended action to address it. This helps you handle the problem as it occurs, preventing or limiting costly repairs.

The AcuraLink system cannot determine mechanical problems (such as squeaks or rattles) that are not triggered by the diagnostic indicator monitors.

For more information on the instrument panel indicators, see page 64 .



When any indicator comes on or a message is displayed on the MID, AcuraLink immediately notifies you with the message, “An indicator is on. AcuraLink can help you decide what to do.”

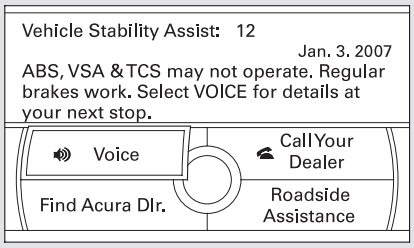
If you do not want the information right away, select the Check Later option.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If you want the information now, select the Check Now option. (If the navigation screen is not active, you must select OK from the navigation disclaimer screen before you can check the information.)

Depending on the severity of the problem, the message will let you know if you should see your dealer immediately or if you can wait until a later date.

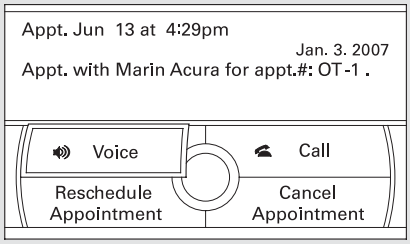
You can then use the message options to call your dealer for an appointment or to find the nearest dealer.


Vehicle Stability Assist: 12
Jan. 3. 2007
ABS, VSA &TCS may not operate. Regular brakes work. Select VOICE for details at your next stop.
Voice
Call Your Dealer
Find Acura Dlr.
Roadside Assistance

When viewing a diagnostic info message through the INFO menu, you can use the Diagnostic Info option to connect to the Acura server and retrieve the latest information regarding the problem.

NOTE: There may not be any additional information, depending on the time elapsed since the previous time you retrieved the information from the Acura server.

Reminder Message



When you make an appointment through My Acura's online Schedule Service Appointment, you can be reminded in advance about that appointment through AcuraLink.

If you need to reschedule or cancel the appointment, see page 433 .

CONTINUED

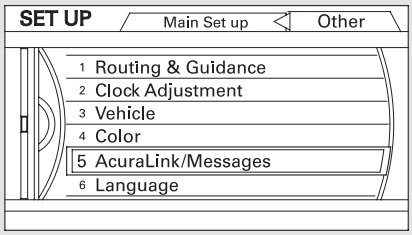
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

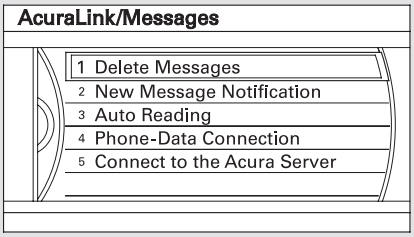
AcuraLink® (U.S. models only)

Turning the Automated Appointment preference off will disable appointment notifications in the vehicle based on appointments created or changed at My Acura's online scheduling website.

Appointments can still be created, rescheduled, and canceled from the vehicle; however the appointment information stored in the vehicle will not be updated. Any changes to those appointments should be made from the My Acura website.

AcuraLink/Message Screen





To access the following functions, press the SETUP option, push the interface selector to the right to select Other, then rotate the interface dial to select AcuraLink/ Messages.

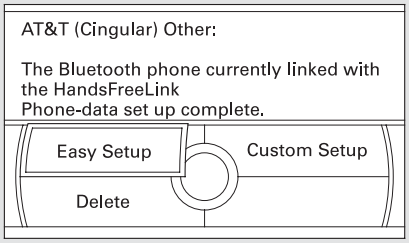
Delete Messages – Select this option to delete all stored messages within a category, except for diagnostic info and recall campaign messages. These messages can only be deleted by a certified technician after the recall is done or the problem is corrected, or through a broadcast message from Acura.

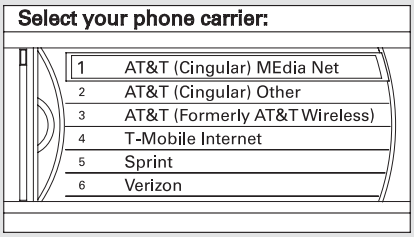
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

New Message Notification – Select ON if you want to be notified of new messages (envelope icon appears on the navigation screen). Select OFF if you do not want to be notified of new messages (envelope icon does not appear on the screen). Messages can still be accessed using the INFO menu. If you would like to stop receiving messages, visit the My Acura website at *www.owners.acura.com* to change your messaging preferences.

Auto Reading – Select ON to have the system automatically read each message to you. Select OFF to manually select the Voice option when you want a message read to you.

Phone-Data Connection – Select this option to begin the process required to connect to Acura. This is used to access the most recent diagnostic information when a problem occurs.





NOTE: For the Phone-Data Connection button to be active, you need a *Bluetooth*® compatible and enabled cell phone paired to *Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink® (HFL). To complete the data connection setup, the paired phone must have a compatible data service.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

AcuraLink® (U.S. models only)

To find more information on *Bluetooth*® compatible and enabled cell phones, visit *www.acura.com/handsfreelink* or call the HandsFreeLink® consumer support at 1-888-528-7876.

Connect to the Acura Server — The default setting is prompt. When a diagnostic info message appears, and you select the Check Now option, the system will prompt you before connecting to the Acura server. If you do not wish to connect at that time, select No at the prompt, and you will see the information from the onboard database. The "Auto" setting will remove the prompt when you select the Check Now option and will automatically connect to the Acura server. This setting only applies when you have a *Bluetooth*® enabled phone that is paired with HFL and you have completed the Phone-Data Connection setup.

As required by the FCC:
This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

On models with navigation system
Refer to the navigation system manual for operation of the rearview camera.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Before Driving

Before you begin driving your vehicle, you should know what gasoline to use and how to check the levels of important fluids. You also need to know how to properly store luggage or packages. The information in this section will help you. If you plan to add any accessories to your vehicle, please read the information in this section first.

Break-in Period 444
Fuel Recommendation 444
Service Station Procedures 445
Refueling..... 445
Tighten Fuel Cap Message 447
Opening and Closing the Hood..... 447
Oil Check..... 448
Engine Coolant Check 449
Fuel Economy 450
Accessories and Modifications 453
Carrying Cargo 455

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Break-in Period, Fuel Recommendation

Break-in Period
Help assure your vehicle's future reliability and performance by paying extra attention to how you drive during the first 600 miles (1,000 km). During this period:

- Avoid full-throttle starts and rapid acceleration.
- Avoid hard braking for the first 200 miles (300 km).
- Do not change the oil until the multi-information display indicates it is needed.

You should also follow these recommendations with an overhauled or exchanged engine, or when the brakes are replaced.

Fuel Recommendation
Your vehicle is designed to operate on premium unleaded gasoline with a pump octane of 91 or higher. If this octane grade is unavailable, regular unleaded gasoline with a pump octane of 87 or higher may be used temporarily. The use of regular unleaded gasoline can cause metallic knocking noises in the engine and will result in decreased engine performance. The long-term use of regular-grade gasoline can lead to engine damage.

On vehicles with manual transmission
You may hear a knocking noise from the engine if you drive the vehicle at low engine speed (below about 1,000 rpm) in a higher gear. To stop this, raise the engine speed by shifting to a lower gear.

NOTICE

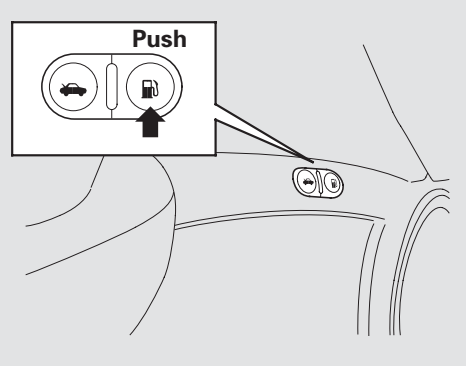
We recommend quality gasoline containing detergent additives that help prevent fuel system and engine deposits. In addition, in order to maintain good performance, fuel economy, and emissions control, we strongly recommend the use of gasoline that does NOT contain harmful manganese-based fuel additives such as MMT, if such gasoline is available.
Use of gasoline with these additives may adversely affect performance, and cause the malfunction indicator lamp on your instrument panel to come on. If this happens, contact your dealer for service. Some gasoline today is blended with oxygenates such as ethanol. Your vehicle is designed to operate on oxygenated gasoline containing up to 10% ethanol by volume. Do not use gasoline containing methanol. If you notice any undesirable operating symptoms, try another service station or switch to another brand of gasoline.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Because the level of detergency and additives in gasoline vary in the market, Honda endorses the use of "TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline" where available to help maintain the performance and reliability of your vehicle. TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline meets a new gasoline standard jointly established by leading automotive manufacturers to meet the needs of today's advanced engines. Qualifying gasoline retailers will, in most cases, identify their gasoline as having met "TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline" standards at the retail location. This fuel is guaranteed to contain the proper level of detergent additives and be free of metallic additives. The proper level of detergent additives, and absence of harmful metallic additives in gasoline, help avoid build-up of deposits in your engine and emission control system.

For further important fuel-related information for your vehicle, or on information on gasoline that does not contain MMT, visit My Acura at *owners.acura.com*. In Canada, visit *www.acura.ca* for additional information on gasoline. For more information on top tier gasoline, visit *www.toptiergas.com*.

Refueling



1. Park with the driver's side closest to the service station pump.
2. Open the fuel fill door by pressing the button in the driver's door (to open the fuel fill door manually, see page 564).

CONTINUED

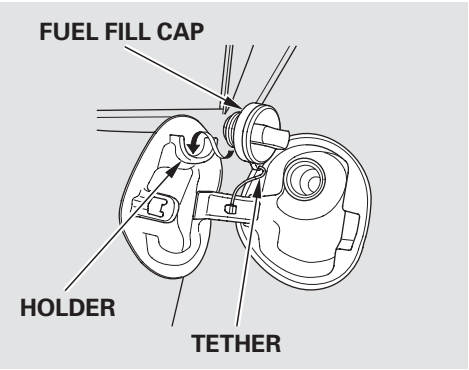
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Service Station Procedures

⚠ WARNING

Gasoline is highly flammable and explosive. You can be burned or seriously injured when handling fuel.

- Stop the engine, and keep heat, sparks, and flame away.
- Handle fuel only outdoors.
- Wipe up spills immediately.



3. Remove the fuel fill cap slowly. You may hear a hissing sound as pressure inside the tank equalizes. Place the cap in the holder on the fuel fill door.

   The fuel fill cap is attached to the fuel fill door with a tether to avoid losing the cap.

4. Stop filling the tank after the fuel nozzle automatically clicks off. Do not try to "top off" the tank. This leaves some room in the fuel tank for the fuel to expand with temperature changes.

If the fuel nozzle keeps clicking off even though the tank is not full, there may be a problem with your vehicle's fuel vapor recovery system. The system helps keep fuel vapor from going into the atmosphere. Try filling at another pump. If this does not fix the problem, consult your dealer.

5. Screw the fuel fill cap back on until it clicks at least once. If you do not properly tighten the cap, you will see a "TIGHTEN FUEL CAP" message on the multi-information display. If the system still detects an evaporative system leak after retightening the cap, the malfunction indicator lamp may come on (see page 562).

6. Push the fuel fill door closed until it latches.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tighten Fuel Cap Message

Your vehicle's on board diagnostic system will detect a loose or missing fuel fill cap as an evaporative system leak. The first time a leak is detected a "TIGHTEN FUEL CAP" message appears on the multi-information display.

Turn the engine off, and confirm the fuel fill cap is installed. If it is, loosen it, then retighten it until it clicks at least once. The message should go off after several days of normal driving once you tighten or replace the fuel fill cap. To scroll to another message, press the INFO button.

The "TIGHTEN FUEL CAP" message will appear each time you restart the engine until the system turns the message off.

If the system still detects a leak in your vehicle's evaporative emissions system, the malfunction indicator lamp (MIL) comes on. If the fuel fill cap was not already tightened, turn the engine off, and check or retighten the fuel fill cap until it clicks at least once. The MIL should go off after several days of normal driving once the cap is tightened or replaced. If the MIL does not go off, have your vehicle inspected by a dealer. For more information, see page 562 .

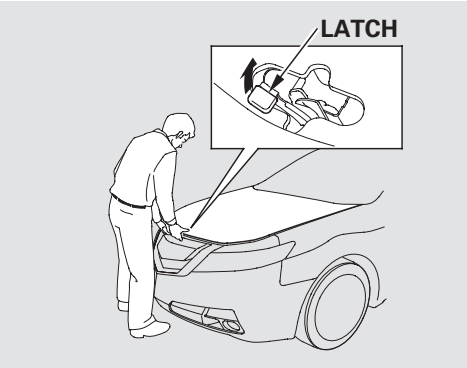
Opening and Closing the Hood

1. Park the vehicle, and set the parking brake. Pull the hood release handle located under the lower left corner of the dashboard. The hood will pop up slightly.

CONTINUED

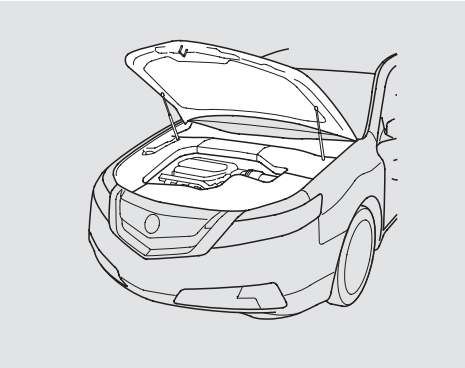
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Service Station Procedures



2. Put your fingers between the front edge of the hood and the front grille to locate the hood latch handle. Push this handle up until it releases the hood. Lift the hood.

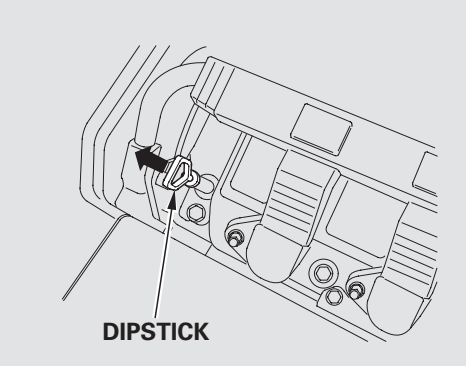
   If the hood latch handle moves stiffly, or if you can open the hood without lifting the handle, the mechanism should be cleaned and lubricated.



3. Lift the hood up most of the way. The hydraulic supports will lift it up the rest of the way and hold it up.

To close the hood, lower it to about a foot (30 cm) above the fender, then press down firmly with your hands. Make sure the hood is securely latched.

Oil Check



Park the vehicle on a level surface.

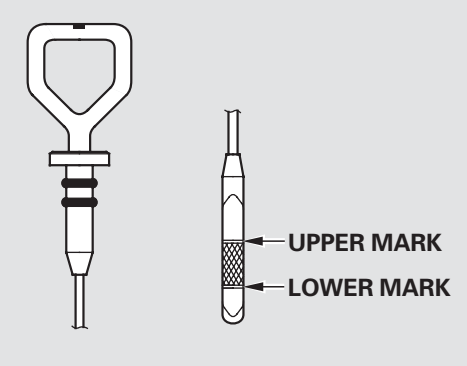
Wait a few minutes after turning the engine off before you check the oil.

1. Remove the dipstick (orange loop).

2. Wipe off the dipstick with a clean cloth or paper towel.

3. Insert the dipstick all the way back into its hole.

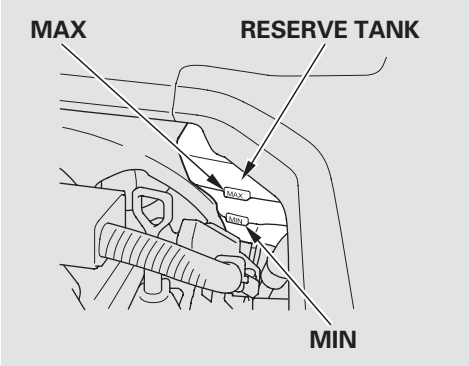
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



4. Remove the dipstick again, and check the level. It should be between the upper and lower marks.

If it is near or below the lower mark, see **Adding Engine Oil** on page 509 .

Engine Coolant Check



Look at the coolant level in the radiator reserve tank. Make sure it is between the MAX and MIN lines. If it is below the MIN line, see **Adding Engine Coolant** on page 512 for information on adding the proper coolant.

To access the radiator reserve tank, remove the right-side engine compartment cover (see page 508).

See page 507 for the engine coolant location.

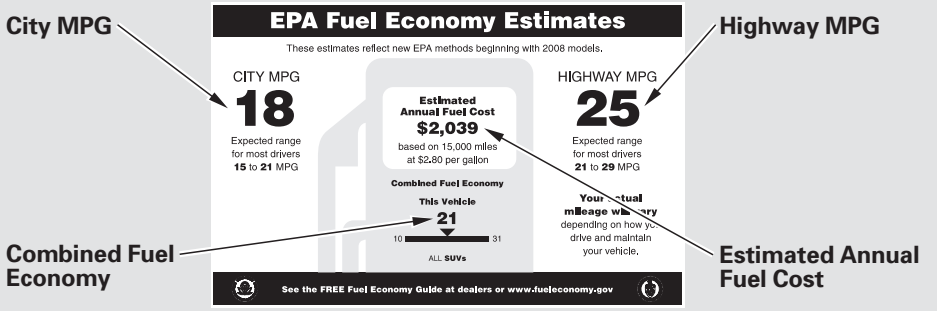
Refer to **Owner's Maintenance Checks** on page 505 for information about checking other items on your vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Fuel Economy

Actual Mileage and EPA Fuel Economy Estimates Comparison. Fuel economy is not a fixed number. It varies based on driving conditions, driving habits, and vehicle condition. Therefore, it is not possible for one set of estimates to predict fuel economy precisely for all drivers in all environments.

The EPA fuel economy estimates shown in the example to the right are a useful tool for comparison when buying a vehicle. EPA estimates include:


City MPG
EPA Fuel Economy Estimates
These estimates reflect new EPA methods beginning with 2008 models.
CITY MPG
18
Expected range for most drivers 15 to 21 MPG
Estimated Annual Fuel Cost
$2,039
based on 15,000 miles at $2.80 per gallon
Combined Fuel Economy
This Vehicle
21
10
31
ALL SUVs
HIGHWAY MPG
25
Expected range for most drivers 21 to 29 MPG
depending on how you drive and maintain your vehicle.
Highway MPG
Combined Fuel Economy
Estimated Annual Fuel Cost
See the FREE Fuel Economy Guide at dealers or www.fueleconomy.gov

(Sample U.S. EPA label shown)

City MPG – Represents urban driving in light traffic. A range of miles per gallon achieved is also provided.

Highway MPG – Represents a mixture of rural and interstate driving, in a warmed-up vehicle, typical of longer trips in free-flowing traffic. A range of miles per gallon achieved is also provided.

Combined Fuel Economy – Represents a combination of city and highway driving. The scale represents the range of combined fuel economy for other vehicles in the class.

Estimated Annual Fuel Cost – Provides an estimated annual fuel cost, based on 15,000 miles (20,000 km) per year multiplied by the cost per gallon (based on EPA fuel cost data) divided by the combined fuel economy.

For more information on fuel economy ratings and factors that affect fuel economy, visit *www.fueleconomy.gov* (Canada: Visit *www.vehicles.gc.ca*)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Fuel Economy Factors

The following factors can lower your vehicle's fuel economy:

- Aggressive driving (hard acceleration and braking)
- Excessive idling, accelerating and braking in stop-and-go traffic
- Cold engine operation (engines are more efficient when warmed up)
- Driving with a heavy load or the air conditioner running
- Improperly inflated tires

Improving Fuel Economy

Vehicle Maintenance

A properly maintained vehicle maximizes fuel economy. Poor maintenance can significantly reduce fuel economy. Always maintain your vehicle according to the maintenance messages displayed on the information display (see **Owner's Maintenance Checks** on page 505).

For example:

- **Use the recommended viscosity motor oil, displaying the API Certification Seal (see page 509).**
- **Maintain proper tire inflation** — An underinflated tire increases "rolling resistance," which reduces fuel economy.
- **Avoid carrying excess weight in your vehicle** — It puts a heavier load on the engine, increasing fuel consumption.
- **Keep your vehicle clean** — In particular, a build-up of snow or mud on your vehicle's underside adds weight and rolling resistance. Frequent cleaning helps your fuel economy.

Drive Efficiently

- **Drive moderately** — Rapid acceleration, abrupt cornering, and hard braking increase fuel consumption.
- **Observe the speed limit** — Aerodynamic drag has a big effect on fuel economy at speeds above 45 mph (75 km/h). Reduce your speed and you reduce the drag. Trailers, car top carriers, roof racks and bike racks are also big contributors to increased drag.
- **Always drive in the highest gear possible** — If your vehicle has a manual transmission, you can boost your fuel economy by up shifting as early as possible.
- **Avoid excessive idling** — Idling results in 0 miles per gallon (0 kms per liter).

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Fuel Economy

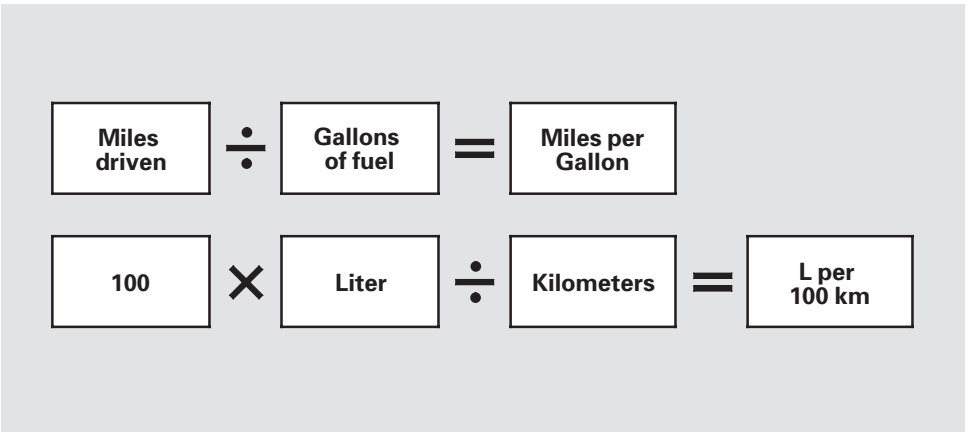
- **Minimize the use of the air conditioning system** – The A/C puts an extra load on the engine which makes it use more fuel. Use the fresh-air ventilation when possible.
- **Plan and combine trips** – Combine several short trips into one. A warmed-up engine is more fuel efficient than a cold one.

Calculating Fuel Economy

Measuring Techniques

Direct calculation is the recommended source of information about your actual fuel economy. Using frequency of fill-ups or taking fuel gauge readings are NOT accurate measures of fuel economy. Fuel economy may improve over the first several thousand miles (kilometers).

Checking Your Fuel Economy



1) Fill the fuel tank until the nozzle automatically clicks off.
2) Reset trip counter to zero.
3) Record the total gallons (liters) needed to refill.
4) Follow one of the simple calculations above.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Accessories and Modifications

Modifying your vehicle, or installing some non-Acura accessories, can make your vehicle unsafe. Before you make any modifications or add any accessories, be sure to read the following information.

Accessories
Your dealer has Acura accessories that allow you to personalize your vehicle. These accessories have been designed and approved for your vehicle, and are covered by warranty.

Although non-Acura accessories may fit on your vehicle, they may not meet factory specifications, and could adversely affect your vehicle's handling, stability, and reliability.

⚠WARNING

Improper accessories or modifications can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, and performance, and cause a crash in which you can be hurt or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding accessories and modifications.

When properly installed, cellular phones, alarms, two-way radios, and low-powered audio systems should not interfere with your vehicle's computer controlled systems, such as your airbags, anti-lock brakes, and tire pressure monitoring system.

Before installing any accessory:

- Make sure the accessory does not obscure any lights, or interfere with proper vehicle operation or performance.
- Be sure electronic accessories do not overload electrical circuits (see page 565) or interfere with proper operation of your vehicle.
- Before installing any electronic accessory, have the installer contact your dealer for assistance. If possible, have your dealer inspect the final installation.
- Do not install accessories on the side pillars or across the rear windows. Accessories installed in these areas may interfere with proper operation of the side curtain airbags.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Accessories and Modifications

Modifying Your Vehicle
Removing parts from your vehicle, or replacing components with non-Acura components could seriously affect your vehicle's handling, stability, and reliability.

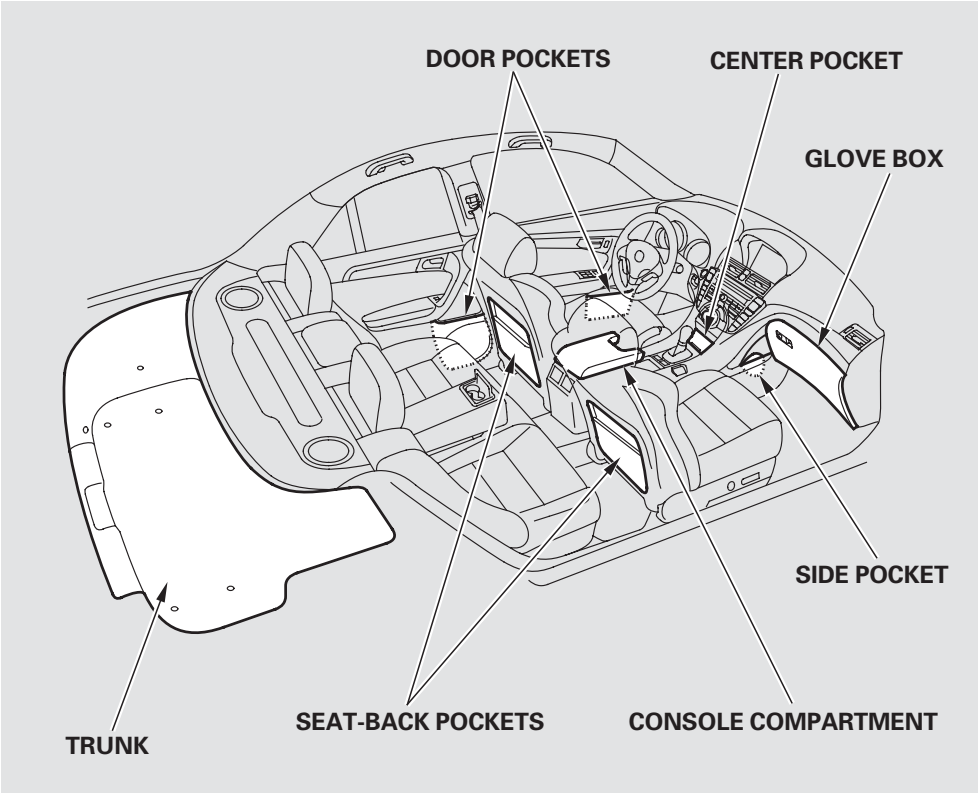
Some examples are:

- Lowering the vehicle with a non-Acura suspension kit that significantly reduces ground clearance can allow the undercarriage to hit speed bumps or other raised objects, which could cause the airbags to deploy.
- Raising your vehicle with a non-Acura suspension kit can affect the handling, stability, and reliability.
- Non-Acura wheels, because they are a universal design, can cause excessive stress on suspension components and will not be compatible with the tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS).
- Larger or smaller wheels and tires can interfere with the operation of your vehicle's anti-lock brakes and other systems.
- Modifying your steering wheel or any other part of your vehicle's safety features can make the systems ineffective.

If you plan to modify your vehicle, consult your dealer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Carrying Cargo



Your vehicle has several convenient storage areas:

- Glove box
- Door and seat-back pockets
- Center and side pockets
- Console compartment
- Trunk

In addition, the trunk pass-through allows you to carry longer items.

However, carrying too much cargo, or improperly storing it, can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, stopping distance, and tires, and make it unsafe. Before carrying any type of cargo, be sure to read the following pages.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

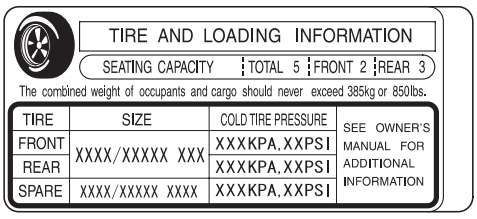
Carrying Cargo

Load Limits

The maximum load for your vehicle is 850 lbs (385 kg) for U.S. models and 395 kg for Canadian models.

See Tire And Loading Information label attached to the driver's doorjamb.

Label Example



This figure includes the total weight of all occupants, cargo, and accessories, and the tongue load if you are towing a trailer.

⚠WARNING

Overloading or improper loading can affect handling and stability and cause a crash in which you can be hurt or killed.

Follow all load limits and other loading guidelines in this manual.

Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit —

(1) Locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs." on your vehicle's placard.

(2) Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.

(3) Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs.

(4) The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the "XXX" amount equals 1,400 lbs. and there will be five 150 lb. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs.
(1,400 − 750 (5 × 150) = 650 lbs.)

(5) Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.

(6) If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Example 1		≧		+
	Max Load 850 lbs (395 kg)*		**Passenger Weight 150 lbs x 2 = 300 lbs (68 kg x 2 = 136 kg)**	**Cargo Weight 550 lbs (259 kg)***
Example 2		≧		+
	Max Load 850 lbs (395 kg)*		**Passenger Weight 150 lbs x 4 = 600 lbs (68 kg x 4 = 272 kg)**	**Cargo Weight 250 lbs (123 kg)***
Example 3		≧		+
	Max Load 850 lbs (395 kg)*		**Passenger Weight 150 lbs x 5 = 750 lbs (68 kg x 5 = 340 kg)**	**Cargo Weight 100 lbs (55 kg)***

*: Canadian models

In addition, the total weight of the vehicle, all occupants, accessories, cargo, and trailer tongue load must not exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) or the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR). Both are on a label on the driver's doorjamb.

Carrying Cargo in the Passenger Compartment

- Store or secure all items that could be thrown around and hurt someone during a crash.
- Do not put any items on top of the trunk panel. They can block your view and be thrown around the vehicle during a crash.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

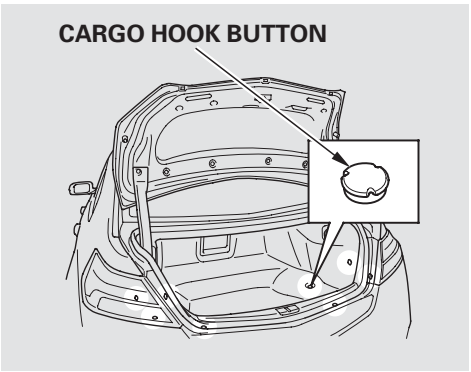
Carrying Cargo

- Be sure items placed on the floor behind the front seats cannot roll underneath and interfere with the proper operation of the seats, the sensors under the seats, or the driver's ability to operate the pedals.
- Keep all cargo below the bottom of the windows. If it is higher, it could interfere with the proper operation of the side curtain airbags.
- Keep the glove box closed while driving. If it is open, a passenger could injure their knees during a crash or sudden stop.

Carrying Cargo in the Trunk

- Distribute cargo evenly on the floor of the trunk, placing the heaviest items on the bottom and as far forward as possible.
- If you carry large items that prevent you from closing the trunk lid, exhaust gas can enter the passenger area. To avoid the possibility of **carbon monoxide poisoning**, follow the instructions on page 57 .

Cargo Hook Buttons



Cargo hook buttons in the trunk can be used to install a net for securing items.

Cargo Nets

If equipped

The cargo net can be used to help hold down items stored in the trunk.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

This section gives you tips on starting the engine under various conditions, and how to operate the manual and automatic transmissions. It also includes important information on parking your vehicle, the braking system, the Super Handling-All Wheel Drive™ (SH-AWD®) system, vehicle stability assist (VSA®), aka electronic stability control (ESC), system, and the tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS).

Preparing to Drive 460
Starting the Engine (Models without Keyless Access System) 461
Starting the Engine (Models with Keyless Access System) 463
Manual Transmission..... 465
Automatic Transmission..... 468
Driving with the Paddle Shifters..... 473
Super Handling-All Wheel Drive™ (SH-AWD®) System 478
Parking..... 480
Braking System..... 481
Anti-lock Brakes (ABS) 482
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA®), aka Electronic Stability Control (ESC), System 484
Hill Start Assist 486
Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) 488
Towing a Trailer 493
Towing Your Vehicle 493

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Preparing to Drive

You should do these checks and adjustments before you drive your vehicle:

1. Make sure all windows, mirrors, and outside lights are clean and unobstructed. Remove frost, snow, or ice.
2. Check that the hood is fully closed.
3. Check that the trunk is fully closed.
4. Visually check the tires. If a tire looks low, use a gauge to check its pressure.
5. Check that any items you may be carrying are stored properly or fastened down securely.
6. Check the seat adjustment (see page 155).
7. Check the adjustment of the inside and outside mirrors (see page 161).
8. Check the steering wheel adjustment (see page 140).
9. Make sure the doors are securely closed and locked.
10. Fasten your seat belt. Check that your passengers have fastened their seat belts (see page 16).
11. When you start the engine, check the gauges and indicators in the instrument panel, and the messages on the multi-information display (see pages 63 , 75 and 77).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Starting the Engine (Models without Keyless Access System)

Your vehicle's starting system has an auto control mode. When you turn the ignition switch to the START (III) position, this feature keeps the engine's starter motor running until the engine starts. Follow these instructions to start the engine:

1. Apply the parking brake.
2. In cold weather, turn off all electrical accessories to reduce the drain on the battery.
3. Make sure the shift lever is in Park. Press on the brake pedal.
4. Without touching the accelerator pedal, turn the ignition switch to the START (III) position, then release the ignition switch. You do not need to hold the ignition switch in the START (III) position to start the engine. Depending on the outside temperature, the starter motor runs for about 6 to 9 seconds until the engine starts.

   If you hold the ignition switch in the START (III) position for more than 7 seconds, the starter motor, depending on the outside temperature, runs for about 10 to 25 seconds until the engine starts.

   If the engine does not start, wait at least 10 seconds before trying again.

NOTICE

The immobilizer system protects your vehicle from theft. If an improperly coded key (or other device) is used, the engine's fuel system is disabled. For more information, see page 143.

NOTICE

The engine is harder to start in cold weather. Also, the thinner air found at altitudes above 8,000 feet (2,400 meters) adds to this problem.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Starting the Engine (Models without Keyless Access System)

Check Starting System Message

If there is a problem with the starting system, you will see a "CHECK STARTING SYSTEM" message on the multi-information display when the ignition switch is turned to the ON (II) position. You will also see this message when the auto control mode of the starting system has a problem.

If this message is on, the ignition switch has to be held in the START (III) position manually until the engine starts. The ignition switch can be held in that position up to 15 seconds.

Even though you may be able to start the engine manually without the auto control mode of the starting system, have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Starting the Engine (Models with Keyless Access System)

Your vehicle's starting system has an auto control mode. When you have your keyless access remote and push the engine start/stop button while depressing the brake pedal (A/T) or clutch pedal (M/T), this feature keeps the engine's starter motor running until the engine starts. Follow these instructions to start the engine:

1. Apply the parking brake.

2. In cold weather, turn off all electrical accessories to reduce the drain on the battery.

3. *Manual transmission:*
   Press the clutch pedal down all the way. The power mode from ON to START does not function unless the clutch pedal is pressed.

   Automatic transmission:
   Make sure the shift lever is in Park. Press on the brake pedal.

In either of the following cases, you should insert the keyless access remote into the keyless remote slot. For more information, see pages 188 and 189 .

- The keyless access remote system main switch is off.

- The keyless access remote battery becomes weak or dead.

4. Without touching the accelerator pedal, push and release the engine start/stop button. You do not need to hold the engine start/stop button to start the engine. Depending on the outside temperature, the starter motor runs for about 6 to 9 seconds until the engine starts.

   If you hold the engine start/stop button for more than 7 seconds, the starter motor, depending on the outside temperature, runs for about 10 to 25 seconds until the engine starts.

   If the engine does not start, wait at least 10 seconds before trying again.

NOTICE

The immobilizer system protects your vehicle from theft. If an improperly coded keyless access remote (or other device) is used, the engine's fuel system is disabled. For more information, see page143 .

NOTICE

The engine is harder to start in cold weather. Also, the thinner air found at altitudes above 8,000 feet (2,400 meters) adds to this problem.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Starting the Engine (Models with Keyless Access System)

Check Starting System Message

If there is a problem with the starting system, you will see a "CHECK STARTING SYSTEM" message on the multi-information display with the power mode ON. You will also see this message when the auto control mode of the starting system has a problem.

If this message is on, you should press and hold the engine start/stop button until the engine starts. The engine start/stop button can be pressed up to 15 seconds.

Even though you may be able to start the engine manually without the auto control mode of the starting system, have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

Your vehicle has the engine start/stop button instead of an ignition switch to select the power mode. For more information, see page 178 .

Emergency Engine Start

If you cannot start the engine using the normal engine start procedure, do the following:

1. Set the parking brake.

Automatic transmission:

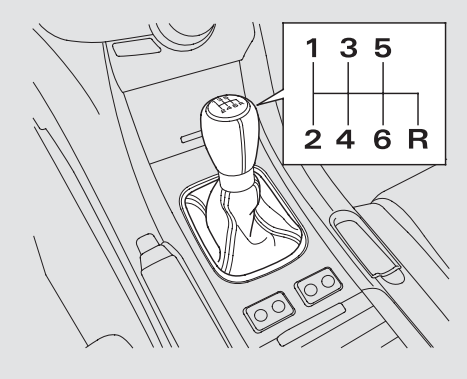
2. Put the shift lever into Park.

3. Press the engine start/stop button to turn on the ACCESSORY mode.

4. Press and hold the engine start/stop button for about 15 seconds while pressing the brake pedal (automatic) or the clutch pedal (manual).

Do not follow this procedure unless it is a case of emergency. Even if you can start the engine using this method, the system may have a malfunction. Contact your dealer as soon as possible.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



The manual transmission is synchronized in all forward gears for smooth operation. It has a lockout so you cannot accidentally shift from any forward gear to reverse while the vehicle is moving at a certain speed (see page 467).

When shifting up or down, make sure you push the clutch pedal down all the way, shift to the next gear, and let the pedal up gradually. When you are not shifting, do not rest your foot on the clutch pedal. This can cause your clutch to wear out faster.

Come to a full stop before you shift into reverse. You can damage the transmission by trying to shift into reverse with the vehicle moving. Push down the clutch pedal, and pause for a few seconds before shifting into reverse, or shift into one of the forward gears for a moment. This stops the gears so they won't "grind."

When slowing down, you can get extra braking from the engine by shifting to a lower gear. This extra braking can help you maintain a safe speed and prevent your brakes from overheating while going down a steep hill. Before downshifting, make sure the engine speed will not go into the tachometer's red zone in the lower gear.

⚠ WARNING

Rapid slowing or speeding up can cause loss of control on slippery surfaces. If you crash, you can be injured.

Use extra care when driving on slippery surfaces.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Manual Transmission

Recommended Shift Points

Drive in the highest gear that lets the engine run and accelerate smoothly. This will give you good fuel economy and effective emissions control. The following shift points are recommended:

Shift up	Normal acceleration
1st to 2nd	17 mph (28 km/h)
2nd to 3rd	27 mph (44 km/h)
3rd to 4th	36 mph (58 km/h)
4th to 5th	41 mph (66 km/h)
5th to 6th	44 mph (71 km/h)

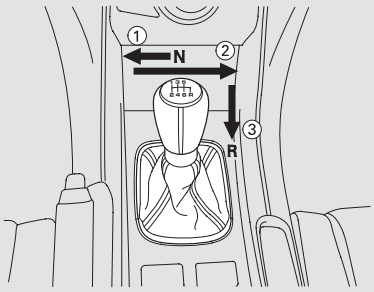
Engine Speed Limiter

If you exceed the maximum speed for the gear you are in, the engine speed will enter into the tachometer's red zone. If this occurs, you may feel the engine cut in and out. This is caused by a limiter in the engine's computer controls. The engine will run normally when you reduce the rpm below the red zone.

Before downshifting, make sure the engine will not go into the tachometer's red zone.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Reverse Lockout
The manual transmission has a lockout so you cannot accidentally shift from any forward gear to reverse while the vehicle is moving at a certain speed. If you cannot shift to reverse when the vehicle is stopped, do the following:



Move the shift lever in sequence.

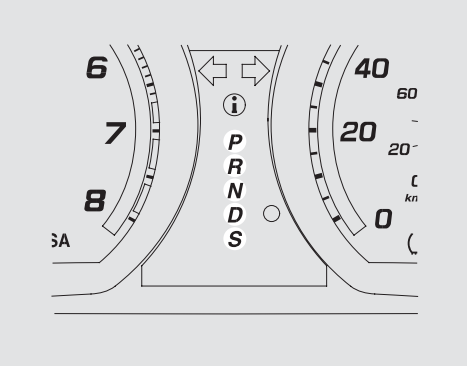
1. With the clutch pedal pressed, move the shift lever to the first/second gear side of the neutral gate, then shift to reverse.
2. If you are still unable to shift to reverse, apply the parking brake, and select the ACCESSORY or VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) mode (see page 179).
3. Press the clutch pedal, and shift to reverse.
4. With the clutch pedal still pressed fully, press the engine start/stop button to start the engine.

If you need to use this procedure to shift to reverse, your vehicle may be developing a problem. Have it checked by your dealer.

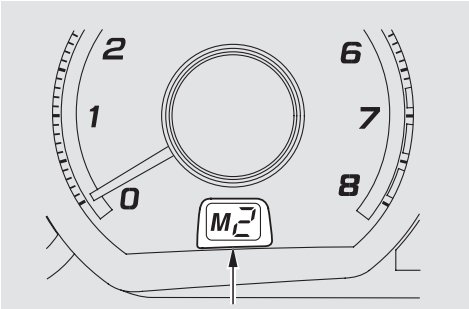
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Automatic Transmission

Shift Lever Position Indicators



These indicators between the tachometer and speedometer show which position the shift lever is in.



GEAR POSITION INDICATOR on PADDLE SHIFT MODE

Using a paddle shift mode, the gear position indicator shows you the selected gear number (see page 473).

The “D” indicator comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch* to the ON (II) position. If it flashes while driving (in any shift position), it indicates a possible problem in the transmission.

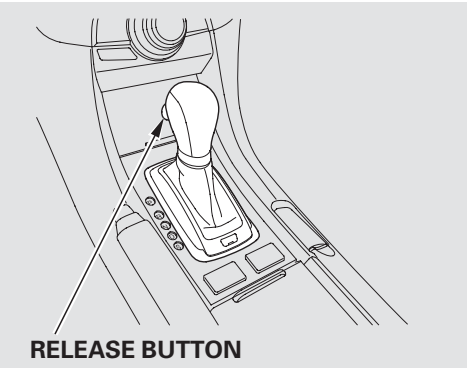
* : Models equipped with the keyless access system have an engine start/stop button instead of an ignition switch. ON Mode is the equivalent of ON (II). For more information, see pages 178 and 181 .

If the malfunction indicator lamp comes on along with the “D” indicator, there is a problem with the automatic transmission control system. Avoid rapid acceleration and have the transmission checked by your dealer as soon as possible.

When the “D” indicator warns of a possible problem with the transmission, you will see a “CHECK TRANSMISSION” message on the multi-information display.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Shifting



To shift from Park to any position, press firmly on the brake pedal, and press the release button on the front of the shift lever, then move the lever. You cannot shift out of Park when the ignition switch* is in the LOCK (0) or ACCESSORY (I) position.

* : Models equipped with the keyless access system have an engine start/stop button instead of an ignition switch. VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) Mode is the equivalent of LOCK (0) and ACCESSORY Mode is the equivalent of ACCESSORY (I). For more information, see pages 178 and 181 .

To shift from:	Do this:
P to R	Press the brake pedal and press the shift lever release button.
R to P N to R D to S	Press the shift lever release button.
S to D D to N N to D R to N	Move the shift lever.

Park (P) — This position mechanically locks the transmission. Use Park whenever you are turning off or starting the engine. To shift out of Park, you must press on the brake pedal and have your foot off the accelerator pedal. Press the release button on the front of the shift lever to move it.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Automatic Transmission

If you have done all of the above and still cannot move the lever out of Park, see **Shift Lock Release** on page 471.

You must also press the release button to shift into Park. To avoid transmission damage, come to a complete stop before shifting into Park.

On models without keyless access system
The shift lever must be in Park before you can remove the key from the ignition switch.

On models with keyless access system
The shift lever must be in Park before you change the power mode from ON to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

Reverse (R) — Press the brake pedal and the release button on the front of the shift lever to shift from Park to reverse. To shift from reverse to neutral, come to a complete stop, and then shift. Press the release button before shifting into reverse from neutral.

Neutral (N) — Use neutral if you need to restart a stalled engine, or if it is necessary to stop briefly with the engine idling. Shift to the Park position if you need to leave your vehicle for any reason. Press on the brake pedal when you are moving the shift lever from neutral to another gear.

Drive (D) — Use this position for your normal driving. The transmission automatically selects a suitable gear (1 through 5) for your speed and acceleration. You may notice the transmission shifting up at higher engine speeds when the engine is cold. This helps the engine warm up faster.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

S Position (S) — To shift into the S position, press the release button on the front of the shift lever, and move the lever to S. This position is similar to D, except only gears from first to fourth are selected. The S position keeps the transmission from cycling between fourth and fifth gears in stop-and-go driving.

With the shift lever in D or S, you can also use the paddle shifters to shift the transmission up or down. With the paddle shifters, you can operate the transmission much like a manual transmission without a clutch pedal. For more information on driving with the paddle shifters, see page 475 .

Engine Speed Limiter
If you exceed the maximum speed for the gear you are in, the engine speed will enter into the tachometer's red zone. If this occurs, you may feel the engine cut in and out. This is caused by a limiter in the engine's computer controls. The engine will run normally when you reduce the rpm below the red zone.

Shift Lock Release
This allows you to move the shift lever out of Park if the normal method of pushing on the brake pedal and pressing the release button does not work.

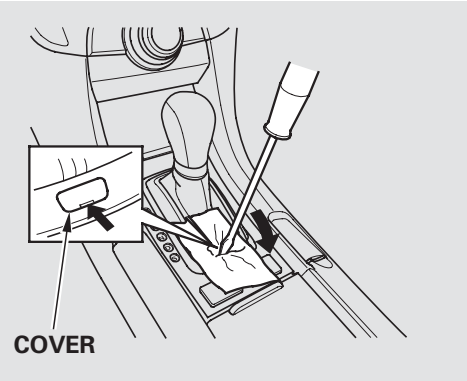
1. Set the parking brake.
2. *On models without keyless access system*
   Remove the key from the ignition switch.

   On models with keyless access system
   Remove the built-in key from the keyless access remote (see page 195).

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Automatic Transmission



3. Put a cloth on the edge of the shift lock release slot cover to prevent scratches. Use a small flat-tip screwdriver or metal fingernail file to carefully pry up the edge of the cover and remove it from the slot.

Vehicle without keyless access system is shown.

4. Insert a key or built-in key in the shift lock release slot.

5. Push down on the key or built-in key while you press the release button on the shift lever and move the shift lever out of Park to neutral.

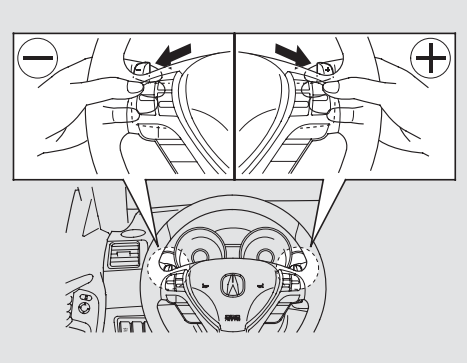
6. Remove the key or built-in key from the shift lock release slot, then reinstall the cover. Make sure the notch on the cover is on the rear side. Press the brake pedal, and restart the engine.

If you need to use the shift lock release, it means your vehicle is developing a problem. Have it checked by your dealer.

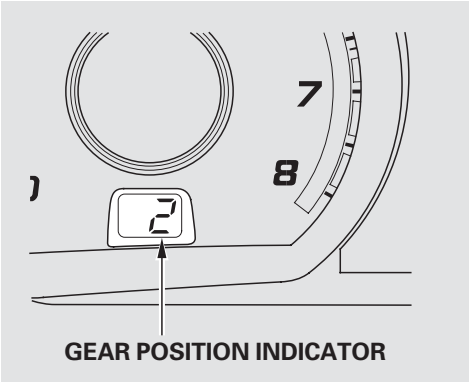
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Driving with the Paddle Shifters (Automatic Transmission Only)

Using the Paddle Shifters in the D position (D-Paddle Shift Mode)
When you are driving in the D position, you can shift the transmission up or down manually with the paddle shifters.



To shift up or down, use the + (right) or − (left) paddle shifter on either side of the steering wheel.



Each time you pull + (right), the transmission shifts to a higher gear. Pull − (left) to downshift. You will see the selected gear number on the instrument panel.

When you pull either paddle shifter, the gear position indicator shows you the selected gear number.

Downshifting with the paddle shifter allows you to increase the engine braking when going down steep or long hills, and provides more power when climbing uphills. You can upshift the transmission manually to reduce the rpm.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Driving with the Paddle Shifters (Automatic Transmission Only)

The transmission control system monitors the accelerator pedal use and your driving conditions. When you press the accelerator pedal as in normal driving, the system judges that you are driving at a constant cruising speed without using the paddle shifters. Under these conditions, D-paddle shift mode is canceled, and the transmission automatically returns to drive mode (D).

Hold the + paddle shifter for 2 seconds to return to drive mode (D).

When the transmission returns to drive mode (D), the displayed gear number disappears.

The transmission remains in the selected gear if you do not accelerate.

Each time you pull either paddle shifter, the transmission shifts one gear up or down. If you want to shift up or down more than two gears, pull the paddle shifter twice, pause, and then pull it again.

The automatic transmission will not allow you to shift up or down if:

- You downshift before the engine speed reaches the highest threshold of the lower gear.

  If you try to do this, the gear position indicator will flash the number of the lower gear several times, then return to a higher gear.

- You upshift before the engine speed reaches the lowest threshold of the higher gear.

- You pull both paddle shifters at the same time.

The transmission downshifts to first gear and returns to drive mode (D) when the vehicle comes to a complete stop or the vehicle speed is about 9 mph (15 km/h).

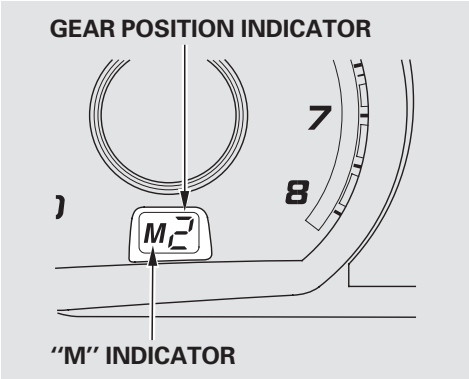
If there is a problem in the transmission while you are driving with the paddle shifters, the D indicator flashes, the D-paddle shift mode is canceled, and the transmission returns to drive mode (D).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Driving with the Paddle Shifters (Automatic Transmission Only)

Using the Paddle Shifters in the S position (Sequential Shift Mode)
With the shift lever in the S position, you can manually shift up or down with the paddle shifters. The transmission goes into the sequential shift mode and holds the selected gear.

To enter the sequential shift mode, press the release button on the front of the shift lever, move the lever to the S position, then pull either paddle shifter. To return to drive mode (D), move the shift lever to the D position. While you are driving in the sequential shift mode, the transmission will not automatically return to drive mode (D).



When you move the shift lever from "D" to "S" and pull either paddle shifter, the gear position indicator displays "M" along with the selected gear number.

To upshift, pull the + (right) paddle shifter. To downshift, pull the − (left) paddle shifter.

When you accelerate from a stop, the transmission starts in first gear, and you must manually upshift between first and fifth gears. Make sure you upshift before the engine speed reaches the tachometer's red zone.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Driving with the Paddle Shifters (Automatic Transmission Only)

The transmission remains in the selected gear (5, 4, 3, 2, or 1). There is no automatic downshift when you push the accelerator pedal to the floor.

When you are driving in 4th or 5th gear, the transmission downshifts to the lower gear under the following conditions:

- The vehicle slows down to a certain speed.
- You press the brake pedal.

Downshifting with the paddle shifter allows you to increase the engine braking when going down steep or long hills, and provides more power when climbing uphills. You can upshift the transmission manually to reduce the rpm.

The transmission also shifts automatically as the vehicle comes to a complete stop. It downshifts to first gear when the vehicle speed reaches 9 mph (15 km/h) or less.

The automatic transmission will not allow you to shift up or down if:

- You downshift before the engine speed reaches the highest threshold of the lower gear.

  If you try to do this, the gear position indicator will flash the number of the lower gear several times, then return to a higher gear.

  If the vehicle speed decreases below the redline of the selected lower gear while the indicator is flashing, the transmission downshifts, and the indicator displays the selected gear.
- You upshift before the engine speed reaches the lowest threshold of the higher gear.
- You pull both paddle shifters at the same time.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Driving with the Paddle Shifters (Automatic Transmission Only)

Starting in Second Gear

When you are in sequential shift mode, and the vehicle is stopped, pull the + (right) paddle shifter to shift to second gear. You will see "M2" in the display. Starting in second gear helps to reduce wheelspin in deep snow or on a slippery surface.

Recommended Shift Points

Drive in the highest gear that lets the engine run and accelerate smoothly. This will give you good fuel economy and effective emissions control. The following shift points are recommended:

Shift up	Normal acceleration
1st to 2nd	15 mph (24 km/h)
2nd to 3rd	25 mph (40 km/h)
3rd to 4th	40 mph (64 km/h)
4th to 5th	45 mph (72 km/h)

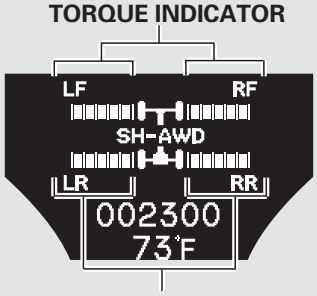
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Super Handling-All Wheel Drive™ (SH-AWD®) System

If equipped
The super handling-all wheel drive (SH-AWD) system is a full time all-wheel-drive system that automatically controls and transfers varying amounts of engine torque to all wheels independently, according to the driving conditions.

While the SH-AWD system helps to enhance the vehicle's driving stability in all situations, it is still your responsibility to drive and corner at reasonable speeds and to leave a sufficient margin of safety.

SH-AWD Torque Distribution Monitor



U.S. model is shown.

The SH-AWD torque distribution monitor on the multi-information display shows you the amount of torque being sent to the wheels. Each wheel — right front (RF), left front (LF), right rear (RR), and left rear (LR) — has its own torque indicator.

Each torque indicator is displayed as a bar graph divided into 5 segments. The number of segments represents the amount of torque distributed to each wheel.

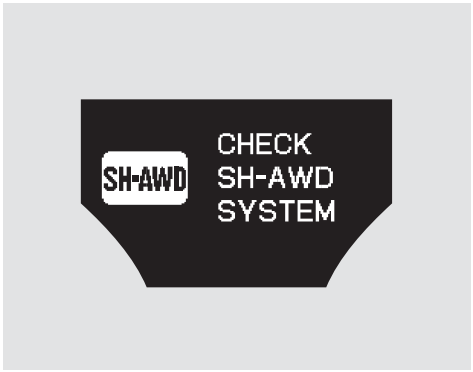
When there is only a slight change in torque distribution while driving, such as cruising on level roads at the same speed, the torque distribution monitor may stop displaying the amount of torque. This is not a system problem. The monitor will show the amount if the system senses any change in torque distribution.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If the SH-AWD indicator begins to blink while driving, it indicates the differential temperature is too high.

You will also see an “SH-AWD DIFF TEMP. HIGH” message on the multi-information display.

If this happens, pull to the side of the road when it is safe, park the vehicle and shift to Park (automatic), and let the engine idle until the indicator goes out. If the indicator does not go out, take your vehicle to a dealer to have it checked.



If the SH-AWD indicator on the instrument panel stays on, and the “CHECK SH-AWD SYSTEM” message also appears on the multi-information display, there is problem with the SH-AWD system.

Your vehicle still has normal front-wheel drive with vehicle stability assist (VSA), but does not have the advantages of SH-AWD. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Parking

Always use the parking brake when you park your vehicle. Make sure the parking brake is set firmly, or your vehicle may roll if it is parked on an incline.

If your vehicle has an automatic transmission, set the parking brake before you put the transmission in Park. This keeps the vehicle from moving and putting pressure on the parking mechanism in the transmission.

Parking Tips

- Make sure the moonroof and the windows are closed.
- Turn off the lights.
- Place any packages, valuables, etc., in the trunk or take them with you.
- Lock the doors.
- Check the indicator on the instrument panel to verify that the security system is set.
- Never park over dry leaves, tall grass, or other flammable materials. The hot three way catalytic converter could cause these materials to catch on fire.
- If the vehicle is facing uphill, turn the front wheels away from the curb. If your vehicle has a manual transmission, put it in first gear.
- If the vehicle is facing downhill, turn the front wheels toward the curb. If your vehicle has a manual transmission, put it in reverse gear.
- Make sure the parking brake is fully released before driving away. Driving with the parking brake partially set can overheat or damage the rear brakes.

On models with keyless access system

NOTE: If you are unable to stop the engine normally when the vehicle is parked (in the Park position on the automatic transmission models), see **Emergency Engine Stop** on page 186 .

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Braking System

Your vehicle is equipped with disc brakes at all four wheels. A power assist helps reduce the effort needed on the brake pedal. The emergency brake assist system increases the stopping force when you depress the brake pedal hard in an emergency situation. The anti-lock brake system (ABS) helps you retain steering control when braking very hard.

Resting your foot on the pedal keeps the brakes applied lightly, builds up heat, reduces their effectiveness and reduces brake pad life. In addition, fuel economy can be reduced. It also keeps your brake lights on all the time, confusing drivers behind you.

Constant application of the brakes when going down a long hill builds up heat and reduces their effectiveness. Use the engine to assist the brakes by taking your foot off the accelerator and downshifting to a lower gear.

Check your brakes after driving through deep water. Apply the brakes moderately to see if they feel normal. If not, apply them gently and frequently until they do. Be extra cautious and alert in your driving.

Braking System Design
The hydraulic system that operates the brakes has two separate circuits. Each circuit works diagonally across the vehicle (the left-front brake is connected with the right-rear brake, etc.). If one circuit should develop a problem, you will still have braking at two wheels.

Brake Pad Wear Indicators
All four brakes have audible brake wear indicators.
If the brake pads need replacing, you will hear a distinctive, metallic screeching sound when you apply the brake pedal. If you do not have the brake pads replaced, they will screech all the time. It is normal for the brakes to occasionally squeal or squeak when you apply them.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Anti-lock Brakes (ABS)

The anti-lock brake system (ABS) helps prevent the wheels from locking up, and helps you retain steering control by pumping the brakes rapidly, much faster than a person can do it.

The electronic brake distribution (EBD) system, which is part of the ABS, also balances the front-to-rear braking distribution according to vehicle loading.

You should never pump the brake pedal. Let the ABS work for you by always keeping firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal. This is sometimes referred to as “stomp and steer.”

You will feel a pulsation in the brake pedal when the ABS activates, and you may hear some noise. This is normal: it is the ABS rapidly pumping the brakes. On dry pavement, you will need to press on the brake pedal very hard before the ABS activates. However, you may feel the ABS activate immediately if you are trying to stop on snow or ice.

ABS Indicator

If this indicator comes on, the anti-lock function of the braking system has shut down. The brakes still work like a conventional system, but without anti-lock. You should have your dealer inspect your vehicle as soon as possible.

When the ABS indicator comes on, you will also see a “CHECK ABS SYSTEM” message on the multi-information display.

If the ABS indicator comes on while driving, test the brakes as shown on page 563 .

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If the ABS indicator and the brake system indicator come on together, and the parking brake is fully released, the EBD system may also be shut down.

Test your brakes as instructed on page 563 . If the brakes feel normal, drive slowly and have your vehicle repaired by your dealer as soon as possible. Avoid sudden hard braking which could cause the rear wheels to lock up and possibly lead to a loss of control.

Important Safety Reminders
ABS does not reduce the time or distance it takes to stop the vehicle. It only helps with the steering control during braking.

ABS will not prevent a skid that results from changing direction abruptly, such as trying to take a corner too fast or making a sudden lane change. Always drive at a safe speed for the road and weather conditions.

ABS cannot prevent a loss of stability. Always steer moderately when you are braking hard. Severe or sharp steering wheel movement can still cause your vehicle to veer into oncoming traffic or off the road.

A vehicle with ABS may require a longer distance to stop on loose or uneven surfaces ,such as gravel or snow, than a vehicle without anti- lock.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA®), aka Electronic Stability Control (ESC), System

The vehicle stability assist (VSA) system helps to stabilize the vehicle during cornering if the vehicle turns more or less than desired. It also assists you in maintaining traction while accelerating on loose or slippery road surfaces. It does this by regulating the engine's output, and by selectively applying the brakes.

When VSA activates, you may notice that the engine does not respond to the accelerator in the same way it does at other times. There may also be some noise from the VSA hydraulic system. You will also see the VSA system indicator blink.

The VSA system cannot enhance the vehicle's driving stability in all situations and does not control your vehicle's entire braking system. It is still your responsibility to drive and corner at reasonable speeds and to leave a sufficient margin of safety.

VSA OFF Indicator

When VSA is off, the VSA OFF indicator comes on as a reminder.

Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System Indicator

When VSA activates, you will see the VSA system indicator blink.

If this indicator comes on while driving, you will also see a "CHECK VSA SYSTEM" and/or "CHECK HILL START ASSIST SYSTEM" message on the multi-information display. Drive cautiously as the VSA may not be functioning. Without VSA, your vehicle will have normal braking and cornering ability, but it will not have VSA traction and stability enhancement. Also, the VSA OFF switch will not operate. Pull to the side of the road when it is safe, and turn off the engine. Reset the system by restarting the engine. If the VSA system indicator stays on, have the VSA system inspected by your dealer.

NOTE: The main function of the VSA system is generally known as Electronic Stability Control (ESC). The system also includes a traction control function.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA®), aka Electronic Stability Control (ESC), System

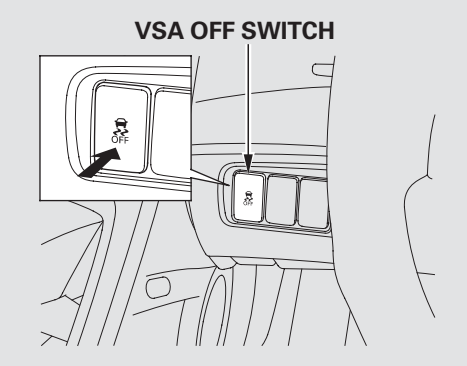
On models with SH-AWD
If there is a problem with the hill start assist system, the VSA system indicator comes on and stays on. The multi-information display shows a "CHECK HILL START ASSIST SYSTEM" message.

On models with keyless access system
With the VSA system indicator on, you may not be able to stop the engine even if you park the vehicle safely. To stop the engine, see **Emergency Engine Stop** on page 186 .

If the low tire pressure/TPMS indicator comes on (see page 487), or the multi-information display shows a "CHECK TPMS SYSTEM" message with the indicator flashing (see page 491), the VSA system automatically turns on even if the VSA system is turned off with the VSA OFF switch. In this case, you cannot turn the VSA system off by pressing the VSA OFF switch again.

Without VSA, your vehicle will have normal braking and cornering ability, but it will not have VSA traction and stability enhancement.

VSA OFF Switch



This switch is under the driver's side vent. To turn the VSA system on and off, press and hold it until you hear a beep.

When VSA is off, the VSA OFF indicator comes on as a reminder. Press and hold the switch again. It turns the system back on.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA®), aka Electronic Stability Control (ESC), System

VSA is turned on every time you start the engine, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

In certain unusual conditions when your vehicle gets stuck in shallow mud or fresh snow, it may be easier to free it with the VSA temporarily switched off. When the VSA system is off, the traction control system is also off. You should only attempt to free your vehicle with the VSA off if you are not able to free it when the VSA is on.

Immediately after freeing your vehicle, be sure to switch the VSA on again. We do not recommend driving your vehicle with the VSA and traction control systems switched off.

VSA and Tire Sizes

Driving with varying tire or wheel sizes may cause the VSA to malfunction. When replacing tires, make sure they are of the same size and type as your original tires (see page 540).

If you install winter tires, make sure they are the same size as those that were originally supplied with your vehicle. Exercise the same caution during winter driving as you would if your vehicle was not equipped with VSA.

Hill Start Assist

On models with SH-AWD

Your vehicle is equipped with a hill start assist feature to help prevent the vehicle from rolling on inclines as you move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator.

To activate hill start assist, you must come to a complete stop and make sure the shift lever is either in D or S when facing uphill, or reverse when facing downhill. This feature begins working a few seconds after you are in the correct gear position. Release the brake pedal. The brakes remain engaged briefly to keep the vehicle from rolling forward or backward. Gently apply the accelerator pedal as in normal driving. Hill start assist will release brake pressure gradually as you accelerate.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA®), aka Electronic Stability Control (ESC), System

On manual transmission models: You must come to a complete stop, press the clutch pedal, and shift to first gear when facing uphill, or reverse when facing downhill. Release the brake pedal. The brakes remain engaged briefly to keep the vehicle from rolling forward or backward while you move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal. Gently apply the accelerator pedal while simultaneously releasing the clutch pedal, as in normal driving. Hill start assist will release brake pressure gradually as you accelerate.

Hill start assist will also hold braking briefly if you select the neutral gear position with the clutch pedal depressed when facing uphill.

Hill start assist may not prevent your vehicle from rolling downhill on a very steep or slippery slope, and will not operate on small inclines.

Hill start assist is not a replacement for the parking brake. If parking your vehicle, ensure that the transmission is in park, and/or the parking brake is fully applied before exiting the vehicle. For vehicles with manual transmission, it is recommended that you turn off the engine before exiting the vehicle.

If the VSA system indicator comes on with a “CHECK HILL START ASSIST SYSTEM” message on the multi-information display, there may be a problem with the hill start assist. The VSA also may not function. Have your vehicle inspected by your dealer.

Hill start assist will still operate even when VSA is switched off.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

Your vehicle is equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that turns on every time you start the engine and monitors the pressure in your tires while driving.

Each tire has its own pressure sensor. If the air pressure of a tire becomes significantly low, the sensor in that tire immediately sends a signal that causes the low tire pressure/TPMS indicator in the instrument panel to come on. If this happens, you will see which tire is losing pressure on the multi-information display along with a "CHECK TIRE PRESSURE" message.

Low Tire Pressure/ TPMS Indicator

When the low tire pressure/TPMS indicator is on, one or more of your tires is significantly underinflated. You should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure as indicated on the vehicle's tire information placard.

It is possible that the pressures shown on the multi-information display and the pressures you manually measure are slightly different.

If the difference is significant or you cannot make the low tire pressure/ TPMS indicator and message on the multi-information display go out after inflating the tires to the specified values, have your dealer check the system as soon as possible.

If you think you can safely drive a short distance to a service station, proceed slowly to the station, then inflate the tire to the recommended pressure shown on the driver's doorjamb.

If the tire is flat, or if the tire pressure is too low to continue driving, replace the tire with the compact spare tire (see page 549).

Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Because tire pressure varies by temperature and other conditions, the low tire pressure/TPMS indicator may come on unexpectedly.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

For example, if you check and fill your tires in a warm area, then drive in extremely cold weather, the tire pressure will be lower than measured and could be underinflated and cause the low tire pressure/ TPMS indicator to come on. Or, if you check and adjust your tire pressure in cooler conditions, and drive into extremely hot conditions, the tire may become overinflated. However, the low tire pressure/ TPMS indicator will not come on if the tires are overinflated.

Refer to page 535 for tire inflation guidelines.

If there is a problem with the TPMS, this indicator begins to flash. It stops flashing after approximately 1 minute, then stays on. You will also see a “CHECK TPMS SYSTEM” message on the multi-information display (see page 491).

Although your tire pressure is monitored, you must manually check the tire pressures monthly.

Each tire, including the spare, should be checked monthly when the vehicle is cold, and set to the recommended inflation pressure as specified on the vehicle placard and in the owner’s manual (see page 536).

Tire Pressure Monitor

U.S. model

To select the tire pressure monitor, press the INFO button several times with the ignition switch* in the ON (II) position or with the power mode ON.

You will see the above display on the multi-information display when each tire pressure is normal.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

Canadian model

Each tire pressure is shown in PSI (U.S. models) or in kPa (Canadian models).

* : Models equipped with the keyless access system have an engine start/stop button instead of an ignition switch. ON Mode is the equivalent of ON (II). For more information, see pages 178 and 181 .

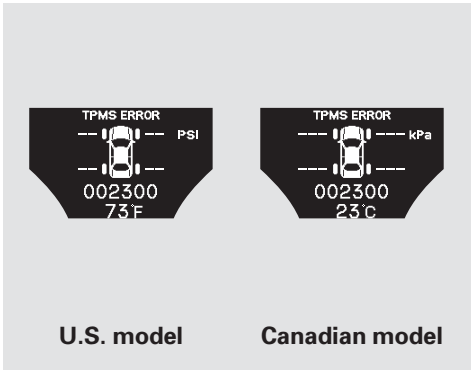
Each tire has its own pressure sensor. If the air pressure of a tire becomes significantly low, the sensor in that tire immediately sends a signal that causes the low tire pressure/TPMS indicator in the instrument panel to come on. If this happens, you will see which tire is losing pressure on the multi- information display along with a “CHECK TIRE PRESSURE” message.

U.S. model **Canadian model**

If any of the tires has low pressure, the tire pressure monitor also shows the above message and each tire pressure to warn you about the low tire pressure when you select the display by pressing the INFO button several times.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

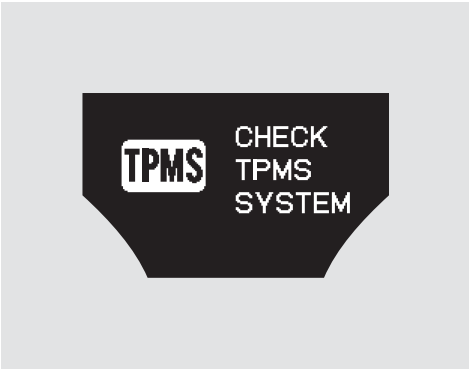
Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)



U.S. model Canadian model

If there is a problem with the TPMS, the tire pressure monitor shows a "TPMS ERROR" message and the tire pressure readings are not displayed. If this happens, you will first see a system warning message "CHECK TPMS SYSTEM" on the multi-information display.

TPMS System Failure



If there is a problem with the TPMS, you will see the above message on the multi-information display.

Also, the low tire pressure/TPMS indicator begins to flash, then stays on (see page 488).

If you see this message, the system is off and is not monitoring the tire pressures. Have the system checked by your dealer as soon as possible.

If the low tire pressure/TPMS indicator comes on, or the multi-information display shows a "CHECK TPMS SYSTEM" message, the VSA system automatically turns on even when the VSA system is turned off by pressing the VSA OFF switch (see page 485). If this happens, you cannot turn the VSA system off by pressing the VSA OFF switch again.

When you restart the vehicle with the compact spare tire, the TPMS system message will also be displayed on the multi-information display after several miles (kilometers) driving.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

Changing a Tire with TPMS

If you have a flat tire, the low tire pressure/TPMS indicator and tire monitor indicator will come on. Replace the indicated flat tire with the compact spare tire (see page 549).

After the flat tire is replaced with the spare tire, the low tire pressure/TPMS indicator stays on while driving. After several miles (kilometers) driving, this indicator begins to flash, then stays on again. You will also see a “CHECK TPMS SYSTEM” message on the multi-information display. This is normal; the system cannot monitor the spare tire pressure. Manually check the spare tire pressure to be sure it is correct.

This indicator and the warning message on the multi-information display will go off, after several miles (kilometers) driving, when the spare tire is replaced with the specified regular tire equipped with the tire pressure monitor sensor.

Each wheel is equipped with a tire pressure sensor mounted inside the tire behind the valve stem. You must use TPMS specific wheels. It is recommended that you always have your tires serviced by your dealer or a qualified technician.

Never use a puncture-repairing agent in a flat tire. If used, you will have to replace the tire pressure sensor. Have the flat tire repaired by your dealer as soon as possible.

If the low tire pressure/TPMS indicator and the low tire position on the low tire pressure monitor do not go out after inflating the tires to the specified values, have your dealer check the system as soon as possible.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

As required by the FCC:
This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

This device complies with Industry Canada Standard RSS-210.
Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Towing a Trailer

Your vehicle is not designed to tow a trailer. Attempting to do so can void your warranties.

Towing Your Vehicle

Your vehicle is not designed to be towed behind a motor home. If your vehicle needs to be towed in an emergency, see page 572.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Maintenance

This section explains why it is important to keep your vehicle well maintained and how to follow basic maintenance safety precautions.

This section also includes instructions on how to read the Maintenance Minder messages on the multi-information display, and instructions for simple maintenance tasks you may want to take care of yourself.

If you have the skills and tools to perform more complex maintenance tasks on your vehicle, you may want to purchase the service manual. See page 599 for information on how to obtain a copy, or see your dealer.

U.S. Vehicles:
Maintenance, replacement, or repair of emissions control devices and systems may be done by any automotive repair establishment or individual using parts that are "certified" to EPA standards.

Maintenance Safety 496
Maintenance Minder™ 497
Fluid Locations 507
Engine Compartment Covers 508
Adding Engine Oil 509
Changing the Engine Oil and Filter 510
Engine Coolant 512
Windshield Washers 514
Transmission Fluid 515
Automatic Transmission 515
Manual Transmission 517
Brake and Cluth Fluid 519
Timing Belt 520
Lights 521
Cleaning the Seat Belts 530
Floor Mats 531
Dust and Pollen Filter 532
Exterior Care 532
Wiper Blades 532
Tires 534
Checking the Battery 542
Vehicle Storage 544
Interior Care 545

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Maintenance Safety

All service items not detailed in this section should be performed by a certified technician or other qualified mechanic.

Important Safety Precautions
To eliminate potential hazards, read the instructions before you begin, and make sure you have the tools and skills required.

- Make sure your vehicle is parked on level ground, the parking brake is set, and the engine is off.
- To clean parts, use a commercially available degreaser or parts cleaner, not gasoline.
- To reduce the possibility of fire or explosion, keep cigarettes, sparks, and flames away from the battery and all fuel-related parts.
- Wear eye protection and protective clothing when working with the battery or compressed air.

⚠ WARNING

Improperly maintaining this vehicle, or failing to correct a problem before driving can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the inspection and maintenance recommendations in this owner's manual.

Potential Vehicle Hazards

- **Carbon Monoxide poison from engine exhaust.** Be sure there is adequate ventilation whenever you operate the engine.
- **Burns from hot parts.** Let the engine and exhaust system cool down before touching any parts.
- **Injury from moving parts.** Do not run the engine unless instructed to do so.

⚠ WARNING

Failure to properly follow maintenance instructions and precautions can cause you to be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the procedures and precautions in this owner's manual.

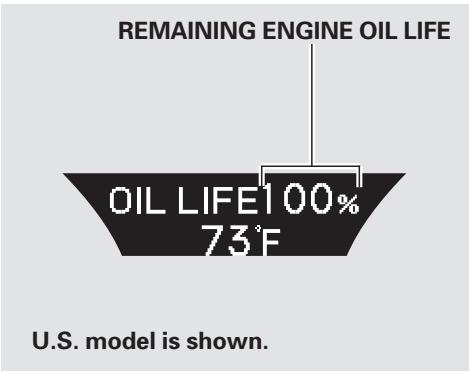
Some of the most important safety precautions are given here. However, we cannot warn you of every conceivable hazard that can arise in performing maintenance. Only you can decide whether or not you should perform a given task.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Your vehicle displays engine oil life and maintenance service items on the multi-information display to show you when you should have your dealer perform engine oil replacement and indicated maintenance service.

Based on the engine operating conditions, the onboard computer in your vehicle calculates the remaining engine oil life and displays it as a percentage.

Engine Oil Life Indicator



U.S. model is shown.

To see the current engine oil life displayed on the multi-information display, turn the ignition switch* to the ON (II) position, and press the SEL/RESET button on the steering wheel repeatedly until the engine oil life is displayed.

* : Models equipped with the keyless access system have an engine start/stop button instead of an ignition switch. ON Mode is the equivalent of ON (II). For more information, see pages 178 and 181 .

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Maintenance Minder™

The remaining engine oil life is shown on the multi-information display according to this table:

Calculated Engine Oil Life (%)	Displayed Engine Oil Life (%)
100% — 91%	100%
90% — 81%	90%
80% — 71%	80%
70% — 61%	70%
60% — 51%	60%
50% — 41%	50%
40% — 31%	40%
30% — 21%	30%
20% — 16%	20%
15% — 11%	15%
10% — 6%	10%
5% — 1%	5%
0%	0%

When the remaining engine oil life is 15 to 6 percent, the multi-information display shows a “SERVICE DUE SOON” message along with the maintenance item code(s) indicating the main and sub items required at the time of the oil change. Refer to page 506 for a complete list of the maintenance main items and sub items.

Pressing either INFO button (▲/▼) switches the display from the message to another display. Once you switch the display, this message will go off.

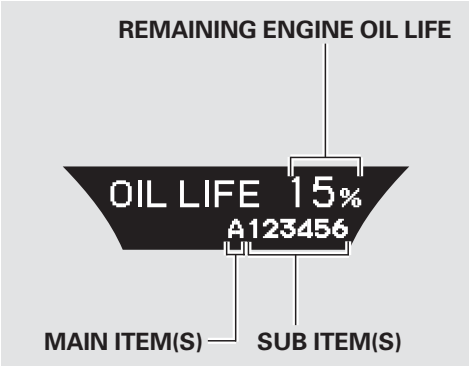
Along with the message, the system message indicator comes on (see page 72).

The message appears on the multi-information display each time you turn the ignition switch* to the ON (II) position.

* : Models equipped with the keyless access system have an engine start/stop button instead of an ignition switch. ON Mode is the equivalent of ON (II). For more information, see pages 178 and 181 .

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

This message reminds you that your vehicle will soon be due for scheduled maintenance.



Press the SEL/RESET button on the steering wheel repeatedly to select the engine oil life information. Along with the “OIL LIFE” message, you will see the percentage of the remaining engine oil life and the maintenance item codes on the multi-information display.

When the remaining oil life is 5 to 1 percent, the multi-information display shows a “SERVICE DUE NOW” message with the same maintenance items “SERVICE DUE SOON” was displayed with. When you see this message, have the indicated maintenance performed as soon as possible.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Maintenance Minder™

Pressing either INFO button (▲/▼) switches the display from the message to another display. Once you switch the display, this message will go off.

Press the SEL/RESET button on the steering wheel repeatedly to select the engine oil life. The message "SERVICE," along with "5%," and the maintenance item code are displayed on the multi-information display when the calculated engine oil life is 1 to 5 percent (see page 498).

If the indicated maintenance service is not done and the remaining engine oil life reaches 0%, the multi-information display will show the message "SERVICE PAST DUE" and the maintenance item code(s). This message is displayed when the total distance traveled is less than 10 miles (for U.S. models) or 10 km (for Canadian models) after the engine oil life became 0%.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

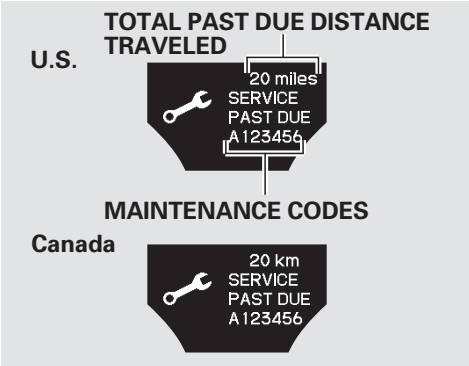
These messages will come on every time you turn the ignition switch* to the ON (II) position.

* : Models equipped with the keyless access system have an engine start/stop button instead of an ignition switch. ON Mode is the equivalent of ON (II). For more information, see pages 178 and 181 .

Immediately have the service performed, and make sure to reset the display as described on page 503 .

Pressing either INFO button (▲/▼) switches the display from the message to another display. To see the message again, press either INFO button repeatedly.

Press the SEL/RESET button on the steering wheel repeatedly to select the engine oil life. The message "SERVICE," along with "0%," and the maintenance item code are displayed on the multi-information display when the calculated engine oil life is 0 to 1 percent.



If the indicated required service is not done and the remaining engine oil life becomes 0%, the multi-information display will show a "SERVICE PAST DUE" message, the total distance traveled after the remaining oil life became 0%, and the maintenance item code(s).

CONTINUED

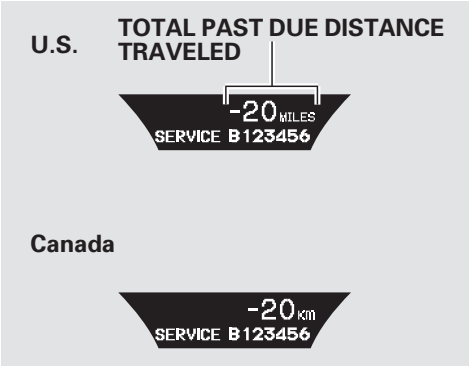
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Maintenance Minder™

This message is displayed again when you drive over 10 miles (for U.S. models) or 10 km (for Canadian models) after seeing the 0% message.

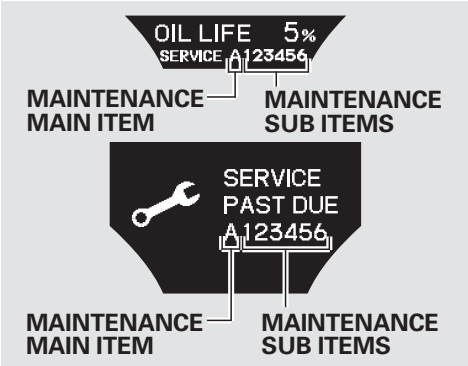
Immediately have the service performed, and make sure to reset the display as described on page 501.

Pressing either INFO button (▲/▼) switches the display from the message to another display. To see the message again, press either INFO button repeatedly.



When you press the SEL/RESET button to select the engine oil life, the message "SERVICE," along with the maintenance item code(s) and the total negative distance traveled after the oil life became 0%, will be displayed on the multi-information display.

Maintenance Main Items and Sub Items



All maintenance items shown on the multi-information display are in code. For an explanation of these maintenance codes, see page 506.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

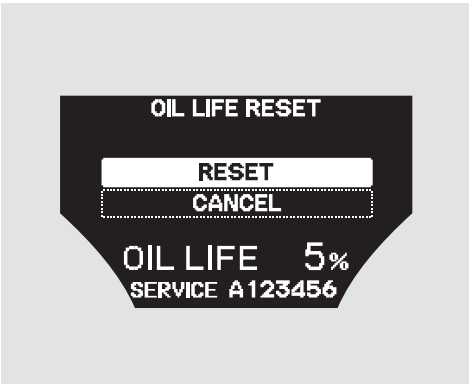
Resetting the Engine Oil Life Display

Your dealer will reset the display after completing the required maintenance service. You will see "OIL LIFE 100%" on the display the next time you turn the ignition switch* to the ON (II) position.

* : Models equipped with the keyless access system have an engine start/stop button instead of an ignition switch. ON Mode is the equivalent of ON (II). For more information, see pages 178 and 181 .

If maintenance service is done by someone other than your dealer, reset the Maintenance Minder as follows:

1. Turn the ignition switch* to the ON (II) position.
2. If the engine oil life is not displayed, press the SEL/RESET button on the steering wheel repeatedly.
3. Press and hold the SEL/RESET button on the steering wheel for more than 10 seconds. The remaining engine oil life reset mode will be shown on the multi-information display.



4. Select "RESET" by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, then press the SEL/RESET button to reset the engine oil life display. The maintenance item code(s) will disappear, and the engine oil life will reset to "100." If you want to cancel the oil life reset mode, select "CANCEL."

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Maintenance Minder™

Important Maintenance Precautions
If you have the required service done but do not reset the display, or reset the display without doing the service, the system will not show the correct maintenance intervals. This can lead to serious mechanical problems because you will no longer have an accurate record of when maintenance is needed.

Your authorized dealer knows your vehicle best and can provide competent, efficient service. However, service at a dealer is not mandatory to keep your warranties in effect. Maintenance may be done by any qualified service facility or person who is skilled in this type of automotive service. Keep all receipts as proof of completion, and have the person who does the work fill out your Maintenance Journal or Canadian Maintenance Log. Check your warranty booklet for more information.

We recommend using Acura parts and fluids whenever you have maintenance done. These are manufactured to the same high-quality standards as the original components, so you can be confident of their performance and durability.

U.S. Vehicles:
According to state and federal regulations, failure to perform maintenance on the items marked with # will not void your emissions warranties. However, all maintenance services should be performed in accordance with the intervals indicated by the multi-information display.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Owner's Maintenance Checks
You should check the following items at the specified intervals. If you are unsure of how to perform any check, turn to the appropriate page listed.

- Engine oil level — Check every time you fill the fuel tank. See page 448.
- Engine coolant level — Check the radiator reserve tank every time you fill the fuel tank. See page 449.
- Automatic transmission — Check the fluid level monthly. See page 515.
- Brakes — Check the fluid level monthly. See page 519.
- Tires — Check the tire pressure monthly. Examine the tread for wear and foreign objects. See page 534.
- Lights — Check the operation of the headlights, parking lights, taillights, high-mount brake light, and license plate lights monthly. See page 521.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Maintenance Minder™

Symbol	Maintenance Main Items
A	• Replace engine oil*1

B	• Replace engine oil*1 and oil filter
	• Inspect front and rear brakes
	• Check parking brake adjustment
	• Inspect these items:
	  • Tie rod ends, steering gear box, and boots
	  • Suspension components
	  • Driveshaft boots
	  • Brake hoses and line (including ABS/VSA)
	  • All fluid levels and condition of fluids
	  • Exhaust system#
	  • Fuel lines and connections#

*1 : If the message ''SERVICE DUE NOW'' does not appear more than 12 months after the display is reset, change the engine oil every year.

: See information on maintenance and emissions warranty on page 504 .

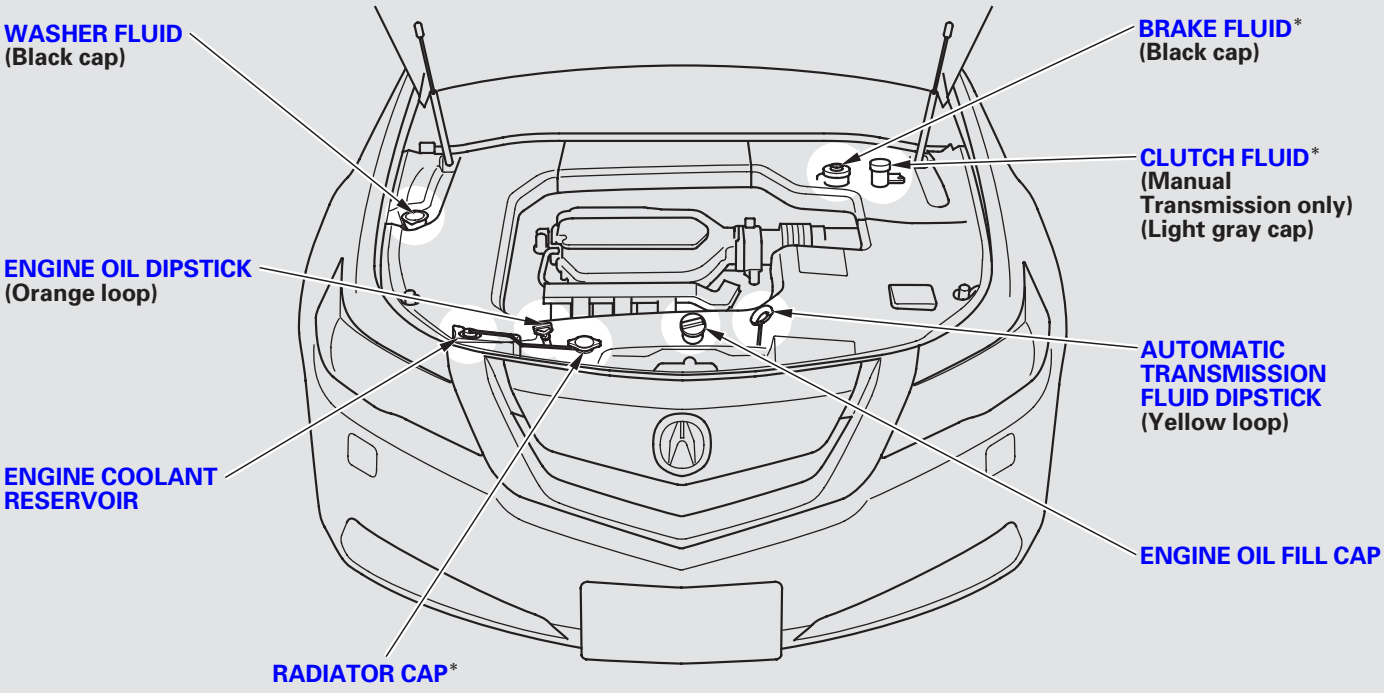
NOTE: • Independent of the Maintenance Minder information, replace the brake fluid every 3 years.
• Inspect idle speed every 160,000 miles (256,000 km).
• Adjust the valves during service 3 if they are noisy.

Symbol	Maintenance Sub Items
1	• Rotate tires
2	• Replace air cleaner element If you drive in dusty conditions, replace every 15,000 miles (24,000 km). • Replace dust and pollen filter If you drive primarily in urban areas that have high concentrations of soot in the air from industry and from diesel-powered vehicles, replace every 15,000 miles (24,000 km). • Inspect drive belt
3	• Replace transmission fluid • Replace transmission and transfer*2 fluid
4	• Replace spark plugs • Replace timing belt and inspect water pump If you drive regularly in very high temperatures (over 110°F, 43°C), or in very low temperatures (under −20°F, −29°C), replace every 60,000 miles (U.S.)/ 100,000 km (Canada). • Inspect valve clearance
5	• Replace engine coolant
6	• Replace rear differential fluid*2 Driving in mountainous areas at very low vehicle speeds results in higher level of mechanical (shear) stress to fluid. This requires differential fluid changes more frequently than recommended by the Maintenance Minder. If you regularly drive your vehicle under these conditions, have the differential fluid changed at 7,500 miles (12,000 km), then every 15,000 miles (24,000 km).

*2 : SH-AWD only

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Fluid Locations



* : Located under the cover

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Engine Compartment Covers

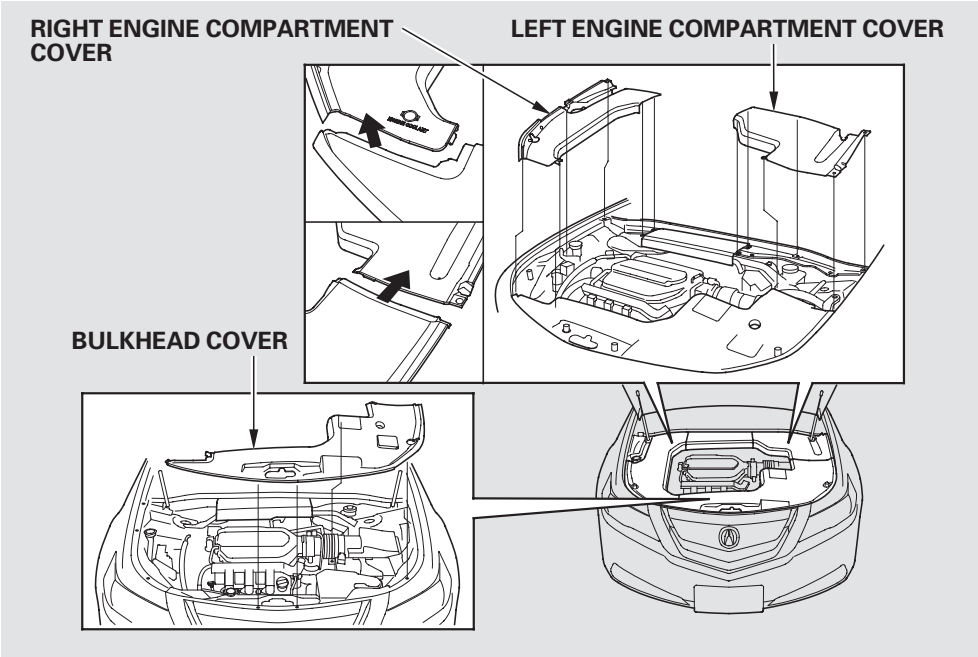
The component parts in the engine compartment are protected by several covers. You may need to remove the covers when you perform some simple maintenance work.

To remove the covers:

1. Remove the right and left engine compartment covers by sliding them apart.

2. Pull the bulkhead cover straight up to remove. When removing the cover, make sure to move the bulkhead cover slightly to the left so that the hood latch handle does not get in the way.

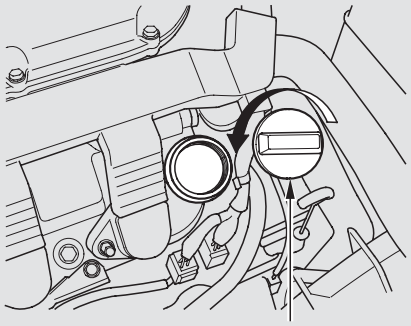
After replacing the right engine compartment cover, make sure the washer fluid cap is firmly in place.



When reinstalling the covers, make sure the pins and tabs are in their proper positions.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Adding Engine Oil



ENGINE OIL FILL CAP

Unscrew and remove the engine oil fill cap on top of the valve cover. Pour in the oil slowly and carefully so you do not spill. Clean up any spills immediately. Spilled oil could damage components in the engine compartment. Install the engine oil fill cap, and tighten it securely. Wait a few minutes, and recheck the oil level (see page 448). Do not fill above the upper mark; you could damage the engine.

Recommended Engine Oil

Oil is a major contributor to your engine's performance and longevity. Always use a premium-grade 5W-20 detergent oil displaying the API Certification Seal. This seal indicates the oil is energy conserving, and that it meets the American Petroleum Institute's latest requirements.

API CERTIFICATION SEAL

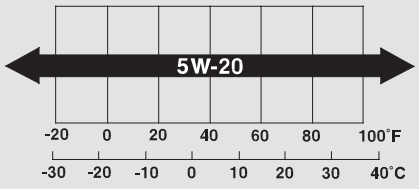
Acura Motor Oil is the preferred 5W-20 lubricant for your vehicle. It is highly recommended that you use Acura Motor Oil in your vehicle for optimum engine protection. Make sure the API Certification Seal says "For Gasoline Engines."

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Adding Engine Oil, Changing the Engine Oil and Filter

The oil viscosity or weight is provided on the container's label. 5W-20 oil is formulated for year-round protection of your vehicle to improve cold weather starting and fuel economy.



Ambient Temperature

Synthetic Oil

You may use a synthetic motor oil if it meets the same requirements given for a conventional motor oil: it displays the API Certification Seal and it is the proper weight. You must follow the oil and filter change intervals shown on the multi-information display.

Engine Oil Additives

Your vehicle does not require any oil additives. Additives may adversely affect the engine or transmission performance and durability.

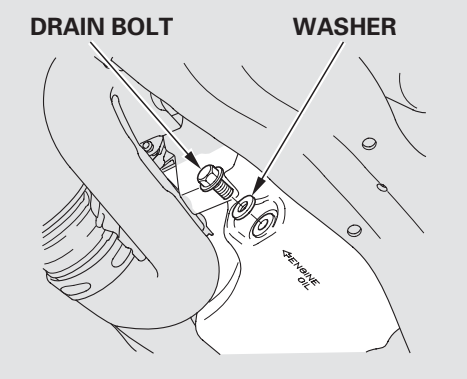
Changing the Engine Oil and Filter

Always change the oil and filter according to the maintenance messages shown on the multi-information display. The oil and filter collect contaminants that can damage your engine if they are not removed regularly.

Changing the oil and filter requires special tools and access from underneath the vehicle. The vehicle should be raised on a service station-type hydraulic lift for this service. Unless you have the knowledge and proper equipment, you should have this maintenance done by a skilled technician.

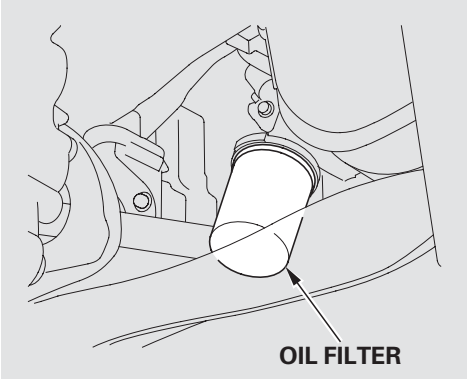
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Changing the Engine Oil and Filter



1. Run the engine until it reaches normal operating temperature, then shut it off.

2. Open the hood, and remove the engine oil fill cap. Remove the oil drain bolt and washer from the bottom of the engine. Drain the oil into an appropriate container.



3. Remove the oil filter, and let the remaining oil drain. A special wrench (available from your dealer) is required.

   Make sure the oil filter gasket is not stuck to the contacting surface of the engine. If it is, remove it before installing a new oil filter.

4. Install a new oil filter according to the instructions that come with it. Make sure to clean off any dirt and dust on the contacting surface of a new oil filter.

5. Put a new washer on the drain bolt, then reinstall the drain bolt. Tighten the drain bolt to:

   29 lbf·ft (39 N·m , 4.0 kgf·m)

6. Refill the engine with the recommended oil.

   Engine oil change capacity (including filter):

   4.5 US qt (4.3 ℓ)

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Changing the Engine Oil and Filter, Engine Coolant

7. Reinstall the engine oil fill cap. Start the engine. The oil pressure indicator should go out within 5 seconds. If it does not, turn off the engine and check your work.

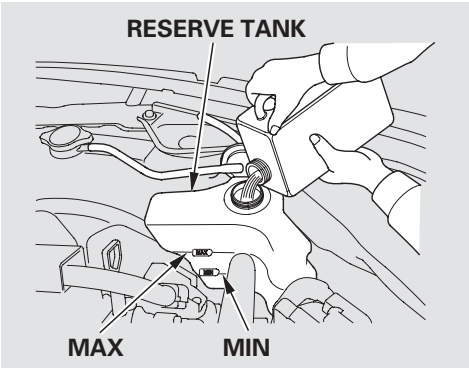
8. Let the engine run for several minutes, then check the drain bolt and oil filter for leaks.

9. Turn off the engine, let it sit for several minutes, then check the oil level on the dipstick. If necessary, add more oil.

NOTICE

Improper disposal of engine oil can be harmful to the environment. If you change your own oil, please dispose of the used oil properly. Put it in a sealed container, and take it to a recycling center. Do not discard it in a trash bin or dump it on the ground.

Adding Engine Coolant



If the coolant level in the reserve tank is at or below the MIN line, add coolant to bring it up to the MAX line. Inspect the cooling system for leaks.

To access the radiator reserve tank, remove the right-side engine compartment cover (see page 508).

Always use Honda Long-life Anti-freeze/Coolant Type 2. This coolant is pre-mixed with 50 percent antifreeze and 50 percent distilled water. Never add straight antifreeze or plain water.

If Honda antifreeze/coolant is not available, you may use another major-brand non-silicate coolant as a temporary replacement. Make sure it is a high-quality coolant recommended for aluminum engines. Continued use of any non-Honda coolant can result in corrosion, causing the cooling system to malfunction or fail. Have the cooling system flushed and refilled with Honda antifreeze/coolant as soon as possible.

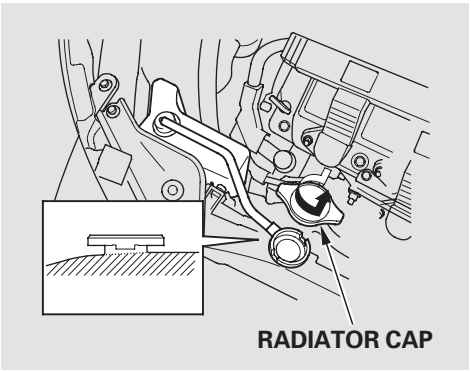
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If the reserve tank is completely empty, you should also check the coolant level in the radiator.

⚠ WARNING

Removing the radiator cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the radiator cap.



1. Remove all engine compartment covers (see page 508).
2. When the radiator and engine are cool, relieve any pressure in the cooling system by turning the radiator cap counterclockwise, without pressing down.
3. Remove the radiator cap by pushing down and turning counterclockwise.
4. The coolant level should be up to the base of the filler neck. Add coolant if it is low.

   Pour the coolant slowly and carefully so you do not spill any. Clean up any spill immediately; it could damage components in the engine compartment.
5. Put the radiator cap back on and tighten it.
6. Pour coolant into the reserve tank. Fill it to halfway between the MAX and MIN marks. Put the cap back on the reserve tank.
7. Reinstall the engine compartment covers.

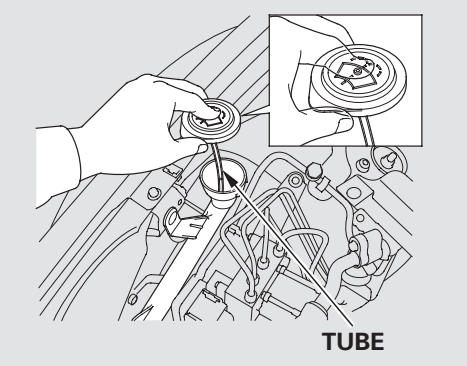
Do not add any rust inhibitors or other additives to your vehicle's cooling system. They may not be compatible with the coolant or engine components.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Windshield Washers

Check the fluid level in the windshield washer reservoir at least monthly during normal use.

On U.S. models



To check washer fluid level, cover the reservoir cap center hole with your finger while lifting the cap and the attached measuring tube. The washer fluid level in the tube will indicate the washer fluid level in the reservoir.

On Canadian models

If the washer fluid is low, a "LOW WASHER FLUID" message appears on the multi-information display.

Fill the reservoir with a good-quality windshield washer fluid. This increases the cleaning capability and prevents freezing in cold weather.

When you refill the reservoir, clean the edges of the windshield wiper blades with windshield washer fluid on a clean cloth. This will help to condition the blade edges.

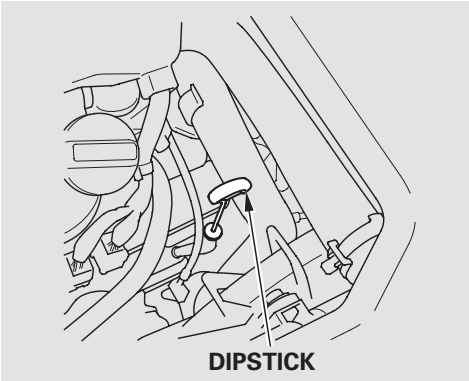
NOTICE

Do not use engine antifreeze or a vinegar/water solution in the windshield washer reservoir. Antifreeze can damage your vehicle's paint, while a vinegar/water solution can damage the windshield washer pump. Use only commercially-available windshield washer fluid.

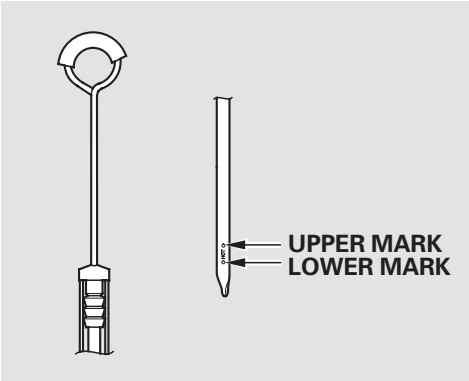
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Automatic Transmission
Check the fluid level with the engine at normal operating temperature.

1. Park the vehicle on level ground. Start the engine, let it run until the radiator fan comes on, then shut off the engine. For accurate results, wait about 60 seconds (but no longer than 90 seconds) before doing step 2.



2. Remove the dipstick (yellow loop) from the transmission, and wipe it with a clean cloth.



3. Insert the dipstick all the way into the transmission securely as shown in the illustration.

4. Remove the dipstick and check the fluid level. It should be between the upper and lower marks.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Transmission Fluid

5. If the level is below the lower mark, add fluid into the filler hole to bring it to the level between the upper and lower marks.

   Pour the fluid slowly and carefully so you do not spill any. Clean up any spill immediately; it could damage components in the engine compartment.

   Always use Acura ATF DW-1 (automatic transmission fluid).

6. Insert the dipstick all the way back into the transmission securely as shown in the illustration.

The transmission should be drained and refilled with new fluid according to the Maintenance Minder™ (see page 497).

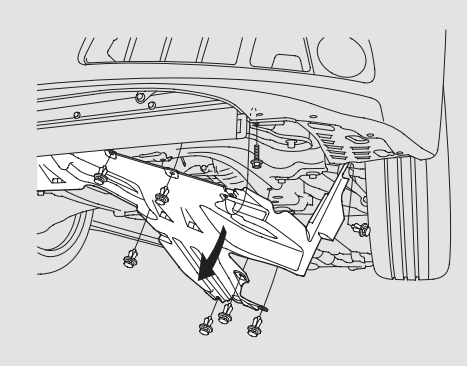
If you are not sure how to check and add fluid, contact your dealer.

NOTICE

Use only Acura ATF DW-1 (automatic transmission fluid). Do not mix with other transmission fluids.
Using transmission fluid other than Acura ATF DW-1 may cause deterioration in transmission operation and durability, and could result in damage to the transmission.
Damage resulting from the use of transmission fluid other than Acura ATF DW-1 is not covered by the Acura new vehicle warranty.

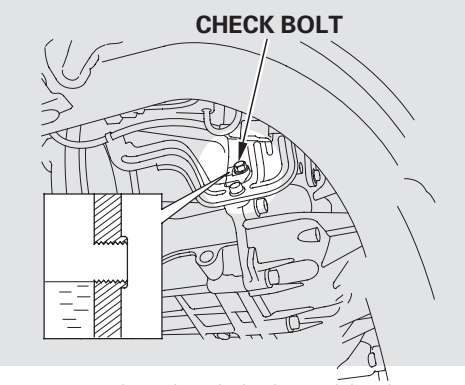
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Manual Transmission



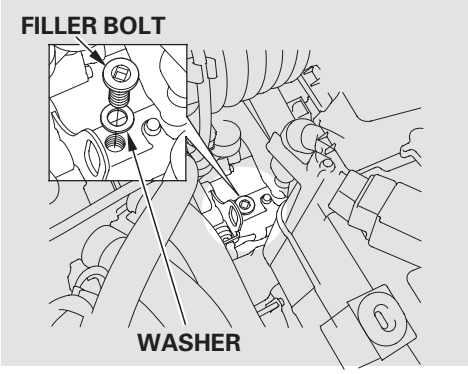
Check the fluid level with the transmission at normal operating temperature and the vehicle sitting on level ground.

To check the transmission fluid level, remove the mounting bolt and the under cover holding clips, then pull out the driver's side under cover carefully.



Remove the check bolt and look for transmission fluid coming out of the bolt hole. If a small amount of fluid drips out of the bolt hole, reinstall the check bolt.

If no fluid comes out, remove the filler bolt. Slowly add Acura Manual Transmission Fluid (MTF) until it starts to run out of the check bolt hole.



Pour the fluid into the filler hole slowly and carefully so you do not spill any. Clean up any spills immediately; it could damage components in the engine compartment.

Let the fluid run out until it stops, then reinstall the check bolt and the filler bolt.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Transmission Fluid

Reinstall the under cover, tighten the mounting bolt securely, then put the holding clips back in place. Make sure the under cover is installed under the edge of the front bumper.

If Acura MTF is not available, you may use an SAE 10W-30 or 10W-40 viscosity motor oil with the API Certification Seal that says “FOR GASOLINE ENGINES” as a temporary replacement. However, motor oil does not contain the proper additives, and continued use can cause stiffer shifting. Replace as soon as it is convenient.

The transmission should be drained and refilled with new fluid according to the Maintenance Minder™ (see page 497).

If you are not sure how to check and add fluid, contact your dealer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Brake and Clutch Fluid

Check the fluid level in the reservoirs monthly. There are up to two reservoirs, depending on the model. They are:

- Brake fluid reservoir (all models)
- Clutch fluid reservoir (manual transmission models only)

To access the reservoirs, remove the left engine compartment cover (see page 508).

You will also see a “LOW BRAKE FLUID” message on the multi-information display.

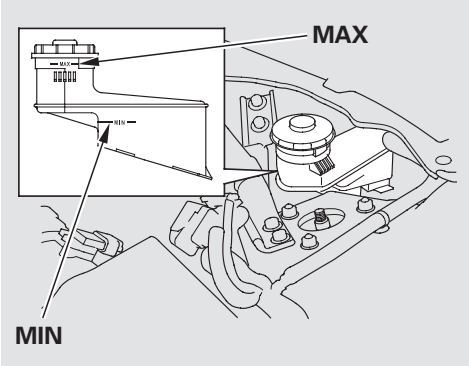
Independent of the Maintenance Minder information, replace the brake fluid every 3 years.

Always use Honda Heavy Duty Brake Fluid DOT 3. If it is not available, you should use only DOT 3 or DOT 4 fluid, from a sealed container, as a temporary replacement.

Using any non-Honda brake fluid can cause corrosion and decrease the life of the system. Have the brake system flushed and refilled with Honda Heavy Duty Brake Fluid DOT 3 as soon as possible.

Brake fluid marked DOT 5 is not compatible with your vehicle’s braking system and can cause extensive damage.

Brake Fluid



The fluid level should be between the MIN and MAX marks on the side of the reservoir. If the level is at or below the MIN mark, your brake system needs attention. Have the brake system inspected for leaks or worn brake pads.

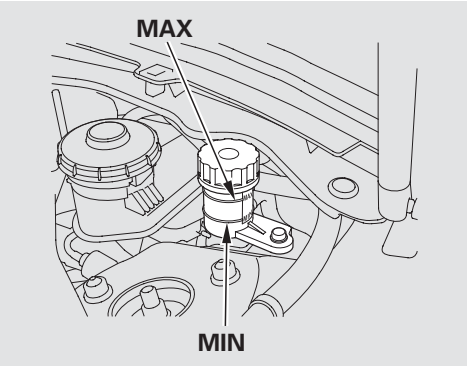
You need to remove the left engine compartment cover to check the fluid level (see page 508).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Brake and Clutch Fluid, Timing Belt

Clutch Fluid

Manual Transmission only



The fluid level should be between the MIN and MAX marks on the side of the reservoir. If it is not, add brake fluid to bring it up to that level. Use the same fluid specified for the brake system.

A low fluid level can indicate a leak in the clutch system. Have this system inspected as soon as possible.

Timing Belt

The timing belt should be replaced according to the Maintenance Minder™ (see page 497).

Replace the timing belt every 60,000 miles (U.S.) or every 100,000 km (Canada) if you regularly drive your vehicle in any of the following conditions:

- In very high temperatures (over 110°F, 43°C).
- In very low temperatures (under −20°F, −29°C).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Headlight Aiming

The headlights were properly aimed when your vehicle was new. If you regularly carry heavy items in the trunk, readjustment may be required. Adjustments should be done by your dealer or another qualified technician.

Low Beam Headlight Bulb Replacement

The low beam headlight bulbs are a type of high voltage discharge tube. High voltage can remain in the circuit even with the light switch off and the key removed (or the vehicle is in VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) mode on models with keyless access system). Because of this, you should not attempt to examine or change a low beam headlight bulb yourself. If a low beam headlight bulb fails, take the vehicle to your dealer to have it replaced.

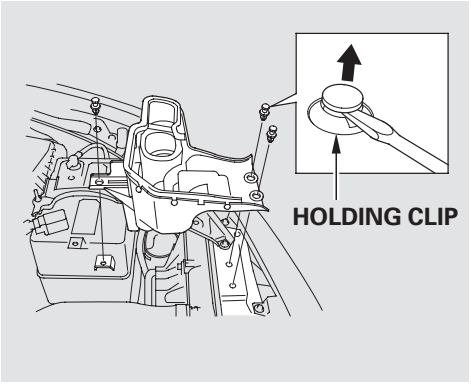
Replacing a High Beam Headlight/Daytime Running Light Bulb

Your vehicle has halogen high beam headlight bulbs which are also used for the daytime running light. Handle it by its base and protect the glass from contact with your skin or hard objects. If you touch the glass, clean it with denatured alcohol and a clean cloth.

NOTICE

Halogen bulbs get very hot when lit. Oil, perspiration, or a scratch on the glass can cause the bulb to overheat and shatter.

1. Open the hood.
2. Remove all engine compartment covers (see page 508).

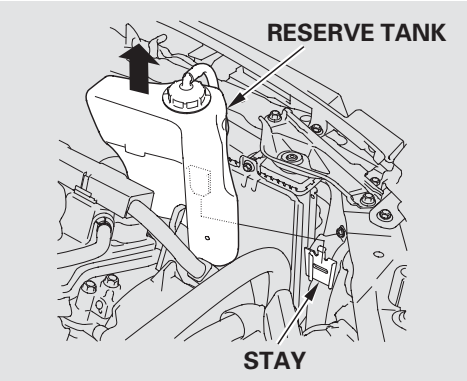


If you are replacing the bulb on the driver's side, remove the three holding clips with a flat-tip screwdriver. Then remove the upper part of the air intake duct by pulling it straight up.

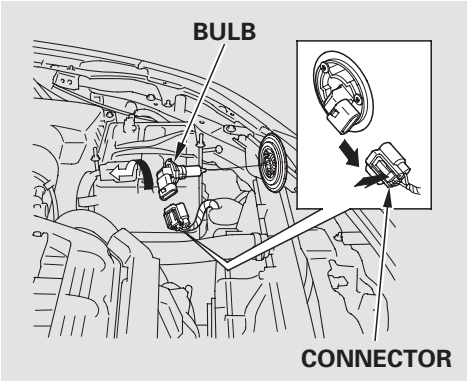
CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Lights



To change a bulb on the passenger's side, remove the engine coolant reserve tank by pulling it out of its stay.

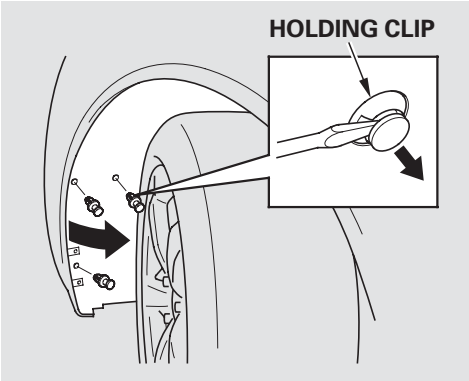


3. Remove the electrical connector from the bulb by pushing on the tab and pulling the connector down.
4. Remove the bulb by turning it one-quarter turn counterclockwise.
5. Insert the new bulb into the hole, and turn it one-quarter turn clockwise to lock it in place.
6. Push the electrical connector back onto the bulb. Make sure it is on all the way.
7. Turn on the headlights to test the new bulb.
8. (Driver's side)
   Install the upper part of the air intake duct securely. Reinstall the holding clips.
9. (Passenger's side)
   Install the engine coolant reserve tank.
10. Install all engine compartment covers.

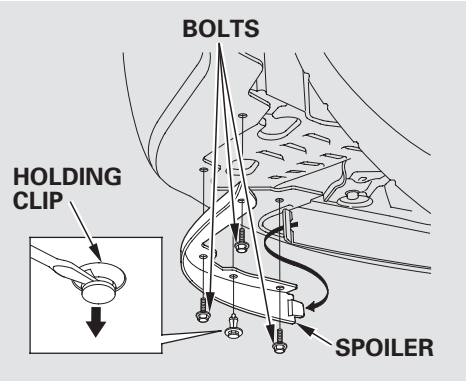
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Replacing the Front Side Marker Light Bulb

1. Start the engine. If you are replacing a driver's side bulb, turn the steering wheel all the way to the right. If you are replacing a passenger's side bulb, turn the steering wheel to the left. Turn off the engine.



2. Use a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the holding clips from the edge of the inner fender cover, and pull the inner fender cover back.

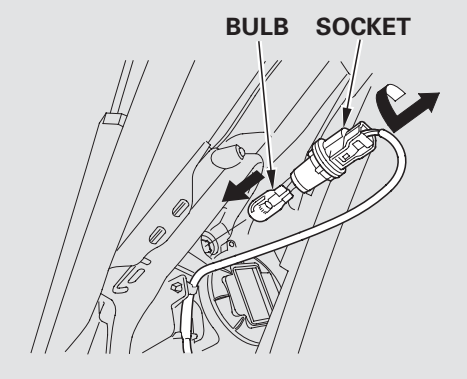


3. Use a wrench to remove the mounting bolts, and remove the holding clip with a flat-tip screwdriver.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Lights



4. Remove the socket from the headlight assembly by turning it one-quarter turn counterclockwise.

5. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out of its socket.

6. Install the new bulb in the socket by pushing it straight in the socket until it bottoms.

7. Insert the socket into the headlight assembly. Turn it clockwise to lock it in place.

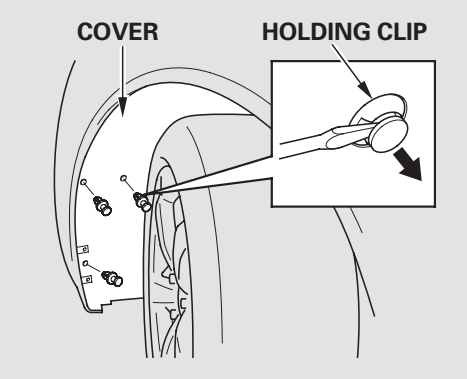
8. Turn on the lights to make sure the new bulb is working.

9. Push the under cover in place and set the spoiler and inner fender cover in the original position. Install the bolts and tighten them securely. Put the holding clip, and lock it by pushing on its center.

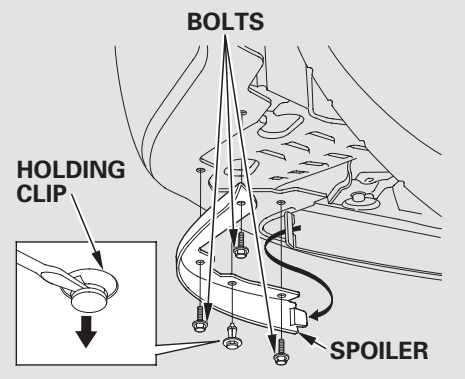
Replacing a Front Turn Signal/ Parking Light Bulb

1. Start the engine. If you are replacing a driver's side bulb, turn the steering wheel all the way to the right. If you are replacing a passenger's side bulb, turn the steering wheel to the left. Turn off the engine.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

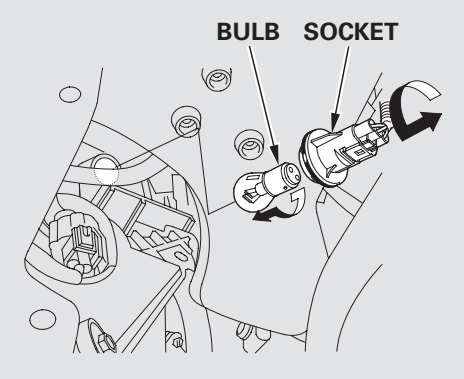


2. Use a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the three holding clips from the inner fender.



3. Use a wrench to remove the mounting bolts, and remove the holding clip with a flat-tip screwdriver.

   Pull down the under cover from the bumper carefully.



4. Remove the socket from the light assembly by turning it one-quarter turn counterclockwise.

5. Remove the bulb from the socket by pushing it in and turning it counterclockwise until it unlocks.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

6. Install the new bulb in the socket. Turn it clockwise to lock it in place.

7. Insert the socket into the light assembly. Turn it clockwise to lock it in place.

8. Turn on the lights to make sure the new bulb is working.

9. Push the under cover in place and set the spoiler and inner fender cover in the original position. Install the bolts and tighten them securely. Put the holding clip, and lock it by pushing on its center.

Replacing a Front Fog Light Bulb

Your vehicle uses halogen light bulbs. When replacing a bulb, handle it by its plastic case, and protect the glass from contact with your skin or hard objects. If you touch the glass, clean it with denatured alcohol and a clean cloth.

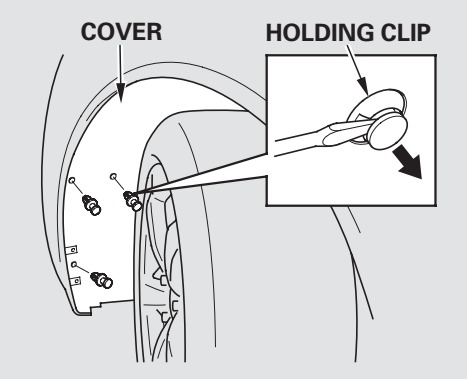
NOTICE

Halogen bulbs get very hot when lit. Oil, perspiration, or a scratch on the glass can cause the bulb to overheat and shatter.

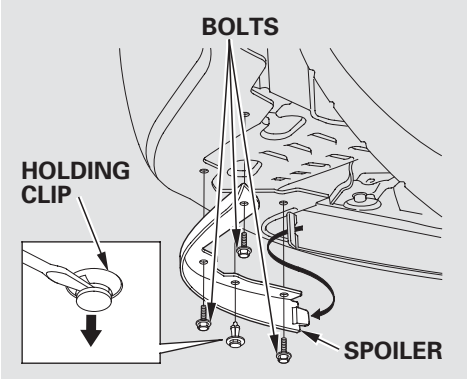
The fog lights were properly aimed when your vehicle was new. If you regularly carry heavy items in the trunk, readjustment may be required. Adjustment should be done by your dealer or another qualified technician.

1. Start the engine. If you are replacing a driver's side bulb, turn the steering wheel all the way to the right. If you are replacing a passenger's side bulb, turn the steering wheel to the left. Turn off the engine.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

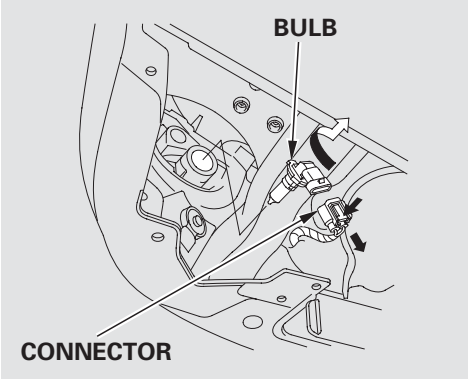


2. Use a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the three holding clips from the inner fender.



3. Use a wrench to remove the mounting bolts, and remove the holding clip with a flat-tip screwdriver.

   Pull down the under cover from the bumper carefully.



4. Remove the electrical connector from the bulb by pushing on the tab and pulling the connector down.

5. Remove the bulb by turning it about one-quarter turn counterclockwise.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Lights

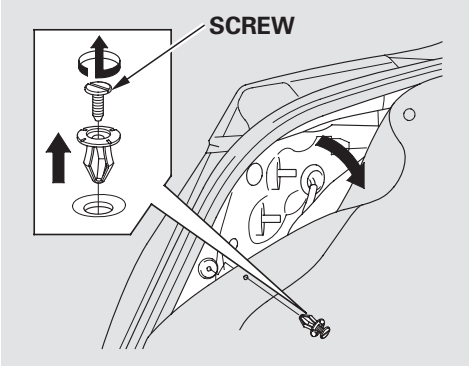
6. Insert the new bulb into the hole, and turn it one-quarter turn clockwise to lock it in place.

7. Push the electrical connector back onto the bulb. Make sure it is on all the way.

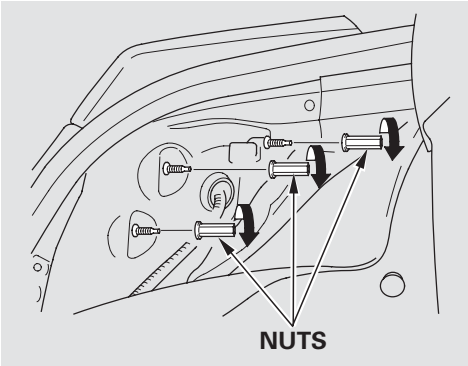
8. Turn on the fog lights to test the new bulb.

9. Push the under cover in place and set the spoiler and inner fender cover in the original position. Install the bolts and tighten them securely. Put the holding clip, and lock it by pushing on its center.

Replacing Rear Bulbs

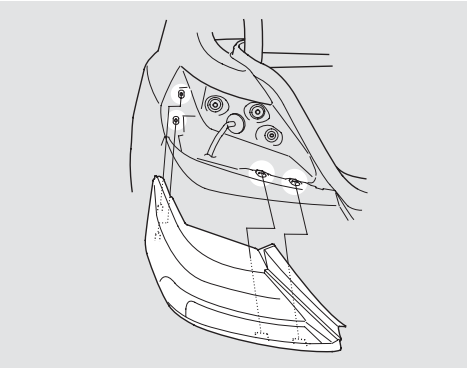


1. Open the trunk.
   Remove the screw in the center of the holding clip on the side of the trunk lining. Pull the lining back.

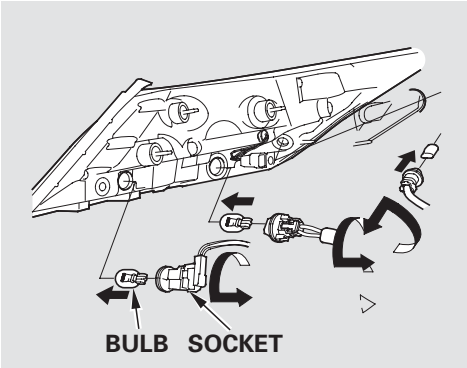


2. Remove the nuts from the stud bolts with a socket or wrench.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



3. Pull the taillight assembly straight back out of the body.



4. Determine which of the three bulbs is burned out: back-up light, turn signal, or side marker.

5. Remove the socket by turning it one-quarter turn counter-clockwise, and pull the bulb straight out of its socket.

6. Push a new bulb straight into the socket until it bottoms, and reinstall the socket into the light assembly by turning it clockwise until it locks.

7. Turn on the lights to make sure the new bulb is working.

8. Reinstall the trunk lining. Make sure it is installed under the edge of the trunk seal.

9. Put the holding clip into the hole on the side of the trunk lining. Reinstall the screw.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

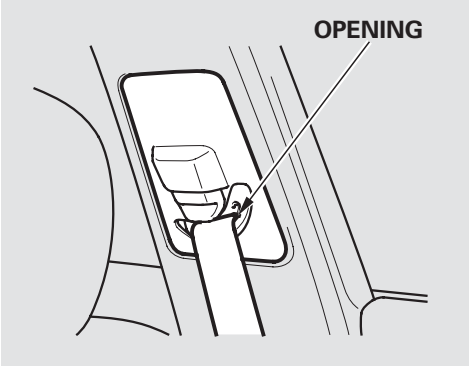
Lights, Cleaning the Seat Belts

Side Turn Signal Lights
Each outside mirror has side turn signal lights. The lights should be replaced by your dealer.

High-mount Brake Light
This light should be replaced by your dealer.

Rear License Plate Light Bulbs
The license plate has two lights above it. The bulbs should be replaced by your dealer.

Cleaning the Seat Belts



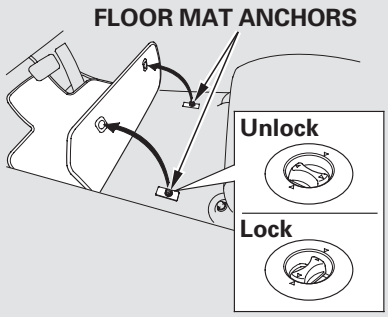
If your seat belts get dirty, use a soft brush with a mixture of mild soap and warm water to clean them. Do not use bleach, dye, or cleaning solvents. Let the belts air-dry before you use the vehicle.

Dirt build-up around the openings of the seat belt anchors can cause the belts to retract slowly. Wipe the openings with a clean cloth dampened in mild soap and warm water or isopropyl alcohol.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Floor Mats

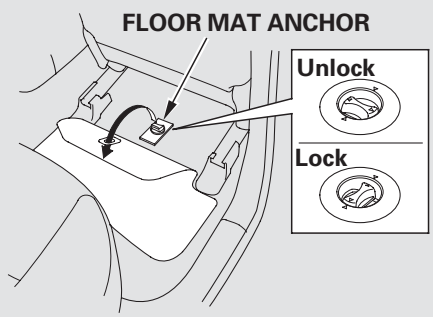
DRIVER'S SIDE FLOOR MAT



The floor mats that came with your vehicle hook over the floor mat anchors. This keeps the floor mats from sliding forward (possibly interfering with the pedals), or backwards (making the front passenger's weight sensors ineffective).

To lock or unlock each anchor, turn the knob.

REAR PASSENGER'S FLOOR MAT



If you remove a floor mat, make sure to re-anchor it when you put it back in your vehicle.

If you use non-Acura floor mats, make sure they fit properly and that they can be used with the floor mat anchors. Do not put additional floor mats on top of the anchored mats.

Make sure the rear floor mats are also properly hooked. If not, the floor mat will interfere with the seat operation and make the front passenger's weight sensors ineffective.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Dust and Pollen Filter, Exterior Care, Wiper Blades

Dust and Pollen Filter

This filter removes the dust and pollen that is brought in from the outside through the climate control system.

Have your dealer replace the filter when this service is indicated by a maintenance message on the multi-information display. It should be replaced every 15,000 miles (24,000 km) if you drive primarily in urban areas that have high concentrations of soot in the air, or if the flow from the climate control system becomes less than usual.

Exterior Care

NOTICE

Chemical solvents and strong cleaners can damage the paint, metal, and plastic on your vehicle.

Wiper Blades

Check the condition of the wiper blades at least every 6 months. Replace them if you find signs of cracking in the rubber, areas that are getting hard, or if they leave streaks and unwiped areas when used.

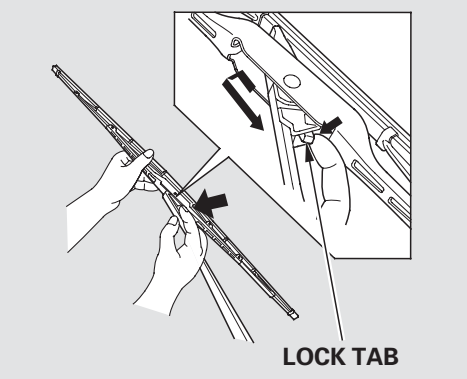
To replace a wiper blade:

1. Raise each wiper arm off the windshield, lifting the driver's side first, then the passenger's side.

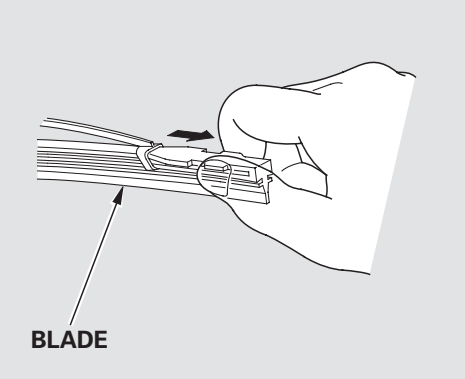
NOTICE

Do not open the hood when the wiper arms are raised, or you will damage the hood and wiper arms.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

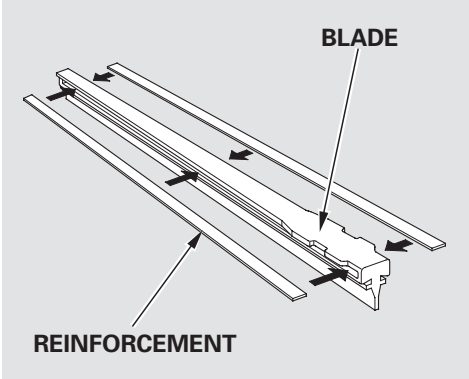


2. Disconnect the blade assembly from the wiper arm by pushing in the lock tab. Hold the lock tab in while you push the blade assembly toward the base of the arm.



3. Remove the blade from its holder by grabbing the tabbed end of the blade. Pull up firmly until the tabs come out of the holder.

4. Examine the new wiper blades. If they have no plastic or metal reinforcement along the back edge, remove the metal reinforcement strips from the old wiper blade, and install them in the slots along the edge of the new blade.



5. Slide the new wiper blade into the holder until the tabs lock.

6. Slide the wiper blade assembly onto the wiper arm. Make sure it locks in place.

7. Lower the wiper arm down against the windshield, the passenger's side first, then the driver's side.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tires

To safely operate your vehicle, your tires must be the proper type and size, in good condition with adequate tread, and correctly inflated.

The following pages give more detailed information on how to take care of your tires and what to do when they need to be replaced.

⚠ WARNING

Using tires that are excessively worn or improperly inflated can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding tire inflation and maintenance.

Tire Types

All models except SH-AWD model with high performance tires, SH-AWD TECH HPT, and Canadian A-Spec models

Your vehicle is equipped with high performance all-season tires (marked All Season or M + S on the sidewalls). These tires provide excellent handling and braking performance in most driving situations.

SH-AWD model with high performance tires, SH-AWD TECH HPT, and Canadian A-Spec models

Your vehicle is equipped with high performance summer tires. These tires have a high-traction compound and tread pattern to provide superior acceleration, cornering, and stopping under most driving conditions.

However, these tires are not suitable for driving on snow or ice, so all- season or winter tires must be installed for winter driving conditions.

See page 541 for **Winter Driving.**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Inflation Guidelines
Keeping the tires properly inflated provides the best combination of handling, tread life, and riding comfort.

- Underinflated tires wear unevenly, adversely affect handling and fuel economy, and are more likely to fail from being overheated.
- Overinflated tires can make your vehicle ride more harshly, are more prone to damage from road hazards, and wear unevenly.

The tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) warns you when a tire pressure is low. See page 488 for more information on the TPMS.

Even though your vehicle is equipped with TPMS, we recommend that you visually check your tires every day. If you think a tire might be low, check it immediately with a tire gauge.

Use a gauge to measure the air pressure in each tire at least once a month. Even tires that are in good condition may lose 1 to 2 psi (10 to 20 kPa, 0.1 to 0.2 kgf/cm²) per month. Remember to check the spare tire at the same time.

Check the air pressures when the tires are cold. This means the vehicle has been parked for at least 3 hours, or driven less than 1 mile (1.6 km). Add or release air, if needed, to match the recommended cold tire pressures on the next page.

If you check air pressure when the tires are hot [driven for several miles (kilometers)], you will see readings 4 to 6 psi (30 to 40 kPa, 0.3 to 0.4 kgf/cm²) higher than the cold readings. This is normal. Do not let air out to match the recommended cold air pressure. The tire will be underinflated.

While tubeless tires have some ability to self-seal if they are punctured, you should look closely for punctures if a tire starts losing pressure.

You should get your own tire pressure gauge and use it whenever you check your tire pressures. This will make it easier for you to tell if a pressure loss is due to a tire problem and not due to a variation between gauges.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tires

Recommended Tire Pressures

The following chart shows the recommended cold tire pressures for most normal driving conditions.

TL and TECH models

Tire Size	Cold Tire Pressure for Normal Driving
P245/50R17 98V	Front: 32 psi (220 kPa , 2.2 kgf/cm²)
	Rear: 32 psi (220 kPa , 2.2 kgf/cm²)

Optional on TECH models

Tire Size	Cold Tire Pressure for Normal Driving
P245/45R18 96V	Front: 32 psi (220 kPa , 2.2 kgf/cm²)
	Rear: 32 psi (220 kPa , 2.2 kgf/cm²)

SH-AWD and SH-AWD TECH models

Tire Size	Cold Tire Pressure for Normal Driving
P245/45R18 96V	Front: 32 psi (220 kPa , 2.2 kgf/cm²)
	Rear: 32 psi (220 kPa , 2.2 kgf/cm²)

SH-AWD TECH HPT and Canadian A-Spec models

Tire Size	Cold Tire Pressure for Normal Driving
245/40ZR19 94Y	Front: 37 psi (255 kPa , 2.55 kgf/cm²)
	Rear: 32 psi (220 kPa , 2.2 kgf/cm²)

The compact spare tire pressure is: 60 psi (420 kPa , 4.2 kgf/cm²)

For convenience, the recommended tire sizes and cold tire pressures are on a label on the driver's doorjamb.

For additional technical information, see page 585 .

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

High Speed Driving

We strongly recommend that you do not drive faster than the posted speed limits and conditions allow. If you ever drive in a sanctioned competitive event at sustained high speeds (over 118 mph or 190 km/h), be sure to adjust the cold tire pressures as shown below. If you do not, excessive heat can build up and cause sudden tire failure.

SH-AWD and SH-AWD TECH models

Tire Size	Cold Tire Pressure for High Speed Driving
P245/45R18 96V	Front: 33 psi (230 kPa , 2.3 kgf/cm²)
	Rear: 32 psi (220 kPa , 2.2 kgf/cm²)

Except SH-AWD and SH-AWD TECH models

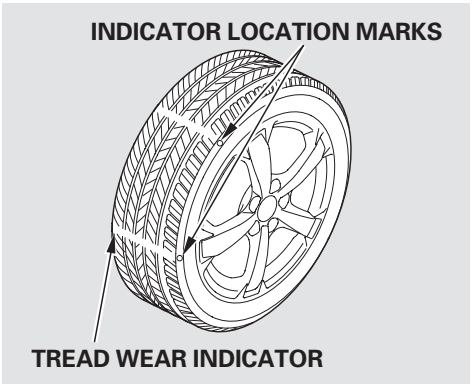
Tire pressure for high speed driving is the same as for normal driving.

Tire Inspection

Every time you check inflation, you should also examine the tires for damage, foreign objects, and wear.

You should look for:

- Bumps or bulges in the tread or side of the tire. Replace the tire if you find either of these conditions.
- Cuts, splits, or cracks in the side of the tire. Replace the tire if you can see fabric or cord.
- Excessive tread wear.



Your tires have wear indicators molded into the tread. When the tread wears down, you will see a 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) wide band across the tread. This shows there is less than 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) of tread left on the tire.

A tire this worn gives very little traction on wet roads. You should replace the tire if you can see three or more tread wear indicators.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tires

Tire Service Life
The service life of your tires is dependent on many factors, including, but not limited to, driving habits, road conditions, vehicle loading, inflation pressure, maintenance history, speed, and environmental conditions (even when the tires are not in use).

In addition to your regular inspections and inflation pressure maintenance, it is recommended that you have annual inspections performed once the tires reach five years old. It is also recommended that all tires, including the spare, be removed from service after 10 years from the date of manufacture, regardless of their condition or state of wear.

The last four digits of the TIN (tire identification number) are found on the sidewall of the tire and indicate the date of manufacture (See **Tire Labeling** on page 585).

Tire Maintenance
In addition to proper inflation, correct wheel alignment helps to decrease tire wear. If you find a tire is worn unevenly, have your dealer check the wheel alignment.

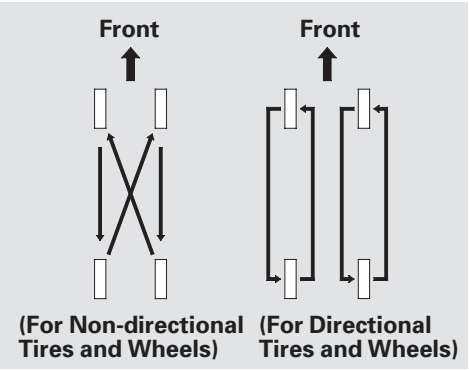
Have your dealer check the tires if you feel a consistent vibration while driving. A tire should always be rebalanced if it is removed from the wheel. When you have new tires installed, make sure they are balanced. This increases riding comfort and tire life. For best results, have the installer perform a dynamic balance.

NOTICE

Improper wheel weights can damage your vehicle's aluminum wheels. Use only Acura wheel weights for balancing.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tire Rotation



To help increase tire life and distribute wear more evenly, rotate the tires according to the maintenance messages displayed on the multi-information display. Move the tires to the positions shown in the illustration each time they are rotated. If you purchase directional tires, rotate only front-to-back.

When the tires are rotated, make sure the air pressures are checked.

Replacing Tires and Wheels

Replace your tires with radial tires of the same size, load range, speed rating, and maximum cold tire pressure rating (as shown on the tire's sidewall).

Mixing radial and bias-ply tires on your vehicle can reduce braking ability, traction, and steering accuracy. Using tires of a different size or construction can cause the ABS and vehicle stability assist system (VSA) to work inconsistently.

The ABS and VSA system work by comparing the speed of each wheel. When replacing tires, use the same size originally supplied with the vehicle. Tire size and construction can affect wheel speed and may cause the system to activate.

It is best to replace all four tires at the same time. If that is not possible or necessary, replace the two front tires or two rear tires as a pair. Replacing just one tire can seriously affect your vehicle's handling.

If you ever replace a wheel, make sure that the wheel's specifications match those of the original wheels.

Also be sure you use only TPMS specific wheels. If you do not, the tire pressure monitoring system will not work.

Replacement wheels are available at your dealer.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tires

⚠WARNING

Installing improper tires on your vehicle can affect handling and stability. This can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always use the size and type of tires recommended in this owner's manual.

Wheel and Tire Specifications

Wheels:
On 2WD Models
17 x 8.0J (TPMS)
18 x 8.0J (TPMS)*1

On U.S. SH-AWD Models
18 x 8.0J (TPMS)
19 x 8.0J (TPMS)*1

On Canadian SH-AWD Models
18 x 8.0J(TPMS)
19 x 8.0J(TPMS)*1, *2

Tires:
On 2WD Models
P245/50R17 98V
P245/45R18 96V*1

On SH-AWD Models
P245/45R18 96V
245/40ZR19 94Y*1, *2

*1 : Optional on TECH models
*2 : Standard on Canadian A-Spec model

See page 583 for DOT tire quality grading information, and page 585 for tire size information.

Winter Driving

Tires marked "M + S" or "All Season" on the sidewall have an all-weather tread design suitable for most winter driving conditions.

For the best performance in snowy or icy conditions, you should install snow tires or tire chains. They may be required by local laws under certain conditions.

Summer Tires

If your vehicle is equipped with summer tires, be aware that these tires are not designed for winter driving conditions. For more information, consult your dealer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Snow Tires
If you mount snow tires on your vehicle, make sure they are radial tires of the same size and load range as original tires. Mount snow tires on all four wheels. The traction provided by snow tires on dry roads may be lower than your original tires. Check with the tire dealer for maximum speed recommendations.

Tire Chains
Mount tire chains on your tires when required by driving conditions or local laws. Install them only on the front tires. Do not use chains on the rear tires.

Because your vehicle has limited tire clearance, we strongly recommend using this Quality Chain Corp. tire chain:

Premium Cobra Cable Chain # 1042P with accessory adjusters*

This tire chain is available at many auto supply stores. To find a local store that carries the chain, call Quality Chain Corp at 1-800-843-8824. To order the tire chain online, go to *www.qualitychaincorp.com*, and enter your vehicle information. When you install the chains, follow the manufacturer's instructions, and mount them as tightly as you can. Drive slowly with the chains installed.

* : Rubber chain adjusters, or tensioners, must be used to prevent the chains from contacting the body or the chassis.

⚠ WARNING

Using the wrong chains, or not properly installing chains, can damage the brake lines and cause a crash in which you can be seriously injured or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding the selection and use of tire chains.

If you ever hear the chains contacting the body or chassis, stop and investigate. If the chains have loosened, retighten them. Make sure they do not contact the brake lines or suspension.

Remove the chains as soon as you begin driving on cleared roads.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tires, Checking the Battery

NOTICE

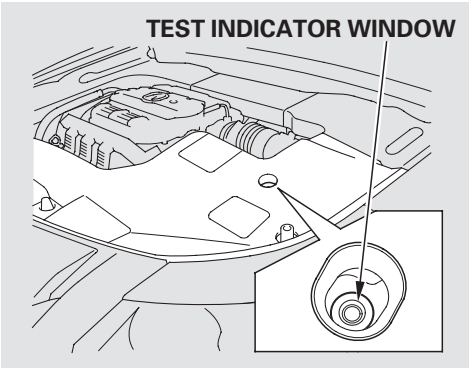
Traction devices that are the wrong size or improperly installed can damage your vehicle's brake lines, suspension, body, and wheels. Stop driving if they are hitting any part of the vehicle.

Wheels

Clean the wheels as you would the rest of the exterior. Wash them with the same solution, and rinse them thoroughly.

Aluminum alloy wheels have a protective clear-coat that keeps the aluminum from corroding and tarnishing. Cleaning the wheels with harsh chemicals (including some commercial wheel cleaners) or a stiff brush can damage the clear-coat. To clean the wheels, use a mild detergent and a soft brush or sponge.

Checking the Battery



Check the condition of the battery monthly by looking at the test indicator window. The label on the battery explains the test indicator's colors.

The location of the test indicator window varies between manufacturers.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Checking the Battery

To see the battery label, remove the left side engine compartment cover (see page 508).

Check the terminals for corrosion (a white or yellowish powder) after removing all engine compartment covers (see page 508). To remove corrosion, cover the terminals with a solution of baking soda and water. It will bubble up and turn brown. When this stops, wash it off with plain water. Dry off the battery with a cloth or paper towel. Coat the terminals with grease to help prevent further corrosion.

If additional battery maintenance is needed, see your Acura dealer or a qualified technician.

WARNING: Battery posts, terminals, and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. **Wash your hands after handling.**

If you need to connect the battery to a charger, disconnect both cables to prevent damaging your vehicle's electrical system. Always disconnect the negative (−) cable first, and reconnect it last.

⚠WARNING

The battery gives off explosive hydrogen gas during normal operation.

A spark or flame can cause the battery to explode with enough force to kill or seriously hurt you.

Wear protective clothing and a face shield, or have a skilled technician do the battery maintenance.

On models without navigation system
If your vehicle's battery is disconnected, or goes dead, the time setting may be lost. To reset the time, see page 373 .

If your vehicle's battery is disconnected or goes dead, the audio system may disable itself. The next time you turn on the radio, you will see "ENTER CODE" in the frequency display. Use the preset buttons to enter the code (see page 372).

On models with navigation system
The navigation system will also disable itself. The next time you set to the ON mode, the system will require you to enter a PIN before it can be used. Refer to the navigation system manual.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Vehicle Storage

If you need to park your vehicle for an extended period (more than 1 month), there are several things you should do to prepare it for storage. Proper preparation helps prevent deterioration and makes it easier to get your vehicle back on the road. If possible, store your vehicle indoors.

- Fill the fuel tank.
- Wash and dry the exterior completely.
- Clean the interior. Make sure the carpeting, floor mats, etc., are completely dry.
- Leave the parking brake off. Put the transmission in reverse (manual) or Park (automatic).
- Block the rear wheels.
- If the vehicle is to be stored for a longer period, it should be supported on jackstands so the tires are off the ground.
- Leave one window open slightly (if the vehicle is being stored indoors).
- Disconnect the battery.
- Support the front wiper blade arms with a folded towel or rag so they do not touch the windshield.
- To minimize sticking, apply a silicone spray lubricant to all door and trunk seals. Also, apply a vehicle body wax to the painted surfaces that mate with the door and trunk seals.
- Cover the vehicle with a “breathable” cover, one made from a porous material such as cotton. Non-porous materials, such as plastic sheeting, trap moisture, which can damage the paint.
- If possible, periodically run the engine until it reaches full operating temperature (the cooling fans cycle on and off twice). Preferably, do this once a month.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Leather
Vacuum dirt and dust from the leather frequently. Pay close attention to the pleats and seams. Clean the leather with a soft cloth dampened with a 90% water and 10% neutral wool detergent solution. Then buff it with a clean, dry cloth. Remove any dust or dirt on leather surfaces immediately.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Taking Care of the Unexpected

This section covers the more common problems that motorists experience with their vehicles. It gives you information about how to safely evaluate the problem and what to do to correct it. If the problem has stranded you on the side of the road, you may be able to get going again. If not, you will also find instructions on getting your vehicle towed.

Compact Spare Tire 548
Changing a Flat Tire 549
If the Engine Won't Start 554
Jump Starting 557
If the Engine Overheats 559
Low Oil Pressure Indicator 561
Charging System Indicator 561
Malfunction Indicator Lamp 562
Brake System Indicator 563
Opening the Fuel Fill Door Manually 564
Fuses 565
Fuse Locations 569
Emergency Towing 572
If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck 574

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

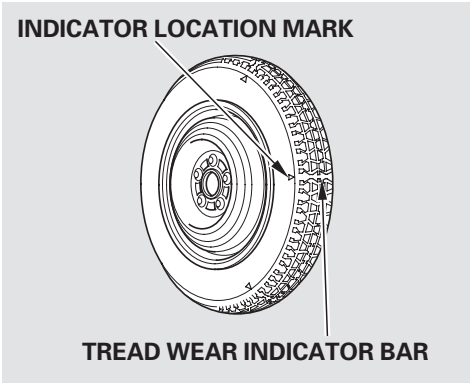
Compact Spare Tire

Use the compact spare tire as a temporary replacement only. Get your regular tire repaired or replaced, and put it back on your vehicle as soon as you can.

Check the air pressure of the compact spare tire every time you check the other tires. It should be inflated to:
60 psi (420 kPa , 4.2 kgf/cm²)

Follow these precautions:

- Never exceed 50 mph (80 km/h).
- This tire gives a harsher ride and less traction on some road surfaces. Use greater caution while driving.
- Do not mount snow chains on the compact spare tire.
- Do not use your compact spare tire on another vehicle unless it is the same make and model.
- After the flat tire is replaced with the spare tire, the low tire pressure/TPMS indicator stays on. After several miles (kilometers) driving with the spare, this indicator begins to flash, then stays on again. You will also see a "CHECK TPMS SYSTEM" message on the multi-information display (see page 491).



Replace the tire when you can see the tread wear indicator bars. The replacement tire should be the same size and design, mounted on the same wheel. The spare tire is not designed to be mounted on a regular wheel, and the spare wheel is not designed for mounting a regular tire.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Changing a Flat Tire

If you have a flat tire while driving, pull over safely. Drive slowly along the shoulder until you get to an area far away from traffic lanes.

⚠WARNING

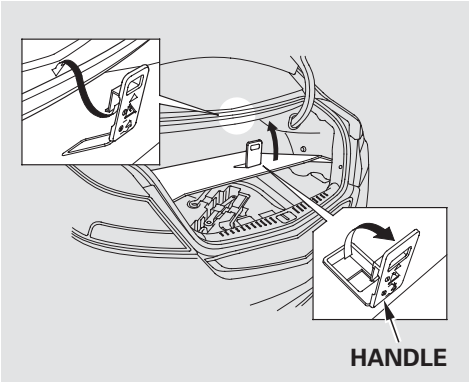
The vehicle can easily roll off the jack, seriously injuring anyone underneath.

Follow the directions for changing a tire exactly, and never get under the vehicle when it is supported only by the jack.

1. Park the vehicle on firm, level, and non-slippery ground. Put the transmission in Park (automatic) or reverse (manual). Apply the parking brake.

2. Turn on the hazard warning lights, and turn the ignition switch* to the LOCK (0) position. Have all passengers get out of the vehicle while you change the tire.

* : Models equipped with the keyless access system have an engine start/stop button instead of an ignition switch. VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) Mode is the equivalent of LOCK (0). For more information, see pages 178 and 181 .

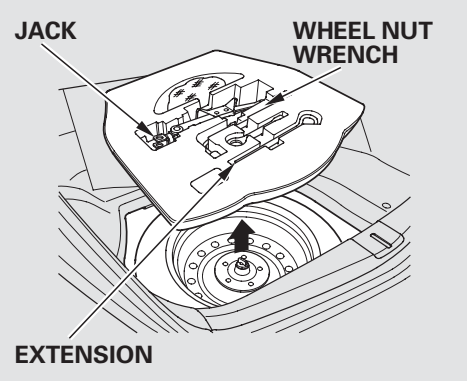


3. Open the trunk. Pull up the handle on the trunk floor lid. Raise the lid by lifting it up with the handle, then hook the handle to the trunk opening to keep the lid open.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

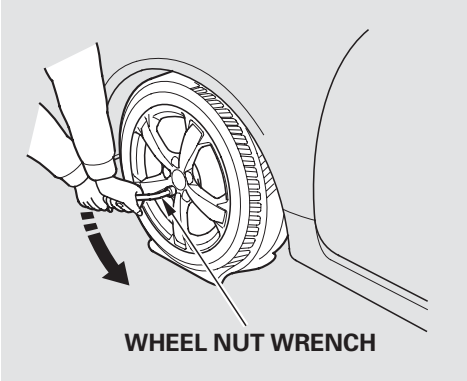
Changing a Flat Tire



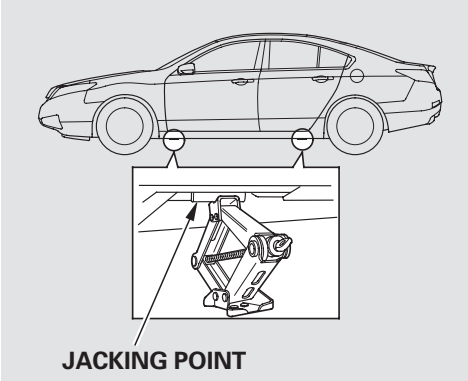
4. Take the tool case out of the spare tire.

5. Unscrew the wing bolt and take the spare tire out of its well.

6. Take the jack out of the tool kit case.

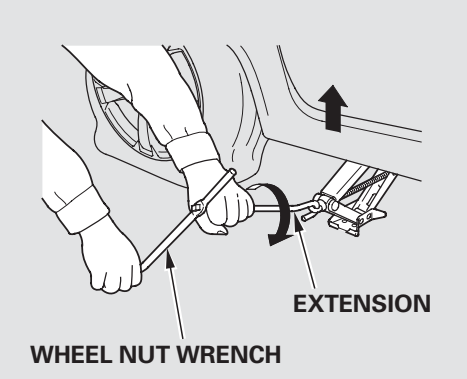


7. Loosen each wheel nut 1/2 turn with the wheel nut wrench.

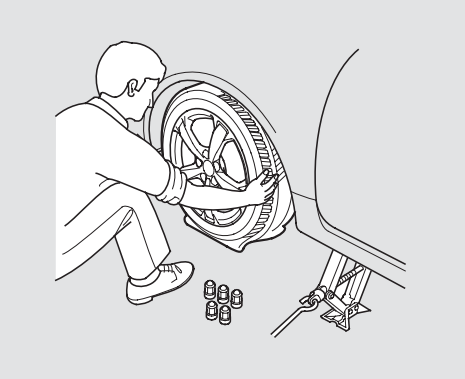


8. Place the jack under the jacking point nearest the tire you need to change. Turn the end bracket clockwise until the top of the jack contacts the jacking point. Make sure the jacking point tab is resting in the jack notch.

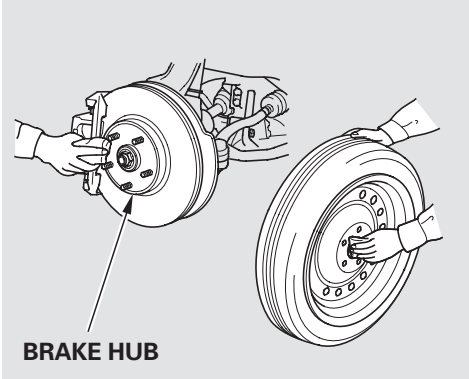
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



9. Use the extension and the wheel nut wrench as shown to raise the vehicle until the flat tire is off the ground.



10. Remove the wheel nuts, then remove the flat tire. Handle the wheel nuts carefully; they may be hot from driving. Place the flat tire on the ground with the outside surface facing up.

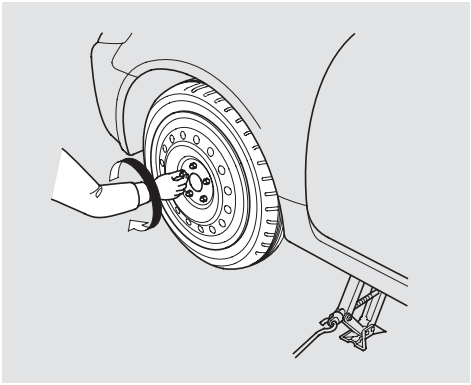


11. Before mounting the spare tire, wipe any dirt off the mounting surface of the wheel and hub with a clean cloth. Wipe the hub carefully; it may be hot from driving.

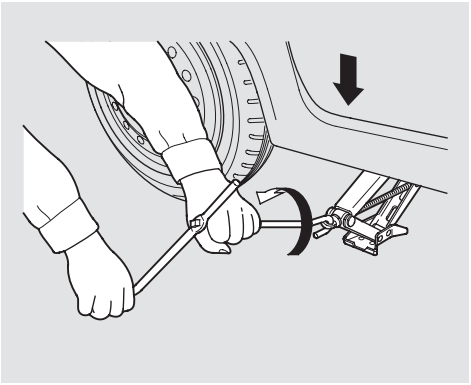
CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

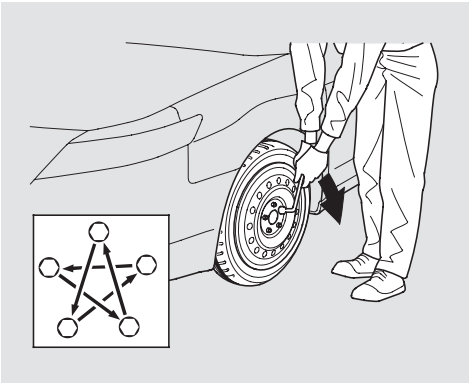
Changing a Flat Tire



12. Put on the spare tire. Put the wheel nuts back on finger-tight, then tighten them in a crisscross pattern with the wheel nut wrench until the wheel is firmly against the hub. Do not try to tighten the wheel nuts fully.



13. Lower the vehicle to the ground, and remove the jack.

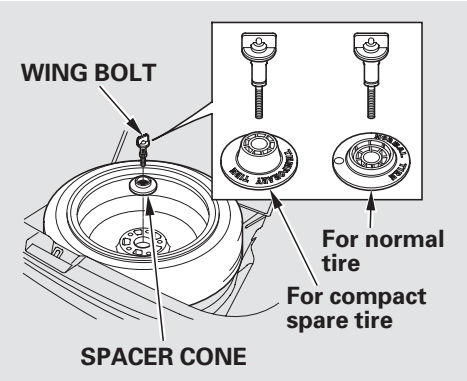


14. Tighten the wheel nuts securely in the same crisscross pattern. Have the wheel nut torque checked at the nearest automotive service facility.

    Tighten the wheel nuts to:
    94 lbf·ft (127 N·m , 13 kgf·m)

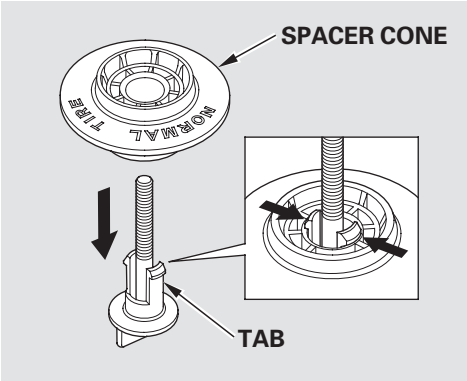
15. Remove the center cap before storing the flat tire in the trunk well.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



16. Place the flat tire face down in the spare tire well.

17. Remove the spacer cone from the wing bolt, turn it over, and put it back on the bolt.



To remove the spacer cone, squeeze the tabs on the wing bolt to disengage it from the center of the spacer cone, then pull the bolt downward.

To install the wing bolt to the spacer cone, reverse this procedure.

18. Secure the flat tire by screwing the wing bolt back into its hole.

19. Store the jack and tools in the tool kit case. Place the tool kit case in the flat tire.

⚠ WARNING

Loose items can fly around the interior in a crash and could seriously injure the occupants.

Store the wheel, jack, and tools securely before driving.

20. Store the center cap in the trunk. Make sure it does not get scratched or damaged. Unhook the handle from the trunk opening and lower the trunk floor lid, then close the trunk lid.

21. Your vehicle's original tire has a tire pressure monitoring system sensor. To replace a tire, refer to **Changing a Tire with TPMS** (see page 492).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If the Engine Won't Start

Diagnosing why the engine won't start falls into two areas, depending on what you hear when you turn the ignition switch to the START (III) position or on models with keyless access system, press the engine start/stop button to set START Mode (see page 178):

- You hear nothing, or almost nothing. The engine's starter motor does not operate at all, or operates very slowly.
- You can hear the starter motor operating normally, or the starter motor sounds like it is spinning faster than normal, but the engine does not start up and run.

Nothing Happens or the Starter Motor Operates Very Slowly

When you turn the ignition switch to the START (III) position or on models with keyless access system, press the engine start/stop button to set START Mode (see page 178), you do not hear the normal noise of the engine trying to start. You may hear a clicking sound, a series of clicks, or nothing at all.

Check these things:

- Check the transmission interlock. If you have a manual transmission, the clutch pedal must be pushed all the way to the floor or the starter will not operate. With an automatic transmission, it must be in Park or neutral.
- Turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position or on models with keyless access system, press the engine start/stop button to set ON Mode (see page 178). Turn on the headlights, and check their brightness. If the headlights are very dim or do not come on at all, the battery is discharged. See **Jump Starting** on page 557 .

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- Turn the ignition switch to the START (III) position or on models with keyless access system, press the engine start/stop button to set START Mode (see page 178). If the headlights do not dim, check the condition of the fuses. If the fuses are OK, there is probably something wrong with the electrical circuit for the ignition switch or starter motor. You will need a qualified technician to determine the problem. See **Emergency Towing** on page 572 .

- If the headlights dim noticeably or go out when you try to start the engine, either the battery is discharged or the connections are corroded. Check the condition of the battery and terminal connections (see page 542). You can then try jump starting the vehicle from a booster battery (see page 557).

The Starter Operates Normally
In this case, the starter motor's speed sounds normal, or even faster than normal, when you turn the ignition switch to the START (III) position or on models with keyless access system, press the engine start/stop button to set START Mode (see page 178), but the engine does not run.

- Are you using a properly coded key or keyless access remote (on models with keyless access system)? An improperly coded key or keyless access remote will cause the immobilizer system indicator in the instrument panel to blink rapidly (see page 65).

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If the Engine Won't Start

- Are you using the proper starting procedure? Refer to **Starting the Engine** on pages 461 and 463 .

  You may need to hold the start/stop button down or hold the key in the START (III) position until the engine starts. It can be held for up to 15 seconds.

- Do you have fuel? Check the fuel gauge; the warning indicator may not be working.

- There may be an electrical problem, such as no power to the fuel pump. Check all the fuses (see page 565).

If you find nothing wrong, you will need a qualified technician to find the problem. See **Emergency Towing** on page 572 .

On models with keyless access system

- Do you have your keyless access system remote with you? The vehicle will not start without the remote within operating range and with the keyless access main switch in the glove box turned on.

NOTE: If you are unable to stop the engine normally while in the Park position, see **Emergency Engine Stop** on page 186 .

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Although this seems like a simple procedure, you should take several precautions.

⚠ WARNING

A battery can explode if you do not follow the correct procedure, seriously injuring anyone nearby.

Keep all sparks, open flames, and smoking materials away from the battery.

You cannot start a vehicle with an automatic transmission by pushing or pulling it.

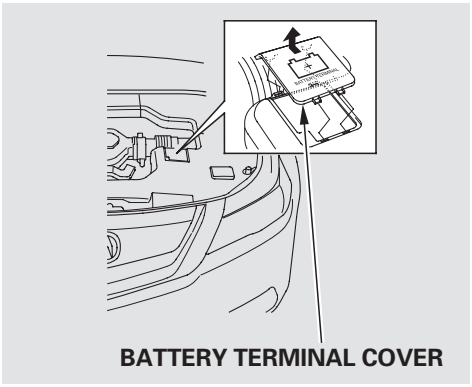
To jump start your vehicle:

1. Open the hood, and check the physical condition of the battery. In very cold weather, check the condition of the electrolyte. If it seems slushy or like ice, do not try jump starting until it thaws.

NOTICE

If a battery sits in extreme cold, the electrolyte inside can freeze. Attempting to jump start with a frozen battery can cause it to rupture.

2. Turn off all the electrical accessories: climate control, audio system, lights, etc. Put the transmission in neutral (manual) or Park (automatic), and set the parking brake.



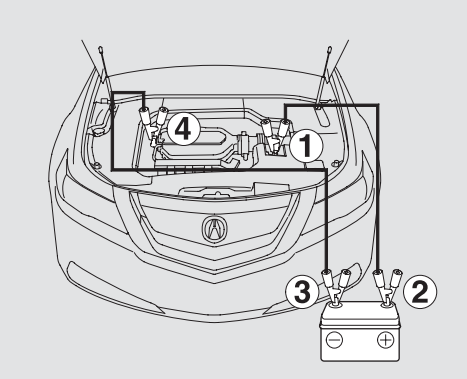
BATTERY TERMINAL COVER

3. Pull up the battery terminal cover to remove. The battery terminal cover can be removed without removing the left side engine compartment cover.

CONTINUED

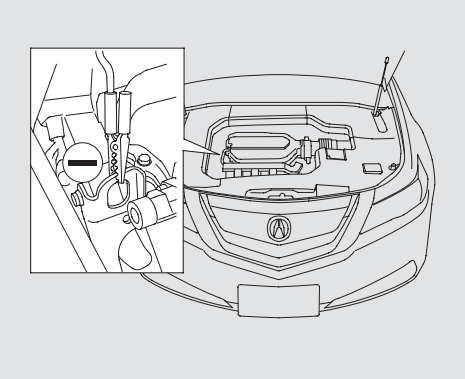
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Jump Starting



The numbers in the illustration show you the order to connect the jumper cables.

4. Connect one jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal on your battery. Connect the other end to the positive (+) terminal on the booster battery.



5. Connect the second jumper cable to the negative (−) terminal on the booster battery. Connect the other end to the engine hanger as shown. Do not connect this jumper cable to any other part of the engine.

6. If the booster battery is in another vehicle, have an assistant start that vehicle and run it at a fast idle.

7. Start the vehicle. If the starter motor still operates slowly, check that the jumper cables have good metal-to-metal contact.

8. Once the vehicle is running, disconnect the negative cable from your vehicle, then from the booster battery. Disconnect the positive cable from your vehicle, and then from the booster battery.

9. Install the battery terminal cover.

Keep the ends of the jumper cables away from each other and any metal on the vehicle until everything is disconnected. Otherwise, you may cause an electrical short.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If the Engine Overheats

The pointer of the vehicle's temperature gauge should stay in the midrange. If it climbs to the red mark, you should determine the reason (hot day, driving up a steep hill, etc.).

You will also see a "WATER TEMP HOT" message on the multi-information display (see page 76).

If the vehicle overheats, you should take immediate action. The only indication may be the temperature gauge climbing to or above the red mark. Or you may see steam or spray coming from under the hood.

NOTICE

Driving with the temperature gauge pointer at the red mark can cause serious damage to the engine.

⚠WARNING

Steam and spray from an overheated engine can seriously scald you.

Do not open the hood if steam is coming out.

1. Safely pull to the side of the road. Put the transmission in neutral (manual) or Park (automatic), and set the parking brake. Turn off all accessories, and turn on the hazard warning lights.
2. If you see steam and/or spray coming from under the hood, turn off the engine. Wait until you see no more signs of steam or spray, then open the hood.
3. If you do not see steam or spray, leave the engine running and watch the temperature gauge. If the high heat is due to overloading, the engine should start to cool down almost immediately. If it does, wait until the temperature gauge comes down to the midpoint, then continue driving.
4. If the temperature gauge stays at the red mark, turn off the engine.
5. Look for any obvious coolant leaks, such as a split radiator hose. Everything is still extremely hot, so use caution. If you find a leak, it must be repaired before you continue driving (see **Emergency Towing** on page 572).

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If the Engine Overheats

6. If you don't find an obvious leak, check the coolant level in the radiator reserve tank. Add coolant if the level is below the MIN mark (see **Adding Engine Coolant** on page 512).

7. If there was no coolant in the reserve tank, you may need to add coolant to the radiator. Let the engine cool down until the pointer reaches the middle of the temperature gauge, or lower, before checking the radiator.

⚠WARNING

Removing the radiator cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the radiator cap.

8. Using gloves or a large heavy cloth, turn the radiator cap counterclockwise, without pushing down, to the first stop. After the pressure releases, push down on the cap, and turn it until it comes off.

9. Start the engine, and set the interior temperature to maximum heat (each temperature control sets to " H "). Add coolant to the radiator up to the base of the filler neck. If you do not have the proper coolant mixture available, you can add plain water. Remember to have the cooling system drained and refilled with the proper mixture as soon as you can.

10. Put the radiator cap back on tightly. Run the engine, and check the temperature gauge. If it goes back to the red mark, the engine needs repair (see **Emergency Towing** on page 572).

11. If the temperature stays normal, check the coolant level in the radiator reserve tank. If it has gone down, add coolant to the MAX mark. Put the cap back on tightly.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Low Oil Pressure Indicator, Charging System Indicator

Low Oil Pressure Indicator

This indicator should never come on when the engine is running. If it starts flashing or stays on, the oil pressure has dropped very low or lost pressure. Serious engine damage is possible, and you should take immediate action.

You will also see a "CHECK ENGINE OIL LEVEL" message on the multi-information display when this indicator comes on.

NOTICE

Running the engine with low oil pressure can cause serious mechanical damage almost immediately. Turn off the engine as soon as you can safely get the vehicle stopped.

1. Safely pull off the road, and shut off the engine. Turn on the hazard warning indicators.
2. Let the vehicle sit for a minute. Open the hood, and check the oil level (see page 448). An engine very low on oil can lose pressure during cornering and other driving maneuvers.
3. If necessary, add oil to bring the level back to the full mark on the dipstick (see page 509).
4. Start the engine, and watch the oil pressure indicator. If it does not go out within 10 seconds, turn off the engine. There is a mechanical problem that needs to be repaired before you can continue driving (see **Emergency Towing** on page 572).

Charging System Indicator

If the charging system indicator comes on brightly when the engine is running, the battery is not being charged.

You will also see a "CHECK CHARGING SYSTEM" message on the multi-information display.

Immediately turn off all electrical accessories. Try not to use other electrically operated controls such as the power windows. Keep the engine running; starting the engine will discharge the battery rapidly.

Go to a service station or garage where you can get technical assistance.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Malfunction Indicator Lamp

If this indicator comes on while driving, it means one of the engine's emissions control systems may have a problem. Even though you may feel no difference in your vehicle's performance, it can reduce your fuel economy and cause increased emissions. Continued operation may cause serious damage.

If you have recently refueled your vehicle, the indicator coming on could be due to a loose or missing fuel fill cap. Tighten the cap until it clicks at least once. Tightening the cap will not turn the indicator off immediately; it can take several days of normal driving.

If the indicator comes on repeatedly, even though it may go off as you continue driving, have the vehicle checked by your dealer as soon as possible.

NOTICE

If you keep driving with the malfunction indicator lamp on, you can damage your vehicle's emissions controls and engine. Those repairs may not be covered by your vehicle's warranties.

If your vehicle has an automatic transmission, the malfunction indicator lamp may also come on with the "D" indicator.

You will also see a "CHECK EMISSION SYSTEM" message on the multi-information display.

Readiness Code

Your vehicle has certain "readiness codes" that are part of the on-board diagnostics for the emissions systems. In some states, part of the emissions testing is to make sure these codes are set. If they are not set, the test cannot be completed.

If the battery in your vehicle has been disconnected or gone dead, these codes may be erased. It takes several days of driving under various conditions to set the codes again.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To check if they are set, turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position (set the power mode to ON, on models with keyless access system), without starting the engine. The malfunction indicator lamp will come on for 20 seconds. If it then goes off, the readiness codes are set. If it blinks five times, the readiness codes are not set. If possible, do not take your vehicle for an emissions test until the readiness codes are set. Refer to **Emissions Testing** for more information (see page 592).

U.S. Canada

Brake System Indicator

The brake system indicator normally comes on when you turn the ignition switch* to the ON (II) position, and as a reminder to check the parking brake. It will stay on if you do not fully release the parking brake.

* : Models equipped with the keyless access system have an engine start/stop button instead of an ignition switch. ON Mode is the equivalent of ON (II). For more information, see pages 178 and 181 .

If the brake system indicator comes on while driving, the brake fluid level is probably low. Press lightly on the brake pedal to see if it feels normal. If it does, check the brake fluid level the next time you stop at a service station (see page 519).

You will also see a “LOW BRAKE FLUID” message on the multi-information display.

If the fluid level is low, take your vehicle to a dealer, and have the brake system inspected for leaks or worn brake pads.

However, if the brake pedal does not feel normal, you should take immediate action. A problem in one part of the system’s dual circuit design will still give you braking at two wheels. You will feel the brake pedal go down much farther before the vehicle begins to slow down, and you will have to press harder on the pedal.

You will also see a “CHECK BRAKE SYSTEM” message on the multi-information display when this indicator comes on.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

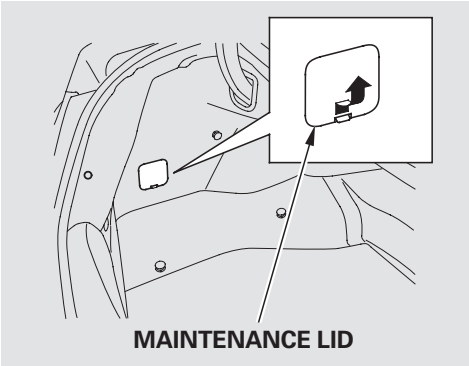
Brake System Indicator, Opening the Fuel Fill Door Manually

Slow down by shifting to a lower gear, and pull to the side of the road when it is safe. Because of the long distance needed to stop, it is hazardous to drive the vehicle. You should have it towed and repaired by your dealer as soon as possible (see **Emergency Towing** on page 572).

If you must drive the vehicle a short distance in this condition, drive slowly and carefully.

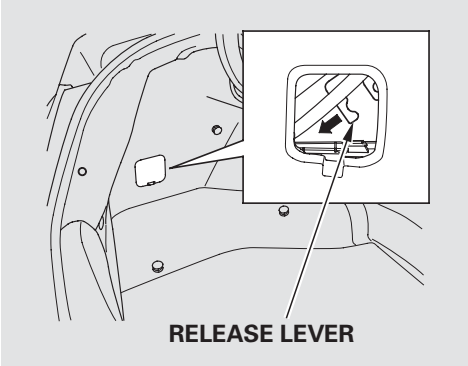
If the ABS indicator and the VSA system indicator come on with the brake system indicator, have your vehicle inspected by your dealer immediately.

Opening the Fuel Fill Door Manually



If the fuel fill door release button does not work, use the release lever inside the left maintenance lid in the trunk.

If you also cannot unlock the trunk due to the power door lock system malfunction, see page 149 and open the trunk manually.

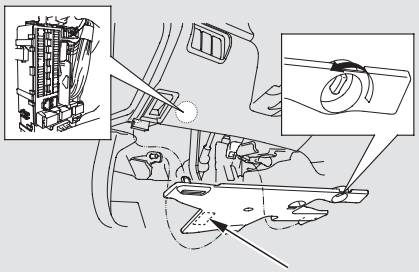


To open the fuel fill door, pull the release lever rearward.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Fuses

DRIVER'S SIDE

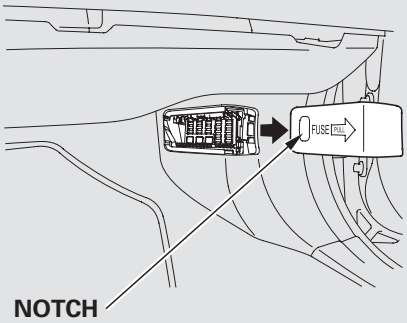


The vehicle's fuses are contained in three fuse boxes.

The interior fuse box is located under the dashboard on the driver's side. The fuse label is attached under the steering column.

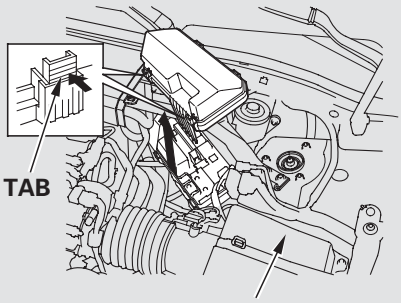
To access the fuse box, turn the knob on the under cover one-quarter turn and pull the front of the cover straight down to remove it from the dashboard.

PASSENGER'S SIDE



The passenger's side interior fuse box is on the lower passenger's side panel. To remove the fuse box lid, put your finger in the notch on the lid, and pull it upward slightly, then pull it toward you and take it out of its hinges.

UNDER-HOOD



The under-hood fuse box is on the driver's side next to the air cleaner housing.

To access the under-hood fuse box, remove the left-side engine compartment cover (see page 508).

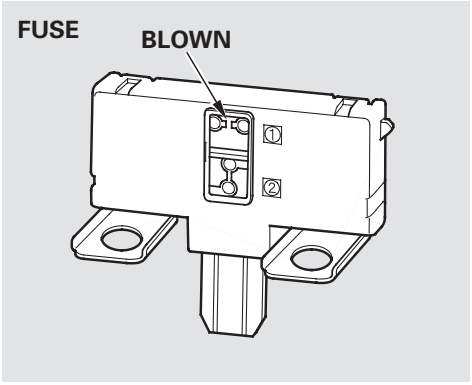
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Fuses

Checking and Replacing Fuses
If something electrical in your vehicle stops working, the first thing you should check for is a blown fuse. Determine from the chart on pages 569 , 570 and 571 , or the diagram on the fuse box lid or the fuse label, which fuse or fuses control that component. Check those fuses first, but check all the fuses before deciding that a blown fuse is not the cause. Replace any blown fuses and check if the device works.

1. Turn the ignition switch* to the LOCK (0) position.
Make sure the headlights and all other accessories are off.

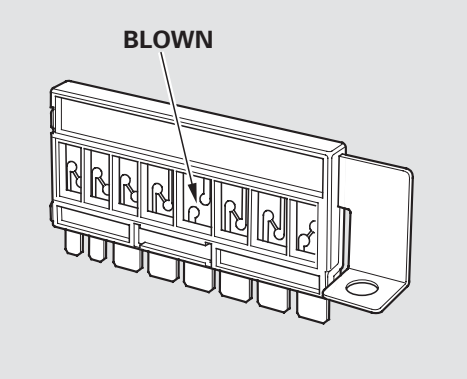
* : Models equipped with the keyless access system have an engine start/stop button instead of an ignition switch. VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) Mode is the equivalent of LOCK (0). For more information, see pages 178 and 181 .



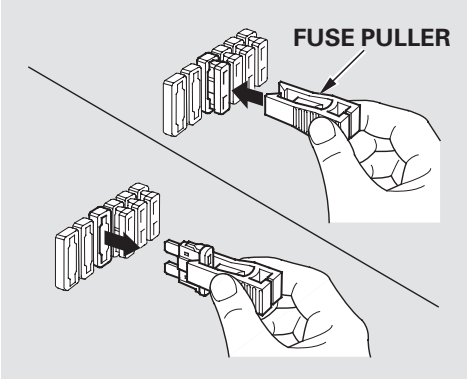
2. Remove the cover from the fuse box.

3. Check each of the large fuses in the under-hood fuse box by looking at the wire inside. Removing these fuses requires a Phillips-head screwdriver.

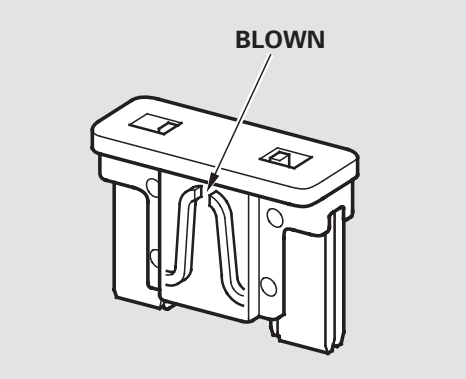
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Also check the combined fuse box in the under-hood fuse box.



4. Check the smaller fuses in the under-hood fuse box and all the fuses in the interior fuse boxes by pulling out each one with the fuse puller provided on the back of the under-hood fuse box cover.

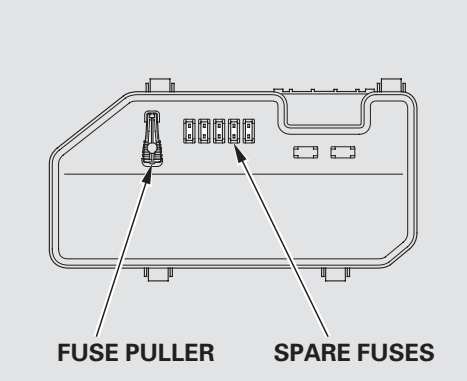


5. Look for a blown wire inside the fuse. If it is blown, replace it with one of the spare fuses of the same rating or lower.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Fuses



Your vehicle has spare fuses on the back of the under-hood fuse box cover.

If you cannot drive the vehicle without fixing the problem, and you do not have a spare fuse, take a fuse of the same rating or a lower rating from one of the other circuits. Make sure you can do without that circuit temporarily (such as the accessory power socket).

If you replace the blown fuse with a spare fuse that has a lower rating, it might blow out again. This does not indicate that anything is wrong. Replace the fuse with one of the correct rating as soon as you can.

NOTICE

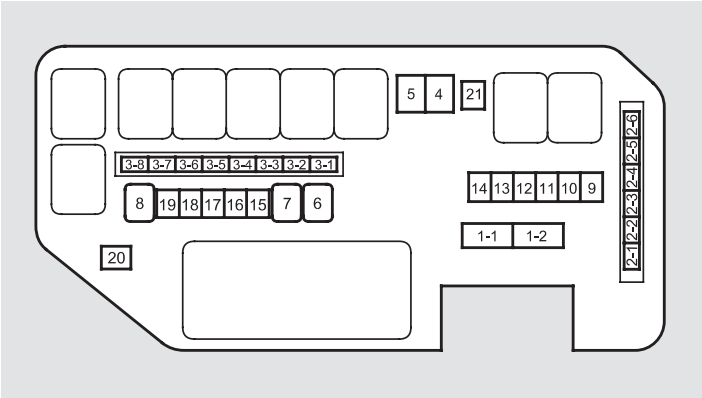
Replacing a fuse with one that has a higher rating greatly increases the chances of damaging the electrical system. If you do not have a replacement fuse with the proper rating for the circuit, install one with a lower rating.

6. If the replacement fuse of the same rating blows in a short time, there is probably a serious electrical problem with your vehicle. Leave the blown fuse in that circuit, and have your vehicle checked by a qualified technician.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Fuse Locations

UNDER-HOOD FUSE BOX



No.	Amps.	Circuits Protected
1−1	120 A	Battery
1−2	40 A	Passenger's Side Fuse Box
2−1	70 A	EPS
2−2	40 A	ABS/VSA MTR
2−3	30 A	ABS/VSA
2−4	40 A	Passenger's Side Fuse Box Option
2−5	30 A	Headlight Washer*3
2−6	30 A	SH-AWD*1

No.	Amps.	Circuits Protected
3−1	50 A	IG Main
3−2	40 A	Sub Fan Motor*1
3−3	30 A	Sub Fan Motor*2
3−4	60 A	Driver's Side Fuse Box
3−5	40 A*1 30 A*2	Main Fan Motor
3−6	30 A	Driver's Side Light Main
3−7	30 A	Wiper Motor
3−8	30 A	Passenger's Side Light Main

No.	Amps.	Circuits Protected
4	40 A	Rear Defroster
5	—	Not Used
6	—	Not Used
7	—	Not Used
8	40 A	Heater Motor
9	15 A	Hazard
10	20 A	Horn and Stop
11	7.5 A	Keyless Access System*1
12	—	Not Used
13	15 A	IG Coil
14	15 A	FI Sub
15	10 A	Back Up
16	7.5 A	Interior Lights
17	15 A	FI Main
18	15 A	DBW
19	7.5 A	Back Up FI ECU
20	7.5 A	MG, Clutch
21	7.5 A	Radiator Fan Timer

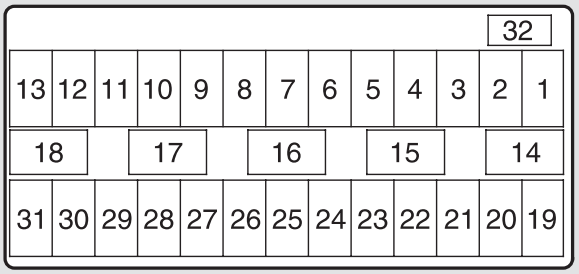
*1: Used on SH-AWD models
*2: Used on 2WD models
*3: If equipped

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Fuse Locations

INTERIOR FUSE BOX
Driver's side



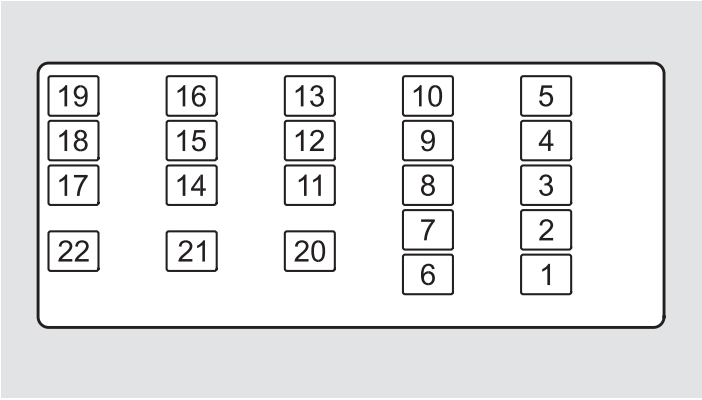
No.	Amps.	Circuits Protected
1	—	Not Used
2	7.5 A	SH-AWD*
3	20 A	Washer
4	7.5 A	Wiper
5	7.5 A	ODS
6	7.5 A	ABS/VSA
7	—	Not Used
8	7.5 A	Starter Relay
9	20 A	Fuel Pump
10	10 A	VB SOL
11	10 A	SRS
12	7.5 A	Meter
13	15 A	ACG
14	—	Not Used
15	7.5 A	Daytime Running Light
16	7.5 A	A/C
17	7.5 A	Accessory, Key, Lock*
18	7.5 A	Accessory
19	20 A	Driver's Power Seat Sliding
20	20 A	Moonroof
21	20 A	Driver's Power Seat Reclining
22	20 A	Rear Left Power Window
23	15 A	Front ACC Socket
24	20 A	Driver's Power Window
25	15 A	Driver's Side Door Lock
26	10 A	Front Left Fog Light
27	10 A	Left Side Small Lights (Exterior)
28	10 A	Left Headlight High Beam
29	7.5 A	TPMS
30	15 A	Left Headlight Low Beam
31	—	Not Used
32	7.5 A	STS*

* : If equipped

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Fuse Locations

INTERIOR FUSE BOX
Passenger's side



No.	Amps.	Circuits Protected
1	10 A	Right Headlight High Beam
2	10 A	Right Side Small Lights (Exterior)
3	10 A	Right Front Fog Light
4	15 A	Right Headlight Low Beam
5	—	Not Used
6	7.5 A	Interior Lights
7	—	Not Used
8	20 A	Passenger's Power Seat Reclining
9	20 A	Passenger's Power Seat Sliding
10	10 A	Right Side Door Lock
11	20 A	Rear Passenger's Side Power Window
12	10 A	Keyless Access System*
13	20 A	Front Passenger's Power Window
14	—	Not Used
15	20 A	Premium amplifier
16	15 A	Console ACC Socket
17	—	Not Used
18	7.5 A	Lumbar Support
19	20 A	Seat Heater
20	—	Not Used
21	—	Not Used
22	—	Not Used

* : If equipped

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Emergency Towing

If your vehicle needs to be towed, call a professional towing service or organization. Never tow your vehicle with just a rope or chain. It is very dangerous.

On SH-AWD models

The only way you can safely tow your vehicle is with flat-bed equipment. The operator will load your vehicle on the back of a truck. Any other method of towing will damage the drive system. When you contact the towing agency, inform them a flat-bed is required.

NOTICE

Towing with only two tires on the ground will damage parts of the all-wheel-drive system. Your vehicle should be transported on a flat-bed truck or trailer.

Except SH-AWD models

There are two ways to tow your vehicle:

Flat-bed Equipment — The operator loads your vehicle on the back of a truck. **This is the best way to transport your vehicle.**

Wheel-lift Equipment — The tow truck uses two pivoting arms that go under the front tires and lift them off the ground. The rear tires remain on the ground. **This is an acceptable way to tow your vehicle.**

If, due to damage, your vehicle must be towed with the front wheels on the ground, do this:

- Start the engine.
- Shift to the D position and hold for 5 seconds, then to N.
- Turn off the engine.
- Leave the ignition switch* in the ACCESSORY (I) position so the steering wheel does not lock.
- Release the parking brake.

* : Models equipped with the keyless access system have an engine start/stop button instead of an ignition switch. ACCESSORY Mode is the equivalent of ACCESSORY (I). For more information, see pages 178 and 181.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

NOTICE

Improper towing preparation will damage the transmission. Follow the above procedure exactly. If you cannot shift the transmission or start the engine (automatic transmission), your vehicle must be transported with the front wheels off the ground.

With the front wheels on the ground, it is best to tow the vehicle no farther than 50 miles (80 km), and keep the speed below 35 mph (55 km/h).

If your vehicle is equipped with a front spoiler, remove it before towing so it is not damaged.

NOTICE

Trying to lift or tow your vehicle by the bumpers will cause serious damage. The bumpers are not designed to support the vehicle's weight.

NOTICE

The steering system can be damaged if the steering wheel is locked. Leave the ignition switch in the ACCESSORY (I) position, and make sure the steering wheel turns freely before you begin towing.*

* : Models equipped with the keyless access system have an engine start/stop button instead of an ignition switch. ACCESSORY Mode is the equivalent of ACCESSORY (I). For more information, see pages 178 and 181.

NOTICE

On models with the Keyless Access system, the ENGINE START/STOP BUTTON indicator will confirm that the power mode is in the ACCESSORY mode and that the steering lock is released. If the steering wheel does not turn freely, rotate the wheel right and left while pressing the ENGINE START/STOP BUTTON. This information also appears on the multi-information display (see page 183).

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Emergency Towing, If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck

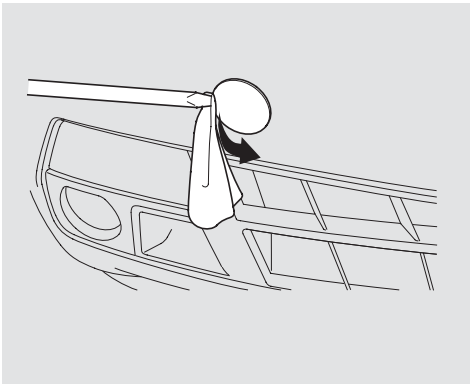
On models with keyless access system
When you need to release the steering lock while your vehicle's battery is dead, do this:

1. Follow the proper jump starting procedures, Step 1 through Step 5, to apply the power to your vehicle (see pages 557 and 558).
2. Press the ENGINE START/STOP button to set the power mode to ACCESSORY (see page 178) and verify the steering lock is released.
3. Follow the jump starting procedures, Step 8 and Step 9, and the instructions to disconnect the jumper cable (see page 558). The steering will remain unlocked even if the battery is dead.

Failure to comply means the steering lock may be damaged.

If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck
If your vehicle gets stuck in sand, mud, or snow, call a towing service to pull it out (see page 572).

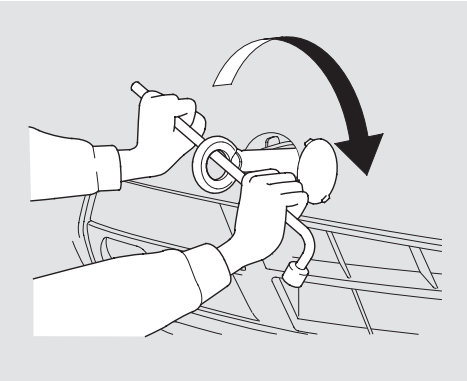
For very short distances, such as freeing the vehicle, you can use the detachable towing hook that mounts on the anchor in the front bumper.



To use the towing hook:

1. Remove the cover from the front bumper using your fingers, or pry it off using a cloth and a flat-tip screwdriver to prevent scratches.
2. Remove the towing hook and wheel nut wrench from the tool case in the spare tire (see page 550).

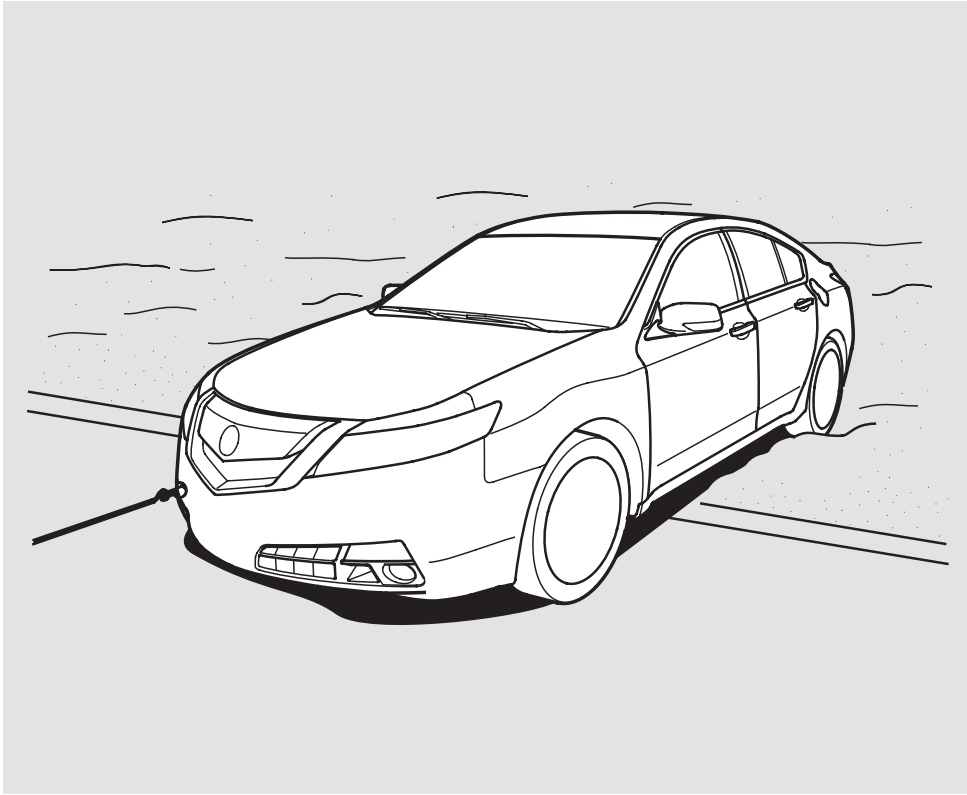
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



3. Screw the towing hook into the hole, and tighten it with the wheel nut wrench.

NOTICE

To avoid damage to your vehicle, use the towing hook for straight, flat ground towing only. Do not tow at an angle. The tow hook should not be used to tow the vehicle onto a flat bed. Do not use it as a tie down.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Technical Information

The diagrams in this section give you the dimensions and capacities of your vehicle and the locations of the identification numbers. It also includes information you should know about your vehicle's tires and emissions control systems.

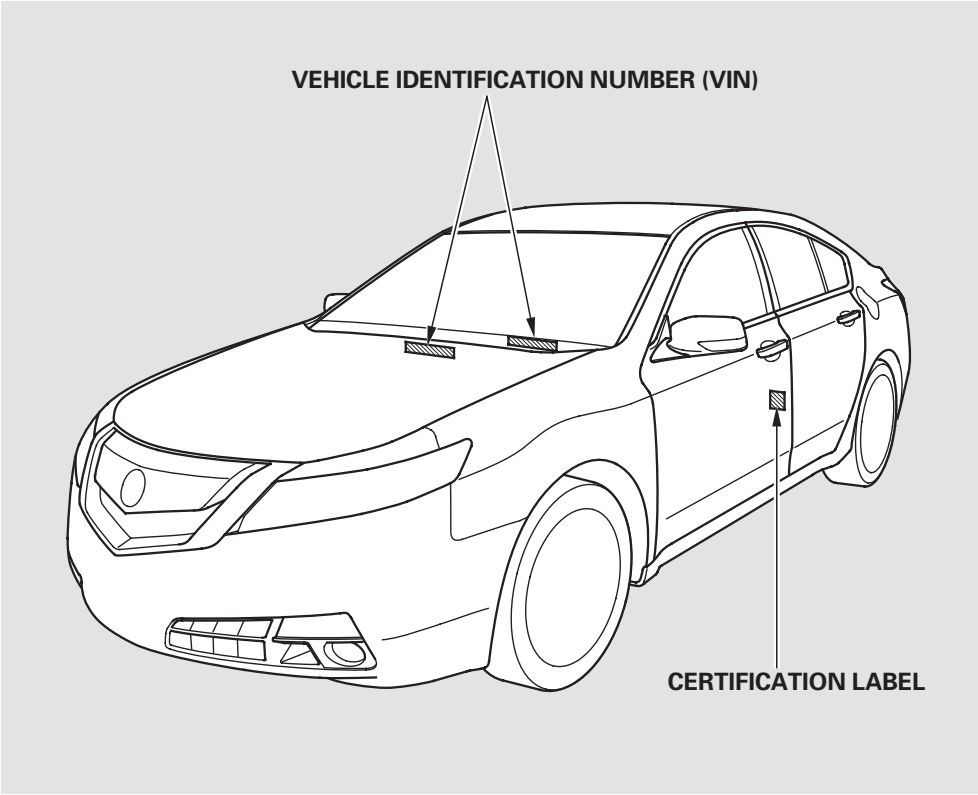
Identification Numbers 578
Specifications 580
DOT Tire Quality Grading (U.S. Vehicles) 583
Tire Labeling 585
Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) — Required Federal Explanation 587
Emissions Controls 589
Three Way Catalytic Converters 591
Emissions Testing 592

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Identification Numbers

Your vehicle has several identifying numbers located in various places.

The vehicle identification number (VIN) is the 17-digit number your dealer uses to register your vehicle for warranty purposes. It is also necessary for licensing and insuring your vehicle. The easiest place to find the VIN is on a plate fastened to the top of the dashboard. You can see it by looking through the windshield on the driver's side. It is also on the certification label attached to the driver's doorjamb, and is stamped on the engine compartment bulkhead. The VIN is also provided in bar code on the certification label.

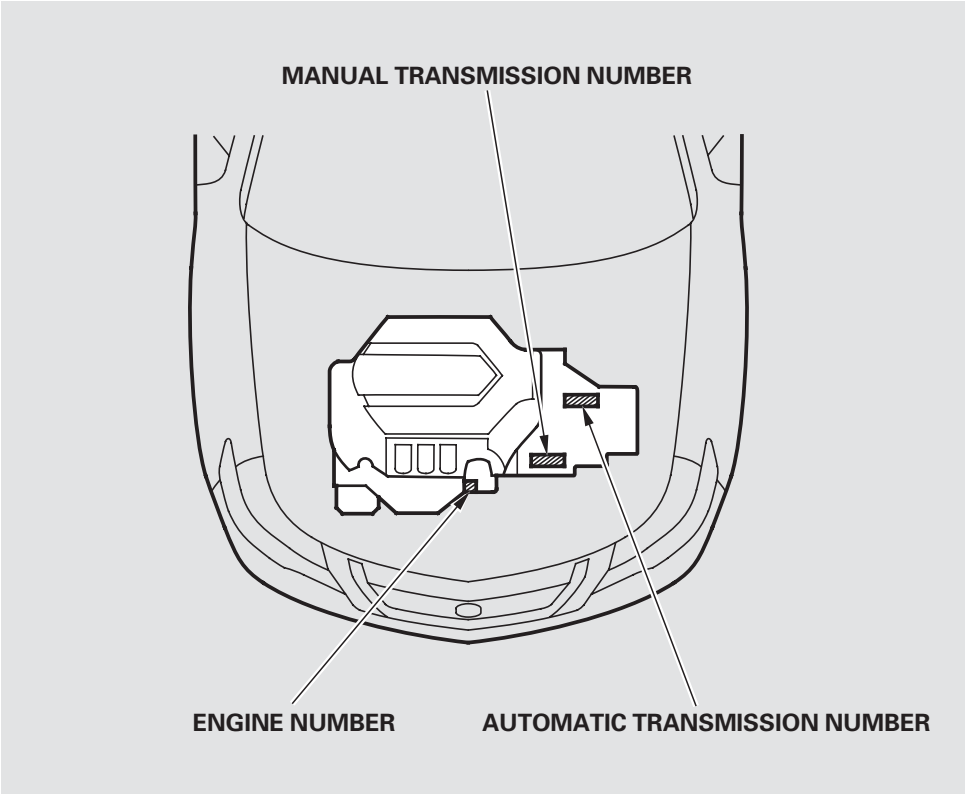


Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Identification Numbers

The engine number is stamped into the engine block.

The transmission number is on a label on top of the transmission.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Specifications

Dimensions

Length	U.S. Vehicle	195.5 in (4,966 mm)
	Canada Vehicle	196.4 in (4,989 mm)
Width		74.0 in (1,880 mm)
Height		57.2 in (1,452 mm)
Wheelbase		109.3 in (2,775 mm)
Track	Front	63.2 in (1,605.5 mm)
	Rear	63.8 in (1,620 mm)

Weights

Gross vehicle weight rating	See the certification label attached to the driver's doorjamb.

Seating Capacities

Total	5
Front	2
Rear	3

Air Conditioning

Refrigerant type	HFC-134a (R-134a)
Charge quantity	17.6－19.4 oz (500－550 g)
Lubricant type	ND-OIL8

Capacities

Fuel tank		Approx. 18.5 US gal (70 ℓ)
Engine coolant	Change*1	1.66 US gal (6.3 ℓ)
	Total	2.19 US gal (8.3 ℓ)
Engine oil	Change*2	
	Including filter	4.5 US qt (4.3 ℓ)
	Without filter	4.2 US qt (4.0 ℓ)
	Total	5.3 US qt (5.0 ℓ)
Automatic transmission fluid	Change	
	2WD	3.5 US qt (3.3 ℓ)
	SH-AWD	3.0 US qt (2.8 ℓ)
	Total	
	2WD	7.9 US qt (7.5 ℓ)
	SH-AWD	8.1 US qt (7.7 ℓ)
Manual transmission fluid	Change	2.2 US qt (2.1 ℓ)
	Total	2.6 US qt (2.5 ℓ)
Rear differential fluid (SH-AWD)	Change	2.67 US qt (2.53 ℓ)
	Total	2.93 US qt (2.77 ℓ)
Transfer assembly fluid (SH-AWD)	Change	0.45 US qt (0.43 ℓ)
	Total	0.48 US qt (0.45 ℓ)
Windshield washer reservoir	U.S. Vehicle	2.6 US qt (2.5 ℓ)
	Canada Vehicle	6.1 US qt (5.8 ℓ)

＊1 : Including the coolant in the reserve tank and that remaining in the engine
Reserve tank capacity: 0.182 US gal (0.69 ℓ)

＊2 : Excluding the oil remaining in the engine

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Specifications

Lights

Headlight (Low beam*1)	35 W (D2S)
Headlight (High beam/DRL)	60 W (HB3)
Front turn signal/parking lights	24/2.2 CP (Amber)
Front side marker lights	3 CP
Front fog lights	55 W (H11)
Rear turn signal lights	21 W (Amber)
Back-up lights	16 W
Rear side marker lights	3 CP
Stop/taillights	LED*2
Side turn signal lights	LED*2
High-mount brake light	LED*2
License plate lights	3 CP
Trunk light	5 W
Door courtesy lights	3.4 W
Vanity mirror lights	1.4 W
Console compartment light	1.4 W
Glove box Light	1.4 W
Foot light	LED*2

*1: On vehicles with high voltage discharge type low beam headlights, replacement of a bulb should be performed by your dealer.
*2: Replacement of a light bulb should be done by your dealer.

Battery

Capacity	12 V — 60 AH/5 HR 12 V — 72 AH/20 HR

Engine (2WD)

Type	Water cooled 4-stroke SOHC VTEC 6-cylinder (V6), gasoline engine
Bore x Stroke	3.50 x 3.66 in (89.0 x 93.0 mm)
Displacement	212 cu-in (3,471 cm^3)
Compression ratio	11.2 : 1
Spark plugs	NGK: ILZKR7B11 DENSO: SXU22HCR11

Engine (SH-AWD)

Type	Water cooled 4-stroke SOHC IN/EX VTEC 6-cylinder (V6), gasoline engine
Bore x Stroke	3.54 x 3.78 in (90.0 x 96.0 mm)
Displacement	223.5 cu-in (3,664 cm^3)
Compression ratio	11.2 : 1
Spark plugs	NGK: ILZKR7B-11S DENSO: SXU22HCR11S

Fuses

Interior	Driver's side	See pages 570 or the fuse label attached on the side panel.
	Passenger's side	See pages 571 or the fuse label attached to the inside of the fuse box door.
Under-hood		See page 569 or the fuse box cover.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Specifications

Tires

Size	Front/Rear	P245/50R17 98V *1, *2 P245/45R18 96V *3, *4, *7 245/40ZR19 94Y *5, *6, *8
	Spare	T135/80D17 103M
Pressure	Front	32 psi (220 kPa , 2.2 kgf/cm²)*1, *2, *3, *4 37 psi (255 kPa , 2.55 kgf/cm²)*5, *6, *8
	Rear	32 psi (220 kPa , 2.2 kgf/cm²)
	Spare	60 psi (420 kPa , 4.2 kgf/cm²)

*1 : TL
*2 : TECH
*3 : SH-AWD
*4 : SH-AWD TECH
*5 : SH-AWD TECH HPT
*6 : SH-AWD with high performance tires
*7 : Optional for TECH (2WD)
*8 : Canadian A-Spec

Alignment

Toe-in	Front	0.00 in (0.0 mm)
	Rear	0.08 in (2.0 mm)
Camber	Front	−0.5°
	Rear	−1°
Caster	Front	3.8°

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

DOT Tire Quality Grading (U.S. Vehicles)

The tires on your vehicle meet all U.S. Federal Safety Requirements. All tires are also graded for treadwear, traction, and temperature performance according to Department of Transportation (DOT) standards. The following explains these gradings.

Uniform Tire Quality Grading
Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width. For example:

Treadwear 200
Traction AA
Temperature A

All passenger car tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades.

Treadwear
The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half (1 1/2) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction
The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C. Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

Warning: The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

DOT Tire Quality Grading (U.S. Vehicles)

Temperature
The temperature grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

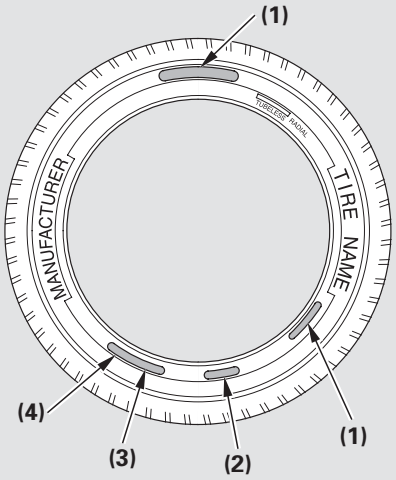
Warning: The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tire Labeling

The tires that came on your vehicle have a number of markings. Those you should be aware of are described below.

TIRE LABELING EXAMPLE



(1) Tire Size
(2) Tire Identification Number (TIN)
(3) Maximum Tire Pressure
(4) Maximum Tire Load

Tire Size

Whenever tires are replaced, they should be replaced with tires of the same size. Below is an example of tire size with an explanation of what each component means.

P245/50R17 98V

P — Vehicle type (P indicates passenger vehicle).

245 — Tire width in millimeters.

50 — Aspect ratio (the tire's section height as a percentage of its width).

R — Tire construction code (R indicates radial).

17 — Rim diameter in inches.

98 — Load index (a numerical code associated with the maximum load the tire can carry).

V — Speed symbol (an alphabetical code indicating the maximum speed rating).

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tire Labeling

Tire Identification Number (TIN)
The tire identification number (TIN) is a group of numbers and letters that look like the following example. TIN is located on the sidewall of the tire.

DOT B97R FW6X 2202

DOT —This indicates that the tire meets all requirements of the U.S. Department of Transportation.

B97R —Manufacturer's identification mark.

FW6X —Tire type code.

2202 —Date of manufacture.
Year
Week

Glossary of Tire Terminology
Cold Tire Pressure — The tire air pressure when the vehicle has been parked for at least three hours or driven less than 1 mile (1.6 km).

Load Rating — Means the maximum load that a tire is rated to carry for a given inflation pressure.

Maximum Inflation Pressure — The maximum tire air pressure that the tire can hold.

Maximum Load Rating — Means the load rating for a tire at the maximum permissible inflation pressure for that tire.

Recommended Inflation Pressure — The cold tire inflation pressure recommended by the manufacturer.

Treadwear Indicators (TWI) — Means the projections within the principal grooves designed to give a visual indication of the degrees of wear of the tread.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) — Required Federal Explanation

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label.

(If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated.

Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure.

Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) − Required Federal Explanation

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended.

TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly.

Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The burning of gasoline in your vehicle's engine produces several by-products. Some of these are carbon monoxide (CO), oxides of nitrogen (NOx), and hydrocarbons (HC). Gasoline evaporating from the tank also produces hydrocarbons. Controlling the production of NOx, CO, and HC is important to the environment. Under certain conditions of sunlight and climate, NOx and HC react to form photochemical "smog." Carbon monoxide does not contribute to smog creation, but it is a poisonous gas.

The Clean Air Act
The United States Clean Air Act* sets standards for automobile emissions. It also requires that automobile manufacturers explain to owners how their emissions controls work and what to do to maintain them. This section summarizes how the emissions controls work.

* In Canada, Acura vehicles comply with the Canadian emission requirements, as specified in an agreement with Environment Canada, at the time they are manufactured.

Crankcase Emissions Control System
Your vehicle has a positive crankcase ventilation system. This keeps gasses that build up in the engine's crankcase from going into the atmosphere. The positive crankcase ventilation valve routes them from the crankcase back to the intake manifold. They are then drawn into the engine and burned.

Evaporative Emissions Control System
As gasoline evaporates in the fuel tank, an evaporative emissions control canister filled with charcoal adsorbs the vapor. It is stored in this canister while the engine is off. After the engine is started and warmed up, the vapor is drawn into the engine and burned during driving.

Onboard Refueling Vapor Recovery
The onboard refueling vapor recovery (ORVR) system captures the fuel vapors during refueling. The vapors are adsorbed in a canister filled with activated carbon. While driving, the fuel vapors are drawn into the engine and burned off.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Emissions Controls

Exhaust Emissions Controls

The exhaust emissions controls include four systems: PGM-FI, ignition timing control, exhaust gas recirculation, and three way catalytic converter. These four systems work together to control the engine's combustion and minimize the amount of HC, CO, and NOx that come out the tailpipe. The exhaust emissions control systems are separate from the crankcase and evaporative emissions control systems.

PGM-FI System

The PGM-FI system uses sequential multiport fuel injection. It has three subsystems: air intake, engine control, and fuel control. The powertrain control module (PCM) in automatic transmission vehicles or the engine control module (ECM) in manual transmission vehicles uses various sensors to determine how much air is going into the engine. It then controls how much fuel to inject under all operating conditions.

Ignition Timing Control System

This system constantly adjusts the ignition timing, reducing the amount of HC, CO, and NOx produced.

Exhaust Gas Recirculation (EGR) System

The exhaust gas recirculation (EGR) system takes some of the exhaust gas and routes it back into the intake manifold. Adding exhaust gas to the air/fuel mixture reduces the amount of NOx produced when the fuel is burned.

Three Way Catalytic Converter

The three way catalytic converter is in the exhaust system. Through chemical reactions, it converts HC, CO, and NOx in the engine's exhaust to carbon dioxide (CO_2), nitrogen (N_2), and water vapor.

Replacement Parts

The emissions control systems are designed and certified to work together in reducing emissions to levels that comply with the Clean Air Act. To make sure the emissions remain low, you should use only new Acura replacement parts or their equivalent for repairs. Using lower quality parts may increase the emissions from your vehicle.

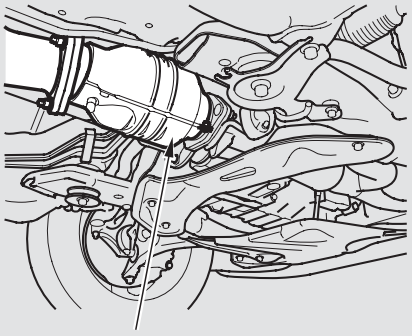
The emissions control systems are covered by warranties separate from the rest of your vehicle. Read your warranty manual for more information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Three Way Catalytic Converters

The three way catalytic converters contain precious metals that serve as catalysts, promoting chemical reactions to convert the exhaust gasses without affecting the metals. The catalytic converters are referred to as three-way catalysts, since they act on HC, CO, and NOx. Replacement units must be original Acura parts or their equivalent.

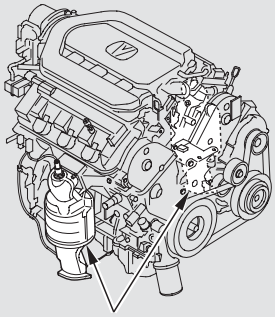
The three way catalytic converters must operate at a high temperature for the chemical reactions to take place. They can set on fire any combustible materials that come near them. Park your vehicle away from high grass, dry leaves, or other flammables.



THREE WAY CATALYTIC CONVERTER

Defective three way catalytic converters contribute to air pollution, and can impair your engine's performance. Follow these guidelines to protect your vehicle's three way catalytic converters.

- Always use unleaded gasoline. Even a small amount of leaded gasoline can contaminate the catalyst metals, making the three way catalytic converters ineffective.



WARM UP THREE WAY CATALYTIC CONVERTERS

- Keep the engine well maintained.
- Have your vehicle diagnosed and repaired if it is misfiring, back-firing, stalling, or otherwise not running properly.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Emissions Testing

Testing of Readiness Codes
If you take your vehicle for an emissions test shortly after the battery has been disconnected or gone dead, it may not pass the test. This is because of certain "readiness codes" that must be set in the on-board diagnostics for the emissions systems. These codes are erased when the battery is disconnected, and set again only after several days of driving under a variety of conditions.

If the testing facility determines that the readiness codes are not set, you will be requested to return at a later date to complete the test. If you must get the vehicle retested within the next two or three days, you can condition the vehicle for retesting by doing the following.

1. Make sure the gas tank is nearly, but not completely, full (around 3/4).
2. Make sure the vehicle has been parked with the engine off for 6 hours or more.
3. Make sure the ambient temperature is between 40° and 95°F (4° and 35°C).
4. Without touching the accelerator pedal, start the engine, and let it idle for 20 seconds.
5. Keep the vehicle in Park (automatic) or neutral (manual). Increase the engine speed to 2,000 rpm, and hold it there until the temperature gauge rises to at least 1/4 of the scale (about 3 minutes).
6. Without touching the accelerator pedal, let the engine idle for 20 seconds.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

7. Select a nearby lightly traveled major highway where you can maintain a speed of 50 to 60 mph (80 to 97 km/h) for at least 20 minutes. Drive on the highway in D (automatic) or 5th (manual). Do not use the cruise control. When traffic allows, drive for 90 seconds without moving the accelerator pedal. (Vehicle speed may vary slightly; this is okay.) If you cannot do this for a continuous 90 seconds because of traffic conditions, drive for at least 30 seconds, then repeat it two more times (for a total of 90 seconds).
8. Then drive in city/suburban traffic for at least 10 minutes. When traffic conditions allow, let the vehicle coast for several seconds without using the accelerator pedal or the brake pedal.
9. Make sure the vehicle has been parked with the engine off for 30 minutes.

If the testing facility determines the readiness codes are still not set, see your dealer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Main Menu

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Main Menu

Warranty and Client Relations

Client Service Information 596
Warranty Coverages 597
Reporting Safety Defects..... 598
Authorized Manuals..... 599

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Client Service Information

Acura dealership personnel are trained professionals. They should be able to answer all your questions. If you encounter a problem that your dealership does not solve to your satisfaction, please discuss it with the dealership's management. The service manager or general manager can help. Almost all problems are solved in this way.

If you are dissatisfied with the decision made by the dealership's management, contact Acura Client Services.

U.S. Owners:
American Honda Motor Co., Inc.
Acura Client Services
Mail Stop 500-2N-7E
1919 Torrance Blvd.
Torrance, CA 90501-2746

Tel: (800) 382-2238

Canadian Owners:
Honda Canada Inc.
Acura Client Services
180 Honda Boulevard
Markham, ON
L6C 0H9

Tel: 1-888-9-ACURA-9
Fax: 1-877-939-0909
E-Mail: ch_acura_cr@ch.honda.com

In Puerto Rico and the U.S. Virgin Islands:

Vortex Motor Corp.
Bella International
P.O. Box 190816
San Juan, PR 00919-0816

Tel: (787) 620-7546

When you call or write, please give us this information:

- Vehicle Identification Number (see page 578)
- Name and address of the dealer who services your vehicle
- Date of purchase
- Odometer reading of your vehicle
- Your name, address, and telephone number
- A detailed description of the problem
- Name of the dealer who sold the vehicle to you

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Warranty Coverages

U.S. Owners

Your new Acura is covered by these warranties:

New Vehicle Limited Warranty — covers your new vehicle, except for the emissions control systems and accessories, against defects in materials and workmanship.

Emissions Control Systems Defects Warranty and Emissions Performance Warranty — these two warranties cover your vehicle's emissions control systems. Time, mileage, and coverage are conditional. Please read your warranty booklet for exact information.

Seat Belt Limited Warranty — a seat belt that fails to function properly is covered by a limited warranty. Please read your warranty booklet for details.

Rust Perforation Limited Warranty — all exterior body panels are covered for rust-through from the inside for the specified time period with no mileage limit.

Accessory Limited Warranty — Acura accessories are covered under this warranty. Time and mileage limits depend on the type of accessory and other factors. Please read your warranty manual for details.

Replacement Parts Limited Warranty — covers all Acura replacement parts against defects in materials and workmanship.

Replacement Battery Limited Warranty — provides prorated coverage for a replacement battery purchased from your dealer.

Replacement Muffler Lifetime Limited Warranty — provides coverage for as long as the purchaser of the muffler owns the vehicle.

Restrictions and exclusions apply to all these warranties. Please read the 2011 Acura Warranty Information booklet that came with your vehicle for precise information on warranty coverages. Your vehicle's original tires are covered by their manufacturer. Tire warranty information is in a separate booklet.

Canadian Owners

Please refer to the 2011 warranty manual that came with your vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Reporting Safety Defects

In the US

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA), in addition to notifying American Honda Motor Co., Inc.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or American Honda Motor Co., Inc.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153);

go to *http://www.safercar.gov*;

or write to:

Administrator, NHTSA
1200 New Jersey Avenue, SE.
Washington DC 20590

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from *http://www.safercar.gov*.

In Canada

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform Honda Canada Inc. and you may also inform Transport Canada.

If Transport Canada receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may lead to a recall and remedy campaign. However, Transport Canada cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Honda Canada Inc.

To contact Transport Canada's Defect Investigations and Recalls Division, you may call 1-800-333-0510. For more information on reporting safety defects or about motor vehicle safety, go to *http://www.tc.gc.ca/roadsafety*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Purchasing Factory Authorized Manuals (U.S. only)

The publications shown below can be purchased from Helm Incorporated. You can order by phone or online:

- Call Helm Inc. at 1-800-782-4356 (credit card orders only)
- Go online at *www.helminc.com*

If you are interested in other years or models, contact Helm Inc. at 1-800-782-4356.

Publication Form Number	Form Description
61TK402	2009-2011 Acura TL Service Manual
61TK402EL	2009-2011 Acura TL Electrical Troubleshooting Manual
61TK430	2009 Model Series Acura TL Body Repair Manual
31TK4620	2011 Acura TL Owner's Manual
31TK4820	2011 Acura TL Navigation Manual
31TK4M20	2011 Acura TL Maintenance Journal
31TK4Q20	2011 Acura TL Advanced Technology Guide
ACU-R	Order Form for Previous Years- Indicate Year and Model Desired

Service Manual:
Covers maintenance and recommended procedures for repair to engine and chassis components. It is written for the journeyman mechanic, but it is simple enough for most mechanically inclined owners to understand.

Electrical Troubleshooting Manual:
Complements the Service Manual by providing in-depth troubleshooting information for each electrical circuit in your vehicle.

Body Repair Manual:
Describes the procedures involved in the replacement of damaged body parts.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Index

A

AAC 261, 301, 348
Accessories 453
ACCESSORY (Ignition Key Position) 145
ACCESSORY Mode (Power Mode) 178
Accessory Power Sockets 207
Active Head Restraints 159
AcuraLink® 425
Additives, Engine Oil 510
Advanced Airbags 28
Airbag (SRS) 9, 24
Airbag System Components 24
Air Conditioning System 216, 217
  Usage 218
Air Pressure, Tires 535, 536
Antifreeze 512
Anti-lock Brakes (ABS)
  Indicator 66, 482
  Operation 482
Anti-theft, Audio System 373
Anti-theft Steering Column Lock 145, 183
Audio System 225
Automatic Lighting Off Feature .. 135
Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners 22
Automatic Speed Control 383
Automatic Transmission 468
  Capacity, Fluid 580
  Checking Fluid Level 515
  Paddle Shifters 473
  Shifting 469
  Shift Lever Position Indicators 468
  Shift Lock Release 471
Auxiliary Input Jack 372

B

Battery
  Charging System Indicator 65, 561
  Jump Starting 557
  Maintenance 542
  Specifications 581
Before Driving 443
Belts, Seat 8, 20
Beverage Holders 206
Bluetooth® Audio 269, 359
Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® 389, 406
Booster Seats 54
Brakes
  Anti-lock System (ABS) 482
  Break-in, New Linings 444
  Fluid 519
  Parking 204
  System Indicator 65, 563
  Wear Indicators 481
Braking System 481
Break-in, New Vehicle 444
Brightness Control, Instruments 137
Built-In Key 195
Bulb Replacement
  Back-up Lights 528
  Daytime Running Lights 521
  Fog Lights 526
  Headlights 521
  Specifications 581
  Turn Signal Lights 524, 528
Bulbs, Halogen 521, 526

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Main Menu

Index

C

Capacities Chart 580
Carbon Monoxide Hazard 57
Carrying, Cargo 455
CAUTION, Explanation of iii
CD Care 364
CD Changer 241
CD Player 295
Certification Label 578
Chains 541
Changing a Flat Tire 549
Changing Oil
  How to 510
  When to 497
Charging System Indicator 65, 561
Checklist, Before Driving 460
Child Safety 37
  Booster Seats 54
  Child Seats 45
  Infants 42
  Large Children 53
  LATCH 47
  Risks with Airbags 38
  Small Children 43
  Tethers 51
  Warning Labels 39, 59
  Where Should a Child Sit? 38
Child Seats 45
  LATCH 47
  Tether Anchorage Points 51
Childproof Door Locks 147
Cleaning the Seat Belts 530
Client Service Information 596
Climate Control System 216, 217
  On/Off Button 219
Clock 374
Clutch Fluid 520
CO in the Exhaust 57, 589
Cold Weather, Starting in 461, 463
Compact Spare Tire 548
Compass 379
Console Compartment 208
Consumer Information 596
Controls, Instruments and 61
Coolant
  Adding 512
  Checking 449
  Proper Solution 512
  Temperature Gauge 76
  Water Temp Hot Message 76
Crankcase Emissions Control System 589
Cruise Control Indicator 72
Cruise Control Operation 383
Cup Holders 206
Customer Service Office 596

D

DANGER, Explanation of iii
Dashboard 3, 62
Daytime Running Lights 136
Dead Battery 557
Defects, Reporting Safety 598
Defogger, Rear Window 139
Defrosting the Windows 221
Dimensions 580
Dimming the Headlights 133
Dipstick
  Automatic Transmission 515
  Engine Oil 448
Directional Signals 133
Disc Brake Wear Indicators 481
Disc Changer 241
Disc Changer Error Messages 251
Disposal of Used Oil 512

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Index

Doors
Lock Button, Outer Handle..... 170
Lockout Prevention..... 147, 171
Monitor Indicator 12, 71
Power Door Locks..... 146
Unlock Sensor, Outer Handle.. 169
DOT Tire Quality Grading* 583
Downshifting,
Manual Transmission 465
D-Paddle Shift Mode..... 473
Driver and Passenger Safety..... 5
Driving 459
Economy..... 450
Driving Position Memory
System..... 164
Dual Temperature and Mode
Control..... 222
Dual and Pollen Filter 532

E

Economy, Fuel..... 450
Electronic Stability Control
(ESC) System..... 484
Emergencies..... 547
Battery, Jump Starting..... 557
Brake System Indicator..... 563
Changing a Flat Tire 549
Charging System Indicator 561
Checking the Fuses..... 565
Hazard Warning Flashers 139
If the Engine Won't Start..... 554
If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck..... 574
Jump Starting 557
Low Oil Pressure Indicator 561
Malfunction Indicator Lamp 562
Manually Opening Fuel Fill
Door 564
Overheated Engine 559
Towing 572
Emergency Brake..... 204
Emergency Engine Start..... 464
Emergency Flashers 139
Emergency Towing 572
Emergency Trunk Opener 150
Emissions Controls..... 589
Emissions Testing 592
Engine
Adding Engine Coolant..... 512
Coolant Temperature Gauge 76
If It Won't Start 554
Malfunction Indicator
Lamp 64, 562
Oil Life 84, 497
Oil Pressure Indicator..... 64, 561
Oil, What Kind to Use..... 509
Overheating..... 559
Specifications 581
Speed Limiter..... 466, 471
Start/Stop Button..... 177, 182
Starting 461, 463
Starting System
Message..... 462, 464
Engine Compartment Covers..... 508
Engine Coolant..... 512
Engine Start/Stop Button..... 177
Ethanol in Gasoline 445
Evaporative Emissions Controls.. 589
Exhaust Fumes 57
Expectant Mothers, Use of Seat
Belts by 18

F

Fan, Interior..... 220

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Main Menu

Index

Features 215
Filling the Fuel Tank 445
Filters
  Dust and Pollen 532
  Oil 510
Flashers, Hazard Warning 139
Flat Tire, Changing a 549
Floor Mats 531
Fluids
  Automatic Transmission 515
  Brake 519
  Clutch 520
  Manual Transmission 517
  Windshield Washers 514
FM Stereo Radio
  Reception 368
Fog Lights 137
Four-way Flashers 139
Front Airbags 9, 26
Front Seats 155
  Adjusting 155
  Airbags 9, 26
  Heaters 196
Fuel 444
  Fill Door and Cap 446
  Gauge 75
  Low Fuel Indicator 73
  Octane Requirement 444
  Oxygenated 444
  Tank, Filling the 445
Fuel Economy 450
Fuses, Checking the 565

G

Gas Mileage, Improving 450
Gasoline 444
  Gauge 75
  Low Fuel Indicator 73
  Octane Requirement 444
  Tank, Refueling 445
Gas Station Procedures 445
Gauges
  Engine Coolant Temperature 76
  Fuel 75
Gearshift Lever Positions
  Automatic Transmission 468
  Manual Transmission 465
Glove Box 208
Gross Vehicle Weight Rating
  (GVWR) 457

H

Halogen Bulbs 521, 526
HandsFreeLink® (HFL) 389, 406
Hazard Warning Flashers 139
Hard Disc Drive (HDD),
  Playing 308
Headlights 133
  Aiming 521
  Automatic Lighting Off 135
  Automatic Lighting On 134
  Daytime Running Lights 136
  High Beam Indicator 71
  Reminder Beeps 133
  Replacing Bulbs 521
  Turning on 133
Head Restraints 156
Heated Mirrors 163
Heater, Seat 196
High-Low Beam Switch 133
Hill Start Assist 486
HomeLink® Universal
  Transceiver 386
Hood, Opening and Closing 447
Horn 4, 130
Hydraulic Clutch 520

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Index

I

Identification Number, Vehicle.... 578
Ignition
  Keys..... 141
  Switch..... 145
  Timing Control System..... 590
Immobilizer System..... 143
Important Safety Precautions 6
Indicators/Messages 64, 88
  ABS (Anti-Lock Brake)..... 66, 482
  Brake (Parking and Brake System) 65, 563
  Charging System 65, 561
  Cruise Control..... 72
  Door Open 12, 71
  Fog Lights 71
  High Beam..... 71
  Hot Coolant 76
  Key (Immobilizer System) 65
  Keyless Access System..... 74
  Lights On..... 71
  Low Fuel..... 73
  Low Oil Pressure 64, 561
  Low Tire Pressure/TPMS..... 69
  Malfunction Indicator Lamp 562
  Seat Belt..... 20, 64
  Side Airbag Off 33, 67
  SRS 32, 67
  Starting System..... 462, 464
  Trunk Open..... 12, 71
  Turn Signal and Hazard Warning 70
  VSA Off..... 68
  VSA System..... 68
Individual Map Lights 213
Indicators, Instrument Panel..... 64
Infant Restraint 42
Infant Seats..... 42
  LATCH..... 47
  Tether Anchorage Points 51
Inflation, Proper Tire 535
Inside Mirror..... 161
Inspection, Tire..... 537
Installing a Child Seat 46
  Tether Anchorage Points 51
  Using LATCH 47
Instrument Panel 63
Instrument Panel Brightness..... 137
Interior Lights..... 211
Introduction..... i

J

Jacking up the Vehicle 550
Jack, Tire 550
Jump Starting 557

K

Keyless Access Remote..... 168, 173
Keyless Access Remote System Main Switch..... 189
Keyless Access System..... 167
Keyless Memory Settings™ 92
Keys..... 141
  Built-In..... 195

L

Label, Certification..... 578
Lane Change, Signaling 133
Lap/Shoulder Belts..... 16, 21
LATCH System..... 47
Lights Control Buttons 211

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Main Menu

Index

Lights
Bulb Replacement 521
Indicator..... 63
Parking..... 133
Turn Signal..... 70, 133
Load Limits..... 456
LOCK (Ignition Key Position) 145
LOCK VEHICLE OFF (Power Mode) 178
Lockout Prevention..... 147, 171
Locks
Anti-theft Steering Column..... 145, 183
Childproof Door..... 147
Fuel Fill Door 446
Glove Box 208
Power Door 146
Trunk 148
Trunk Pass-through Cover..... 160
Low Coolant Level..... 449
Low Fuel Indicator 73
Low Oil Pressure Indicator 64, 561
Lower Anchors..... 47
Lubricant Specifications Chart 580
Luggage, Storing (Cargo) 455

M

Maintenance..... 495
Main Items and Sub Items 502, 506
Minder..... 497
Owner's Maintenance Checks 505
Safety..... 496
Malfunction Indicator Lamp 64, 562
Manual Transmission..... 465
Manual Transmission Fluid 517
Map Lights 213
Memory, Driving Position 164
Meters, Gauges..... 63, 75
Mirrors, Adjusting 161
Modifying Your Vehicle..... 454
Moonroof 202
Multi-Information Display 77

N

Neutral Gear Position..... 470
New Vehicle Break-in 444
Normal Shift Speeds 466, 477
NOTICE, Explanation of..... i
Numbers, Identification..... 578

O

Octane Requirement, Gasoline 444
Odometer..... 81
Oil
Change, How to 510
Change, When to..... 497
Checking Engine 448
Pressure Indicator..... 64, 561
Selecting Proper Viscosity Chart 510
ON (Ignition Key Position) 145
ON Mode (Power Mode)..... 178
Onboard Refueling Vapor Recovery 589
Operating Range..... 168
Outside Mirrors 162
Outside Temperature..... 84
Overheating, Engine 559
Owner's Maintenance Checks..... 505
Oxygenated Fuels..... 444

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Index

P

Paddle Shifters 473
Panel Brightness Control 137
Park Gear Position 469
Parking 480
Parking Brake 204
Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator 65, 563
Parking Lights 133
Parking Over Things that Burn ... 480
Passenger Airbag Off Indicator 34
PGM-FI System 590
Pollen Filter 532
Power Mode 178
ACCESSORY Mode 179
ON Mode 179
START Mode 181
VEHICLE OFF Mode 179
Power Socket Locations 205
Power Windows 198
Pregnancy, Using Seat Belts 18
Protecting Adults and Teens 11
Additional Safety Precautions 19
Advice for Pregnant Women 18
Protecting Children 37
General Guidelines 37
Protecting Infants 42
Protecting Larger Children 53
Protecting Small Children 43
Using Child Seats with Tethers 51
Using LATCH 47
Protecting Your Discs 364

R

Radiator Overheating 559
Radio/Disc Sound System 226, 273
Radio Theft Protection 373
Radio, XM® 235, 287
Readiness Codes 562, 592
Rear Lights, Bulb Replacement ... 528
Rear Seat Armrest 160
Rearview Camera and Monitor 441
Rearview Mirror 161
Rear Window Defogger 139
Reclining the Seat Backs 155
Recommended Shift Speeds 466, 477
Refueling 445
Reminder Indicators 64
Remote, Keyless Access System 168, 173
Remote Audio Controls 370
Remote Transmitter 151
Replacement Information
Dust and Pollen Filter 532
Engine Oil and Filter 510
Fuses 565
Light Bulbs 521
Minder 497
Timing Belt 520
Tires 539
Wiper Blades 532
Replacing Seat Belts After a Crash 23
Reporting Safety Defects 598
Reserve Tank, Engine Coolant 449, 512
Reverse Tilt Mirror 162
Restraint, Child 37
Reverse Gear Position 470
Rotation, Tire 539

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Main Menu

Index

S

Safety Belts 8, 20
Safety Defects, Reporting 598
Safety Features 7
  Airbags 9
  Seat Belts 8
Safety Labels, Location of 58
Safety Messages iii
Seat Belts 8, 20
  Additional Information 20
  Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners 22
  Cleaning 530
  Lap/Shoulder Belt 21
  Maintenance 23
  Reminder Indicator and Beeper 20, 64
  System Components 20
  Use During Pregnancy 18
Seat Heaters 196
Seats, Adjusting the 155
Security System 377
Selecting a Child Seat 45
Selector Knob (Disc Changer) 226
Sequential Shift Mode 475
Serial Number 578
Service Minder 497
Service Manual* 599
Service Station Procedures 445
Setting the Clock 374
SH-AWD® Indicator 73
Shift Lever Position Indicators 468
Shift Lock Release 471
Side Airbags 9, 30
Side Airbag Off Indicator 33, 67
Side Curtain Airbags 32
Signaling Turns 133
Snow Tires 541
Sound System 225
Spare Tire
  Inflating 548
  Specifications 548, 582
Spark Plugs 581
Specifications 580
Speed Control 383
Speedometer 75
SRS, Additional Information 24
  Additional Safety Precautions 36
  Airbag Service 35
  Airbag System Components 24
  How the Passenger Airbag Off Indicator Works 34
  How the Side Airbag Off Indicator Works 33
  How the SRS Indicator Works 32
  How Your Front Airbags Work 26
  How Your Side Airbags Work 30
  How Your Side Curtain Airbags Work 32
SRS Indicator 32, 67
START (Ignition Key Position) 145
START Mode (Power Mode) 178
Start/Stop Button, Engine 177, 182
Starting the Engine 461, 463
  Check Starting System 462, 464
  In Cold Weather at High Altitude 461, 463
  With a Dead Battery 557
Steam Coming from Engine 559
Steering Wheel
  Adjustments 140
  Anti-theft Column Lock 145, 183
Steering Wheel
  Buttons 370, 383, 389, 406

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Index

Stereo Sound System 225
Storing Your Vehicle 544
Sun Visors 209
Sunglasses Holder 210
Super Handling All-Wheel Drive (TM) (SH-AWD®) 73, 478
Supplemental Restraint System 24
  Servicing 35
  SRS Indicator 32
  System Components 24
Synthetic Oil 510

T

Tachometer 75
Taking Care of the Unexpected .. 547
Technical Descriptions
  DOT Tire Quality Grading* 583
  Emissions Control Systems 589
  Three Way Catalytic Converter 590, 591
Temperature Gauge 76
Temperature, Outside 84
Temperature, Inside Sensor 224
Tether Anchorage Points 51
Theft Protection, Radio 373
Three Way Catalytic Converter ... 591
Tighten Fuel Cap Message 447
Tilt the Steering Wheel 140
Time, Setting the 374
Tire Chains 541
Tire, How to Change a Flat 549
Tire Information 583
Tire Labeling 585
Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) 488
  Low Tire Pressure/TPMS Indicator 69, 488
  Pressure Monitor 489
  Required Federal Explanation 587
  TPMS System Failure 491
Tires 534
  Air Pressure 535, 536
  Chains 541
  Checking Wear 537
  Compact Spare 548
  DOT Tire Quality Grading 583
  Glossary of Tire Terminology .. 586
  Inflation 535
  Inspection 537
  Replacing 539
  Rotating 539
  Service Life 538
  Snow 541
  Specifications 540, 582
  Summer Tire 540
  Traction Devices 541
  Winter Driving 540
Tools, Tire Changing 550
Torque Distribution Monitor (SH-AWD®) 478
Towing
  A Trailer 493
  Emergency Wrecker 572
  Hook 574
Traction Devices 541
Transmission
  Checking Fluid Level, Automatic 515
  Checking Fluid Level, Manual 517
  Fluid Selection 516, 517
  Identification Number 579
  Shifting the Automatic 469
  Shifting the Manual 465

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Main Menu

Index

Treadwear 583
Trip Computer 82
Trip Meter 81
Trunk..... 148
  Emergency Opener 150
  Opening the..... 148
  Open Indicator 71
  Open Monitor Indicator..... 12
Turn Signals 133

U

Unexpected, Taking Care of the 547
Uniform Tire Quality Grading 583
Unleaded Gasoline..... 444
USB Adapter
  Cable 254, 263, 340, 350
Used Oil, How to Dispose of 512

V

Vanity Mirror 209
Vehicle Capacity Load 456
Vehicle Dimensions..... 580
VEHICLE OFF Mode (Power Mode) 178
Vehicle Identification Number..... 578
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA®), aka Electronic Stability Control (ESC), System 484
  VSA Off Indicator..... 68, 484
  VSA OFF Switch..... 485
  VSA System Indicator 68, 484
Vehicle Storage..... 544
VIN 578
Viscosity, Oil..... 510
Voice Control System..... 218, 273

W

WARNING, Explanation of iii
Warning Labels, Location of 58
Warranty Coverages 597
Washer, Windshield
  Fluid Level Message 514
  Operation..... 131
  Reserve Tank 514
Wheels
  Adjusting the Steering 140
  Alignment and Balance..... 538
  Compact Spare..... 548
  Wrench, Nut..... 550
Windows
  Auto Reverse..... 199
  Operating the Power..... 198
  Rear, Defogger 139
Windshield
  Cleaning..... 131
  Defroster 221
  Washers..... 131
Wipers, Windshield
  Changing Blades..... 532
  Operation..... 131
Worn Tires 537
Wrecker, Emergency Towing..... 572

X

XM® Radio..... 235, 287

∗ : U.S.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Main Menu

Service Information Summary

Gasoline:
Premium unleaded gasoline, pump octane number of 91 or higher required (see ''Fuel Recommendations'' on page 444).

Fuel Tank Capacity:
18.5 US gal (70 ℓ)

Recommended Engine Oil:
API Premium grade 5W-20 detergent oil (see page 509).

Oil change capacity (including filter):
4.5 US qt (4.3 ℓ)

Automatic Transmission Fluid:
Acura ATF DW-1 (automatic transmission fluid) (see page 516).

On models with SH-AWD
Rear Differential Fluid:
Use Acura All-Wheel Drive Fluid (DPSF) only.

Capacity:
SH-AWD differential case
2.67 US qt (2.53 ℓ)

Transfer Assembly Fluid:
SAE 90 or SAE 80W-90 viscosity hypoid gear oil, API service classified GL4 or GL5 only.

Manual Transmission Fluid:
Acura Manual Transmission Fluid preferred, or an SAE 10W-30 or 10W-40 motor oil as a temporary replacement (see page 518).

Capacity:
2.2 US qt (2.1 ℓ)

Brake Fluid:
Honda Heavy Duty Brake Fluid DOT 3 preferred, or a DOT 3 or DOT 4 brake fluid as a temporary replacement (see page 519).

Tire Pressure (measured cold):
All models except SH-AWD with High Performance Tires and SH-AWD TECH HPT models
Front/Rear:
32 psi (220 kPa , 2.2 kgf/cm²)

SH-AWD with High Performance Tires, SH-AWD TECH HPT, and Canadian A-Spec models
Front:
37 psi (255 kPa , 2.55 kgf/cm²)
Rear:
32 psi (220 kPa , 2.2 kgf/cm²)

Spare Tire Pressure:
60 psi (420 kPa , 4.2 kgf/cm²)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Main Menu

Owner's Identification

OWNER _____

_____

ADDRESS _____
STREET

_____ _____ _____
CITY STATE/PROVINCE/TERRITORY ZIP CODE/ POSTAL CODE

V. I. N. _____

DELIVERY DATE _____
(Date sold to original retail purchaser)

DEALER NAME _____ DEALER NO. _____

ADDRESS _____
STREET

_____ _____ _____
CITY STATE/PROVINCE/TERRITORY ZIP CODE/ POSTAL CODE

OWNER'S SIGNATURE _____

DEALER'S SIGNATURE _____

This owner's manual should be considered a permanent part of the vehicle and should remain with the vehicle when it is sold.

This Owner's Manual covers all models of the Acura TL. You may find descriptions of equipment and features that are not on your particular model.

Images throughout this owner's manual (including the front cover) represent features and equipment that are available on some, but not all, models. Your particular model may not have some of these features.

The information and specifications included in this publication were in effect at the time of approval for printing. Honda Motor Co., Ltd. reserves the right, however, to discontinue or change specifications or design at any time without notice and without incurring any obligation whatsoever.

POUR CLIENTS CANADIEN
AVIS IMPORTANT: Si vous avez besoin d'un Manuel du Conducteur en français, veuillez demander à votre concessionnaire de commander le numéro de pièce 33TK4C20.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine